Workshop Manual
OCTAVIA

General Body Repairs

Service Department. Technical Information

S00.5118.50.20 Edition 08.96

The Workshop Manual is intended only for use within the ŠKODA Organisation; it is not permitted to pass it on to third parties.

© 1996 ŠKODA, automobilová a.s.

Printed in Czech Republic

List of Supplements to OCTAVIA Workshop Manual

Edition: 05.05

Body Fitting Work

Replaces List of Supplements - Edition: 10.04

Supplement	Edition	Subject	Article Number
	08.96	Basic Edition of Workshop Manual	S00.5118.50.20
1	12.96	Supplement to Repair Groups 01, 57, 58, 60, 69, 70	S00.5118.51.20
2	07.97	Central locking, Side airbag	S00.5118.52.20
3	11.97	2nd generation of Convenience system	S00.5118.53.20
4	08.98	OCTAVIA ESTATE	S00.5118.54.20
5	12.98	Trim panels/Sound Insulations/Armrests	S00.5118.55.20
6	10.99	Sliding/Tilting Roof (Webasto), Modifications	S00.5118.56.20
7	05.00	Modifications to Repair Groups 00, 01, 60, 64, 66, 68, 69, 70 and 74	S00.5118.57.20
8	10.00	Modifications to M01	S00.5118.58.20
9	02.01	Supplement to Repair Groups 01-72	S00.5118.59.20
10	06.01	3rd generation of Convenience system	S00.5118.60.20
11	08.01	Supplement to Repair Group 01	S00.5118.61.20
12	12.01	Supplement to Repair Group 66 and 69	S00.5118.62.20
13	06.02	Modifications to Repair Groups 00, 01, 63, 64, 66, 68, 69, 70 and 72	S00.5118.63.20
14	03.03	Modifications to Repair Groups 00, 01, 50, 57, 58, 60, 64, 69 and 72	S00.5118.64.20
15	09.03	Modifications to Repair Groups 01, 55, 57, 58, 60, 64, 66 and 72	S00.5118.65.20
16	10.04	Modifications to Repair Groups 01, 55, 57, 58, 64, 66, 69 and 70	S00.5118.66.20
17	05.05	Modifications to Repair Groups 01, 64, 66, 68, 70 and 72	S00.5118.67.20
18			
19			
20			

Contents ⇒ next page.

The Service Manual is intended only for use within the Škoda Organisation; it is not permitted to pass it on to third persons.

© 2005 ŠKODA AUTO a. s.

Printed in CR

S00.5118.67.20

Contents

00 Technical Data	Page
Vehicle identification data	**00-1**
- Vehicle identification number ➤ M99	00-1
- Vehicle identification number M00 ➤	00-1

01 Self-Diagnosis	Page
Self-diagnosis of airbag system	**01-1**
- Description of system	01-1
- Test requirements for self-diagnosis	01-3
- Notes on carrying out diagnosis of airbag system	01-4
- Connecting vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and enter address word „Airbag“	01-5
- List of available functions	01-6
- Interrogating control unit version	01-6
- List of all control units	01-7
- Interrogating fault memory	01-8
- Actuator diagnosis	01-9
- Erasing fault memory	01-10
- Ending output	01-11
- Coding airbag control unit	01-11
- Fault table	01-12
- Reading measured value block	01-15.1
- Reading table of measured value block	01-15.2
- Parts inspection with test box VAS 5056 C	01-15.8
Deactivating and re-activating airbag units (adaptation)	**01-15.10**
- Deactivating and re-activating (adaptation) of passenger airbag unit	01-15.10
Self-diagnosis for convenience system	**01-16**
- Description of system	01-16
- Survey of components of units for convenience system	01-16.1
- Function	01-16.2
- Connecting fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select central control unit for convenience system (J393)	01-17
- List of available functions	01-19
- Interrogating control unit version	01-19
- List of control units for convenience system according to start of production date and generation	01-19.2
- Interrogating fault memory	01-20
- Fault table for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation of convenience system)	01-21
- Fault table for vehicles 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation of convenience system)	01-29.1
- Fault table for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2½ generation of convenience system), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)	01-29.13
- Actuator diagnosis	01-30
- Erasing fault memory	01-31
- Ending output	01-31
- Coding control unit	01-32
- Reading measured value block	01-33
- Test table for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation of convenience system)	01-34
- Test table for vehicles 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation of convenience system)	01-40.1
- Test table for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2½ generation of convenience system)	01-40.9
- Test table for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)	01-40.11
- Adaptation	01-41

Self-diagnosis for central locking 01-45
- Description of system 01-45
- Function 01-45
- Connecting fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select central control unit for central locking (J110) 01-46
- List of available functions 01-48
- Interrogating control unit version 01-48
- List of all control units of central locking according to date and generation 01-48.1
- Interrogating fault memory 01-49
- Fault table for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation of central locking) 01-50
- Fault table for vehicles 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation of central locking) 01-54.1
- Fault table for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2½ generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system) 01-54.7
- Actuator diagnosis 01-55
- Erasing fault memory 01-56
- Ending output 01-56
- Coding control unit 01-57
- Reading measured value block 01-58
- Test tables for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation of central locking) 01-59
- Test tables for vehicles 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation of central locking) 01-63.1
- Test tables for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2½ generation of central locking) 01-63.6
- Test table for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system) 01-63.8
- Adaptation 01-64

Self-diagnosis for electrically operated seats with memory 01-77
- Description of system 01-77
- Connecting vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word for seat height adjustment/driver 01-78
- List of available functions 01-80
- Interrogating control unit version 01-80
- Interrogating fault memory 01-81
- Erasing fault memory 01-82
- Ending output 01-82
- Fault table 01-83
- Reading measured value block 01-88
- Test table 01-88

50 Front Body — Page

Front Body 50-1
- Survey of components of lock carrier with attached parts 50-1
- Replacing lock carrier 50-2
- Survey of components of front wing 50-3

55 Bonnet/Boot lid/Tailgate — Page

Bonnet 55-1
- Survey of components of bonnet 55-1
- Removing and installing bonnet lock 55-1
- Disassembling and assembling radiator grill 55-1.1
- Survey of components of bonnet lock mechanism 55-2

Tailgate 55-3
- Removing tailgate 55-3
- Removing gas strut 55-3
- Releasing gas from gas strut 55-4
- List of tailgate lock parts 55-5
- Survey of components of tailgate lock mechanism 55-5.1

Fuel tank lid 55-6
- Survey of components of fuel tank lid unit 55-6

57 Front Doors/Door Components/Central Locking

Page

Front Door ... **57-1**
- List of front door components ... 57-1
- Removing and installing front door ... 57-2
- Adjusting front door ... 57-3
- Removing door window ... 57-3
- Removing and installing window lifter ... 57-4
- Removing and installing window lifter motor ... 57-4.1
- List of door handle components ... 57-5
- Removing and installing outer door handle ... 57-6
- List of door lock components ... 57-7
- Removing and installing door lock ... 57-7

Central locking ... **57-8**
- Removing and installing positioning element for tailgate ... 57-8
- Removing and installing positioning element for fuel tank lid ... 57-8
- Summary of components of front door seals ... 57-9

58 Rear Doors/Door components

Page

Rear door ... **58-1**
- List of rear door components ... 58-1
- Removing and installing rear door ... 58-2
- Adjusting rear door ... 58-2
- Removing door window ... 58-3
- Removing window lifting ... 58-4
- List of door handle components ... 58-5
- Removing and installing outer door handle ... 58-6
- List of door lock components ... 58-7
- Removing and installing door lock ... 58-8
- Summary of components of rear door seals ... 58-9

60 Sliding/Tilting Roof

Page

Sliding/Tilting Roof Rockwell with glass panel ... **60-1**
- List of components of sliding/tilting roof with glass panel ... 60-1
- Removing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ... 60-3
- Installing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ... 60-4
- Adjusting glass panel for sliding/tilting roof (height adjustment) ... 60-4
- Adjusting panel seal ... 60-5
- Inspecting E-drive (position 0) ... 60-6
- Inspecting and adjusting parallel run ... 60-6
- Removing sun screen ... 60-7
- Installing sun screen ... 60-8
- Removing and installing assembly unit ... 60-8
- Cleaning water drain hoses ... 60-9

Sliding/Tilting Roof Webasto with glass panel ... **60-11**
- List of components of sliding/tilting roof with glass panel ... 60-11
- Removing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ... 60-14
- Installing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ... 60-14
- Adjusting glass panel for sliding/tilting roof (height adjustment) ... 60-15
- Adjusting panel seal ... 60-16
- Removing and installing sun screen ... 60-17
- Removing and installing drive for sliding/tilting roof ... 60-17
- Adjusting electric drive mechanism (adjusting position 0) ... 60-18
- Removing automatic preselection mechanism ... 60-18
- Inspecting parallel run ... 60-19

- Adjusting parallel run 60-19
- Removing and installing assembly unit 60-19
- Adapting E-drive 60-20
- Cleaning water drain hoses 60-20

63 Bumpers Page

Front bumper 63-1
- Survey of components of front bumper ➤ 12.01 63-1
- Survey of components of front bumper for vehicles 08.00 ➤ 12.01 ..... 63-2.1
- Survey of components of front bumper 01.02 ➤ 63-2.2

Rear bumper 63-3
- Survey of components of rear bumper 63-3
- Survey of components of rear bumper (Octavia Estate) 63-5

64 Windows Page

Bonded windows 64-1
- Removing and installing bonded windows 64-1
- Summary of components of windscreen 64-2
- Removing and installing windscreen 64-3
- Rear window - Summary of components 64-4
- Summary of components of rear window (Octavia Estate) 64-4
- Removing and installing rear window 64-4.1
- Summary of components of side window (Octavia Estate) 64-4.2
- Removing and installing side window 64-4.2
- Preparing new window for inserting glass 64-5
- Affix sticker onto new windscreen 64-6
- Mounting instructions 64-6
- Preparing flange for inserting window 64-7
- Bonding 64-7
- Waiting time 64-8
- Touching up paint damage 64-9
- Cleaning and removing adhesive sealing material 64-9
- Bonding 4x4 self-adhesive foil onto rear window 64-9
- Removing 4x4 self-adhesive foil from heated rear window 64-10

66 Exterior Equipment Page

Trim panels 66-1
- Removing and installing water box cover ➤ 05.98 66-1
- Removing and installing water box cover 06.98 ➤ 66-1

Protective strips 66-2
- Removing and installing side protective strips 66-2

Wheelhouse liner 66-3
- Removing and installing front wheelhouse liner 66-3
- Removing and installing front wheelhouse liner 66-3

Roof strip 66-4
- Removing and installing roof strip 66-4

Rear-view mirror 66-5
- Summary of components of rear-view mirror 66-5

Trailer coupling 66-6
- Summary of components of trailer coupling 66-6

Roof rail 66-7
- Summary of components of roof rail (Octavia Estate) 66-7

Rear spoiler **66-9**
- Summary of components of tailgate spoiler 66-9
- Removing and installing tailgate spoiler 66-9

Self-adhesive foils Octavia RS - WRC **66-11**
- Important instructions for gluing self-adhesive foils 66-11
- Removing self-adhesive foils 66-12
- Summary of components of side self-adhesive foils 66-13
- Stick on side self-adhesive foils 66-15
- Summary of components of roof and engine hood self-adhesive foils 66-18
- Stick on roof and engine hood self-adhesive foils 66-19
- Summary of components of self-adhesive foils for rear bumper 66-20
- Stick on self-adhesive foils for front and rear bumper 66-21
- Stick on self-adhesive foils for doors and centre pillar 66-21

Rear spoiler (for vehicles Octavia Sedan 4x4) **66-23**
- Summary of components for the complete rear spoiler 66-23
- Removing and installing complete rear spoiler 66-23

Rear spoiler (for vehicles Octavia Estate RS) **66-24**
- Summary of components for the complete rear spoiler 66-24
- Removing and installing complete rear spoiler 66-24
- Removing and installing additional brake light (for vehicles Octavia Estate RS) 66-25

Decoration sheets TAXI **66-27**
- Stick on decorative sheets and remove 66-27

Dimension of holes for the TAXI roof sign **66-28**
- Summary of components of the TAXI roof sign 66-28

68 Interior Equipment/Occupant Protection **Page**

Interior mirror **68-1**
- Removing interior mirror 68-1
- Installing interior mirror 68-1
- Repair method with glass-metal adhesive 68-1
- Removing and installing interior mirror with rain sensor 68-2.1

Storage areas, covers and trim panels **68-3**
- Summary of components of centre console 08.96 ➤ 68-3
- Summary of components of covering for handbrake lever 08.96 ➤ 68-4
- Removing and installing footwell covering on driver's side 68-4
- Summary of components of centre console 08.98 ➤ 68-4.1
- Summary of components of covering for handbrake lever 08.98 ➤ 68-4.2
- Summary of components of front armrest 68-4.3
- Removing and installing sun visor 68-5
- Removing and installing rear reading light 68-5

Recessed handle **68-5**
- Removing and installing recessed handle (roof) 68-5

Entrance plates **68-6**
- Removing and installing entrance plate 68-6

Net partition **68-7**
- Summary of components 68-7

Holder for fire extinguisher **68-9**
- Removing and installing holder for fire extinguisher 68-9

Hole dimension for TAXI **68-10**
- Summary of components of printer 68-10
- Summary of components of power socket 68-10
- Roof antenna hole for TAXI two-way radio system 68-11
- Summary of components for alarm system switch 68-11

- Summary of components for alarm system circuit breaker 68-12
- Summary of components of microphone holder 68-12

69 Occupant Protection

Page

Seat belts 69-1
- Removing and installing front seat belt height adjustment 69-1
- Removing and installing front inertia reel seat belt and front seat belt fitting 69-1
- List of components of front inertia reel seat belt with seat belt tensioner 69-2
- List of components of rear inertia reel seat belt 69-2
- Removing and installing seat belt height adjustment (Octavia Estate) 69-2.1
- Removing and installing rear inertia reel seat belt (Octavia Estate) 69-2.1
- Summary of components of rear centre three-point seat belt 69-2.2
- Safety precautions for work on belt tensioners 69-2.2
- Removing and installing front seat belt buckle 69-3
- Removing and installing rear seat belt buckle 69-3
- Removing and installing seat belt guide 69-3

Inspecting seat belts 69-4

Airbag system 69-8
- List of fitting locations 69-8
- Safety precautions when working on airbag system 69-8
- Replacing airbag units after an accident 69-10
- Removing and installing driver airbag unit 69-11
- Removing and installing steering wheel 69-12
- Removing and installing restoring ring with slip ring 69-12.1
- Removing and installing passenger airbag unit 69-13
- Removing and installing side airbag crash sensor 69-13.1
- Removing and installing switch for front passenger airbag 69-13.2
- Removing and installing side airbag units on driver and passenger side 69-14
- Removing and installing airbag control unit (J234) 69-16

Disposing of pyrotechnic parts before scrapping the vehicle 69-16
- Disposing of airbag unit before scrapping the vehicle 69-17
- Disposing of seat belt tensioner 69-18

70 Trim Panel/Sound Insulation

Page

Dash panel 70-1
- Removing and installing dash panel 08.96 ➤ 70-1
- Removing and installing dash panel 08.98 ➤ 70-3
- Removing and installing central tube/dash panel 70-3.3
- Removing and installing control unit for convenience system 70-3.7

Door trim panels 70-4
- List of components of front door trim panel (with mechanical window lifter) 70-4
- Removing and installing door trim panel 70-4
- List of components of front door trim panel (with power window lifter) 70-4.1
- Removing and installing front door trim panel on driver's side 70-4.1
- List of components of rear door trim panel 70-5
- Removing and installing rear door trim panel 70-5
- Removing and installing door sound insulation sheeting 70-6
- Removing window crank 70-6
- Installing window crank 70-6

Pillar and side trim panels 70-7
- Removing and installing A pillar trim panels 70-7
- Removing and installing bottom A pillar trim panel 70-7
- Removing and installing B pillar trim panels 70-8
- Removing and installing top C pillar trim panel 70-9

- Removing and installing bottom C pillar trim panel 70-9
- Removing and installing top C pillar trim panel (Octavia Estate) 70-9.1
- Removing and installing bottom C pillar trim panel (Octavia Estate) 70-9.1
- Removing and installing D pillar (Octavia Estate) 70-9.2

Removing and installing cargo area and luggage compartment trim panels 70-10
- Removing and installing luggage compartment floor trim panel 70-10
- Removing and installing side luggage compartment trim panel 70-10
- Removing and installing covers for rear cargo opening 70-11
- Removing and installing rear tailgate trim panel for vehicles ➤ 07.00 70-11
- Removing and installing tailgate trim panel for vehicles 08.00 ➤ 70-12
- Removing and installing holder for luggage compartment cover 70-12
- List of components of luggage compartment floor (Octavia Estate) 70-12.1
- List of components side luggage compartment trim panel (Octavia Estate) 70-12.1
- List of components for removing and installing tailgate cover (Octavia Estate) 70-12.2
- List of components of rear tailgate trim panel (Octavia Estate) 70-12.2
- List of components of luggage compartment cover support (Octavia Estate) 70-12.3
- Removing and installing foldable clips in luggage compartment (Octavia Estate 4x4 and RS) 70-12.3

Door trim panels 70-13
- Moulded headliner 70-13
- Removing and installing moulded headliner (Octavia Estate) 70-14

Roof noise insulation panel 70-16
- List of components of roof noise insulation panel 70-16

72 Seat Frames **Page**

Front seats 72-1
- Removing seat 72-1
- Installing seat 72-1
- Removing seat height adjustment handle 72-2
- Installing seat height adjustment handle 72-2
- Removing backrest frame from seat frame 72-2
- Assembling seat frame and backrest frame 72-2.2
- Removing and installing seat height adjusting elements 72-2.2

Electrically operated seats with fault memory 72-3
- Removing and installing electrically operated seats 72-3
- Removing and installing covers for electrically operated seats 72-4
- Removing and installing control unit for electrically operated seats 72-4
- Removing and installing operating unit for electrically operated seats 72-5
- Removing and installing seat length adjustment unit for electrically operated seats 72-5
- Removing and installing front seat length adjustment unit for electrically operated seats 72-6
- Removing and installing rear seat height adjustment unit for electrically operated seats 72-6
- Removing and installing drive for backrest adjustment of electrically operated seats 72-6.1

Rear seats 72-7
- Removing and installing seat bench and backrest (split) 72-7
- Removing and installing seat bench with child seat 72-8
- Removing and installing support RS (only Octavia Sedan) 72-8

74 Seat Upholstery/Covers **Page**

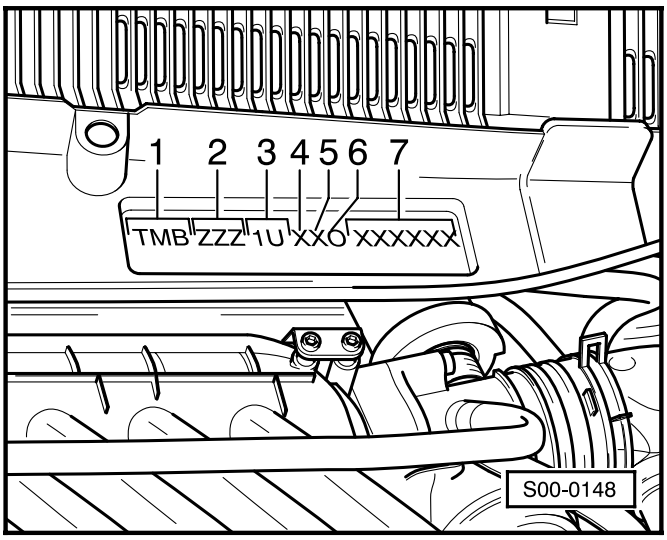
Front seat covers and upholstery 74-1
- Removing and installing seat covers and upholstery for front seat 74-1
- Removing and installing seat covers and upholstery for front backrest 74-2

Rear seat covers and upholstery 74-3
- Removing and installing seat covers and upholstery for seat bench (split) 74-3
- Removing and installing seat covers and upholstery for backrest (split) 74-4
- List of parts of seat covers and upholstery for backrest (with armrest, split) removing and installing 74-5

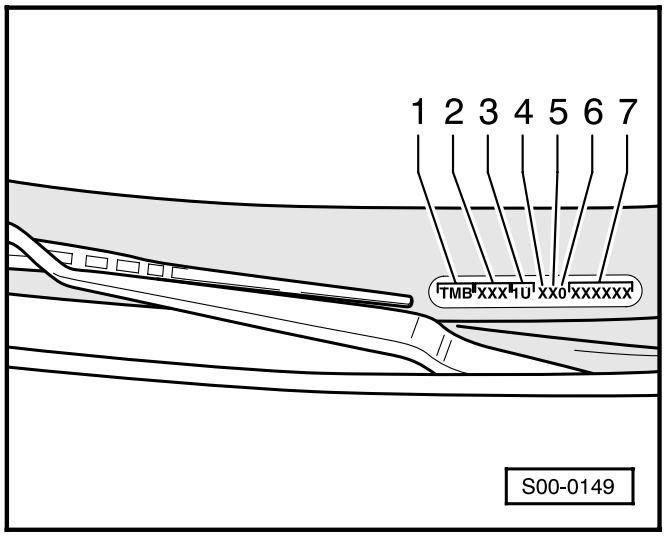
- Disassembling and assembling rear backrest (with armrests, split) 74-7
- List of parts of seat covers and upholstery for rear armrests (split with headrests and centre three-point seat belt) 74-9

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number ➤ MY99



◄ The vehicle identification number (chassis number) is stamped in the cross member of the engine compartment. It is visible through a window in the cover of the plenum chamber after opening the bonnet.



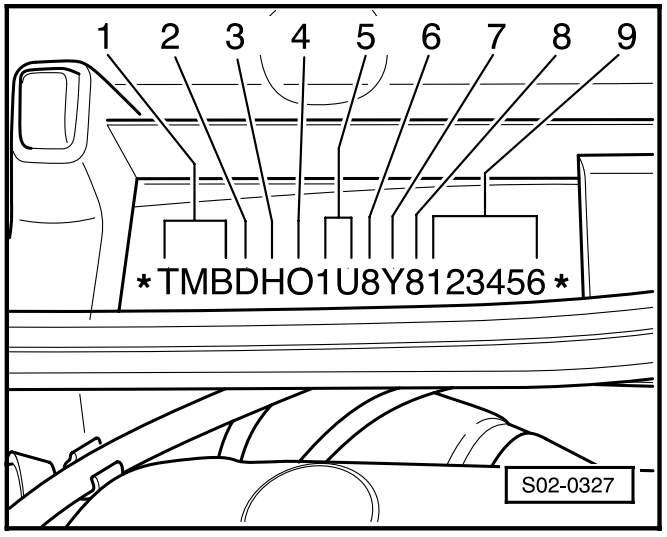
◄ The vehicle identification number (chassis number) is also stated at the bottom left corner of the windscreen, with effect from 04.99.

1 - Manufacturer world code
2 - Internal number
3 - Type
4 - Internal number
5 - Model year
6 - Manufacturing plant
7 - Vehicle body number

Note:

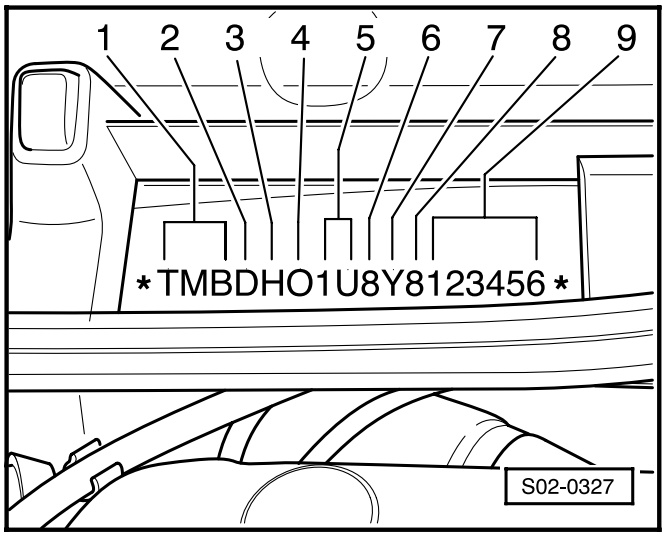
For more detailed information regarding the meaning of individual characters
⇒ Inspection and Maintenance.

Vehicle identification number MY00 ➤



◄ The vehicle identification number (chassis number) is stamped in the cross member of the engine compartment. It is visible through a window in the cover of the plenum chamber after opening the bonnet.

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) is also stated at the bottom left corner of the windscreen.



◄

1 - Manufacturer’s world code
2 - Body type and equipment
3 - Engine type
4 - Airbag system (not valid for India)
4 - Code letters for manufacturing month (not valid for India)
5 - Vehicle type
6 - Internal number
7 - Model year
8 - Manufacturing plant
9 - Vehicle body number

Note:

Extensive information about the significance of individual features
⇒ Inspection and Maintenance

Self-diagnosis of airbag system

Description of system

Airbag system comprises:

- Airbag control units
- Side crash sensor
- Driver airbag
- Passenger airbag
- Driver and passenger side airbag
- Mechanically ignited seat belt tensioner for driver and passenger seat belts
- Switch for front passenger airbags (special equipment vehicles MY03 ➤)

The described airbag system consists of the actuators, driver airbag, passenger airbag, driver and passenger side airbags and two front seat belt tensioners.
These are directly ignited by the airbag control unit (J234) in the event of a crash as soon as the given activation criteria are exceeded.

The belt tensioners are ignited independently of the signal from the airbag control unit.

It is possible to re-activate or deactivate the front passenger airbag using the self-diagnosis ⇒ page 01-15.10.

If the front passenger airbag unit is deactivated, a fault relating to erasing airbag unit is stored in the fault memory and after the airbag unit is subsequently re-activated, it is erased from the fault memory (only for vehicles which do not have a switch for the front passenger airbag).

The switching on and off operations are undertaken by means of the switch for the front passenger airbag if the vehicle is fitted with such a switch.

When igniting the driver and front passenger front airbag, the fault „crash data stored“ is entered into the fault memory and the airbag control unit must be replaced with a new original part.

If the control unit detects a side collision, it ignites the side airbag on the crash side. The fault „crash data of driver side airbag stored“ or „crash data of front passenger side airbag stored“ is entered in the fault memory. These data can be erased 3x at the most, after which the control unit must be replaced with a new original part (valid for vehicles 08.00 ➤).
For vehicles ➤ 07.00 these data cannot be erased, the control must be replaced with a new original part.

Code the new control unit when it is put into service ⇒ page 01-11.

Once an airbag unit is ignited then the control unit sends a signal to the control unit for the convenience system or for the central locking system and to the engine control unit. This function serves to maintain passive safety on the vehicle.

On ignition of an airbag unit:

- all doors are unlocked
- the interior lighting is switched on
- the fuel delivery unit is switched off [1)]

[1)] Depending on the version of the control unit

The signal from the control unit should be checked with the aid of an actuator diagnosis ⇒ Page 01-9.

The control unit for the airbag (J234) is located in the front area of the middle console ⇒ Page 69-16. The control unit is fitted with a fault memory.

The control unit detects an error in the airbag unit and stores this in the permanent memory.

There are also faults stored which are due to temporary interruptions in the line or a loose connection. This type of fault is shown as a sporadic fault „SP“.

On switching on the ignition the warning light for the airbag (K75) lights up for 4 seconds. If the warning light then blinks for a further 12 seconds this signalises that one of the front passenger airbag units has been locked electronically (only for vehicles which do not have a switch for front passenger airbags).

- If the warning light (K75) does not goes out after 4 seconds then there is a fault present. Interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Page 01-8.
- If the warning light (K75) goes out and then goes on again then the control unit is not coded, the wrong control unit has been installed or there is a fault. Interrogate the fault memory ⇒ Page 01-8.
- If the warning light (K75) is continuously blinking then the control unit (J234) must be replaced.

A self-diagnosis should be initiated at the beginning of the search for a fault and the stored information is to be called up using the Vehicle System Tester V.A.G 1552, V.A.G 1551 or V.A.S 5051.

Notes:

- *The sequence below relates only to the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 with programme card 6.0.*
- *Use of vehicle system tester V.A.S 1551 or V.A.G 1551 with programme card 9.0, is similar with the exception of specific variations (e.g. different readouts in display, use of printer).*
- *The function 06 „End output“ must be selected in order to end the diagnosis or to switch to another address word.*

All the fault information displayed is used to refer to a fault table in order to determine the possible causes and conduct specific repair measures.

When carrying out tests and removal and installation operations, faults may be stored in other control units (e.g. because of separating plug connections). For this reason, always interrogate the fault memories of all the control units and then erase them.

Procedure:

- Enter address word 00 „Automatic test sequence“. Vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552, or V.A.G 1551, checks the fault memories of all the systems in the vehicle with a self-diagnosis capability.
- If the corresponding ECU responds with its identification, the number and type of stored faults appears in the display, or „No fault recognized“.
- Rectify any faults which exist and erase the fault memory.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX

◄ After completion of the test sequence, the following readout appears in the display:

Test requirements for self-diagnosis

- All fuses o.k.
- Battery voltage at least 9.0 V

Guidelines for undertaking an airbag system self-diagnosis

Required special tools, testing and measuring equipment as well auxiliary devices and material:

- The Vehicle System Tester V.A.G 1552
- The diagnostic cable V.A.G 1551/3, 3A, 3B or 3C
- A multimeter e.g. V.A.G 1526 A
- Test box VAS 5056 with adapter cable VAS 5056/1 and VAS 5056/2

Take note!

Only check the cable guides and plug connectors to ensure that they are seated properly when the ignition is switched off (also possible disconnection of the plug connections).

Employees must be „electrostatically discharged" before disconnecting the plug connections for the airbag.

Do not undertake continuity checks or other measurements in the ignition circuit when the airbag units and belt tighteners are connected up!

Always finish the self-diagnosis while removing faults or seeking to determine the origin of a fault before disconnecting and reconnecting the individual airbag components, and then undertake a new one afterwards!

Airbag locking is only allowed on the front passenger side ⇒ Page 01-15.10. Locking of other airbag units can only be undertaken in exceptional circumstances and then only after receiving written permission from the PST (the Czech Republic) or from the importer.

Only check the strands of electrical cable for the airbag system for short-circuiting or interruptions when the plugs are disconnected on the airbag and control unit for the airbag, when the ignition is switched off and the battery is unclamped!

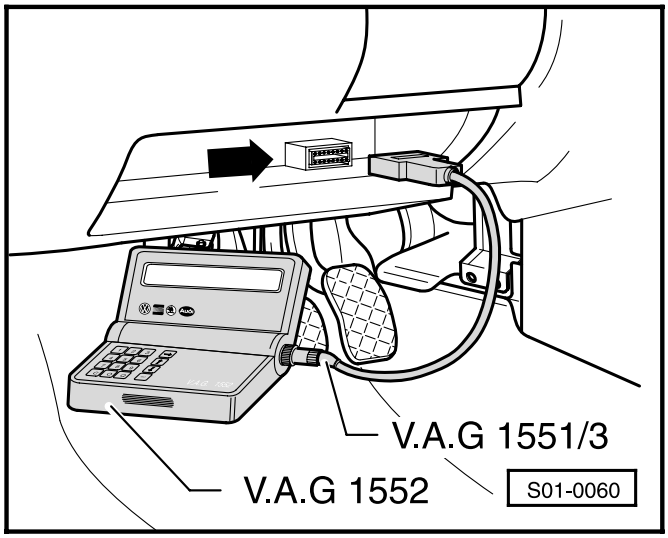
Observe the safety regulations for working in airbag units when removing and installing the airbag units ⇒ Page 69-8.

Observe the safety regulations for working on belt tighteners when removing and installing the belt tightener ⇒ Page 69-2.2.

Note:

Additional work is to be undertaken when disconnecting and re-connecting the battery earth ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.Gr. 27.

♦ *When the battery is disconnected, all of the learned values (adaptation values) of all the control units fitted to the vehicle are automatically erased. These measured values must be read once again when the battery is re-connected!*



Connecting vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and entering address word „Airbag“

The connection for self-diagnosis is located in the storage compartment below the steering wheel.

◄ - Switch off ignition (if not already off) and connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 with connection cable V.A.G 1551/3.

Test of vehicle systems Enter address word XX	HELP

◄ Readout in display:

Note:

♦ *If no readout appears in the display:*
⇒ Operating instructions of vehicle system tester.

♦ *The „Automatic test sequence“ can be selected with the address word 00, in other words the fault memories of all the systems in the vehicle with self-diagnosis capability, are interrogated.*

- Switch ignition on.

Test of vehicle systems Enter address word XX	HELP

◄ Readout in display:

- Enter address word 15 „Airbag“.

Test of vehicle systems 15 - Airbag	Q

◄ Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

Test of vehicle systems Tester sends address word 15

◄ Readout in display:

Notes:

♦ *If a fault occurs in establishing communication between vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and the control unit, one of the following readouts appears in the display.*

Test of vehicle systems Control unit does not answer!	HELP

◄ ♦ *The possible causes of the fault are displayed by pressing the „HELP“ key.*

Test of vehicle systems HELP K wire not switching to positive!

◄ The ignition must be switched on!

Test of vehicle systems → Control unit does not answer!

◄ Interference has occurred at the beginning or during the programme (external sources of interference).

Test of vehicle systems → Fault in communication build-up

◄ Test diagnostic cables and also voltage supply.

- After rectifying the possible causes of the fault, once again enter address word 15 for „Airbag“ and confirm with the key Q.

Test of vehicle systems Tester sends address word 15

◄ Readout in display after entering the address word „15“:

followed by this readout:

1J0 909 603 A AIRBAG VW3 V02 → Coding 00065 WSC12345

◄ The control unit identification number appears in the display.

- Press → key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX

◄ Readout in display:

List of available functions

	Page
01 - Interrogating control unit version	01-6
02 - Interrogating fault memory	01-8
03 - Final control diagnosis	01-9
05 - Erasing fault memory	01-10
06 - Ending output	01-11
07 - Coding control unit	01-11
08 - Reading measured value block	01-15.1
10 - Adaptation	01-15.9

Interrogating control unit version

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 15 „Airbag“ ⇒ page 01-5.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX

◄ Readout in display:

- Select function 01.

Test of vehicle systems Q 01 - Interrogate control unit version

◄ Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

1J0 909 603 A	AIRBAG VW3	V02 →
Coding 00065		WSC 12345

◀ Readout on display:

- ♦ Top line:
  Number of control unit part (1J0 909 603 A)
  System denomination (AIRBAG VW3)
  Version number (V02)
- ♦ Bottom line:
  Code number
  Service code (is automatically stored in the control unit through service intervention in the existing system)
- Press key →.

Vehicle system test	HELP
Select function XX	

◀ Readout on display:

- End output (function 06) ⇒ page 01-11.

List of all control units

Part Number of control unit[1)]	Code number	Starting date	Vehicle equipment
1J0 909 603 B	00066	➤ M99	Driver airbag
1J0 909 603 A	00065	➤ M99	Driver and front passenger airbag
1J0 909 608 AE	16709	➤ M99	Driver airbag, side airbags
1J0 909 608 B	00066	➤ M99	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags
1J0 909 603 AT	16724	M00	Driver airbag
1J0 909 603 AS	16723	M00	Driver and front passenger airbag
1J0 909 608 BE	16965	M00	Driver airbag, side airbags
1J0 909 608 BD	16964	M00	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags
6Q0 909 601 0E	12357	09.00 ➤ 04.01	Driver airbag, CAN databus cable
1C0 909 601 0E	12357	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 601 2T	12884	06.03 ➤	
6Q0 909 601 0F	12358	09.00 ➤ 04.01	Driver and front passenger airbag, CAN databus cable
1C0 909 601 0F	12358	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 601 31	13105	06.03 ➤	
6Q0 909 601 0T	12372	09.00 ➤ 04.01	Driver airbag, without CAN databus cable
1C0 909 601 0T	12372	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 601 32	13106	06.03 ➤	
6Q0 909 601 11	12593	09.00 ➤ 04.01	Driver and front passenger airbag, without CAN databus cable
1C0 909 601 11	12593	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 601 33	13107	06.03 ➤	
6Q0 909 605 07	12343	09.00 ➤ 02.01	Driver airbag, side airbags, CAN databus cable

Printout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01218 Side airbag igniter, passenger's side (N200) Resistance too large Resistance too small Short circuit to positive Short circuit to earth	Faulty wiring or plug connections Side airbag unit, passenger's side faulty	- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-11. - Replace airbag unit, passenger's side (N200).
01221 Side airbag crash sensor, driver's side (G179)[1)] Short circuit to positive Short circuit to earth Sensor switched off Faulty	Faulty wiring or plug connections Side airbag crash sensor, driver's side faulty	- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-11. - Replace side airbag crash sensor, driver's side (G179).
01222 Side airbag crash sensor, passenger's side (G180)[1)] Short circuit to positive Short circuit to earth Sensor switched off Faulty	Faulty wiring or plug connections Side airbag crash sensor, passenger's side faulty	- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-11. - Replace side airbag crash sensor, passenger's side (G180).

[1)] only for control unit 1J0 909 608 B

Printout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01226 Crash data side airbag DS stored[1)]		- Replace control unit. - Replace airbag unit and all damaged components.
01227 Crash data side airbag PS stored[1)]		- Replace control unit. - Replace airbag unit and all damaged components.
01224 Control unit does not match vehicle		- Code control unit correctly ⇒ page 01-10.
01280 Airbag passenger's side switched off	Airbag passenger's side not operating	Control unit was adapted ⇒ page 01-13.
65535 Control unit defective	Control unit defective	- Replace control unit.

1) only for control unit 1J0 909 608 B

Part Number of control unit[1)]	Code number	Starting date	Vehicle equipment
6Q0 909 605 08	12344	09.00 ➤ 02.01	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags, CAN databus cable
6Q0 909 605 0B	12354	09.00 ➤ 02.01	Driver airbag, side airbags, without CAN databus cable
6Q0 909 605 0C	12355	09.00 ➤ 02.01	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags, without CAN databus cable
6Q0 909 605 0K	12363	02.01 ➤ 04.01	Driver airbag, side airbags, CAN databus cable
1C0 909 605 0K	12363	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 605 1L	12620	06.03 ➤	
6Q0 909 605 0L	12364	02.01 ➤ 04.01	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags, CAN databus cable
1C0 909 605 0L	12364	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 605 1M	12621	06.03 ➤	
6Q0 909 605 0M	12365	02.01 ➤ 04.01	Driver airbag, side airbags, without CAN databus cable
1C0 909 605 0M	12365	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 605 1N	12622	06.03 ➤	
6Q0 909 605 0N	12366	02.01 ➤ 04.01	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags, without CAN databus cable
1C0 909 605 0N	12366	05.01 ➤ 05.03	
1C0 909 605 1P	12624	06.03 ➤	
1C0 909 601 2G	12871	05.02 ➤ 05.03	Driver and front passenger airbag, CAN databus cable, front passenger airbag switch.
1C0 909 601 34	13108	06.03 ➤	
1C0 909 601 2H	12872	05.02 ➤ 05.03	Driver and front passenger airbag, without CAN databus cable, front passenger airbag switch.
1C0 909 601 35	13109	06.03 ➤	
1C0 909 605 1G	12615	05.02 ➤ 05.03	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags, CAN databus cable, front passenger airbag switch.
1C0 909 605 1S	12627	06.03 ➤	
1C0 909 605 1H	12616	05.02 ➤ 05.03	Driver and front passenger airbag, side airbags, without CAN databus cable, front passenger airbag switch.
1C0 909 605 1T	12628	06.03 ➤	

[1)] For current control unit version see spare part catalogue

Interrogating fault memory

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 15 „Airbag“;
  ⇒ page 01-5.

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX

◀ Read-out on display:

- Enter function 02.

Vehicle system test Q 02 - Interrogate fault memory

◀ Read-out on display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

X fault detected!

◄ The number of faults stored appears on the display.

Press → to display the store faults consecutively.

Example:

→
Interference: 00588

◄ Read-out on display:

- → Press key.

Airbag igniter (driver side)	-N95
Resistance too great	

◄ Read-out on display:

- Find the fault displayed in the fault table and rectify the fault ⇒ page 01-12.

No fault detected!	→

◄ If „No fault detected“ the program returns to its initial position after key → is pressed.

Vehicle system test	HELP
Select function XX	

◄ Read-out on display:

If anything else appears in the display:
⇒ Operating instructions V.A.G 1552

- Ending output (function 06) ⇒ page 01-11.

Note:

If a fault was detected:

- *1. Rectify the fault.*
- *2. Erase fault memory (function 05)*
- *3. Interrogate fault memory again (function 02)*

Actuator diagnosis

- Before initialising the final control diagnosis for the airbag system, the complete function of the central locking has to be checked using the corresponding final control diagnosis. Faults in the central locking must be rectifiied.

The „Crash signal“ function can be checked using the final control diagnosis. This function serves as passive safety. When the airbag is inflated, it opens the door locks and the tailgate lock using the central locking. At the same time, the interior lighting is activated, if necessary also the fuel pump is switched off.

- Interrogating and erasing fault memory.
- Closing doors and tailgate.
- Set interior lighting switch to position „door contact“.
- Connect vehicle system tester and select address word 15 „Airbag“ ⇒ page 01-5.

Vehicle system test	HELP
Select function XX	

◄ Read-out on display:

- Enter function 03.

Vehicle system test 03 - Actuator diagnosi Q	◄ Readout on the display: - Acknowledge the entry with the Q key.
Actuator diagnosis → Crash signal	◄ Readout on the display:. ***Note:*** *The door lock and the tailgate lock will be unlocked. The interior lighting will be switched on and the fuel pump will be switched off if necessary.* - Press → key
Actuator diagnosis → END	◄ Readout on the display: - Press → key
Function unknown or cannot be executed → at this time	◄ Readout on the display: - Press → key
Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout on the display: - End output (Function 06) ⇒ Page 01-11.

Note:

Upon completing the actuator diagnosis select the address word 00 „Automatic checking sequence“ and interrogate all fault memories on all control units and then delete (since the faults can be stored during the automatic checking sequence).

Delete the fault memory

- Connect up the Vehicle System Tester V.A.G 1552 and select the address word 15 „Airbag“ ⇒ Page 01-5.

Pre-requisites:

- ♦ The faults will be removed
- ♦ The fault memory was interrogated ⇒ Page 01-8

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout on the display: - Enter Function 05.
Vehicle system test Q 05 - Delete fault memory	◄ Readout on the display: - Acknowledge the entry with the Q key.
Vehicle system test → Fault memory deleted	◄ Readout on the display: - Press → key
Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout on the display:

Note:

Attention! Fault memory was not interrogated	◄ ♦ *If this readout appears in the display, then the test procedure is incorrect.* ♦ *Follow test procedure exactly: first of all interrogate fault memory, and then erase it.*

Ending output

- Select function 06.

Test of vehicle systems Q 06 - End output	◄ Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Readout in display:

- Switch ignition off.
- Separate plug connections to vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552.

Coding airbag control unit

Coding is only possible if a new control unit is used.

- The airbag warning light (K75) comes on and remains on.
- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 15 „Airbag“ ⇒ page 01-5.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:

- Select function 07.

Test of vehicle systems Q 07 - Code control unit	◄ Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

Code control unit Q Enter code number XXXXX (0-32767)	◄ Readout in display:

- Enter code number as shown in table ⇒ page 01-7.
- Confirm entry with the key Q.

Example:

1J0 909 603 A AIRBAG VW3 V02 → Coding 00065 WSC12345	◄ If code was correctly entered, the control unit identification number with the matching letter index and the workshop code are displayed.

- Press → key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:

- Select function 06.

Test of vehicle systems Q 06 - End output	◄ Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

The airbag warning light (K75) must go out after not more than 4 seconds.

If the control unit does not accept the code number entered, the following readout appears in the display:

Fault → Coding XXXXX not accepted	◄ Readout in display:

In this case, the control unit is not programmed with the data required for the vehicle.
It is not possible in this case to code the control unit.
The airbag warning light (K 75) does not go out but remains on.
It is then necessary to check whether the correct control unit matching the vehicle, has been installed (compare part number and letter index), or whether an incorrect code number has been entered.

- Repeat coding.

Fault table

Notes:

- *All the possible faults which can be detected by the control unit -J234- and displayed by the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552, are listed in the table on the basis of the 5-digit fault code.*
- *Ignore SAE code which may also be displayed on the right next to fault number (e.g. 4214).*
- *If →Info in literature→ appears in the display of the vehicle system tester, look for the text required in the fault table by referring to the fault code.*
- *After completing repairs, always once again interrogate the fault memory with the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552, and erase it.*
- *If components are shown as faulty:*
  First of all, test all the cables and plug connections to these components, and also the earth connections according to the current flow diagram. Replace the component only if such tests do not reveal a fault. This applies in particular if the fault has been displayed as sporadic (SP).
- *Pay attention to information regarding diagnosis of airbag system ⇒ page 01-4.*

Readout on V.A.G 1552		Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00000 No fault recognized		If the message „No fault recognized“ appears in the display after completing repairs, self-diagnosis is ended.	
00532 Supply voltage	Signal too large	Fault in voltage supply (must be within range 7.8...21.1 V)	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
			- Test voltage supply
		Voltage regulator or alternator faulty	- Test voltage regulator or alternator ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 27
	Signal too small	Battery discharged or faulty	- Charge battery or replace
		Voltage regulator or alternator faulty	- Test voltage regulator or alternator ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 27
00588 Airbag igniter (driver side) -N95	Short to positive	Fault in wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short to earth		
	Resistance too large	Airbag igniter (driver side) -N95 faulty	- Replace airbag unit driver side
	Resistance too small		- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-15.1
00589 Airbag igniter 1 (pass. side) -N131	Short to positive	Fault in wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short to earth		
	Resistance too large	Airbag igniter (passenger side) -N131 faulty	- Replace airbag unit passenger side
	Resistance too small		- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-15.1
00594 Airbag ignition circuits	Short circuit	Fault in wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
			- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-15.1

Readout on V.A.G 1552		Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00595 Crash data stored		Airbag units and belt tensioners ignited	- Erase fault memory - Replace airbag control unit -J234- - Replace airbag units and all damaged components
01025 Fault light actuation defective		Defective fault warning light Defective wiring or plug connections Airbag control unit -J234- defective	- Replace dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 90 - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Replace airbag control unit -J234-
01044 Control unit incorrectly coded		Missing or incorrect coding of airbag control unit -J234-	- Code control unit ⇒ page 01-11
01217 Igniter side airbag driver side -N199-[1)]	Short to positive	Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short to earth		
	Resistance too large	Side airbag igniter driver side faulty -N199-	- Replace side airbag unit driver side
	Resistance too small		- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-15.6
01218 Igniter side airbag passenger side -N200-[1)]	Short to positive	Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short to earth		
	Resistance too large	Side airbag igniter passenger side faulty -N200-	- Replace side airbag unit passenger side
	Resistance too small		- Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-15.7
01221 Crash sensor side airbag driver side -G179-[1)]	Undefined switch status	Defective wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Implausible signal		- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short to positive		
	Short to earth		
	Defective	Crash sensor side airbag driver side defective -G179-	- Replace crash sensor side airbag driver side -G179-

[1)] Depends on control unit version ⇒ page 01-7, List of control units.

Display on the V.A.G 1552		Possible cause for the fault	Fault removal
01222 Crash sensor side airbag SJ -G180- 1)	Undefined switch condition	Cables or plug connections defect	- Check the cables, plug connectors and fuses according to the electrical circuit diagram ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Finding Faults and Fitting Locations
	Implausible signal		
	Short circuit to the positive		
	Short circuit to earth		
	Defect	Crash sensor side airbag on the front passenger side defect -G180-	- Crash sensor side airbag on the front passenger side defect -G180-
01224 The control unit does not fit to the vehicle		The wrong control unit has been used	- Install a control unit appropriately according to the spare parts catalogue
01226 Crash data for the side airbag on the driver's side stored1)		Driver's side airbag ignited	- Delete the fault memory ⇒ Page 01-10 2) - Replace the airbag on the driver's side and all damaged components - Replace the CU 3)
01227 Crash data for the side airbag on the front passenger's side stored1)		Front passenger's side airbag ignited	- Delete the fault memory ⇒ Page 01-10 2) - Replace the airbag on the front passenger's side and all damaged components - Replace the CU 3)
01228 Key-operated switch turning-off of the front passenger's airbag -E224-	Interruption	Cables or plug connectors defect	- Check the cables, plug connectors and fuses according to the electrical circuit diagram ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Finding Faults and Fitting Locations - Replace the key-operated switch turning-off the front passenger's airbag ⇒ Page 69-13.2
	Short circuit		
	Undefined switch condition		
01280 Airbag on the front passenger's side OFF 1)		Airbag on the front passenger's side deactivated	- Locking and activating airbag units ⇒ Page 01-15.10
01281 Airbag on the driver's side OFF 1)		Airbag on the driver's side deactivated	- Locking and activating airbag units ⇒ Page 01-15.10
01284 Side airbag on the driver's side OFF 1)		Side airbag on the driver's side deactivated	

1) Depending on the version of the control unit ⇒ Overview of the control units, Page 01-7
2) Delete the fault memory (the control unit can be used up to a maximum of three times)
3) The fault memory can no longer be deleted (warning lamp -K75- is blinking continuously)

Display on the V.A.G 1552		Possible cause for the fault	Fault removal
01285 Side airbag on the front passenger's side OFF 1)		Side airbag on the front passenger's side deactivated	- Locking and activating airbag units ⇒ Page 01-15.10
01299 Diagnosis interface for the data-bus -J533-	No communication	Fault in the data-bus cables	- Check data-bus cables ⇒ Electrical System; Rep.Gr. 90
	No setting or a false one		- Interrogate the fault memory gateway ⇒ Electrical System; Rep.Gr. 90
01312 Data-bus drive	Defect	Cables or plug connectors defect Control units using the data-bus defect	- Check the cables, plug connectors and fuses according to the electrical circuit diagram ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Finding Faults and Fitting Locations - Check all control units using the data-bus
01317 Control unit in the dash panel insert -J258-	No communication	Cables or plug connectors defect Dash panel insert defect	- Check the cables, plug connectors and fuses according to the electrical circuit diagram ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Finding Faults and Fitting Locations - Replace dash panel insert ⇒ Electrical System; Rep.Gr. 90
01578 Warning lamp for the airbag off, front passenger - page -K145-	Interruption	Cables or plug connectors defect	- Check the cables, plug connectors and fuses according to the electrical circuit diagram ⇒ Current flow diagrams, Finding Faults and Fitting Locations
	Short-circuit to the positive		
065535 Control unit -J234- defect		Control unit -J234- defect	- Replace the control unit for the airbag by a new original part according to the spare parts catalogue

Reading the measured value block

Note:

Observe the guidelines for the airbag system diagnosis ⇒ Page 01-4.

- Connect up the Vehicle System Tester V.A.G 1552 and select the address word 15 „Airbag“ ⇒ Page 01-5.

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX

◄ Readout on the display:

- Enter Function 08.

Test of vehicle systems Q 08 - Read measured value block	◄ Readout in display: - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Read measured value block HELP Enter display group number XXX	◄ Readout in display: - Enter desired display group number ⇒ page 01-15.2 „Table for reading measured value block“ and confirm entry with the key Q.
Read measured value block 1 1 2 3 4	◄ Readout in display: Arrangement of readout in display in the individual display blocks ⇒ page 01-15.2, Table for reading measured value block. If „correct“ appears in all display blocks. - Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display: ***Note:*** *After completing the function „Reading measured value block“, interrogate fault memory ⇒ page 01-8.*

Table for reading measured value block

Display group number 001

Read measured value block 1 →				⇒ Readout in display		
Text	Text	Text	Text			
1	2	3	4	⇒ Display block	Specification	Analysing
				Belt tensioner igniter passenger side -N154-	correct	⇒ page 01-15.5
				Belt tensioner igniter driver side -N153-	correct	⇒ page 01-15.4
				Front airbag igniter passenger side -N131-	correct	⇒ page 01-15.4
				Front airbag igniter driver side -N95-	correct	⇒ page 01-15.3

Analysis of Indicator Group 001

Indicator field	Designation	Readout on the display	Removing the fault
1	Ignition unit for the front airbag on the driver's side -N95-	Correct	No fault present
		Too small	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the plug connectors of each electrical circuit for correct and firm fitting and check the display again. Delete the fault memory if the display changes to „correct". - Pull out the plug connector on the ignition unit for the airbag. If the readout on the display changes to „too large": - Replace the airbag unit. If the readout on the display remains at „too small": - Pull out the plug connector on the restoring ring with slip ring. If the readout on the display changes to „too large": - Replace the restoring ring with slip ring. If the readout on the display remains „too small": - Check the cables of the cable harness for short-circuiting or interruption or replace the cable harness.
		Too large	- Pull out the plug connector on the ignition unit for the airbag. - Push the plug connector on the ignition unit for the airbag into the plug connector VAS 5056 of the test box ⇒ Page 01-15.8. If the display changes to „correct". - Replace the airbag unit. If the readout on the display remains at „too large": - Pull out the plug connector on the restoring ring with slip ring. - Connect up the adapter cable VAS 5056/2 of the test box VAS 5056 to the cable harness instead of the restoring ring with slip ring ⇒ Page 01-15.8. If the display changes to „correct". - Replace the restoring ring with slip ring. If the readout on the display remains at „too large": - Press the button on the test box VAS 5056. If the readout on the display remains at „too large": - Check the cables of the cable harness for short-circuiting or interruption or replace the cable harness.
		To positive To earth	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the plug connectors of each electrical circuit for correct and firm fitting and check the display again. Delete the fault memory if the display changes to „correct". If the readout on the display does not change: - Check the cables of the cable harness for short-circuiting or interruption or replace the cable harness. - Replace the airbag unit

Indicator field	Designation	Readout on the display	Removing the fault
2	Ignition unit for the front airbag on the front passenger's side -N131-	Correct	No fault present
		Too small	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the plug connectors of each electrical circuit for correct and firm fitting and check the display again. Delete the fault memory if the display changes to „correct". - Pull out the plug connector for the airbag unit on the front seat passenger's side from the cable harness. If the readout on the display changes to „too large": - Replace the airbag unit on the front passenger's side. If the readout on the display remains at „too small": - Check the cables of the cable harness for short-circuiting or interruption or replace the cable harness.
		Too large	- Connect up the adapter cable VAS 5056/1 of the test box VAS 5056 to the cable harness of the ignition circuit for the front seat passenger's side ⇒ Page 01-15.8. - Press the button on the test box VAS 5056. If the display changes to „too small". - Replace the airbag unit on the front passenger's side. If the readout on the display remains at „too large": - Check the cables of the cable harness for short-circuiting or interruption or replace the cable harness.
		To positive To earth	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the plug connectors of each electrical circuit for correct and firm fitting and check the display again. Delete the fault memory if the display changes to „correct". If the readout on the display does not change: - Check the cables of the cable harness for short-circuiting or interruption or replace the cable harness. - Replace the airbag unit
3	Ignition unit for the belt tightener on the driver's side -N153-	Correct	- No fault present
		Too large Too small	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the plug connectors of each electrical circuit for correct and firm fitting and check the display again. Delete the fault memory if the display changes to „correct". If the readout on the display does not change: - Replace the belt tightener on the driver's side - Replace the damaged airbag unit or belt tightener

Display block	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
4	Belt tensioner igniter passenger side -N154-	correct	- No fault.
		too large too small	- Visual inspection of wiring. - Inspect plug connections of the particular circuit for correct and tight connection and once again check display. If readout in display changes to „correct“, erase fault memory. If the readout in the display does not change: - Replace belt tensioner passenger side. - Replace damaged airbag units or belt tensioner.

Display group number 003

Read measured value block 3 →				⇒ Readout in display		
Text	Text	Text	Text			
1	2	3	4	⇒ Display block	Specification	Analysing
				Belt tensioner switch passenger side[1)]	operated not fitted Ignore	not operated
				Belt tensioner switch driver side[1)]	operated not fitted Ignore	not operated
				Seat occupied sensor passenger side[1)]	operated not fitted Ignore	not operated
				Voltage supply	correct	⇒ page 01-15.5

1) Not fitted to OCTAVIA models

Analysis of display group number 003

Display block	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Voltage supply	correct	No fault.
			System voltage must be within range of 9...16 V. - Test system voltage of vehicle. ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Test alternator. ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Test cables of wiring loom for short circuit or open circuit, replace wiring loom if necessary. - Inspect plug connections of wiring loom for correct and tight connection. ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations

Display group number 005

Read measured value block 5 →				⇒ Readout in display		
Text	Text	Text	Text			
1	2	3	4	⇒ Display block	Specification	Analysing
				Rear side airbag igniter passenger side[1)]		Ignore
			Rear side airbag igniter driver side[1)]			Ignore
		Side airbag igniter passenger side -N200-			correct	⇒ page 01-15.7
	Side airbag igniter driver side -N199-				correct	⇒ page 01-15.6

1) Not fitted to OCTAVIA models

Analysis of display group number 005

Display block	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Side airbag igniter driver side -N199-	correct	No fault.
		too small too large not fitted	- Visual inspection of wiring. - Inspect plug connections of the particular circuit for correct and tight connection and once again check display. If readout in display changes to „correct“, erase fault memory. If readout in display does not change: - Replace faulty cable or plug connections. - Replace faulty side airbag unit on driver side.
		to positive to earth	- Visual inspection of wiring. - Inspect plug connections of the particular circuit for correct and tight connection and once again check display. If readout in display changes to „correct“, erase fault memory. If readout in display does not change: - Inspect cables of wiring loom for short circuit or open circuit, replace wiring loom if necessary. - Replace airbag unit.

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
2	Ignition device for side airbag passenger side -N200-	correct	No fault
		too small too large not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed to „correct“, erase fault memory. If the display content does no change - Replace defective wiring or plug connections. - Replace defective side airbag unit front passenger’s side.
		n. Positive n. Earth	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed to „correct“, erase fault memory. If the display content does no change - Check cables of cable harness for short circuit or open circuit, or replace cable harness. - Replace airbag unit.

Display group number 010 (for vehicles MY 03 ➤ with front passenger airbag switch)

Reading measured value block 10 →				⇒ Read-out in display		
Text	Text	Text	Text			
1	2	3	4	⇒ Display field	Nominal value	Analysis
			Switch for the front passenger airbag - switch off the front passenger front airbag		On Off	⇒ page 01-15.8
		Switch for the front passenger airbag - switch off the front passenger side airbag			On Off	⇒ page 01-15.8
	Switch for the front passenger airbag - condition of the switch				On Off	⇒ page 01-15.8

Evaluation of display group number 010

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Deactivate front passenger air-bag switch - front passenger front airbag	on off	No fault
		too small too large not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed to „on“ or „off“, erase fault memory. If the display content does no change: - Replace defective wiring or plug connections. - Replace defective front passenger airbag switch or front passenger side front airbag unit.
2	Deactivate front passenger air-bag switch - front passenger side airbag	on off	No fault
		too small too large not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed to „on“ or „off“, erase fault memory. If the display content does no change: - Replace defective wiring or plug connections. - Replace defective front passenger airbag switch or front passenger side side airbag unit.
3	Deactivate front passenger airbag switch - switch condition	on off	No fault
		too small too large not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed to „on“ or „off“, erase fault memory. If the display content does no change: - Replace defective wiring or plug connections. - Replace defective front passenger airbag switch.

Parts inspection with test box VAS 5056 C

With the test box VAS 5056 C it is possible to test and inspect the individual components of the airbag system and thereby determine which components are indeed defective.

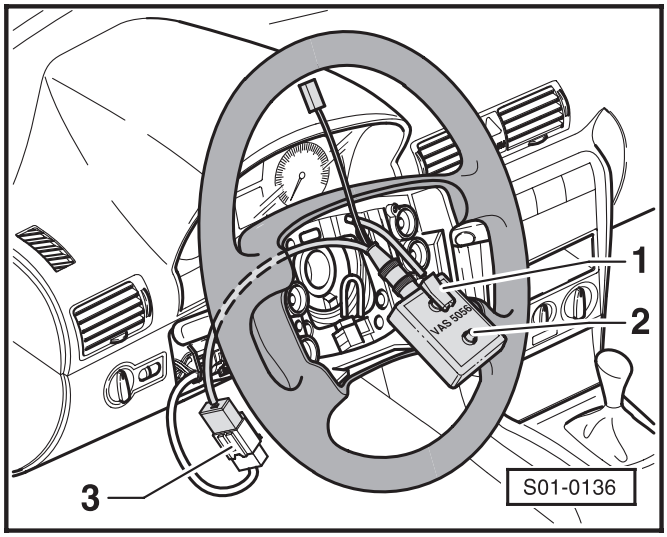
Notes:

- *Observe safety instructions for working with airbag units ⇒ page 01-4 and 69-8.*

- *It is also possible to check the cable harness and plug connections without test box VAS 5056 C in which case you must:*
- *Disconnect the battery:*
  If the battery earth strap is disconnected and connected, carry out additional operational ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.-Gr. 27.
- *Unplug the relevant airbag unit.*
- *Unplug the cable harness of the airbag system from the airbag control unit -J234-.*
- *Check cables for open circuit or short-circuit, and possibly eliminate faults or replace cable harness.*
- *If no fault is found in the cable, replace the relevant airbag unit.*
- *The cause of the display readout „too small„ may be the incorrect function of the „short-circuit bridge„ in the plug connection of the connected airbag unit.*
- *The cause of the display readout „too small„ may be an incorrect plug connection e.g. „contact resistance„ in the plug connection of the connected airbag unit.*

Connecting test box VAS 5056 C to front passenger front airbag

- Removing driver side front airbag ⇒ page 69-11.
- Removing bottom trim for steering column control ⇒ page 70-1.



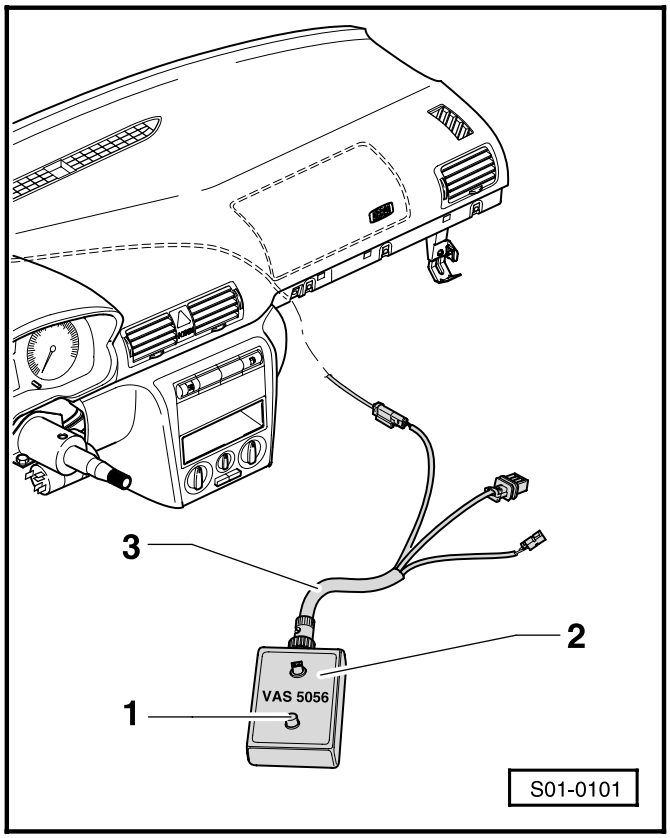
◀ - Connect the ignition plug for the airbag unit -1- to the test box plug VAS 5056 C.

- Disconnect the plug connection from the restoring ring with slip ring.
- Connect plug connection of adapter cable VAS 5056 C to the cable harness of the ignition circuit on the driver's side.

1 - Plug connection of the airbag ignition device on the driver's side in the test box plug VAS 5056 C

2 - Button

3 - Plug connection of the restoring ring with slip ring



Connecting test box VAS 5056 C to front passenger front airbag

- Removing glove compartment ⇒ page 70-1.

- Disconnect plug connection of front passenger airbag unit.

◄ - Connect plug connection of adapter cable VAS 5056 C to the cable harness of the ignition circuit on the driver's side.

1 - Button

2 - Test box VAS 5056 C

3 - Adapter cable VAS 5056 C

Airbag units deactivation and activation (Adaptation)

Airbag control unit 08.00 ➤ allows locking (deactivation) of all vehicle airbag units.
Airbag units deactivation and activation ⇒ page 01-15.10.

Warning!

- ***At the moment, only the front passenger front and side airbags are locked. If there is an incorrect channel input, other areas are blocked and this error can only be determined by the vehicle system tester but not by the warning light in the dash panel insert!***
- ***The deactivation of all other airbag units can only be performed in exceptional cases, after written permission of the PST department (Czech Republic) or the importer.***

Front passenger airbag units deactivation and re-activation (Adaptation)

If it is intended to use a child seat on the front passenger seat in which the child faces with its back to the direction of travel, the front airbag unit must be deactivated.
In certain countries, national legislation requires also deactivation of the side airbags.
In certain countries, national legislation requires also deactivation of front passenger front airbags and If necessary front passenger side airbags for all types of child seat.
The front passenger airbag must be activated again as soon as the child seat is no longer required.

Warning!

- ***Deactivating the airbag must be performed in accordance with the legal requirements and regulations of the country concerned.***
- ***Observe safety precautions when carrying out repairs on the airbag system***

For vehicles without airbag switch

Deactivation is undertaken using the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552, V.A.G 1551 or VAS 5051.
The deactivation and activation of the front passenger airbags must be entered in the registration card, Service Manual and in the vehicle in case of airbag locking a specified adhesive label must be affixed.

For vehicles with airbag switch

For vehicles MY03 ➤, which are fitted with the airbag switch, the switching off and switching on of the front or side airbags on the front passenger side is undertaken using the switch in the glove compartment. The driver operates the switch by using the vehicle key.

Warning!

When switching on and switching off the front or also the side airbags on the front passenger side, the ignition must be switched off.

Switching off the front and the side airbag for the front passenger side is signalised by the warning lamp located in the interior trim of the dash panel.
Switching off of airbags using the switch does not have to be registered or entered into the service book and the adhesive label does not have to be affixed.

Blocking and activating front passenger airbag units (for vehicles without airbag switch)

Blocking is undertaken using the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 in the function 10 „Adaptation“ with channels:

Channel	
01	Blocking front passenger front airbag unit
03	Blocking front passenger side airbag unit

Notes:

For vehicles ➤ 07.00 the blocking of the side airbag is not enabled from the airbag control unit.

- Preconditions for self-diagnosis must be fulfilled ⇒ page 01-3.

- Pay attention to safety measures when repairing airbag system ⇒ page 69-8

Deactivate front passenger airbag

Special tools, testers and aids required:

- Cleaner part no. D 009 401 04

- **For vehicles ➤ 07.00**
  Record for front passenger airbag deactivation, part no. 1U0998521:
  - Resistance plug connection
  - Cable clamp
  - Upholstery hose
  - Information medium
  - Sticker

- **For vehicles 08.00 ➤**
  - Insulating tape
  - Self-adhesive label via the blocking S00.5800.39.xx
    (xx - language number)

- Take out glove compartment ⇒ page 70-1

- Separate plug connection for airbag unit.

Valid for vehicles ➤ 07.00:

- Insert cable harness of resistance plug connection in the plug connection.

- Pull on upholstery hose plug connection and fasten with cable clamp

Valid for vehicles 08.00 ➤:

- Fasten plug for airbag with adhesive tape to the dash panel holder.

Continued for all vehicles:

- Installing glove compartment ⇒ page 70-1.

For the Czech Republic:

- Separate plug connection for side airbag unit below front passenger seat.
- Attach connector for airbag to the seat with adhesive tape.

Continued for all countries:

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 15 „Airbag“ ⇒ page 01-5.

The airbag warning light (K75) comes on.

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◀ Readout on display: - Enter function 10.
Vehicle system test Q 10 - Adaptation	◀ Readout on display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Q Enter channel number XX	◀ Readout on display: - Enter channel number 01. - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 1 Adaptation 0 → Activate FP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Readout on display: - Press key ↑.
Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Deactivate FP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Readout on display: - Press key →.
Channel 1 Adaptation 1 Q Changed value stored?	◀ Readout on display: - Press key Q.
Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Changed value is stored	◀ Readout on display: - Press key →.

For the Czech Republic:

- Select function 10 „Adaptation“ and continue with the channel number 03.

Channel 3 Adaptation 0 → Activate SFP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Readout on display: - Press key ↑.
Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Deactivate SFP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Readout on display:

- Press key →.

Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Changed value stored?	◄ Readout on display:

- Press key Q.

Channel 3 Adaptation 1 → Changed value is stored	◄ Readout on display:

- Press key →.

Continued for all countries:

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout on display:

- Enter function 06.

Vehicle system test Q 06 - End output	◄ Readout on display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

The airbag warning light (K75) comes out.

Vehicle system test HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Readout on display:

- Enter function 02 „Interrogate fault memory“ ⇒ page 01-8.

Check deactivation of the corresponding airbag units: Passenger-side front airbag is switched off see fault No. 01280; Passenger-side side airbag is switched off see fault No. 01285.

- If other faults appear in the display, they should be rectified according to the fault table ⇒ page 01-12.

- Separate vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552.

For vehicles ➤ 07.00:

- Insert orange information medium into the tester connection.

Note:

♦ *Information medium must be inserted until airbag activation*

Continued for all vehicles:

- Switch on ignition.

The airbag warning light (K75) comes on at first for about 4 seconds and then flashes for approx. 12 seconds. This indicates that an ignition circuit is deactivated.

Warning!

- ***For vehicles 08.00 ➤ the control unit for airbag system can switch off one of the airbag units. If a channel other than 01 and 03 is entered, other circuits are switched off and this fault can only be determined using the vehicle system tester, not from the warning light in the dash panel insert!***

- Clean surface for sticker with cleaner D 009 401 04 on airbag cover on front passenger side next to the „Airbag“ inscription.

- Make holes for the adhesive label e.g. using punch pliers and thus mark the deactivated airbag unit and stick the adhesive label on the dash panel insert below the logo „Airbag“ on the front passenger side.

After the front passenger airbags have been deactivated (switched off), it is then necessary to complete the registration card for airbag system/belt tensioners. Keep the original registration card in the workshop, and send the 1st copy to ŠKODA (Czech Republic) Customer Service, or the importer (if purchased in other countries) for registration. Hand the 2nd copy to the customer (attach to the Service Schedule).

The deactivation must also be recorded in the Service Schedule.

Note:

Blocking the airbag must be performed in accordance with the legal requirements and regulations of the country concerned.

Activating front passenger airbag

- Take out glove compartment ⇒ page 70-1

For vehicles ➤ 07.00:

- Take out resistance plug connection from the plug connection of the cable harness.

- Connect all connectors from the cable harness into the airbag unit.

Warning!

- ***For the activation, the resistance plug connection must be absolutely rectified.***

- Remove orange information medium from the tester connection.

For vehicles 08.00 ➤:

- Connect plug connection of airbag unit.

For the Czech Republic:

- Connect plug connection for side airbag unit below front passenger seat.

Continued for all countries:

- Install glove compartment ⇒ page 70-1.
- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 15 „Airbag“ ⇒ page 01-5, enter function 10 and continue with the channel number 01.

The airbag warning light (K75) comes on.

Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Deactivate FP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Readout on display: - Press key ↓.
Channel 1 Adaptation 0 → Activate FP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Readout on display: - Press key →.
Channel 1 Adaptation 1 Q Changed value stored?	◀ Readout on display: - Press key Q.
Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Changed value is stored	◀ Readout on display: - Press key →.

For the Czech Republic:

- Select function 10 „Adaptation“ and continue with the channel number 03.

Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Deactivate SFP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Readout on display: - Press key ↓.
Channel 3 Adaptation 0 → Activate SFP airbag WSC 12345 - ↑ - ↓ -	◀ Read-out on display: - Press key →.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Changed value stored?	◀ Readout on display: - Press key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 → Changed value is stored	◀ Readout on display: - Press key →.

Continued for all countries:

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◀ Readout on display: - Enter function 06.
Vehicle system test Q 06 - End output	◀ Readout on display: - Confirm entry with key Q.

The airbag warning light (K75) comes out.

Vehicle system test HELP Enter address word XX

◄ Readout on display:

- Switch off ignition.
- Switch on ignition.

The airbag warning light (K75) lights up and must go out after about 4 seconds.

If the warning lamp doesn‘t go out

- Enter address word 15 „Airbag“ and continue with the function 02 „Interrogate fault memory“ ⇒ page 01-8.
- If other faults appear in the display, they should be rectified according to the fault table ⇒ page 01-12.

If the warning lamp goes out

- Separate vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552.

Detach adhesive label from airbag cover and destroy.

After the front passenger side airbags have been activated (switched on), it is then necessary to complete the registration card for airbag system/ belt tensioners. Keep the original registration card in the workshop, and send the 1st copy to ŠKODA (Czech Republic) Customer Service, or the importer (if purchased in other countries) for registration. Hand the 2nd copy to the customer (attach to the Service Schedule).

The deactivation must also be recorded in the Service Schedule.

Self-diagnosis of convenience system

System description

The convenience system comprises the electrical equipment in the doors:

- electric central locking with SAFE function
- power windows with obstruction protection
- electrically adjustable and heated exterior mirrors.

It also comprises other systems in the vehicle:

- off delay for interior light
- monitoring and switching off all interior and luggage compartment lights as a protection against discharging battery
- sliding roof closing function as a result of closing command from outside
- radio remote control for anti-theft alarm system and central locking

The vehicles may be equipped with different types of convenient systems. Individual systems differ in terms of:

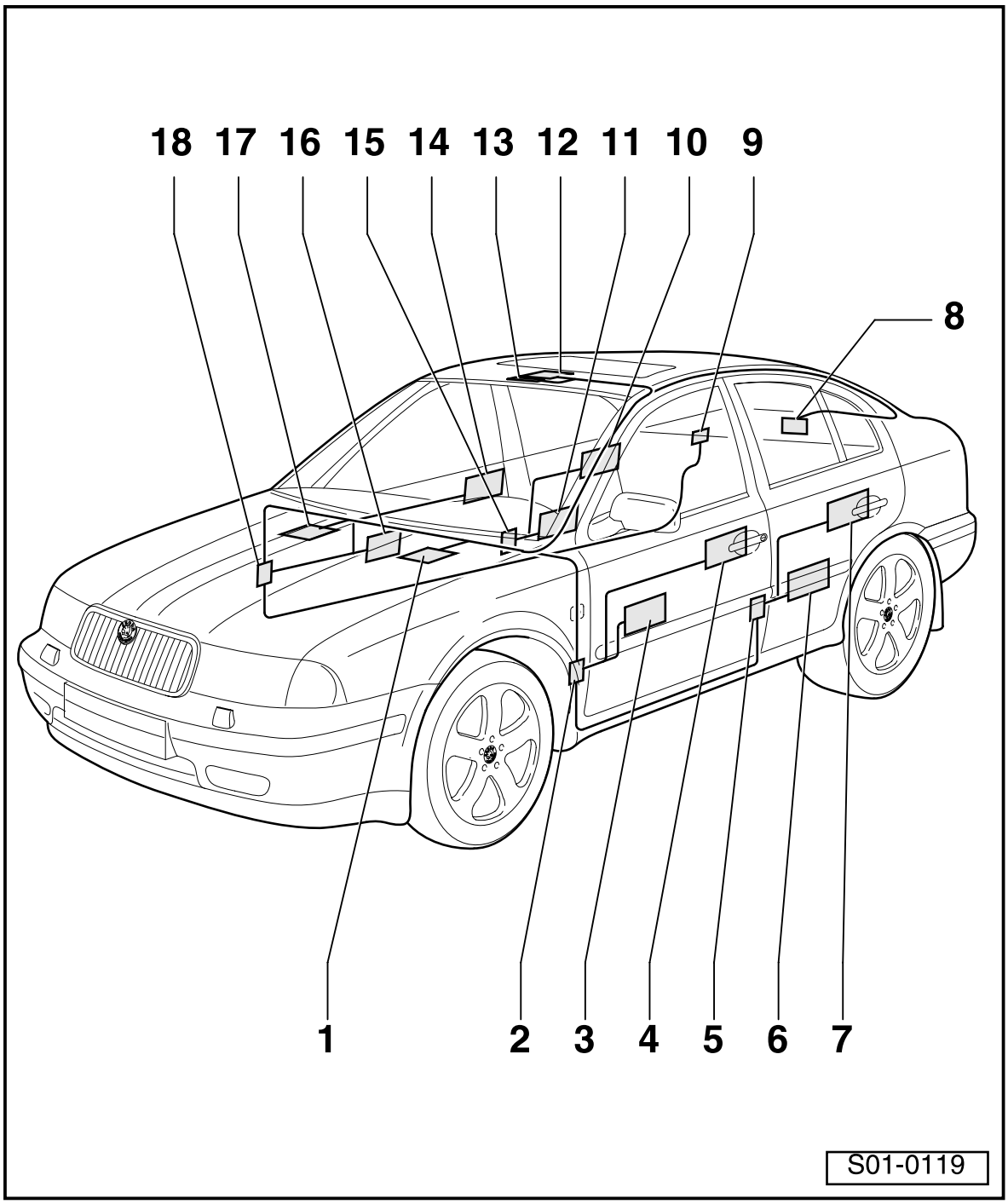
- operation
- parts (control units, pushbuttons, electrical installation etc.)
- internal function of control units
- diagnostics

Removing and installing convenience system control unit ⇒ page 70-3.7.

Warning!

- ***When replacing parts, ensure that the parts are not mixed up ⇒ Parts List.***
- ***Only electric and electronic systems approved by Škoda Auto a.s. may be retrofitted.***

Assembly overview of convenience system components



1 - Central control unit (J393)
- ♦ Located behind bottom part of dash panel on driver side
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 70-3.7

2 - Connector
- ♦ Located in grommet between door and A pillar

3 - Driver door control unit (J386)
- ♦ Attached to power window motor
- ♦ Removing:
- \- Removing power window motor ⇒ page 57-4.1

4 - Door lock
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 57-7

5 - Connector
- ♦ Located in grommet between door and B pillar

6 - Rear left door control unit (J388)
- ♦ Attached to power window motor
- ♦ Removing:
- - Removing power window motor ⇒ page 58-4

7 - Door lock
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 58-8

8 - Lock mechanism for boot lid
- ♦ Located below trim panel of boot lid
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 55-5.1

9 - Fuel filler flap lock
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 55-6

10 - Door lock
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 58-8

11 - Rear right door control unit (J389)
- ♦ Attached to power window motor
- ♦ Removing:
- - Removing power window motor ⇒ page 58-4

12 - Mechanism for sliding roof
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 60-17

13 - Interior light
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 70-13

14 - Door lock
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 57-7

15 - Connector
- ♦ Located in grommet between door and B pillar

16 - Front passenger door control unit (J387)
- ♦ Attached to power window motor
- ♦ Removing:
- - Removing power window motor ⇒ page 57-4.1

17 - Airbag control unit
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 69-16

18 - Connector
- ♦ Located in grommet between door and A pillar

Function

The convenience system central control unit (J393) is located in the area of the dash panel. It is equipped with a fault memory. The self-diagnosis connection is located in the stowage compartment below the steering column.

The control unit detects faults and malfunctions in the convenience system and stores them in a permanent memory.

When commencing fault finding, initiate self-diagnosis and interrogate the stored information with the fault reader V.A.G 1552 or V.A.G 1551.

Notes:

The description which follows relates only to the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 using programme card version 6.0.

Use of the vehicle system tester V.A.S 5051 or V.A.G 1551 with programme card 9.0 is similar with the exception of specific differences (e.g. different readouts in display, use of printer).

Select function 06 „End output“ to end the output.

The fault information displayed is used to refer to a fault table with information regarding the possible causes in order to conduct specific repair measures.

Faults which are attributable to a temporary open circuit in the wiring or to a loose contact, are also stored. Such faults are displayed as sporadic faults „SP“.

Function display

The visual Safe function display is provided by means of an LED in the lock button in the driver door.

Connecting fault reader V.A.G 1552 and selecting convenience system central control unit (J393)

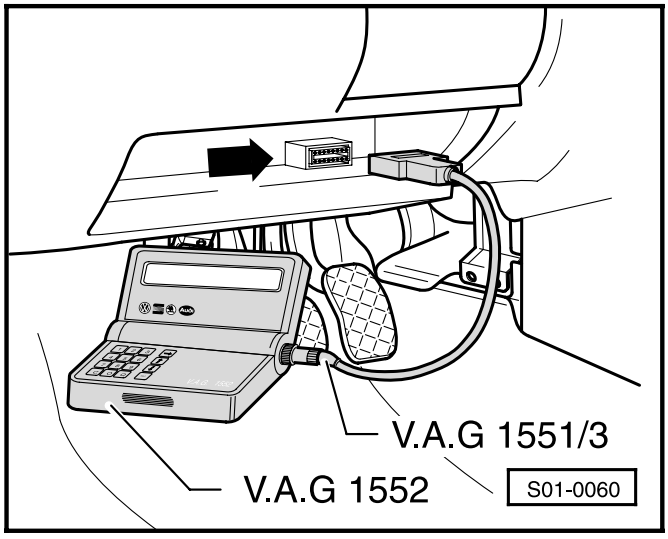
Special tools, testers and aids required

- Vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 with cable V.A.G 1551/3, 3A, 3B or 3C

Test requirements:

- All fuses according to CFD o.k.
- Battery voltage at least 9 V.

◄- Switch ignition off and connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 with the appropriate cable.



- Switch ignition on.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Readout in display:

- Enter address word 46 „Convenience system central module“.

Test of vehicle systems Q 46 - Convenience system central module	◄ Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

Test of vehicle systems Tester sends address word 46	◄ Readout in display:

Notes:

- *If a fault occurs in establishing communication between vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and the control unit, one of the following four readouts appears in the display.*
- *The possible causes of the fault are displayed by pressing the „HELP“ key.*

Test of vehicle systems HELP Control unit does not answer!	
Test of vehicle systems HELP K wire not switching to positive	◄ Ignition must be switched on!
Test of vehicle systems → No signal from control unit	◄ Interference has occurred at the beginning or during the programme (external sources of interference).
Test of vehicle systems → Fault in communication build-up	◄ Check diagnostic connection as well as voltage supply.

- After rectifying the fault of the cause, once again enter address word 46 for the function „Convenience system central module“ and confirm entry with the key Q.

Test of vehicle systems Tester sends address word 46	◄ Readout in display after entering address word „46“.
1J0959799AH Conv. central ECU 0001 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ The control unit identification number appears in the display (example):

Or another ECU is displayed
⇒ page 01-19, Interrogating control unit version.

- Press → key.

1U4959801B 5N Door ECU DS0002r →	◄ Readout in display (example): (door control unit driver side)

1U6 959 793 Door control unit Driver - J386 V42 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ Readout in display: (Driver door control unit)
	- Press → key.
1U1 959 802 Door control unit Pass - J387 V42 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ Readout in display: (Passenger door control unit)
	- Press → key.
1U4 959 811 Door control unit RL - J388 V42 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ Readout in display: (RL door control unit)
	- Press → key.
1U4 959 812 Door control unit RR - J389 V42 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ Readout in display: (RR door control unit)
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)
Test of vehicle systems Tester sends address word 46	◄ Readout in display after entering the address word 46: and the following readout then appears:
1J0 959 799L OW Central CU Conv. 0002 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ What is displayed is the control unit identification number, for example: or another readout ⇒ page 01-19.2, Table 2. - Press → key.
1U4 959 801A OW Door ctrl. unit DS 0022 →	◄ Readout in display: (Driver door control unit, LHD) or:
1U6 959 802A OZ Door ctrl. unit DS 0022 →	◄ Readout in display: (Driver door control unit, RHD) - Press → key.
1U4 959 802A OW Door ctrl. unit PS 0022 →	◄ Readout in display: (Passenger door control unit, LHD) or:
1U6 959 801A OZ Door ctrl. unit PS 0022 →	◄ Readout in display: (Passenger door control unit, RHD)

- Press → key.

1U0 959 811A OW Door ctrl. unit RL 0022 →	◄ Readout in display: (Door control unit RL)

- Press → key.

1U0 959 812A OW Door ctrl. unit RR →	◄ Readout in display: (Door control unit RR)

- Press → key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:

- Press → key.

1U4959802B 5Q Door ECU	FP0002r →

◄ Readout in display (example):
(door control unit front passenger side)

- Press → key.

1U0959811B 5Q Door ECU	RL0002r →

◄ Readout in display (example):
(door control unit rear left)

- Press → key.

1U0959812B 5Q Door ECU	RR0002r →

◄ Readout in display (example):
(door control unit rear right)

- Press → key.

Test of vehicle systems Select function XX	HELP

◄ Readout in display:

List of available functions

	Page
01 - Interrogating control unit version	01-19
02 - Interrogating fault memory	01-20
03 - Final control diagnosis	01-30
05 - Erasing fault memory	01-31
06 - Ending output	01-31
07 - Coding control unit	01-32
08 - Reading measured value block	01-33
10 - Adaptation	01-41

Interrogating control unit version

Various types (generations) of control units for convenience systems are fitted to the vehicles, and these control units differ in terms of fault messages, measured value blocks and adaptation. In order to determine which type (generation) of convenience system is fitted, it is first of all necessary to read the control unit identification number of the part with the vehicle system tester and, on the basis of this, to find this control unit in the list of control units ⇒ page 01-19.2. Here, you can find the start of production date and the generation serial number. This information determines the further procedure which you adopt for repairs.

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word for convenience system ⇒ page 01-17.

Test of vehicle systems Select function XX	HELP

◄ Readout in display:

- Select function 01.

- Confirm the entry with the key Q.

Test of vehicle systems Q 01 - Interrogate control unit version	◄ Readout in display:
1J0959799AH Conv. central ECU 0001 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ The control unit identification number appears in the display of vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 (example): ♦ 1J0 959 799 AH = Part No. of control unit ♦ Conv. central ECU = System designation ♦ 0001 = Programme status number ♦ Coding 04097 = Coding version ♦ WSC = Workshop code - Press → key.
1U4959801B 5N Door ECU DS0002r →	◄ Readout in display (example): (door control unit driver side) - Press → key.
1U4959802B 5Q Door ECU FP0002r →	◄ Readout in display (example): (door control unit front passenger side) - Press → key.
1U0959811B 5Q Door ECU RL0002r →	◄ Readout in display (example): (door control unit rear left) - Press → key.
1U0959812B 5Q Door ECU RR0002r →	◄ Readout in display (example): (door control unit rear right) - Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:

List of convenience system control units according to production date and generation

For models ➤ 09.97
(1st generation convenience system)

Part No. of the central control unit	Program status number	Control unit function
3B0 959 799 S 1)	V42	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function LHD
3B0 959 799 AA 1)	V42	Control unit without receiver for remote control and alarm function RHD
3B0 959 799 R 1)	V42	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function LHD
3B0 959 799 T 1)	V42	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function RHD

Part No. of the door control unit	Marking	Program status number	Control unit function
1U6 959 793 1)	Door control unit Driv. - J386	V42	Driver's door control unit
1U1 959 802 1)	Door control unit Pass. - J387	V42	Passenger door control unit
1U4 959 811 1)	Door control unit RL - J388	V42	Door control unit RL
1U4 959 812 1)	Door control unit RR - J389	V42	Door control unit RR

1) for current control unit versions refer to spare part catalogue.

For models 10.97 ➤
(2nd generation convenience system)

Part No. of the central control unit	Program status number	Control unit function
1J0 959 799L OW 1)	0002	Control unit without receiver for remote control and alarm function Sedan, LHD
1J0 959 799L OZ 1)	0002	Control unit without receiver for remote control and alarm function Sedan, RHD
1J0 959 799M OX 1)	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and without alarm function Sedan, LHD
1J0 959 799M OY 1)	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function Sedan, LHD
1J0 959 799M 10 1)	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and without alarm function Sedan, RHD
1J0 959 799M 11 1)	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function Sedan, RHD
1J0 959 799L 29 1)	0002	Control unit without receiver for remote control and alarm function Estate, LHD/RHD
1J0 959 799M 2A 1)	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and without alarm function Estate, LHD/RHD
1J0 959 799M 2B 1)	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function Estate, LHD/RHD

Part No. of the door control unit	Marking	Program status number	Control unit function
1U4 959 801A OW 1)	Door control unit Driv.	0022	Driver's door control unit LHD
1U6 959 802A OZ 1)	Door control unit Driv.	0022	Driver's door control unit RHD
1U4 959 802A OW 1)	Door control unit Pass.	0022	Passenger door control unit LHD
1U6 959 801A OZ 1)	Door control unit Pass.	0022	Passenger door control unit RHD
1U0 959 811A OW 1)	Door control unit RL	0022	Door control unit RL
1U0 959 812A OW 1)	Door control unit RR	0022	Door control unit RR

1) for current control unit versions refer to spare part catalogue.

Models 08.98 ➤
(convenience system of generation 2.5)

Part No. of central control unit[1)]	Equipment code	Vehicle model and steering	Control unit function
1J0 959 799Q	5S	Sedan LHD/RHD	Control unit without receiver for remote control and without alarm function
	5B	Combi LHD/RHD	
	5G[3)]	Sedan LHD/RHD	
	5M[3)]	Combi LHD/RHD	
1J0 959 799N	5T	Sedan LHD/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and without alarm function
	5C	Combi LHD/RHD	
1J0 959 799AH	5T	Sedan LHD/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and without alarm function
	5C	Combi LHD/RHD	
	5H[3)]	Sedan LHD/RHD	
	5N[3)]	Combi LHD/RHD	
1J0 959 799N	5U	Sedan LHD/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (without interior monitoring)
	5D	Combi LHD/RHD	
1J0 959 799AH	5U	Sedan LHD/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (without interior monitoring)
	5D	Combi LHD/RHD	
	5J[3)]	Sedan LHD/RHD	
	5P[3)]	Combi LHD/RHD	
1J0 959 799N	59	Sedan LHD/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (with interior monitoring)
	5E	Combi LHD/RHD	
1J0 959 799AH	59	Sedan LHD/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (with interior monitoring)
	5E	Combi LHD/RHD	
	5K[3)]	Sedan LHD/RHD	
	5Q[3)]	Combi LHD/RHD	
1J0 959 799AH	5L[2)3)]	Sedan/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (with interior monitoring) and alarm system with own power supply
	5R[2)3)]	Combi/RHD	
1J0 959 799AH	7R[3)]	Sedan/LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (with interior monitoring) and alarm system with own power supply
	7Q[3)]	Combi/LHD	
1J0 959 799N	5A[2)]	Sedan/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (with interior monitoring) and alarm system with own power supply
	5F[2)]	Combi/RHD	
1J0 959 799AH	5A[2)]	Sedan/RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function (with interior monitoring) and alarm system with own power supply
	5F[2)]	Combi/RHD	

1) For current control unit versions ⇒ Parts List.

2) Version for United Kingdom.

3) Version with Webasto tilt roof.

Part No. of door control unit[1)]	Marking	Pro-gramme status number	Control unit function
U4 959 801B 5S	Door control unit DS	0001F	Driver door control unit LHD
1U6 959 802B 5S	Door control unit DS	0001F	Driver door control unit RHD
1U4 959 802B 5S	Door control unit PS	0001r	Front passenger door control unit LHD
1U6 959 801B 5S	Door control unit PS	0001r	Front passenger door control unit RHD
1U0 959 811B 5S	Door control unit RL	0001r	Door control unit RL
1U0 959 812B 5S	Door control unit RR	0001r	Door control unit RR

1) For current control unit version ⇒ Parts List.

Models 05.01 ➤
(convenience system of generation 3)

Part No. of central control unit[1)]	Equip-ment code	Vehicle model and steer-ing	Control unit function
1C0 959 799	3P	Sedan/LHD	Control unit without remote control and alarm function, with power windows, all windows, dash panel insert with CAN databus line
	3Q	Sedan/RHD	
	4F	Combi/LHD	
	4G	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 A	3R	Sedan/LHD	Control unit without remote control and alarm function, with power windows, only at front, dash panel insert with CAN databus line
	3S	Sedan/RHD	
	4H	Combi/LHD	
	4J	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 D	3T	Sedan/LHD	Control unit without remote control and alarm function, with power windows, all windows, dash panel insert without CAN databus line
	3U	Sedan/RHD	
	4K	Combi/LHD	
	4L	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 E	3V	Sedan/LHD	Control unit without remote control and alarm function, with power windows, only at front, dash panel insert without CAN databus line
	3W	Sedan/RHD	
	4M	Combi/LHD	
	4N	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 B	3X	Sedan/LHD	Control unit with remote control, without alarm function, with power windows, all windows, dash panel insert with CAN databus line
	3Y	Sedan/RHD	
	4P	Combi/LHD	
	4Q	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 A	3Z	Sedan/LHD	Control unit with remote control, without alarm function, with power windows, only at front, dash panel insert with CAN databus line
	40	Sedan/RHD	
	4R	Combi/LHD	
	4S	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 F	41	Sedan/LHD	Control unit with remote control, without alarm function, with power windows, only at front, dash panel insert without CAN databus line
	42	Sedan/RHD	
	4T	Combi/LHD	
	4U	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 E	43	Sedan/LHD	Control unit with remote control, without alarm function, with power windows, only at front, dash panel insert with CAN databus line
	44	Sedan/RHD	
	4V	Combi/LHD	
	4W	Combi/RHD	

Continued on next page

1) For current control unit versions ⇒ Parts List.

Part No. of the central control unit[1)]	Equipment code	Vehicle model and steering	Control unit function
1C0 959 799 C	3Y	Limousine/ LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control (315 Mhz); with alarm function, with power-window lifter for all windows, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	3X	Limousine/ LHD	
	4Q	Combi/LHD	
	4P	Combi/LHD	
1C0 959 799 G	42	Limousine/ RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control (315 Mhz); with alarm function, with power-window lifter for all windows, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	4U	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 B	45	Limousine/ LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function, with power-window lifter for all windows, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	46	Limousine/ RHD	
	4X	Combi/LHD	
	4Y	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 A	47	Limousine/ LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function, with power-window lifter only for the front, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	48	Limousine/ RHD	
	4Z	Combi/LHD	
	50	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 F	49	Limousine/ LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function, with power-window lifter for all windows, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	4A	Limousine/ RHD	
	51	Combi/LHD	
	52	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 E	4B	Limousine/ LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function, with power-window lifter only for the front, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	4C	Limousine/ RHD	
	53	Combi/LHD	
	54	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799 C	4D	Limousine/ LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control (315 Mhz) and alarm function, with power-window lifter only for the front, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	55	Combi/LHD	
1C0 959 799G	4E	Limousine/ RHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control (315 Mhz) and alarm function, with power-window lifter only for the front, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	56	Combi/RHD	
1C0 959 799C	45	Limousine/ LHD	Control unit with receiver for remote control (315 Mhz) and alarm function, with power-window lifter for all windows, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	4X	Combi/LHD	

[1)] Current control unit versions see Spare Part Catalogue

Part No. of door control unit[1)]	Marking	Pro-gramme status number	Control unit function
1U4 959 801D	Door control unit DS	0002[2)] 0003[3)]	Driver door control unit LHD
1U6 959 802D	Door control unit DS	0002[2)] 0003[3)]	Driver door control unit RHD
1U4 959 802D	Door control unit PS	0002[2)] 0003[3)]	Front passenger door control unit LHD
1U6 959 801D	Door control unit PS	0002[2)] 0003[3)]	Front passenger door control unit RHD
1U0 959 811D	Door control unit RL	0002[2)] 0003[3)]	Door control unit RL
1U0 959 812D	Door control unit RR	0002[2)] 0003[3)]	Door control unit RR

1) For current control unit version ⇒ Parts List.

2) SIEMENS ECU with integrated relay.

3) TICO ECU with integrated relay.

Interrogating fault memory

- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select central control unit for convenience system ⇒ page 01-17.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys -0- and -2-.

Test of vehicle systems Q 02 - Interrogating fault memory	◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with Q.

X fault detected! →	◄ The display indicates the number of faults stored.

By pressing the → key the stored faults are displayed successively.
Fault table ⇒ page 01-21, 01-29.1 or 01-29.13.

Notes:

If a fault was detected:

- *1. Eliminate fault*
- *2. Erase fault memory (function 05)*
- *3. Perform system function test*
- *4. Interrogate fault memory again (function 02)*

No fault detected! →

If 'no fault detected', after pressing key → the program return to its initial position.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

If anything else is displayed:
⇒ Operating instructions of fault reader

- End output (function 06) ⇒ page 01-31.
- Switch off ignition and disconnect diagnostic plug.

Fault table for models ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Notes:

- *The following lists all possible faults that can be detected by the central control unit for convenience system (J393) and be displayed on V.A.G 1552 per 5 digit fault code.*
- *Before replacing the faulty component first check the cables and plug connections to that component as well as the earth according to the current flow diagram.*
- *Check whether all plug connections are properly plugged into the relay holder.*
- *After repair always interrogate the fault memory again using fault reader V.A.G 1552 and erase the fault memory.*
- *The fault table may also list the fault type.*

Display on V.A.G 1552	Possible fault cause	Fault elimination
00000 no fault detected	If after the repair is completed 'no fault detected' is displayed the self-diagnosis is ended.	
65535 defective control unit	♦ control unit defective ♦ defective wires or plug connections	- replace control unit - check wires and plug housing with current flow diagram
00668 onboard voltage Term. 30 signal too small	♦ battery discharged ♦ defective wires or plug connections	- charge battery - check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram
00849 S contact undefined switch status	♦ terminal 15 OK, S contact defective ♦ defective wires or plug connections	- read measured value block, display group number 10 ⇒ page 01-38 - check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram
00928 CL locking unit driver's side -F220- implausible signal	♦ locking unit defective ♦ defective wires or plug connections ♦ no power supply for CL on drivers' door ♦ mechanical elements in the locking unit and operating parts heavy	- replace locking unit - check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram - check power supply - check mechanical elements and make smooth

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
00929 Locking unit for CL passenger's side -F221- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at passenger's door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating components stiff	- Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release
00930 Locking unit for CL rear left -F222- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating components stiff	- Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release
00931 Locking unit for CL rear right -F223- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating components stiff	- Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release
00932 Electric window motor, driver's side -V147- implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at driver's door ♦ Mechanism of window lifter stiff	- Replace motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release
00933 Electric window motor, passenger's side -V148- implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at passenger's door ♦ Mechanism of window lifter stiff	- Replace motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
00934 Electric window lifter motor, rear left -V26- Implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door ♦ Mechanism of power window sticking	- Replace motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release
00935 Electric window lifter motor, rear right -V27- Implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door ♦ Mechanism of power window sticking	- Replace motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release
00936 Window lifter switch in passenger's door -E107- Implausible signal Short circuit to positive	♦ Switch faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Replace switch - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 005 ⇒ page 01-35
00937 Window lifter switch, rear left -E52- Implausible signal Short circuit to positive	♦ Switch faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Replace switch - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-37
00938 Window lifter switch, rear right -E54- Implausible signal Short circuit to positive	♦ Switch faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Replace switch - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-36

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
00939 Mirror adjustment motor, driver's side -V149-	♦ Motors faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver's door	- Replace adjusting unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00940 Mirror adjustment motor, front passenger's side -V150-	♦ Motors faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at front passenger's door	- Replace adjusting unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00943 Heated exterior mirror, driver's side -Z4-	♦ Mirror heater faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver's door	- Replace mirror lens - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00944 Heated exterior mirror, passenger's side -Z5-	♦ Mirror heater faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at front passenger's door	- Replace mirror lens - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00945 Crash sensor -G190- Short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Output can also be tested with airbag final control diagnosis ⇒ page 01-8
00946 Interior light -W- Short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Interior light or one of the reading lights faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace light

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
00947 Tailgate remote control switch -E188- Short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Switch faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace switch
00948 Signal, close sliding roof Short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00949 Motor for CL tailgate Lock Undefined switch condition	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock control sticking	- Replace positioning element - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Check mechanism of lock control and release
00950 Motor for CL tailgate Unlock Undefined switch condition	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock control sticking	- Replace positioning element - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Check mechanism of lock control and release
00951 Relay for tailgate remote control Short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00952 Signal, driver's door open Short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00953 Time limit interior light Undefined switch condition	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace interior light

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
00954 Relay terminal 50 Short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00955 Key 1 out of interset range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of interset range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-39 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41
00956 Key 2 out of interset range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of interset range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-39 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41
00957 Key 3 out of interset range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of interset range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-39 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41
00958 Key 4 out of interset range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of interset range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-39 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41
00960 Key switch CL driver's side Implausible signal Short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Key switch faulty	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-35 - Replace key switch
00961 Key switch CL passenger's side Implausible signal Short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Key switch faulty	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-36 - Replace key switch

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01131 Turn signal control		
Line interruption or short-circuit to positive	♦ Bulbs defective	- Replace bulb
Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01134 Alarm horn (H12)		
Undefined switch status	♦ Alarm horn defective ♦ Fuse defective ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Replace alarm horn - Replace fuse - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01135 Sensors for interior monitoring		
Line interruption/defective	♦ Sensor -G273 defective ♦ Sensor -G273 not fitted ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Replace sensor - Check installation - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01179 Key programming wrong		- Program the key again ⇒ page 01-41, Adaptation
01328 Check databus	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Control units defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram. If wiring is O.K.: - Disconnect all door disconnector sockets and reconnect consecutively. At the same time pay attention to the measured value block. - Replace the data bus for the convenience functions „blocking CU“ - Reading measured value block, display group 012 ⇒ page 01-39
01329 Convenience databus in single-filament operation	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram. If wiring is O.K.: - Disconnect all door disconnector sockets and reconnect consecutively. At the same time pay attention to the measured value block. - Replace the data bus for the convenience functions „blocking CU“ - Reading measured value block, display group 012 ⇒ page 01-39

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01330 Convenience system control unit		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between ECU	- Test cable between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
01331 Door control unit driver side -J386		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between ECU	- Test cable between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
01332 Door control unit passenger side -J387		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between ECU	- Test cable between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
01333 Door control unit rear left -J388		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between ECU	- Test cable between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
01334 Door control unit rear right -J389		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between ECU	- Test cable between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations

For models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system of 1st generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01362 Close switch for tailgate -F124		
Short circuit to earth	♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Inspect mechanism of lock and release. - Replace lock cylinder. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Read measured value block, display group number 010 ⇒ page 01-38.
01389 Open switch for tailgate		
Short circuit to earth	♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Inspect mechanism of lock and release. - Replace lock cylinder. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Read measured value block, display group number 010 ⇒ page 01-38.

Fault table for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display on V.A.G 1552	Possible fault cause	Fault elimination
00000 no fault detected	If after the repair is completed 'no fault detected' is displayed the self-diagnosis is ended.	
66535 control unit defective	♦ control unit defective ♦ defective wires or plug connections	- replace control unit - check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram
00849 S contact on ignition starter switch D undefined switch status	♦ terminal 15 OK, S contact defective ♦ defective wires or plug connections	- read measured value block, display group number 10 ⇒ page 01-40.5 - check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram
00912 switch for window lifter FL -E40 implausible signal short-circuit to earth	♦ defective wires or plug connections ♦ defective window lifter switch passeng. side -E40 ♦ tip switch fitting NOK, jams when operated	- check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram - replace switch - check switch - read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.1
00913 switch for window lifter FR, driver -E81 implausible signal short-circuit to earth	♦ defective wires or plug connections ♦ defective window lifter switch RL -E81 ♦ tip switch fitting NOK, jams when operated	- check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram - replace switch - check switch - read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.1
00914 switch for window lifter RL, driver -E53 implausible signal short-circuit to earth	♦ defective wires or plug connections ♦ defective window lifter switch RL side -E53 ♦ tip switch fitting NOK, jams when operated	- check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram - replace switch - check switch - read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.1
00915 switch for window lifter RR, -E55 implausible signal short-circuit to earth	♦ defective wires or plug connections ♦ defective window lifter switch RR -E55 ♦ tip switch fitting NOK, jams when operated	- check wires and plug connections with current flow diagram - replace switch - check switch - read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.1

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00928		
Locking unit for CL driver's side -F220		- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.2.
implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty	- Replace locking unit.
	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
	♦ No supply voltage for CL at driver's door	- Test supply voltage.
	♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff	- Inspect mechanism and release.
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect locking unit fitted 1)	- Replace locking unit.
00929		
Locking unit for CL pass. side -F221-		- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.3, display zone 1.
implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty	- Replace locking unit.
	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
	♦ No supply voltage for CL at passenger's door	- Test supply voltage.
	♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff	- Inspect mechanism and release.
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect locking unit fitted 1)	- Replace locking unit.
00930		
Locking unit for CL rear left -F222-		- Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-40.4.
implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty	- Replace locking unit.
	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
	♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door	- Test supply voltage.
	♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff	- Inspect mechanism and release.
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect locking unit fitted 1)	- Replace locking unit.
00931		
Locking unit for CL rear right -F223-		- Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-40.4.
implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty	- Replace locking unit.
	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
	♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door	- Test supply voltage.
	♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff	- Inspect mechanism and release.
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect locking unit fitted 1)	- Replace locking unit.

1) Different Safe function for countries with special regulations.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00932 Electr. window motor, driver's side -V147- implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at driver's door	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage.
no or incorrect setting	♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff [1] ♦ No initialisation for automatic closing/opening	- Inspect mechanism and release [1]. - Carry out initialisation for automatic closing/opening ⇒ Workshop Manual, Body Fitting Work, Exterior; Repair Group 57.
00933 Electr. window motor, pass. side -V148- implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at passenger's door	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage.
no or incorrect setting	♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff [1] ♦ No initialisation for automatic closing/opening	- Inspect mechanism and release [1]. - Carry out initialisation for automatic closing/opening ⇒ Workshop Manual, Body Fitting Work, Exterior; Repair Group 57.
00934 Electr. window motor rl -V26- implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage.
no or incorrect setting	♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff [1] ♦ No initialisation for automatic closing/opening	- Inspect mechanism and release [1]. - Carry out initialisation for automatic closing/opening ⇒ Workshop Manual, Body Fitting Work, Exterior; Repair Group 58.

[1] The door window may also be stiff in the window guide.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00935 Electr. window motor rr -V27- implausible signal no or incorrect setting	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating part stiff [1] ♦ No initialisation for automatic closing/opening	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage. - Inspect mechanism and release [1]. - Carry out initialisation for automatic closing/opening ⇒ Workshop Manual, Body Fitting Work, Exterior; Repair Group 58.
00936 Window lifter switch, pass. side -E107- implausible signal [2] short circuit to positive	♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Installation of pushbutton not o.k., jams when operated	- Replace pushbutton. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Inspect pushbutton. - Read measured value block, display group number 005 ⇒ page 01-40.3.
00937 Window lifter switch, rl -E52- implausible signal [2] short circuit to positive	♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Installation of pushbutton not o.k., jams when operated	- Replace pushbutton. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Inspect pushbutton. - Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-40.4.
00938 Window lifter switch, rr -E54- implausible signal [2] short circuit to positive	♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Installation of pushbutton not o.k., jams when operated	- Replace pushbutton. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Inspect pushbutton. - Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-40.4.
00939 Mirror adjust. motor, driver's side -V149-	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver's door	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage.

[1] The door window may also be stiff in the window guide.

[2] Fault is set if pushbutton of switch is pressed for more than 5 minutes in one direction, or if both signals (open, closed) receive simultaneously.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00940 Mirror adjust. motor, pass. side -V150-	♦ Motors faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver's door	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage.
00943 Heated ext. mirror, driver's side -Z4-	♦ Mirror heater faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver's door	- Replace mirror lens. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage.
00944 Heated ext. mirror, pass. side -Z5-	♦ Mirror heater faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at passenger's door	- Replace mirror lens. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage.
00945 Crash sensor -G190- short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Output can also be tested by final control diagnosis for airbag ⇒ page 01-8.
00946 Interior light -W- short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Interior light or one of the reading lights faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Replace lamp.
00948 Signal close sliding roof short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
00949 Central locking motor, tailgate -V53-, lock implausible signal	♦ Motors faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock stiff	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Inspect mechanism of lock and release.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00950 Central locking motor, tailgate unlock implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock stiff	- Replace motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Inspect mechanism of lock and release.
00952 Signal driver's door open short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
00953 Time limit interior light undefined switch state implausible signal	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Interior light or one of the reading lights faulty ♦ Faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Replace interior light.
00954 Relay terminal 50 short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
00955 Key 1 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key has been operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.7. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41.
00956 Key 2 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key has been operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.7. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41.
00957 Key 3 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key has been operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.7. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00958 Key 4 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.7. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-41.
01030 Key button CL driver's side, lock short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.2. - Replace pushbutton. - Check installation of lock cylinder.
01031 Key button CL driver's side, unlock implausible signal short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.2. - Replace pushbutton. - Check installation of lock cylinder.
01032 Key button CL pass. side, lock short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.3, display zone 1. - Replace pushbutton. - Check installation of lock cylinder.
01033 Key button CL pass. side, unlock implausible signal short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.3, display zone 1. - Replace pushbutton. - Check installation of lock cylinder.
01034 Driver window therm. protect. active 	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming, or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.2, display zone 2. - Inspect mechanism. - Inspect window lifter motor.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01035 Pass. window therm. protect. active	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.3, display zone 2. - Inspect mechanism. - Inspect window lifter motor.
01036 Rear left window therm. protection active	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-40.4, display zone 2. - Inspect mechanism. - Inspect window lifter motor.
01037 Rear right window therm. protection active	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-40.4, display zone 2. - Inspect mechanism. - Inspect window lifter motor.
01038 Central locking thermal protection	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Door lock stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 014 ⇒ page 01-40.7, display zone 4. - Inspect door lock.
01044 Control unit incorrectly coded	♦ Control unit fitted does not match vehicle equipment ♦ Control unit is not or not completely coded	- Replace control unit. - Inspect control unit coding.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01131 Turn signal actuation		
open circuit/short circuit to positive	♦ Turn signal light is faulty	- Replace turn signal light
	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
short circuit to earth		
01134 Alarm horn -H12		
undefined switch status	♦ Alarm horn -H12 faulty ♦ Fuse faulty	- Replace alarm horn -H12.
	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Replace fuse. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
01135 Interior monitoring sensors		
open circuit	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Replace interior motion sensors.
	♦ Interior motion sensors faulty	- Inspect installation.
faulty	♦ Interior motion sensors not fitted	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
01141 TG/BL release switch -E165		
short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
	♦ Tailgate release switch -E165 faulty	- Replace tailgate release switch -E165.
01179		
Incorrect key programming	♦ Key adaptation (function 10) not correctly carried out	- Reprogram keys ⇒ page 01-41, Adaptation. - Read measured value block, display group number 014 ⇒ page 01-40.7, display zone 1.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01328 Databus convenience	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Control units faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. If wiring o.k., then: - Unplug all door connectors and plug in again one after the other. Check measured value block when doing this. - Replace relevant control unit which has blocked databus. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.6. - Replace corresponding control unit.
01329 Databus conven. in emerg. mode	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. If wiring o.k., then: - Unplug all door connectors and plug in again one after the other. Check measured value block when doing this. - Replace relevant control unit which has blocked databus. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.6, display zone 1.
01330 Central CU for convenience faulty no communication voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Control unit faulty ♦ Ignore ♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Replace control unit. - System is o.k. despite fault stored. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram. - Test voltage supply.
01331 Door control unit driver's side -J386- faulty no communication voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Control unit faulty ♦ Ignore ♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Replace control unit. - System is o.k. despite fault stored. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.6, display zone 2. - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram. - Test voltage supply.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01332 Door control unit passenger side -J387-		
faulty	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit.
no communication	♦ Ignore	- System is o.k. despite fault stored. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.6, display zone 2.
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram. - Test voltage supply.
01333 Door control unit RL -J388-		
faulty	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit.
no communication	♦ Ignore	- System is o.k. despite fault stored. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.6, display zone 3.
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram. - Test voltage supply.
01334 Door control unit RR -J389-		
faulty	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit.
no communication	♦ Ignore	- System is o.k. despite fault stored. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.6, display zone 3.
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram. - Test voltage supply.
01358 Internal CL switch, driver's side -E150		
implausible signal short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram. - Read measured value block, display group number 005 ⇒ page 01-40.3, display zone 2.

For models 10.97 ➤ (convenience system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01362 Close switch for tailgate -F124 short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Inspect mechanism of lock and release. - Replace lock cylinder. - Read measured value block, display group number 010 ⇒ page 01-40.5, display zone 3.
01389 Open switch for tailgate -F124 implausible signal short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Inspect mechanism of lock and release. - Replace lock cylinder. - Read measured value block, display group number 010 ⇒ page 01-40.5, display zone 3.

Fault table for models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
65535 136[1)] No fault recognized	If „No fault recognized“ appears after completing the repairs, self-diagnosis is ended.	
65535 000[1)] Control unit defective	♦ Control unit defective ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Replace control unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00849 S contact at ignition/starter switch -D undefined switch status	♦ Terminal 15 o.k., S contact faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Read measured value block, display group number 010 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 1 or 006 ⇒ page 01-40.13, display field 3 - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00912 FL power window switch -E40 implausible signal short to earth	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ FL power window switch driver-side faulty ♦ Driver-side power window switch loose	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace power window switch - Inspect attachment of switch - Read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 001 ⇒ page 01-40.11, display field 1
00913 FR power window switch -E81 implausible signal short to earth	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ FR power window switch passenger-side faulty ♦ Passenger-side power window switch loose	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace power window switch - Inspect attachment of switch - Read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or ⇒ page 01-40.11, display field 2
00914 RL power window switch, driver -E53 implausible signal short to earth	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ RL power window switch faulty ♦ RL power window switch loose	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace power window switch - Inspect attachment of switch - Read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 4 or ⇒ page 01-40.11, display field 3

[1)] Code number for type of fault.

Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00915		
RR power window switch -E55 implausible signal short to earth	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ Rear right power window switch faulty ♦ Rear right power window switch loose	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace power window switch - Check attachment of switch - Read measured value block; display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 3 or ⇒ page 01-40.11, display field 2
00928		
Driver-side CL locking unit -F220 implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at driver door ♦ Mechanism in lock unit and operating elements stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 009 ⇒ page 01-40.15, display field 1 - Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Check mechanism and release
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect lock unit installed[1)]	- Replace locking unit
00929		
Passenger-side CL locking unit -F221 implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at passenger door ♦ Mechanism in lock unit and operating elements stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 009 ⇒ page 01-40.15, display field 1 - Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Check mechanism and release
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect lock unit installed[1)]	- Replace locking unit
00930		
RL CL locking unit -F222 implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door ♦ Mechanism in lock unit and operating elements stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or ⇒ page 01-40.15, display field 3 - Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Check mechanism and release
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect lock unit installed[1)]	- Replace locking unit

[1)] Different Safe function for countries with special regulations.

Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00931		
RR CL locking unit -F223 implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door ♦ Mechanism in lock unit and operating elements stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 009 ⇒ page 01-40.15, display field 4 - Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Check mechanism and release
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect lock unit installed[1)]	- Replace locking unit
00932		
Driver-side power window motor -V147 implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at driver door ♦ Power window mechanism stiff[2)]	- Replace motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Check mechanism and release[2)]
no or incorrect setting	♦ Power window mechanism stiff, missing or incorrectly set	- Perform initialising for automatic closing/opening ⇒ page 57-4.1
00933		
Passenger-side power window motor -V148 implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at passenger door ♦ Power window mechanism stiff[2)]	- Replace motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Check mechanism and release[2)]
no or incorrect setting	♦ Power window mechanism stiff, missing or incorrectly set	- Perform initialising for automatic closing/opening ⇒ page 57-4.1

1) Different Safe function for countries with special regulations.

2) The problem may also be that the door window does not move freely in the window guide.

**Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5),
05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)**

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00934 RL power window motor -V26 implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty	- Replace motor
	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
	♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door	- Test supply voltage
	♦ Power window mechanism stiff[1)]	- Check mechanism and release[1)]
no or incorrect setting	♦ Power window mechanism stiff, missing or incorrectly set	- Perform initialising for automatic closing/opening ⇒ page 57-4.1
00935 RR power window motor -V27 implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty	- Replace motor
	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
	♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door	- Test supply voltage
	♦ Power window mechanism stiff[1)]	- Check mechanism and release[1)]
no or incorrect setting	♦ Power window mechanism stiff, missing or incorrectly set	- Perform initialising for automatic closing/opening ⇒ page 57-4.1
00936 Pass.-side power window switch -E107 implausible signal[2)] short to positive	♦ Switch faulty	- Replace passenger-side power window switch
	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
	♦ Switch loose	- Inspect attachment of switch - Read measured value block, display group number 005 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 004 ⇒ page 01-40.12, display field 1
00937 RL power window switch -E52 implausible signal[2)] short to positive	♦ Switch faulty	- Replace power window switch
	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
	♦ Switch loose	- Inspect attachment of switch - Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 005 ⇒ page 01-40.13, display field 1

1) The problem may also be that the door window does not move freely in the window guide.

2) Fault is set if switch is pressed in one direction for more than 5 minutes, or if both signals (open, closed) are transmitted simultaneously.

Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00938 RR power window switch -E54 implausible signal[1)] short to positive	♦ Switch faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ Switch loose	- Replace power window switch - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Inspect attachment of switch - Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 005 ⇒ page 01-40.13, display field 3
00939 Driver-side mirror adj. motors -V149	♦ Motors faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver door	- Replace mirror adjustment motors - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00940 Pass.-side mirror adj. motors -V150	♦ Motors faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver door	- Replace mirror adjustment motors - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00941 Driver-side folding mirror motor -V121	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver door	- Replace folding mirror motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00942 Pass.-side folding mirror motor -V122	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver door	- Replace folding mirror motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00943 Driver-side heated exterior mirror -Z4	♦ Mirror heater faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at driver door	- Replace exterior mirror - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage

1) Fault is set if switch is pressed in one direction for more than 5 minutes, or if both signals (open, closed) are transmitted simultaneously.

**Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5),
05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)**

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00944 Pass.-side heated exterior mirror -Z5	♦ Mirror heater faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage at passenger door	- Replace exterior mirror - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage
00945 Front airbag crash sensor -G190 short to earth	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Output can only be tested with final control diagnosis for airbag ⇒ page 01-40.9
00946 Interior light -W short to positive	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ Interior light or one of the reading lights faulty ♦ Convenience system control unit faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace light - Replace convenience system control unit ⇒ page 70-3.7
00947 Tailgate/boot lid remote release switch -E188 short to earth	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00948 Close sliding roof signal short to positive	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00949 Tailgate/boot lid CL motor -V53, LOCK implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ Lock mechanism stiff	- Replace tailgate/boot lid CL motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Check lock mechanism and release

**Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5),
05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)**

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00950 Tailgate/boot lid CL motor -V53, UNLOCK implausible signal	♦ Motor faulty ♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ Lock mechanism stiff	- Replace tailgate/boot lid CL motor - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Check lock mechanism and release
00951 Tailgate/boot lid rem. rel. motor relay -J398 short to positive	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00952 Driver door open signal short to positive	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00953 Interior light time limit implausible signal	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections ♦ Poor connection at interior light or reading lights ♦ Defective	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace interior light
00954 Starter lockout relay -J433 short to positive	♦ Fault in cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00955 Key 1 adaption limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times outside of reception range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 011 ⇒ page 01-40.16 - Perform adaption ⇒ page 01-44.4
00956 Key 2 adaption limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times outside of reception range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 011 ⇒ page 01-40.16 - Perform adaption ⇒ page 01-44.4

**Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5),
05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)**

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00957 Key 3 adaption limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times outside of reception range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 011 ⇒ page 01-40.16 - Perform adaption ⇒ page 01-44.4
00958 Key 4 adaption limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times outside of reception range	- Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 011 ⇒ page 01-40.16 - Perform adaption ⇒ page 01-44.4
01030 Driver-s. CL key-op. switch, lock short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Switch faulty ♦ Lock cylinder loose	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 007 ⇒ page 01-40.14 - Replace switch - Inspect lock cylinder
01031 Driver-s. CL key-op. switch, unlock implausible signal short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Switch faulty ♦ Lock cylinder loose	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 007 ⇒ page 01-40.14 - Replace switch - Inspect lock cylinder
01032 Pass.-s. CL key-op. switch, lock short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Switch faulty ♦ Lock cylinder loose	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 007 ⇒ page 01-40.14 - Replace switch - Inspect lock cylinder
01033 Pass.-s. CL key-op. switch, unlock implausible signal short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Switch faulty ♦ Lock cylinder loose	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 007 ⇒ page 01-40.14 - Replace switch - Inspect lock cylinder

Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01034 Power window thermoprot. active, driver	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming, or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 2 or 001 ⇒ page 01-40.11, display field 2 - Inspect mechanism - Inspect power window motor
01035 Power window thermoprot. active, passenger	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming, or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 2 or 004 ⇒ page 01-40.12, display field 2 - Inspect mechanism - Inspect power window motor
01036 Power window thermoprot. active, RL	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming, or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 2 or 005 ⇒ page 01-40.13, display field 2 - Inspect mechanism - Inspect power window motor
01037 Power window thermoprot. active, RR	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Window lifter jamming, or stiff ♦ Window lifter motor stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 2 or 005 ⇒ page 01-40.13, display field 4 - Inspect mechanism - Inspect power window motor

**Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5),
05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)**

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01038 Central locking thermoprotection	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Door lock stiff	- Read measured value block, display group number 014 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 008 ⇒ page 01-40.14, display field 4 - Inspect door locks
01044 Control unit incorrectly coded	♦ Control unit fitted does not match vehicle equipment ♦ Control unit incorrectly coded	- Replace control unit - Check coding of control unit
01131 Actuation of turn signal lights	♦ Bulbs faulty ♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Replace bulb - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
01134 Alarm horn -H12 undefined switch status defective no communication internal voltage supply	♦ Alarm horn faulty ♦ Fuse faulty ♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Alarm system with own power supply faulty	- Replace alarm horn - Replace fuse - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test alarm system with own power supply, replace if necessary
01135 Interior monitor sensors open circuit defective	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Sensor faulty ♦ Sensors not fitted	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace sensor - Inspect installation

Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01141 Tailgate/boot lid release switch -E165 short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Tailgate/boot lid release switch -E165 faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace tailgate/boot lid release switch -E165
01179 Key programming incorrect	♦ Key adaption not correctly performed	- Reprogramme keys ⇒ page 01-44.4, Adaption - Read measured value block, display group number 013 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 014 ⇒ page 01-40.17
01312 Drive databus	♦ Drive databus faulty ♦ Short to positive ♦ Short to earth	- Test drive databus ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 90
01328 Convenience databus	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Control units faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram If wiring o.k., then: - Unplug all door connectors and plug in again one after the other while observing measured value block. - Replace appropriate control unit which has blocked the databus. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.9 - Replace appropriate control unit
01329 Convenience databus in em. mode	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram If wiring o.k., then: - Unplug all door connectors and plug in again one after the other while observing measured value block. - Replace appropriate control unit which has blocked the databus. - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 1

**Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5),
05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)**

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01330 Convenience system central control unit -J393		
defective no communication	♦ Control unit faulty ♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Replace control unit - Test datalines according to current flow diagram, replace control unit if necessary ♦ If communication line between components or control unit o.k.:
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small		- Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Test voltage supply
01331 Driver-side door control unit -J386		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between control units or control unit faulty	- Test datalines according to current flow diagram, replace control unit if necessary ♦ If communication line between components or control unit o.k.: - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 2 or 012 ⇒ page 01-40.16, display field 1 - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Test voltage supply
01332 Passenger-side door control unit -J387		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between control units or control unit faulty	- Test datalines according to current flow diagram, replace control unit if necessary ♦ If communication line between components or control unit o.k.: - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 2 or 012 ⇒ page 01-40.16, display field 1 - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Test voltage supply

Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01333 Door control unit RL -J388		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between control units or control unit faulty	- Test datalines according to current flow diagram, replace control unit if necessary ♦ If communication line between components or control unit o.k.: - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 012 ⇒ page 01-40.16, display field 3 - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Test voltage supply
01334 Door control unit RR -J389		
defective	♦ Control unit faulty	- Replace control unit
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between control units or control unit faulty	- Test datalines according to current flow diagram, replace control unit if necessary ♦ If communication line between components or control unit o.k.: - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check
voltage supply too large voltage supply too small	♦ Voltage supply not o.k.	- Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 3 or 012 ⇒ page 01-40.16 - Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Test voltage supply
01335 Driver-side seat/mirror pos. control unit		
no communication	♦ Fault in communication line between control units or control unit faulty ♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Test seat/mirror position control unit, replace if necessary ♦ If communication line between components or control unit o.k.: - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Test datalines according to current flow diagram

Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5), 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01336 Convenience databus open circuit/short to earth	♦ Open circuit or short circuit	- Test convenience databus ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 60
01340 Mirror adjustment switch implausible signal	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-40.12, display field 1
01358 Driver-s. interior locking switch -E150 implausible signal short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 005 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 2 or 007 ⇒ page 01-40.14, display field 3
01359 Pass.-s. interior locking switch -E198 implausible signal short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 007 ⇒ page 01-40.9, display field 4
01362 Close tailgate/boot lid switch -F124 short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Inspect lock mechanism and release - Replace lock cylinder - Read measured value block, display group number 010 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 008 ⇒ page 01-40.14, display field 3

**Models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5),
05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)**

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01389 Open tailgate/boot lid switch -F124 implausible signal short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Inspect lock mechanism and release - Replace lock cylinder - Read measured value block, display group number 010 ⇒ page 01-40.9 or 008 ⇒ page 01-40.14, display field 3
01483 Actuation of trunk lid/boot lid remote release implausible signal	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
01484 CL lock key-op. switch short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
01485 CL unlock key-op. switch short to earth	♦ Faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram

Final control diagnosis

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word for convenience system ⇒ page 01-17.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display: - Select function 03.
Test of vehicle systems Q 03 - Final control diagnosis	◄ Readout in display: - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Final control diagnosis → Alarm horn - H12	◄ Readout in display: (only if control unit fitted with alarm function ⇒ page 01-19, Interrogating control unit version) Alarm horn sounds.
Final control diagnosis → Actuation turn signal lights	◄ Readout in display: (only if control unit fitted with alarm function ⇒ page 01-19, Interrogating control unit version) Turn signal lights come on.
Final control diagnosis → Interior light - W	◄ Readout in display: Interior light comes on (in position for door contact). - Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → Close sliding roof signal	◄ Readout in display: Sliding roof closes. - Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → CL Safe warning light	◄ Readout in display: Warning light in door trim panel comes on. - Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → Lighting / Switches and instruments	◄ Readout in display: Lighting for switches in door trim panel comes on. - Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → END	◄ Readout in display: - Press → key.
Function not known or cannot → be carried out at the moment	◄ If this readout appears in the display: - Press → key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- End output ⇒ page 01-31.

Erasing fault memory

Requirements:

- ♦ Faults have been rectified.
- ♦ Fault memory has once again been interrogated.
- ♦ Operational check has been carried out.
- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select convenience system central control unit ⇒ page 01-17.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press keys -0- and -5-.
Test of vehicle systems Q 05 Erase fault memory	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Test of vehicle systems → Fault memory is erased!	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:

Notes:

Attention! Fault memory has not been interrogated	◄ ♦ *If this readout appears in the display, the test procedure has not been correctly carried out.*
	♦ *Follow test procedure exactly: first of all interrogate fault memory, then erase it.*

Ending output

- Press keys -0- and -6-.

Test of vehicle systems Q 06 End output	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Switch off ignition.
	- Separate plug connections to the fault reader V.A.G 1552.

Coding control unit

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select the address word for the convenience system ⇒ page 01-17.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:

- Select function 07.

Test of vehicle systems Q 07 - Code control unit	◄ Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

Code control unit Q Enter code number XXXXX (0-32767)	◄ Readout in display:

- Enter code number by referring to the table.

Table of codes for convenience system of generation 1, 2 and 2.5

		Code number
Central locking	Opening single door	04096
	Opening all	04097
	Opening single door[1)]	01024
	Opening all[1)]	01025

1) Valid for Switzerland

Table of codes for convenience system of generation 3

	Code number
Base code (all vehicle equipment) Octavia	00002
Central locking without power windows	00016
Central locking with power windows (2 windows)	00064
Central locking with power windows (4 windows)	00256
Opening single door	00000
Opening all	00001

In order to define the code of the convenience system, it is necessary to add additional codes to the base code depending on the vehicle equipment.

Example

To select: central locking, power windows (2 windows) and opening all

00002 + 00064 + 00001 = 00067

Continued for all models

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

1J0959799AH Conv. central CU 0001 → Coding 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ The control unit identification number is displayed ⇒ page 01-19, code number of control unit and code number of workshop (for current version of control units ⇒ Parts List). If the readout appears as described, coding is then completed.
Fault → Coding XXXXX not accepted	◄ If the code number entered is not accepted by the control unit, the following readout appears in the display: In this case, the control unit has not been coded with the data required for the vehicle. It is then necessary to determine whether the correct control unit matching the vehicle has been installed (part number and letter index), and whether the correct code number has been entered. - Repeat coding. If it is not possible to code the control unit (correct part number, correct code number), replace the control unit with a new original part. - End output ⇒ page 01-31.

Reading measured value block

The measured value block is subdivided into 15 display group numbers. Each display group number is further subdivided into a maximum of 4 display fields.

- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select convenience system central control unit ⇒ page 01-17.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display: - Select function 08.
Test of vehicle systems Q 08 - Read measured value block	◄ Readout in display: - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Read measured value block → Enter display group number XXX	◄ Readout in display: - Enter desired display group number ⇒ page 01-34, 01-40.1, 01-40.9 or 01-40.11. Confirm selected display group by pressing the key Q.
Read measured value block 1 → 1 2 3 4	◄ Readout in display: - The meaning of the readout in the display in the individual display fields is shown in the test table ⇒ page 01-34, 01-40.1, 01-40.9 and 01-40.11, respectively. End check of measured value block: - Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display: ***Note:*** *After completing the function „Read measured value block“, interrogate fault memory ⇒ page 01-20.*

Test table for models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system of generation 1)

Note:

Proceed as shown in the table below to switch into another display group:

Switching into display group	**V.A.G 1552**	**V.A.G 1551**
higher	Press ↑ key	Press key 3
lower	Press ↓ key	Press key 1
other	Press key C	Press key C

Display group 001 for models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system of generation 1)

Display block	Designation	**Readout in display**	Rectifying fault
1	Child safety switch	on off not fitted	- Visual inspection of wiring. - Inspect the relevant plug connections for correct and tight connection and at the same time check display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Lock/Unlock switch[1)]	unlock lock not operated implausible	
3	Power window Hall signal driver side	rotates stationary	- Operates only if the ignition switched on

1) Is not fitted to Octavia

Display group 002 for models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system of generation 1)

Display block	Designation	**Readout in display**	Rectifying fault
1	Power window central switch (E189) Switch driver side	open closed not operated implausible	- Visual inspection of wiring. - Inspect the relevant plug connections for correct and tight connection and at the same time check display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Power window central switch (E189) Switch front passenger side	open closed not operated implausible	
3	Power window central switch (E189) Switch RR	open closed not operated not fitted implausible	
4	Power window central switch (E189) Switch RL	open closed not operated not fitted implausible	

Display group 003 for models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system of generation 1)

Display block	Designation	**Readout in display**	Rectifying fault
1	Key switch driver side	open closed not operated implausible	- Visual inspection of wiring. - Inspect closing mechanism. - Inspect the relevant plug connections for correct and tight connection and at the same time check display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component.
2	Door switch driver side	door open door closed	- Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
3	Central locking feedback	locked unlocked	
4	Central locking feedback	safe not safe	

Display group 004 for models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system of generation 1)

Display block	Designation	**Readout in display**	Rectifying fault
1	Mirror adjustment switch	position /X+ position /X- position /Y+ position /Y-	- Visual inspection of wiring. - Inspect the relevant plug connections for correct and tight connection and at the same time check display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component.
2	Mirror selection switch	left right fold	- Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.

Display group number 005 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Passenger power window switch	open closed not operated implausible	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Lock/Unlock pushbutton (is not fitted to Octavia)	open closed not operated not fitted implausible	

Display group number 006 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Passenger key-operated switch	open closed not operated implausible	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Passenger rotary tumbler switch	door open door closed	
3	Passenger CL feedback	locked unlocked	
4	Passenger CL feedback	safe not safe	

Display group number 007 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	RR power window switch (E54)	open closed not operated implausible	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	RR rotary tumbler switch	door open door closed	
3	RR CL feedback	locked unlocked	
4	RR CL feedback	safe not safe	

Display group number 008, models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system generation 1)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	RL power window switch (E52)	open closed not op. implausible	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
2	RL rotary tumbler switch	door open door closed	
3	RL CL confirmation	locked unlocked	
4	RL CL confirmation	Safe not Safe	

Display group number 009, models ➤ 09.97 (convenience system generation 1)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Switch and instrument lighting rheostat (E20)	0...100% (in 16 stages)	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
2	Vehicle speed signal km/h	km/h	
3	Remote control key buttons (only for control unit with remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2)	open closed HDF[1)] PANIC[1)]	
4[1)]	Interior motion sensor (only for control unit with remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2)	yes no not fitted	

[1)] Not fitted to Octavia (HDF = tailgate/boot lid remote release).

Display group number 010 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	S contact	operated not operated	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Mirror heater	on off	
3	Rear key-operated switch	open closed not operated implausible	
4	Ignition	tml. 15 on tml. 15 off	

Display group number 011 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Bonnet and radio contact switch	operated not operated not fitted	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Tailgate switch	unlock lock	
3	Sliding/tilting roof activation	yes no	
4	CL temperature cut-off	yes no	

Display group number 012 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Check BUS	BUS o.k. BUS n. o.k.	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - If no change occurs, separate all door interior connectors and plug in again one after the other. - Read measured value block. - If the readout in display changes, replace the appropriate control unit. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Front equipment	dri. dri. + pass. pass. vacant	These display zones merely show how the corresponding vehicle equipment looks. - It is possible to check here e.g. which control units are actively connected to the system or which do not participate.
3	Rear equipment	rl rl + rr rr vacant	
4	Additional equipment	memory vacant	

Display group number 013 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Programmed code known (only for control unit with radio remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19)	o.k. n.o.k. no readout (key just not operated)	If. n.o.k.: - Key code has left reception area. Reprogram radio remote control with function 10 (Adaptation) ⇒ page 01-41. If „no readout“: - Battery in key discharged, change battery. - Remote control faulty, replace key.
2	Code in reception area	o.k. n.o.k. no readout (key just not operated)	
3	Algorithm	o.k. n.o.k. no readout (key just not operated)	

Display group number 014 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Key number	1....4	When a programmed remote control key is operated, this readout indicates the position on which the key is programmed. If tester displays „0“ although a remote control key is operated, the key has to be reprogrammed with the function Adaptation (10).

Display group number 015 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Last alarm source (only for control unit with radio remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19)	Readout 1....65535	What is displayed are only the last 4 alarm sources. e.g. „64“ = hood contact switch (⇒ Table below for possible sources of alarm)
2	Second last alarm source (only for control unit with radio remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19)		
3	3rd last alarm source (only for control unit with radio remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19)		
4	4th last alarm source (only for control unit with radio remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19)		

Possible sources of alarm for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation convenience system)

Source of alarm	Readout
Tailgate contact switch	1
RL rotary tumbler switch	2
RR rotary tumbler switch	4
FR rotary tumbler switch	8
Ignition	16
Interior monitor sensor	32
Hood contact switch	64
FL rotary tumbler switch	128
No alarm	255

Test table for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group number 001 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Child safety catch	On Off Not fitted	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Lock/unlock switch	Unlocked Locked Deactivated Implausible	
3	Window lifter Hall signal DS	On Off	- Function only ‘On’ during ignition.

Display group number 002 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Central switch for window lifter (E189) Switch driver’s door	Autom. On Autom. Off Man. On Man. Off deactivated	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Central switch for window lifter (E189) Switch passenger’s door	Autom. On Autom. Off Man. On Man. Off deactivated	
3	Central switch for window lifter (E189) Switch RR	Man. On Man. Off deactivated	
4	Central switch for window lifter (E189) Switch RL	Man. On Man. Off deactivated	

Display group number 003 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Key switch DS	Open Closed Deactivated Implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check mechanical elements - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Rotary-latch switch FH temperature protection DS	0 [1] 1 [2]	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	CL acknowledgement DS	locked unlocked	- Interrogate fault memory again.
4	CL acknowledgement DS	safe n. safe	

[1] 0 = door closed
1 = door open

[2] 0 = temperature protection disconnection
1 = temperature protection not activated

Display group number 004 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Mirror setting switch	Deactivated Pos X+ /X- /Y+ /Y-	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Mirror selection switch	left right	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Mirror adjustment switch [1]	not fitted	

[1] Not fitted on Octavia.

Display group number 005 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Window lifter switch PS	Man. Open Man. Closed Deactivated Implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Lock/unlock switch 1)	Deactivated Not fitted Implausible	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Mirror latch switch PS 1)	Not fitted	

1) Not fitted on Octavia.

Display group number 006 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Key switch PS	Open Closed deactivated implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Rotary-latch switch1)/FH temperature protection PS	0 1) 1 2)	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	CL acknowledgement PS	locked unlocked	
4	CL acknowledgement PS	safe not safe	

1) 0 = door closed
1 = door open

2) 0 = temperature protection disconnection
1 = temperature protection not activated

Display group number 007 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Window lifter switch RR (E54)	Man. Open Man. Closed deactivated implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Rotary-latch switch RR Window lifter temperature protection RR	0 [1] 1 [2]	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	CL acknowledgement RR	locked unlocked	- Interrogate fault memory again.
4	CL acknowledgement RR	safe not safe	

[1] 0 = door closed
1 = door open

[2] 0 = temperature protection disconnection
1 = temperature protection not activated

Display group number 008 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Window lifter switch RL (E52)	Man. Open Man. Closed deactivated implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Rotary-latch switch RL Window lifter temperature protection RL	0 [1] 1 [2]	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	CL acknowledgement RL	locked unlocked	- Interrogate fault memory again.
4	CL acknowledgement RL	safe not safe	

[1] 0 = door closed
1 = door open

[2] 0 = temperature protection disconnection
1 = temperature protection not activated

Display group number 009 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Regulator for switch and instrument lighting (E20)	0…100% (in 16 steps)	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Signal speed km/h	km/h (0-255 km/h, after 2 km/h)	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	Remote control key switches 1)	0-1-0-0 2)	- Interrogate fault memory again.
4	Sensor interior monitoring 1)	yes no not fitted	

1) Only for control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2.

2) On, off, HDF, Panic
0 = deactivated; 1 = activated

Display group number 010 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	S contact	activated deactivated	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Mirror heating	on off not fitted	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	Key switch tailgate	open closed deactivated implausible	- Interrogate fault memory again.
4	Ignition	Term. 15 ON Term. 15 OFF	

Display group number 011 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Bonnet and radio contact switch	activated deactivated not fitted	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Tailgate switch	open closed	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	Release sliding/hinged roof	yes no	- Interrogate fault memory again.

Display group number 012 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Check BUS	Bus OK Bus NOK	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced. - If there is no change disconnect all inside door plugs and successively reconnect. - Check measured value block. - If the display content changes, replace the relevant control unit. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Equipment front	Driv. Driv. + Pass. Pass. Empty	These display fields only indicate what the relevant vehicle equipment looks like.
3	Equipment rear	RL RL+RR RR Empty	- Here it is possible to check e.g. which control units are actively connected to the system or which are not connected.
4	Additional equipment	Memory Empty	

Display group number 013 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Fixed code known 1)	OK NOK No measured value (key not activated)	If NOK: - key code outside capture range. Learn radio remote control via function 10 (adaptation) again ⇒ page 01-41.
2	Code in capture range	OK NOK No measured value (key not activated)	If no measured value: - Key battery discharged, change battery. - Defective remote control, replace key.
3	Algorithm	OK NOK No measured value (key not activated)	
4	Key number	0…4	When activating an updated radio key the position in which the key has been updated is displayed If the test displays '0' even though a function key is activated, the key must be updated again by adaptation (function 10).

1) Only for control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2.

Display group number 014 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Onboard voltage Term. 30	Voltage (V)	- check voltage
2	RLRU (Rear Lid Remote Unlock) switch and RL (Rear Lid) handle 1)	Deactivated	
3	IRUE disconnection	Not fitted On Off	- interrogate fault memory again
4	CL temperature protection DS, PS, RL, RR, tailgate	1 1 1 1 1 2)	- interrogate fault memory again - visual inspection of cable running

1) Not fitted on Octavia

2) 0= disconnection
1= active

Display group number 015 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Last alarm source 1)	Display 1…65535	The last 4 DWA set-off ranges are displayed! e.g. '64' = engine bonnet contact switch (possible alarm source see table below)
2	Penultimate alarm source 1)		
3	3rd last alarm source 1)		
4	4th last alarm source 1)		

1) Only for control unit with alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2.

Possible alarm sources for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation convenience system)

Alarm sources	Display
Rear lid contact switch	1
Rotary-latch switch RL	2
Rotary-latch switch RR	4
Rotary-latch switch Pass. Door	8
Ignition	16
Interior monitoring	32
Engine bonnet contact switch	64
Rotary-latch switch Dr door	128
No alarm	255

Test table for models 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation convenience system)

Display group 001 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.1 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 002 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.1 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 003 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.2 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 004 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.2 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 005 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.3 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 006 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.3 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 007 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.4 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 008 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.4 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 009 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.5 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 010 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.5 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 011 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.6 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 012 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.6 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 013 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.7 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group 014 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-40.7 (2nd generation convenience system)

Display group number 015 for models 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	**Display content**	Fault elimination
1	Last alarm source 1)	Display 1…65535	The last 4 DWA set-off ranges are displayed! e.g. '64' = engine bonnet contact switch (possible alarm source see table below ⇒ page 01-40.10)
2	Penultimate alarm source 1)		
3	3rd last alarm source 1)		
4	4th last alarm source 1)		

1) Only for control unit with alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2.

Possible alarm sources for models 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation convenience system)

Alarm sources	Display
Rear lid contact switch	1
Rotary-latch switch RL	2
Rotary-latch switch RR	4
Rotary-latch switch Pass. Door	8
Ignition	16
Immobiliser	17
Interior monitoring	32
Engine bonnet contact switch	64
Rotary-latch switch Dr door	128
No alarm	255

Display group number 016 for models 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	**Display content**	Fault elimination
1	Immobiliser key detection [1)]	Yes No Not fitted	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced. - Erase fault memory. - Ignition key must be adapted to the control electronics of the immobiliser - Control electronics of the immobiliser must be adapted or checked.
2	Automatic switch for interior lock driver [1)]	Deactivated Activated Not fitted	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. - If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced. - Perform function test.
3	Rear latch [1)]	Open Closed Not fitted	

[1)] Not fitted on Octavia

Test table for models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display group number 001, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Power window central switch (E189) Driver door switch	autom. open autom. clsd man. open man. clsd not op. not fitted implaus.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
2	DS thermoprotection	yes no not fitted	
3	Child safety switch	on off not fitted	

Display group number 002, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Power window central switch (E189) Passenger door switch	autom. open autom. clsd man. open man. clsd not op. not fitted implaus.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
2	Power window central switch (E189) RR switch	autom. open autom. clsd man. open man. clsd not op. not fitted implaus.	
3	Power window central switch (E189) RL switch	autom. open autom. clsd man. open man. clsd not op. not fitted implaus.	

Display group number 003 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Mirror adjustment switch	not activated pos. X+ pos./X- pos./Y+ pos./Y-	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component.
2	Mirror selection switch	left right fold in not activated not fitted implausible	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Mirror adjustment switch DS	folded in folded out not fitted	
4	Mirror heating	on off not fitted	

Display group number 004 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Window lifter switch PS	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated implausible	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component.
2	Window lifter thermo fuse PS	yes no not fitted	
3	Mirror adjustment switch PS	folded in folded out not fitted	

Display group number 005, models ➤ 05.01 (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	RL power window switch (E52)	autom. open autom. clsd man. open man. clsd not op. not fitted implaus.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component.
2	RL power window thermoprotection	yes no not fitted	
3	RR power window switch (E54)	autom. open autom. clsd man. open man. clsd not op. not fitted implaus.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component.
4	RR power window thermoprotection	yes no not fitted	

Display group number 006, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	System voltage tml. 30	Voltage (V)	- Test voltage
2	Ignition - tml. 15	on off no comm.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
3	S contact	operated not op. no comm.	
4	Vehicle speed signal km/h	km/h 0-255	

Display group number 007, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Keyswitch - DD	lock unlock not op.	- Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Keyswitch - PD	lock unlock not op.	
3	Lock/Unlock switch - DD	lock unlock not op. implaus.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
4	Lock/Unlock switch - PD	lock unlock not op. implaus.	

Display group number 008, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Bonnet contact switch	open closed not fitted no comm.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring. - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Rear keyswitch	lock unlock not op. implaus.	
3	Tailgate/boot lid contact switch	open closed no comm.	
4	CL thermoprotection	no yes not fitted	

Display group number 009, models ➤ 05.01 (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	CL confirmation DD	lock unlock Safe not fitted	
2	CL confirmation PD	lock unlock Safe not fitted	
3	CL confirmation RL	lock unlock Safe not fitted	
4	CL confirmation RR	lock unlock Safe not fitted	

Display group number 010, models ➤ 05.01 (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Rotary tumbler switch DD	open closed	
2	Rotary tumbler switch PD	open closed	
3	Rotary tumbler switch RR	open closed	
4	Rotary tumbler switch RL	open closed	

Display group number 011, models ➤ 05.01 (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	IMM key recognition	yes no not fitted no comm.	- Carry out visual inspection of wiring. - Check correct and tight connection of plug connections of relevant circuit and at the same time the display. If readout in display does not change during check, rectify fault or replace relevant component.
2	Automatic Lock/Unlock switch	open closed	- Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
3	Sliding/tilting roof enable	yes no	
4	Databus	single-wire two-wire	- Test databus ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 90.

Display group number 012, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Equipment, driver door	0[1)] 1[2)]	
2	Equipment, passenger door	0[1)] 1[2)]	
3	Equipment, RL	0[1)] 1[2)]	
4	Equipment, RR	0[1)] 1[2)]	

1) No communication.

2) Operation.

Display group number 013, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Tailgate/boot lid remote release switch and rear keyswitch[1)]	not op.	
2	Tailgate/boot lid contact switch	open closed not fitted	
3	Switch lighting	0...100%	

1) Not fitted to Octavia

Display group number 014, models 05.01 ➤ (convenience system of generation 3)

Display field	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Fixed code known[1)]	o.k. n.o.k. no readout (key not operated at that moment)	If „n.o.k.“ - Key code not within reception area. Relearn remote control with function 10 (Adaption) ⇒ page 01-44.4.
2	Code within reception area[1)]	o.k. n.o.k. no readout (key not operated at that moment)	If „no readout“: - Battery in key discharged, replace battery. - Remote control faulty, replace key.
3	Algorithm[1)]	o.k. n.o.k. no readout (key not operated at that moment)	
4	Key number[1)]	0...4	If a learned remote control key is operated, what is displayed here is the position at which the key is learned. If the tester displays „0“ although remote control key is operated, key must be relearned by Adaption (function 10).

1) Only in the case of control unit with remote control receiver and alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2.

Display group number 015 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Remote control key buttons	0[1)] 1[2)]	
2	Interior monitor sensor	yes no not fitted	
3	IRUE deactivation	on off not fitted	

1) Not activated

2) Activated

Display group number 016 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Last alarm source[1)]	Display 1...65535	Only the last 4 alarms sources are displayed! e.g. „32“ = Engine hood contact switch (possible alarm sources see table below)
2	Preultimate alarm source[1)]		
3	3rd Last source[1)]		
4	4th Last source[1)]		

1) Only on control unit with alarm function ⇒ page 01-19.2.

Possible alarm sources for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Alarm sources	Display
Rotary latch switch DD	1
Rotary latch switch RL	2
Rotary latch switch RR	4
Rotary latch switch PD	8
Tailgate contact switch	16
Immobilizer - none or wrong key	17
Interruption of communication with alarm system with independent supply	18
Engine hood contact switch	32
Ignition - tml. 15	64
Interior monitor	128
No alarm	255

Adaptation

For models 07.98 ➤
(1st and 2nd generation convenience system)

Channel number	Page
00 - Adaptation of ignition keys with radio remote control, delete key 1) 2)	01-41
01 - Adaptation of ignition keys with radio remote control, update key 1) 2)	01-41
03 - Auto lock/unlock: the vehicle is locked/unlocked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached 2)	01-44
04 - IMON disconnection: interior monitoring is activated or deactivated by pressing the CL/IK twice 2)	01-44
05 - Unlock. Horn off and on 2)	01-44.1
06 - Lock. Horn off and on 2)	01-44.2
07 - Unlocking indicators of indicator lights off and on 2)	01-44.2
08 - Locking indicators of indicator lights off and on 2)	01-44.3

1) For models ➤ 09.97

2) For models 10.97 ➤

Adaptation of the ignition keys with radio remote control

Notes:

- *only for control unit with radio remote control ⇒ page 01-19.2.*
- *If new or additional ignition keys are required, they must be adapted to the control electronics of the immobiliser and convenience system.*
- *All, i.e. all available ignition keys must be adapted.*
- *The number of already adapted keys is displayed when the adaptation function is selected.*
- *Adaptation can be interrupted by pressing key 'C' on the V.A.G 1552.*
- *The plant number (workshop code) of the V.A.G 1552 is stored during adaptation of the ignition keys by the immobiliser control.*

Requirements:

- ♦ All ignition keys present. If no old ignition key is present, refer to „Procedure in the event of loss of key“.
  ⇒ Electrical System; Self-Diagnosis; Adaptation of ignition keys, Repair Group 96.
- ♦ Key fob with concealed number is present. If not, refer to „Determining secret number“.
  ⇒ Electrical System; Self-Diagnosis; Adaptation of ignition keys, Repair Group 96.
- ♦ Insert mechanically matching ignition key into ignition lock.
- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select address word for convenience system
  ⇒ page 01-17.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display: - Select function 10.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Readout in display: - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Readout in display: - Enter channel number 00 (when channel number 00 is selected, all the keys are cancelled) and confirm entry with the key Q.
Adaptation Q Erase learned values?	◄ Readout in display: - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Adaptation → Learned values are erased	◄ Readout in display: - Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display: - Select function 10.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Readout in display: - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Readout in display: - Enter channel number 01 (when channel number 01 is selected, all the keys are read) and confirm entry with the key Q.

Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Key 1 - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Readout in display: What is displayed in the top line is how many keys are to be learned (standard = 1). Select the number of keys with the ↑ and ↓ keys. Max. number of all learned keys = 4.
Channel 1 Adaptation 3 Q Key 3 - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Readout in display: Number of remote control keys to be learned. - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Channel 1 Adaptation 3 Q Store changed value?	◄ Readout in display: - Confirm entry with the key Q.
Channel 1 Adaptation 3 → Changed value is stored	◄ Readout in display: - Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display: - Switch off ignition and remove ignition key. - Press a button once on each remote control key which is to be learned (on 3 keys in the example above). ***Notes:*** ♦ *All 3 keys (refer to example) can be learned in a single adaptation process.* ♦ *Do not exceed a time of 30 seconds for the adaptation of all the keys.* Adaptation of the ignition keys is ended automatically when: ♦ the number of keys to be learned has been reached. ♦ a button of one of the remote control keys which is to be learned, is pressed frequently. ♦ the permissible adaptation time of 30 seconds, beginning from the moment the ignition is switched on with the 2nd key, is exceeded (fault is stored). The required adaptation process is confirmed by a brief horn signal. - Switch ignition on. - Select function 02 „Interrogate fault memory“. If no fault is stored, adaptation of the keys has been successfully completed. - Select function 06 „End output“ ⇒ page 01-31.

- Perform functional test for (all) radio keys.

Auto lock/unlock: Vehicle is locked and unlocked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys -1- and -0-.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 3.
Channel 3 Adaptation 0 → Auto lock/unlock off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Auto lock/unlock on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

IMON disconnection: Interior monitoring is activated or deactivated by pressing CL CU twice

- Press keys -1- and -0-.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 4
Channel 4 Adaptation 0 → Interior monitoring off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.

Channel 4 Adaptation 1 Q Interior monitoring on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of alarm when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 5.
Channel 5 Adaptation 0 → Unlocked beep off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 Q Unlocked beep on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of alarm when opening

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 6.
Channel 6 Adaptation 0 → Locked beep off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Locked beep on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 6 Adaptation 3 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of indicator lights when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 7.
Channel 7 Adaptation 0 → Unlocked indicators off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Unlocked indicators on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 → Changed value is stored	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display.

Deactivating and activating turn signal lights when locking car

	- Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 8.
Channel 8 Adaptation 0 → locked Turn signals off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Readout in display:
	- Select adaptation value with the keys „↑“ and „↓“.
Channel 8 Adaptation 0 Q locked Turn signals on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 → Changed value is stored	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display.

Adaption, models 08.98 ➤ (convenience system of generation 2.5 and 3)

Channel number	Page
00 - Adaption of ignition keys with radio remote control, cancelling keys	01-44.5
01 - Adaption of ignition keys with radio remote control, learning keys	01-44.5
03 - Auto Lock/Unlock: vehicle is locked and unlocked once a speed of 15 km/h is reached	01-44.7
04 - Auto Lock/Unlock: vehicle is unlocked when ignition key withdrawn from ignition lock	01-44.8
05 - Interior motion sensor off: interior motion sensor is activated or deactivated by twice pressing CL CLOSED	01-44.9
06 - Unlock horn signal off/on	01-44.9
07 - Lock horn signal off/on	01-44.10
08 - Unlock flashing of turn signal lights off/on	01-44.11
09 - Lock flashing of turn signal lights off/on	01-44.11
10 - Alarm horn settings: programming of alarm when alarm activated in accordance with legal regulations of particular country	01-44.12

Adaption of ignition keys with radio remote control

If the remote control is pressed 200 times outside of the reception range, or if a new key has been added to the set of keys, it is then necessary to carry out adaption of the keys:
1. - using adapted ignition key
2. - using fault reader V.A.G 1552.

Adaption using adapted ignition key

- Insert mechanically adapted (old) ignition key into ignition lock.
- Switch ignition on.
- Mechanically lock vehicle (e.g. at driver door) with the new key (key to be learned) and then operate one of the remote control buttons on the key.
- Wait more than one second and then operate remote control button on key a second time.
- Adaption is completed and is confirmed by a feedback signal of the vehicle horn.

Note:

If new or additional ignition keys are required they must be adapted to the control electronics of the immobilizer.

Adaptation with vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552

Notes:

- *Only on control units with radio remote control ⇒ page 01-19.2*
- *If new or additional ignition keys are required they must be adapted to the control electronics of the immobilizer and convenience system ⇒ Electrical System, Repair Group 96.*
- *Always adapt all ignition keys, i.e. also the available ignition keys.*
- *The number of already adapted keys is displayed by selecting the function adaptation.*
- *The adaptation can be interrupted with the „C“ key of V.A.G 1552.*
- *The operating number (workshop code) of the V.A.G 1552 is stored by the immobilzer control electronics when adapting ignition keys.*

Requirements:

- All ignition keys must be available. If an old ignition key is not available, refer to „Procedure when losing the key“,

⇒ Electrical System, Self-Diagnosis; Adaptation of ignition keys, Repair Group 96.

- Key ring with concealed secret number is available. If this is not the case, refer to „Determining the secret number“

⇒ Electrical System, Self-Diagnosis; Adaptation of ignition keys, Repair Group 96.

- Insert the mechanically operational ignition key in the ignition lock

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word for convenience system ⇒ page 01-17.

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out on display:

- Enter function 10.

Vehicle system test Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out on display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Adaptation Enter channel number XX

◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 0 and 0 (with channel number 00 all keys are deleted).

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Adaptation Q Delete learning values?

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Adaptation → Learned values are deleted

◄ Read-out in display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX

◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Adaptation Enter channel number XX

◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 0 and 1 (with channel number 01 all keys are updated).

Channel 1 Adaptation 1 → Key 1 - ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

The top line displays how many keys must be updated (Standard = 1). Select key number with keys '↑' and '↓', 4 at the most.

- → press key.

Channel 1 Adaptation 3 → Keys 3 - ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:
Number of radio keys to be updated.

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 1 Adaptation 3 Q Store changed value?

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 1 Adaptation 3 → Changed value stored

◄ Read-out in display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Read-out in display:

- Switch off ignition.
- On each radio key to be updated activate a key once (in the above example on 3 keys).

Note:

- *All 3 keys (see example) can be updated in adaptation operation.*
- *When adapting all keys 30 seconds must not be exceeded.*

The adaptation of the ignition keys is automatically terminated, if:

- The number of keys to be adapted is reached.
- The key of radio key to be updated is activated more than once.
- The allowed adaptation time of 30 seconds after switching on the ignition with the 2nd key is exceeded (fault is stored).

Successful adaptation is indicated by a short horn signal.

- Select function 02 'interrogate fault memory'. If no fault is stored, the key adaptation was successful.
- Perform functional test for (all) radio keys.

Auto lock/unlock: Vehicle is locked and unlocked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 0 and 3.

Channel 3 Adaptation 0 → Auto lock/unlock off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Auto lock/unlock on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Auto lock/unlock: Vehicle is unlocked when ignition key is removed from ignition

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 4.
Channel 4 Adaptation 0 → Auto lock/unlock off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 Q Auto lock/unlock on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Activating and deactivating double locking function - activating and deactivating interior monitoring

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 5.
Channel 5 Adaptation 0 → Interior monitoring off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 Q Interior monitoring on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of alarm when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 6.
Channel 6 Adaptation 0 → Unlocked beep off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Unlocked beep on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of alarm when closing

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 7.
Channel 7 Adaptation 0 → Locked beep off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Locked beep on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 7 Adaptation 3 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of indicator lights when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 8.
Channel 8 Adaptation 0 → Unlocked indicators off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 Q Unlocked indicators on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of indicator lights when closing

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 9.
Channel 9 Adaptation 0 → Locked indicators off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 9 Adaptation 1 Q Locked indicators on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 9 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 9 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored

◄ Read-out in display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX

◄ Read-out in display:

Setting alarm horn: Programming alarm behaviour in compliance with country regulations

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Adaptation Enter channel number XX

◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Channel 10 Adaptation 1 → Setting alarm horn Rest. Eur. - ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.

Channel 10 Adaptation 2 → Setting alarm horn Germany - ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

Channel 10 Adaptation 3 → Setting alarm horn Great Britain - ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 10 Adaptation 3 Q Store changed value?

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 10 Adaptation 3 → Changed value stored

◄ Read-out in display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX

◄ Read-out in display:

Self-diagnosis for central locking

Description of system

Components fitted in the doors:

- Electric central locking with SAFE function

Components in remainder of car

- Switch-off time delay for interior light.
- Monitoring and switch-off of interior lights and luggage compartment lights.
- Sliding roof closing function with closing command from exterior.
- Radio remote control for anti-theft alarm system.

The cars may be equipped with different types of central locking system. Individual types differ in respect of:

- Operation
- Components (control units, key pads, electrical installation etc.)
- Software of control units
- Diagnostics

Important!

When replacing parts, it is important to ensure that the parts are not mixed up ⇒ Parts List!

Important!

It goes without saying that only parts approved by Škoda may be fitted!

Operation

The central control unit for the central locking system (J110) is located in the dash panel area. It features a fault memory. The connection for self-diagnosis is located in the stowage compartment below the steering column.

The control unit detects faults and interference and stores them in a permanent memory.

To commence fault finding, initiate self-diagnosis and interrogate the information stored using the fault reader V.A.G 1552 or V.A.G 1551.

Notes:

The description which follows relates only to the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 using programme card version 6.0.

Use of the vehicle system tester V.A.S 5051 or V.A.G 1551 with programme card 9.0 is similar with the exception of specific differences (e.g. different readouts in display, use of printer).

To end the output, it is necessary to select the function 06 „End output".

The fault information displayed is used to refer to a fault table with information regarding the possible causes in order to carry out specific repair measures.

Faults which are attributable to a temporary open circuit in the wiring or to a loose contact, are also stored. These faults are displayed as sporadic faults „SP". If such faults no longer occur within 2 minutes after switching on the ignition 50 times, they are automatically erased from the fault memory.

Function display

The visual Safe function display is indicated by an LED in the door waistrail of the driver door.

Connecting fault reader V.A.G 1552 and selecting central locking control unit (J110)

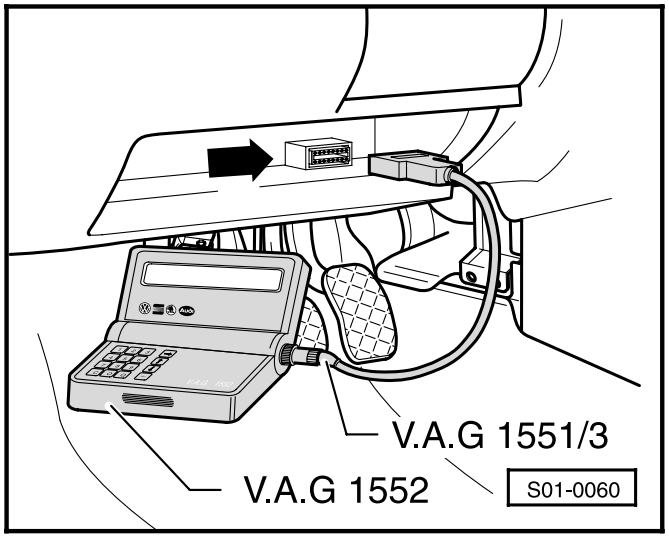
Special tools, testers and aids required

- Fault reader V.A.G 1552
- Diagnostic cable V.A.G 1551/3, 3A, 3B, or 3C

Test requirements:

- All fuses according to CFD o.k.
- Battery voltage at least 9 v.

◄- Switch ignition off and connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 with the appropriate cable.



- Switch on ignition.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys -3- and -5- central locking.
Test of vehicle systems Q 35 central locking	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Test of vehicle systems Tester sends address word 35	◄ Read-out in display:
Test of vehicle systems HELP Control unit does not respond!	***Notes:*** ♦ *If there is a failure in communication set-up between fault reader V.A.G 1552 and the control unit, one of the following four display read-outs will occur.* ♦ *Press the HELP key to display all possible fault causes.*
Test of vehicle systems HELP K line does not switch to Plus!	◄ Ignition must be switched on!
Test of vehicle systems → No signal from control unit!	◄ Interferences occurred at the start or during the program (outside interference sources).
Test of vehicle systems → Error in communication set-up	◄ Check diagnostic cables as well as power supply and earth.
	- After eliminating the possible fault causes again enter address word 35 for 'central locking' and confirm entry with key Q.
Test of vehicle systems Tester sends address word 35	◄ Read-out on display after entering address word '35':
1J0 962 258 central locking V34 → Code 04097 WSC XXXXX	◄ The control unit identification number is displayed e.g.: Or other displays ⇒ page 01-48, interrogate control unit version.

- → Press key.

Test of vehicle systems Enter address word XX	HELP

◄ Read-out in display:

Note:

After communication entry ignition may be disconnected.

List of available functions

	Page
01 - Interrogating control unit version	01-48
02 - Interrogating fault memory	01-49
03 - Final control diagnosis	01-55
05 - Erasing fault memory	01-56
06 - Ending output	01-56
07 - Coding control unit	01-57
08 - Reading measured value block	01-59
10 - Adaptation	01-64

Interrogating control unit version

Vehicles are equipped with different generation types of the convenience system control unit, which in turn have different fault messages, measured value blocks and adaptation. To determine the control unit type interrogate the control unit identification number on the fault reader and then find this control unit in the list of control units ⇒ page 01-48.1. The table states the date and series number of the control unit generation. This information will further determine the repair procedure.

- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select the control unit for central locking ⇒ page 01-46.

Test of vehicle systems Enter address word XX	HELP

◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys -0- and -1-.

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Test of vehicle systems 01 - interrogating control unit version	Q

◄ Read-out in display:

1J0 962 258 Code 04097	central locking	V34 → WSC XXXXX

◄ The control unit identification is displayed, e.g.:
Or other displays ⇒ list of all control units, page 01-48.1.

- → Press key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX

◄ Read-out in display:

- 1J0 962 258= Part No. of the control unit
- central locking = system description
- V34 = program status number
- Code 04097 = code variant
- WSC = workshop code

List of all central locking control units according to production date and generation

For models ➤ 09.97
(1st generation convenience system)

Part No. of the central control unit	Program status number	Control unit function
1J0 962 258 1)	V34	Control unit without receiver for remote control and without alarm function
1J0 962 258A 1)	V34	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function

For models 10.97 ➤
(2nd generation convenience system)

Part No. of the central control unit	Program status number	Control unit function
1C0 962 258D 03 1)	0001	Control unit without receiver for remote control and without alarm function Sedan
1C0 962 258E 05 1)	0001	Control unit with receiver for remote control and without alarm function Sedan
1C0 962 258E 06 1)	0001	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function Sedan
1C0 962 258D 06 1)	0001	Control unit without receiver for remote control and without alarm function Estate
1C0 962 258E 0D 1)	0001	Control unit with receiver for remote control and without alarm function Estate
1C0 962 258E 0E 1)	0001	Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function Estate

1) For current control unit versions see spare part catalogue

Models 08.98 ➤
(Central locking system of generation 2.5)

Part No. of control unit	Programme status number	Control unit function
1C0 962 258J 06[1)]	0002	Control unit without remote control and alarm Saloon
1C0 962 258G 0J[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control; without alarm function Saloon
1C0 962 258N 0J[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control; without alarm function Saloon
1C0 962 258G 0K[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor) Saloon
1C0 962 258N 0K[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor) Saloon
1C0 962 258G 0L[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor) Saloon
1C0 962 258N 0L[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor) Saloon
1C0 962 258G 0M[1)2)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor), with alarm system Saloon
1C0 962 258N 0M[1)2)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor), with alarm system Saloon
1C0 962 258J 07[1)]	0002	Control unit without remote control and alarm Estate
1C0 962 258G 0N[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control; without alarm function Estate
1C0 962 258N 0N[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control; without alarm function Estate
		Continued on next page!

1) Up-to-date control unit versions ⇒ Parts List

2) Version for Great Britain

Part No. of control unit	Programme status number	Control unit function
1C0 962 258G 0P[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor) Estate
1C0 962 258N 0P[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor) Estate
1C0 962 258G 0Q[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor) Estate
1C0 962 258N 0Q[1)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor) Estate
1C0 962 258G 0R[1)2)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor), with alarm system Estate
1C0 962 258N 0R[1)2)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor), with alarm system Estate, RHD
1C0 962 258 J 08[1)3)]	0002	Control unit without remote control and alarm Saloon
1C0 962 258 N 0S[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control; without alarm function Saloon
1C0 962 258 N 0T[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor) Saloon
1C0 962 258 N 0U[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor) Saloon
1C0 962 258 N 0V[1)2)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitor), with alarm system Saloon, RHD
1C0 962 258 J 09[1)3)]	0002	Control unit without remote control and alarm Estate
1C0 962 258 N 0W[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control; without alarm function Estate
1C0 962 258 N 0X[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for remote control and with alarm function (without interior monitor) Estate
		Continued on next page!

1) Up-to-date control unit versions ⇒ Parts List

2) Version for Great Britain

3) Version with Webasto tilting roof

Part no. of control unit	Program number	Control unit function
1C0 962 258 N 0Y[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for radio remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitoring) Estate
1C0 962 258 N 0Z[1)2)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for radio remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitoring), with alarm function Estate, RHD
1C0 962 258 N 1P[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for radio remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitoring), with alarm function Limousine
1C0 962 258 N 1Q[1)3)]	0002	Control unit with receiver for radio remote control and with alarm function (with interior monitoring), with alarm function Estate

1) For current control unit versions see spare part catalogue

2) Version for Great Britain

3) Version with tilting roof Webasto

Valid for vehicles 05.01 ➤
(3rd generation of central locking)

Part no. of control unit[1)]	Code number of equipment	Vehicle model and steering	Control unit function
1C0 962 258 AA	18	Limousine/L	Control unit without remote control and alarm function, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	19	Limousine/R	
	1A	Estate/L	
	1B	Estate/R	
1C0 962 258 AB	1C	Limousine/L	Control unit with remote control and without alarm function dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	1D	Limousine/R	
	1E	Estate/L	
	1F	Estate/R	
1C0 962 258 AC[2)]	1D	Limousine/R	Control unit with remote control (315 MHz) and without alarm function, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	1F	Estate/R	
1C0 962 258 AA	1G	Limousine	Control unit without remote control and alarm function, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	1H	Estate	
1C0 962 258 AB	1J	Limousine	Control unit with remote control, without alarm function, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	1K	Estate	
1C0 962 258 AC[2)]	1J	Limousine	Control unit with remote control (315 MHz), without alarm function, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	1K	Estate	

Continued next page

Part no. of control unit[1)]	Code number of equip-ment	Vehicle model and steering	Control unit function
1C0 962 258 AB	1L	Limousine/L	Control unit with remote control, with alarm function, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	1M	Limousine/R	
	1N	Estate/L	
	1P	Estate/R	
1C0 962 258 AC[2)]	1M	Limousine/R	Control unit with remote control (315 MHz), with alarm function, dash panel insert without CAN databus cable
	1P	Estate/R	
1C0 962 258 AB	1Q	Limousine/L	Control unit with remote control, with alarm function, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	1R	Limousine/R	
	1S	Estate/L	
	1T	Estate/R	
1C0 962 258 AC[2)]	1R	Limousine/R	Control unit with remote control (315 MHz), with alarm function, dash panel insert with CAN databus cable
	1T	Estate/R	

1) For current control unit versions see spare part catalogue

2) Version for Singapore

Interrogating fault memory

- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select control unit for central locking ⇒ page 01-46.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys -0- and -2-.
Test of vehicle systems Q 02 - Interrogating fault memory	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with Q.
X fault detected! →	◄ The display indicates the number of faults stored.
	By pressing the → key the stored faults are displayed successively. Fault table ⇒ page 01-50, 01-54.1 or 01-54.7.
	Notes: *If a fault was detected:* ♦ *1. Eliminate fault* ♦ *2. Erase fault memory (function 05)* ♦ *3. Perform system function test* ♦ *4. Interrogate fault memory again (function 02)*
No fault detected! →	If 'no fault detected', after pressing key → the program return to its initial position.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	If anything else is displayed: ⇒ Operating instructions of fault reader
	- End output (function 06) ⇒ page 01-56.
	- Switch off ignition and disconnect diagnostic plug.

Fault table for models ➤ 09.97 (central locking system of 1st generation)

Notes:

- *All the possible faults which can be detected by the central locking control unit (J110) and displayed on V.A.G 1552, are listed below according to the 5-digit fault code.*
- *Before replacing components detected as faulty, first of all test the cables and plug connections to these components and also the earth connections according to the current flow diagram.*
- *Inspect all the plug connections at the relay plate to ensure they are tight.*
- *After completing repairs, always once again interrogate the fault memory with fault reader V.A.G 1552 and erase it.*
- *The fault type may appear in addition in the fault table.*

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00000 No fault recognized	Self-diagnosis is ended if „no fault recognized“ appears after completing repairs.	
66535 Control unit defective	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ CL control unit faulty	- Test wiring and plug housing according to current flow diagram. - Replace CL control unit.
00668 Vehicle voltage tml. 30 Signal too small	♦ Battery discharged ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Charge battery. - Test wiring and plug housing according to current flow diagram.
00849 S contact undefined switch status	♦ Terminal 15 o.k., S contact faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-61. - Test wiring and plug housing according to current flow diagram.
00928 Locking unit for CL driver's side -F220- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty (F220) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at driver's door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating parts stiff	- Replace locking unit. - Test wiring, plug housing and door switches according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage. - Inspect mechanism and release. - Read measured value block, display group number 004 ⇒ page 01-60.
00929 Locking unit for CL pass. side -F221- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty (F221) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at pass. door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating parts stiff	- Replace locking unit. - Test wiring, plug housing and door switches according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage. - Inspect mechanism and release. - Read measured value block, display group number 004 ⇒ page 01-60.

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
00930 Locking unit for CL rear left -F222- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty (F222) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating components stiff	- Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release - Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-60
00931 Locking unit for CL rear right -F223- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty (F223) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating components stiff	- Replace locking unit - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Test supply voltage - Inspect mechanism and release - Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-60
00945 Crash sensor -G190- short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Output can also be tested with final control diagnosis for airbag ⇒ page 01-8
00946 Interior light short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Interior light or one of the reading lights faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and door switches according to current flow diagram - Replace light - Read measured value block, display group number 004 ⇒ page 01-60
00947 Tailgate remote control switch short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and door switches according to current flow diagram - Replace pushbutton

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
00949 Central locking motor, tailgate -V 53-, Lock undefined switch status	♦ Motor (V 53) faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock stiff	- Replace motor for tailgate CL - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Check mechanism of lock and release
00950 Central locking motor, tailgate -V 53-, Unlock undefined switch status	♦ Motor (V 53) faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock stiff	- Replace motor for tailgate CL - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Check mechanism of lock and release
00951 Relay for tailgate remote control switch -J398 short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00953 Time limit interior light undefined switch status	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace interior light
00954 Relay terminal 50 short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram
00955 Key 1 not within detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times outside of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-62 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64
00956 Key 2 not within detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times outside of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-62 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64
00957 Key 3 not within detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times outside of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 008 ⇒ page 01-62 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00958		
Key 4 Adaptation limit is exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated over 200 times outside the reception range	- Reading measured value block, display group 008 ⇒ page 01-62 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64
00960		
Key button for CL driver's side		
Implausible signal Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Push-button defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Replace push-button - Reading measured value block, display group 001 ⇒ page 01-59
00961		
Key button for CL front passsenger side		
Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Push-button defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Replace push-button - Reading measured value block, display group 002 ⇒ page 01-59
01131		
Turn signal control		
Line interruption or short-circuit to positive	♦ Bulbs defective	- Replace bulb
Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01134		
Alarm horn (H12)		
Undefined switch status	♦ Alarm horn defective ♦ Fuse defective ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Replace alarm horn - Replace fuse - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01135		
Sensors for interior monitoring[1)]		
Line interruption/defective	♦ Sensor -G273 defective ♦ Sensor -G273 not fitted ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Replace sensor - Check installation - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram

1) It is not fitted on OCTAVIA vehicles.

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying faults
01179 Incorrect key programming		- Re-programme keys ⇒ page 01-64, Adaptation
01356 Signal: close all windows and STR [1] short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Sliding roof motor -V1- faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram - Replace sliding roof motor
01362 Close switch for tailgate -F124- short circuit to earth	♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Inspect mechanism of lock and release - Replace lock cylinder - Test wiring, plug connections and door switches according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 004 ⇒ page 01-60 - Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-61
01389 Open switch for tailgate -F124- short circuit to earth	♦ Mechanism of lock or lock cylinder stiff ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Inspect mechanism of lock and release - Replace lock cylinder - Test wiring, plug connections and door switches according to current flow diagram - Read measured value block, display group number 004 ⇒ page 01-60 - Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-61

[1] on the OCTAVIA only the signal for closing the sliding roof is used

Fault table for models 10.97 ➤ (central locking system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00000 No fault recognized	Self-diagnosis is ended if „no fault recognized“ appears after completing repairs.	
66535 Control unit defective	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ CL control unit faulty	- Test wiring and plug housing according to current flow diagram. - Replace CL control unit.
00668 Vehicle voltage tml. 30 Signal too small	♦ Battery discharged ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Charge battery. - Test wiring and plug housing according to current flow diagram.
00849 S contact at ignition starter switch undefined switch status	♦ Terminal 15 o.k., S contact faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-63.3, display zone 1. - Test wiring and plug housing according to current flow diagram.
00928 Locking unit for CL driver’s side -F220- implausible signal incorrect equipment	♦ Locking unit faulty (F220) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at driver’s door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating parts stiff ♦ Incorrect locking unit installed 1)	- Replace locking unit. - Test wiring, plug housing and door switches according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage. - Inspect mechanism and release. - Read measured value block, display group number 001 ⇒ page 01-63.1. - Replace locking unit.
00929 Locking unit for CL pass. side -F221- implausible signal incorrect equipment	♦ Locking unit faulty (F221) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at pass. door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating parts stiff ♦ Incorrect locking unit installed 1)	- Test wiring, plug housing and door switches according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage. - Inspect mechanism and release. - Read measured value block, display group number 002 ⇒ page 01-63.1. - Replace locking unit.

1) Different Safe function for countries with special regulations.

For models 10.97 ➤ (central locking system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00930 Locking unit CL rl -F222- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty (F222) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear left door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating parts stiff	- Replace locking unit. - Test wiring, plug housing and door switches according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage. - Inspect mechanism and release. - Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-63.2.
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect locking unit installed [1)]	- Replace locking unit.
00931 Locking unit CL rr -F223- implausible signal	♦ Locking unit faulty (F223) ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ No supply voltage for CL at rear right door ♦ Mechanism in locking unit and operating parts stiff	- Replace locking unit. - Test wiring, plug housing and door switches according to current flow diagram. - Test supply voltage. - Inspect mechanism and release. - Read measured value block, display group number 003 ⇒ page 01-63.2.
incorrect equipment	♦ Incorrect locking unit installed [1)]	- Replace locking unit.
00945 Crash sensor -G190- short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Output can also be tested by final control diagnosis for airbag ⇒ page 01-8.
00946 Interior light -W- short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Interior light or one of the reading lights faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and door switches according to current flow diagram. - Replace light. - Read measured value block, display group number 004 ⇒ page 01-63.2.
00948 Signal close sliding roof short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Sliding roof motor -V1- faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Replace sliding roof motor -V1-.

[1)] Different Safe function for countries with special regulations.

For models 10.97 ➤ (central locking system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00949 Tailgate CL motor -V 53- Lock undefined switch status implausible signal	♦ Motor (V 53) faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock stiff	- Replace CL tailgate motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Check mechanism and repair.
00950 Tailgate CL motor -V 53- Unlock undefined switch status	♦ Motor (V 53) faulty ♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Mechanism of lock stiff	- Replace CL tailgate motor. - Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Check mechanism and repair.
00952 Signal driver's door open short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Replace pushbutton. - Read measured value block, display group number 004 ⇒ page 01-63.2.
00953 Time limit interior light switch status undefined switch state implausible signal	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram. - Replace interior light.
00954 Terminal 50 relay short circuit to positive	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections	- Test wiring and plug connections according to current flow diagram.
00955 Key 1 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 009 ⇒ page 01-63.5. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64.
00956 Key 2 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 009 ⇒ page 01-63.5. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64.

For models 10.97 ➤ (central locking system of 2nd generation)

Readout on V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00957 Key 3 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 009 ⇒ page 01-63.5. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64.
00958 Key 4 out of detection range Adaptation limit exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated more than 200 times out of detection range	- Read measured value block, display group number 009 ⇒ page 01-63.5. - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-64.
01030 Key button CL driver side, Lock short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 001 ⇒ page 01-63.1. - Replace lock cylinder. - Inspect lock cylinder.
01031 Key button CL driver side, Unlock implausible signal short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 001 ⇒ page 01-63.1. - Replace lock cylinder. - Inspect lock cylinder.
01032 Key button CL pass. side, Lock short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 001 ⇒ page 01-63.1. - Replace lock cylinder. - Inspect lock cylinder.
01033 Key button CL pass. side, Unlock implausible signal short circuit to earth	♦ Faulty wiring or plug connections ♦ Pushbutton faulty ♦ Lock cylinder jamming	- Read measured value block, display group number 001 ⇒ page 01-63.1. - Replace lock cylinder. - Inspect lock cylinder.

Valid for vehicles 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation of central locking)

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01038 Central locking, thermo fuse		
	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Resistance in door lock	- Reading measured value block, display group 005 ⇒ page 01-63.3, display field 1 - Check door locks
01044 Control unit is wrongly coded		
	♦ A different control unit is fitted ♦ Control unit is wrongly coded	- Replace control unit - Check control unit coding
01131 Turn signal control		
Line interruption or short-circuit to positive	♦ Bulbs defective	- Replace bulb
Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01134 Alarm horn -H12		
Undefined switch status	♦ Alarm horn -H12 defective ♦ Fuse defective ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Replace alarm horn -H12 - Replace fuse - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01135 Sensors for interior monitoring		
Line interruption	♦ Sensor -G273 defective ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check installation - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
defective	♦ Sensor -G273 not fitted	- Replace sensor
01141 Rear lid release switch -E165		
Implausible signal	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Rear lid release switch -E165 defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram. - Replace rear lid release switch -E165 - Reading measured value block, display group 006 ⇒ page 01-63.3

For models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display on V.A.G 1552	Possible fault cause	Fault elimination
01179 wrong key programming		- reprogram key ⇒ page 01-64, adaptation - read measured value block, display group number 009 ⇒ page 01-63.5
01330 control unit for convenience defective power supply too great power supply too small no communication	♦ control unit defective ♦ power supply NOK ♦ not significant	- replace control unit ♦ in spite of fault input the system is OK: - erase fault memory - perform function test - check wires, plug connections and fuses with current flow diagram - check power supply
01362 Switch for tailgate closing -F124 Short-circuit to earth	♦ mechanical elements of lock activation or lock cylinder heavy ♦ defective wires or plug connections ♦ defective tailgate switch	- check mechanical elements and make smooth - replace lock cylinder - check wires, plug connections and door switches with current flow diagram - read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-63.3 - check switch for tailgate or replace
01389 switch for tailgate opening -F124 short-circuit to earth implausible signal	♦ mechanical elements of lock activation or lock cylinder heavy ♦ defective wires or plug connections ♦ defective tailgate switch	- check mechanical elements and make smooth - replace lock cylinder - check wires, plug connections and door switches with current flow diagram - read measured value block, display group number 006 ⇒ page 01-63.3 - check switch for tailgate or replace

Fault table for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
65535 136[1)] No fault detected	If after repair „No fault detected“ is displayed, the self-diagnosis is completed.	
65535 000[1)] Control unit defective	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ CL control unit defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Replace CL control unit
00668 Onboard voltage, terminal 30 Signal too small	♦ Battery discharged ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Charge battery - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Reading measured value block, display group 008 ⇒ page 01-63.6, display field 1 or 006 ⇒ page 01-63.10, display field 1
Signal too great	♦ Voltage regulator defective ♦ AC generator defective	- Check AC generator and voltage regulator - Reading measured value block, display group 008 ⇒ page 01-63.6, display field 1or 006 ⇒ page 01-63.10, display field 1
00849 S contact on ignition starter switch -D Undefined switch status	♦ Terminal 15 O.K, S contact defective ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Reading measured value block, display group 006 ⇒ page 01-63.6, display field 1 or 006 ⇒ page 01-63.10, display field 3 - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
00928 Locking unit for CL driver’s side -F220 Implausible signal	♦ Locking unit defective (F220) ♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ No supply voltage for CL on driver’s door ♦ Resistance in the mechanism of the locking unit and control elements	- Replace locking unit - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Check supply voltage. - Check mechanism and ensure smooth operation - Reading measured value block, display group 001 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 009 ⇒ page 01-63.12, display field 1
Wrong equipment	♦ other locking unit type fitted[2)]	- Replace locking unit

1) Code number for fault type

2) A different Safe function is used in countries with special regulations.

Valid for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00929 Locking unit for CL front passenger side -F221		
Implausible signal	♦ Locking unit defective (F221) ♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ No supply voltage for CL on front passenger door ♦ Resistance in the mechanism of the locking unit and control elements	- Replace locking unit - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Check supply voltage. - Check mechanism and ensure smooth operation - Reading measured value block, display group 002 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 009 ⇒ page 01-63.12, display field 2
Wrong equipment	♦ other locking unit type fitted[1)]	- Replace locking unit
00930 Locking unit for CL rear left -F222		
Implausible signal	♦ Locking unit defective (F222) ♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ No supply voltage for CL on rear left door ♦ Resistance in the mechanism of the locking unit and control elements	- Replace locking unit - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Check supply voltage. - Check mechanism and ensure smooth operation - Reading measured value block, display group 003 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 009 ⇒ page 01-63.12, display field 3
Wrong equipment	♦ other locking unit type fitted[1)]	- Replace locking unit
00931 Locking unit for CL rear right -F223		
Implausible signal	♦ Locking unit defective (F223) ♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ No supply voltage for CL on rear right door ♦ Resistance in the mechanism of the locking unit and control elements	- Replace locking unit - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Check supply voltage. - Check mechanism and ensure smooth operation - Reading measured value block, display group 003 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 009 ⇒ page 01-63.12, display field 4
Wrong equipment	♦ other locking unit type fitted[1)]	- Replace locking unit
00945 Crash sensor -G190		
Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Output can also be tested through the final control diagnosis for airbag ⇒ page 01-9

1) A different Safe function is used in countries with special regulations.

**Valid for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation of central locking),
05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)**

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00946 Interior light -W Short circuit to positive	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Interior light or one of the reading lights defective	- Check wiring, plug connections and door switch according to the current flow diagram - Replace light. - Reading measured value block, display group 004 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 010 ⇒ page 01-63.12
00948 Signal: Close sliding roof Short circuit to positive	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Motor for sliding sunroof -V1- defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Replace motor for sliding sunroof -V1-
00949 Motor for CL tailgate, LOCK -V53 (locked) Undefined switch status	♦ Motor for CL tailgate defective ♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Resistance in lock control mechanism	- Replace motor for CL tailgate - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Check lock control mechanism and ensure smooth operation
00950 Motor for CL tailgate, UNLOCK -V53 (unlocked) Undefined switch status	♦ Motor for CL tailgate defective ♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Resistance in lock control mechanism	- Replace motor for CL tailgate - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Check lock control mechanism and ensure smooth operation
00952 Signal driver's door open Short circuit to positive	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Rotary latch switch defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Rotary latch switch DD - Reading measured value block, display group 004 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 010 ⇒ page 01-63.12
00953 Time limit of interior light Undefined switch status Implausible signal	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram - Replace interior light

Valid for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2 ½ generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00954 Relay terminal 50 Short circuit to positive	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring, plug connections and door switch according to the current flow diagram
00955 Key 1 Adaptation limit is exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated over 200 times outside the reception range	- Reading measured value block, display group 009 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 014 ⇒ page 01-63.14 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-71
00956 Key 2 Adaptation limit is exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated over 200 times outside the reception range	- Reading measured value block, display group 009 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 014 ⇒ page 01-63.14 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-71
00957 Key 3 Adaptation limit is exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated over 200 times outside the reception range	- Reading measured value block, display group 009 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 014 ⇒ page 01-63.14 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-71
00958 Key 4 Adaptation limit is exceeded	♦ Key not adapted ♦ Key was operated over 200 times outside the reception range	- Reading measured value block, display group 009 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 014 ⇒ page 01-63.14 - Adaptation ⇒ page 01-71
01030 Key button for CL driver side, lock Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Push-button defective ♦ Locking cylinder loose	- Reading measured value block, display group 001 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 007 ⇒ page 01-63.11 - Replace push-button - Check lock cylinder
01031 Key button for CL driver side, lock Implausible signal Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Push-button defective ♦ Locking cylinder loose	- Reading measured value block, display group 001 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 007 ⇒ page 01-63.11 - Replace push-button - Check lock cylinder
01032 Key button for CL front passenger side, lock Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Push-button defective ♦ Locking cylinder loose	- Reading measured value block, display group 002 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 007 ⇒ page 01-63.11 - Replace push-button - Check lock cylinder

Valid for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2 ½ generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01033 Key button for CL front passenger side, unlock		
Implausible signal	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Reading measured value block, display group 002 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 007 ⇒ page 01-63.11
Short circuit to earth	♦ Push-button defective ♦ Lock cylinder loose	- Replace push-button - Check lock cylinder
01038 Central locking, thermo fuse		
	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Resistance in door lock	- Reading measured value block, display group 005 ⇒ page 01-63.6, display field 1 or 008 ⇒ page 01-63.11, display field 4 - Check door lock
01044 Control unit is wrongly coded		
	♦ A different control unit is fitted ♦ Control unit is wrongly coded	- Replace control unit - Check control unit coding
01131 Turn signal control		
Line interruption or short-circuit to positive	♦ Bulbs defective	- Replace bulb
Short circuit to earth	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
01134 Alarm horn -H12		
Undefined switch status	♦ Alarm horn -H12 defective	- Replace alarm horn -H12
Defective	♦ Fuse defective	- Replace fuse
No communication	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
Internal power supply	♦ Alarm system with independent power supply defective	- Check or replace alarm system with independent power supply
01135 Sensors for interior monitoring		
Line interruption	♦ Sensor -G273 not fitted ♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check installation - Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram
Defective	♦ Sensor -G273 defective	- Replace sensor

Valid for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01141 Rear lid release switch -E165 Implausible signal	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Rear lid release switch -E165-	- Check wiring and plug connections according to the current flow diagram. - Replace rear lid release switch -E165- - Reading measured value block, display group 006 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 008 ⇒ page 01-63.11
01179 Wrong key programming	♦ Key adaptation was not carried out correctly	- Program key again ⇒ page 01-71, Adaptation - Reading measured value block, display group 009 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 014 ⇒ page 01-63.14
01355 Signal close all windows[1)] Short circuit to positive	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Resistance in lock control mechanism or lock cylinder	- Check wiring, plug connections and fuses according to the current flow diagram - Check lock mechanism and ensure smooth operation
01356 Signal close all windows and SAD[1)] Short circuit to positive	♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Resistance in lock control mechanism or lock cylinder	- Check wiring, plug connections and fuses according to the current flow diagram - Check lock mechanism and ensure smooth operation
01362 Rear lid switch: Close -F124 Short circuit to earth	♦ Resistance in lock control mechanism or lock cylinder ♦ Cables or plug connections defective ♦ Rear lid switch defective	- Check lock mechanism and ensure smooth operation - Replace lock cylinder - Check wiring, plug connections and door switch according to the current flow diagram - Reading measured value block, display group 006 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 008 ⇒ page 01-63.11 - Check or replace rear lid switch

1) Not fitted on Octavia

Valid for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)

Read out on display of V.A.G 1552	Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01389 Rear lid switch: Open -F124		
Short circuit to signal Implausible signal	♦ Resistance in lock control mechanism or lock cylinder	- Check lock mechanism and ensure smooth operation - Replace lock cylinder
	♦ Cables or plug connections defective	- Check wiring, plug connections and door switch according to the current flow diagram - Reading measured value block, display group 006 ⇒ page 01-63.6 or 008 ⇒ page 01-63.11
	♦ Rear lid switch defective	- Check or replace rear lid switch

Final control diagnosis

- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select central locking control unit ⇒ page 01-46.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press keys -0- and -3-.
Test of vehicle systems Q 03 - Final control diagnosis	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Final control diagnosis → Alarm horn	◄ Readout in display: (only in the case of control unit with alarm function ⇒ page 01-48, Interrogating control unit version) Alarm horn sounds.
	- Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → Actuation turn signal lights	◄ Readout in display: (only in the case of control unit with alarm function ⇒ page 01-48, Interrogating control unit version) Turn signal lights come on.
	- Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → Interior light W	◄ Readout in display: Interior light comes on (switch should be in „door contact“ position).
	- Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → Signal, All windows open	◄ Readout in display: Electric window operation not fitted with this equipment level.
	- Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → Signal, All windows and sliding roof close	◄ Readout in display: Sliding roof closes (if fitted). Electric window operation not fitted with this equipment level.
	- Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → Warning light CL Safe	◄ Readout in display: Warning light in door trim panel comes on.
	- Press → key.
Final control diagnosis → END	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press → key.

Function unknown or cannot be carried at the moment →	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- End output ⇒ page 01-56.

Erasing fault memory

Requirements:

- ♦ Fault has been rectified
- ♦ Fault memory has once again been interrogated
- ♦ Operational check has been carried out
- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select central locking control unit ⇒ page 01-46.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press keys -0- and -5-.
Test of vehicle systems Q 05 Erase fault memory	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Test of vehicle systems → Fault memory is erased!	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:

Notes:

Attention!
Fault memory was not interrogated

◄ ♦ *If this readout appears in the display, the test sequence was not carried out correctly.*

♦ *Adhere strictly to the test sequence; first of all interrogate fault memory, then erase.*

Ending output

- Press keys -0- and -6-.

Test of vehicle systems Q 06 End output	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Separate plug connections to the fault reader V.A.G 1552.

Coding control unit

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and enter address word for central locking system ⇒ page 01-46.

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX

◄ Read-out on display:

- Enter function 07.

Vehicle system test Q 07 Coding control unit

◄ Read-out on display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Coding control unit Enter code number XXXXX

◄ Read-out on display:

- Enter code number according to table:

Table of codes for 1st, 2nd, 2.5 generation of central locking

Central locking	Code number
Individual door opening	04096
Overall door opening	04097

Table of codes for 3rd generation of central locking

	Code number
Basic code number (for all equipment) Octavia	00002
Central locking without power-window lifter	00016
Central locking and 2 power-window lifters	00064
Central locking and 4 power-window lifters	00256
Individual door opening	00000
Overall door opening	00001

Other code numbers must be added to the basic code number according to vehicle equipment, in order to obtain the final code number.

Example

Should be selected: Central locking without power window lifters with overall door opening

00002 + 00016 + 00001 = 00019

For all vehicles

- Confirm entry with key Q.

1J0 962 258 Central locking V 34 → Coding 04097 WSC 12345	◄ The control unit identification, the coding and the workshop code are shown on the display, e.g.: If the indicated display content appears, the coding was successful.
Fault → Coding XXXXX not accepted	◄ If the control unit rejects an entered code number, the following message will be displayed: In this case the control unit was not coded with the data required for the vehicle. One must check whether the right control unit was fitted on the vehicle (part number and character index), or if the right code was entered. - Repeat coding If the control unit cannot be coded (correct control unit, correct code number) the control unit is defective. End function: - → Press key.
Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out on display: - Enter function 06. - Confirm entry with key Q.
Vehicle system test Q 06 End output	◄ Read-out on display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out on display:

Reading measured value block

The measured value block is subdivided into 9 to 16 display groups (according to generation of central locking). Each display group is subdivided into max. 4 display fields.

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and enter address word for central locking system ⇒ page 01-46.

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out on display: - Enter function 08.
Vehicle system test Q 08 Reading measured value block	◄ Read-out on display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Reading measured value block → Enter display group number XXX	◄ Read-out on display:

- Select the desired display group number ⇒ page 01-59, 01-63.1, 01-63.6 or 01-63.8 and confirm entry with key Q.

Reading measured value block 1 →
1 2 3 4

◄ Read-out on display:

The breakdown of the display contents in the individual display fields can be found in the test table.
Test table ⇒ page 01-59, 01-63.1, 01-63.6 or 01-63.8.

To display other measured value blocks:

- Press key „C“, select desired display group number and confirm entry with key Q.

End measured value block test:

- → Press key.

Vehicle system test HELP
Select function XX

◄ Read-out on display:

Note:

After ending the function „Reading measured value block“ interrogate the fault memory ⇒ page 01-49.

Test table for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation central locking system)

Note:

Proceed as follows in order to switch into another display group:

Display group	V.A.G 1552	V.A.G 1551
higher	Press ↑ key	Press key -3-
lower	Press ↓ key	Press key -1-
skipping	Press key -C-	Press key -C-

Display group number 001 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation central locking system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Key switch driver door	off on not operated implausible	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect lock mechanism - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component.
2	Lock/Unlock switch [1]	not operated	- Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check.
3	Driver door feedback	locked unlock	- Once again interrogate fault memory.
4	Driver door feedback, SAFE function activated	safe not safe	

[1] Is not fitted to Octavia.

Display group number 002 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation central locking system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Key switch passenger door	off on not operated implausible	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect lock mechanism - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight installation and at the same time check the display. If the readout in display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Carry out operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Lock/Unlock switch [1]	not operated	
3	Passenger door feedback	locked unlock	
4	Passenger door feedback, SAFE function activated	safe not safe	

[1] Is not fitted to Octavia.

Display group number 003

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Rear right door feedback	lock unlock	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect lock mechanism - Inspect that plug connections of relevant circuit are correct and tightly fitted and at the same time check the display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component.
2	Rear right door feedback, SAFE function activated	safe not safe	- Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
3	Rear left door feedback	lock unlock	
4	Rear left door feedback, SAFE function activated	safe not safe	

Display group number 004

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Driver door switch	Door open Door closed	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect that plug connections of relevant circuit are correct and tightly fitted and at the same time check the display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault, or replace the relevant component.
2	Passenger door switch	Door open Door closed	- Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
4	Tailgate switch	Tailgate open Tailgate closed	

Display group number 005

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	CL temperature cut-off	yes no	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight fitting and at the same time check the display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
2	Road speed signal[1)]	km/h	
3	Remote control key buttons[1)] (el. opening of tailgate and retrieving alarm function)	off on RLR PANIC	
4	Interior motion sensor[1)]	yes no not fitted	

1) is not fitted to OCTAVIA

Display group number 006

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	S contact	operated not operated	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight fitting and at the same time check the display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
2	Key number [1)]	1...4	When a learned remote control key is operated, what is displayed here is the position to which the keys are learned. If tester indicates „0“ although a remote control key is operated, the key must be relearned by Adaptation (10).
3	Ignition	Tml. 15 on Tml. 15 off	- Visual inspection of wiring - Inspect plug connections of relevant circuit for correct and tight fitting and at the same time check the display. If the readout in the display does not change when operated, rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory - Carry out operational check - Once again interrogate fault memory
4	Tailgate key switch	off on not operated implausible	

1) for alarm system, only with control unit 1J0 962 258A

Display group number 007

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Engine hood and radio contact switch[1)]	activated deactivated not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guides - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit while observing the display If the display content does not change during activation, rectify fault or replace the relevant component.
2	Tailgate switch	open closed	- Erase fault memory. - Perform a functional check.
3	Sliding/tilting roof locked	yes no	- Erase fault memory. - Perform a functional check.
4	All windows unlocked[2)]	yes no	

1) for alarm system, only on control unit 1J0 962 258A
2) is not fitted on OCTAVIA

Display group number 008

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Fixed code known[1)]	O.K. N.O.K no measured value: (key not yet activated)	If „N.O.K“: - Key code is outside of reception range Re-initialise radio control via function 10 (adaptation) ⇒ page 01-64
2	Code in reception range[1)]	O.K. N.O.K no measured value: (key not yet activated)	If „no measured value“ - Battery in key discharged, replace battery. - Remote control defective, replace key
3	Algorithm[1)]	O.K. N.O.K no measured value: (key not yet activated)	

1) for alarm system, only on control unit 1J0 962 258A

Display group number 009 for vehicles ➤ 09.97 (1st generation central locking system)

Display zone	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Last alarm source[1)]	Readout 1....65535	What is displayed are only the last 4 alarm sources. e.g. „64“ = hood contact switch (⇒ Table below for possible sources of alarm)
2	Second last alarm source[1)]		
3	3rd last alarm source[1)]		
4	4th last alarm source[1)]		

1) For alarm system, only with control unit 1J0 962 258A

Possible sources of alarm for vehicles (1st generation central locking system)

Source of alarm	Readout
Tailgate contact switch	1
RL door switch	2
RR door switch	4
FR door switch	8
Ignition tml. 15	16
Interior monitor[1)]	32
Bonnet contact switch	64
FL door switch	128

1) Is not fitted to OCTAVIA

Test table for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display group number 001 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Driver's door key switch	On Off Deactivated Implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check mechanical locking elements - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Lock/unlock switch 1)	Deactivated	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	Acknowledgement - Driver's door	Locked Unlocked	- Interrogate fault memory again.
4	Acknowledgement - Driver's door, SAFE function activated	Safe Not safe	

1) Not fitted on Octavia

Display group number 002 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Driver's door key switch	On Off deactivated implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check mechanical locking elements - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Lock/unlock switch 1)	deactivated	
3	Acknowledgement - passenger's door	locked unlocked	
4	Acknowledgement - passenger's door, SAFE function activated	safe not safe	

1) Not fitted on Octavia

Display group number 003 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Acknowledgement door RL	Locked Unlocked	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check mechanical lock elements - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Acknowledgement door RR, SAFE function activated	Safe Not safe	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Acknowledgement door RL	Locked Unlocked	
4	Acknowledgement door RL, SAFE function activated	Safe Not safe	

Display group number 004 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Door handle - driver's door	Door open Door closed	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Door handle passenger's door	Door open Door closed	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Door switch RR, RL	Door open Door closed	

Display group number 005 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Temperature disconnection CL	Yes No	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Signal speed [1]	km/h	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Key switch remote control [1]	0-0-0-0 [2]	
4	Sensor interior monitoring	Yes No Not fitted	

[1] Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-48

[2] Open, closed, HDF; Panic; 0 = deactivated; 1 = activated.

Display group number 006 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	S contact	Activated Deactivated	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Key number [1]	1...4	If an updated key is activated the display will show in which position the key was updated. If the tester displays '0' even though a radio key is activated the key must be updated by adaptation (10).
3	Key switch tailgate	open closed deactivated implausible	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
4	Ignition	Term. 15 ON Term. 15 OFF	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.

[1] Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-48

Display group number 007 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Engine bonnet and radio contact switch 1)	Open Closed Not fitted	- Visual inspection of cable running - Check plug connections of the relevant circuits for correct connection and also check display. If the display content does not change during activation, the fault must be eliminated or the relevant component replaced.
2	Tailgate switch	Open Closed	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test.
3	Close all windows and sliding roof	Yes No	
4	Open all windows 2)	Yes No Deactivated	

1) Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm functions ⇒ page 01-48

2) Not fitted on Octavia

Display group number 008 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Onboard voltage Term. 30	Voltage	- Check voltage.
2	HDF tip switch and HD handle 1)	deactivated	
3	IMON disconnection	not fitted on off	- Interrogate fault memory again.

1) Not fitted on Octavia

Display group number 009 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Fixed code known 1)	OK NOK No measured value (key not activated)	If NOK: - key code outside capture range. Learn radio remote control via function 10 (adaptation) again ⇒ page 01-64.
2	Code in capture range 1)	OK NOK No measured value (key not activated)	If no measured value: - Key battery discharged, change battery. - Defective remote control, replace key.
3	Algorithm 1)	OK NOK No measured value (key not activated)	

1) Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-48.

Display group number 010 for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Last alarm source 1)	Display 1…65535	The last 4 DWA set-off ranges are displayed! e.g. '4' = engine bonnet contact switch (possible alarm source see table below ⇒ page 01-63.5)
2	Penultimate alarm source 1)		
3	3rd last alarm source 1)		
4	4th last alarm source 1)		

1) Control unit with receiver and alarm function ⇒ page 01-48.

Possible alarm sources for models 10.97 ➤ (2nd generation central locking)

Alarm sources	Display
Interior monitoring	2
Engine bonnet contact switch	4
Ignition term. 15	8
Tailgate contact switch	16
Door switch RR, RL	32
Door switch passenger	64
Door switch driver	128
No alarm	255

Test table for models 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation central locking)

Display group 001 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.1 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 002 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.1 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 003 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.2 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 004 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.2 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 005 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.3 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 006 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.3 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 007 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.4 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 008 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.4 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group 009 for models 08.98 ➤ ⇒ Page 01-63.5 (2nd generation central locking)

Display group number 010 for models 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation central locking)

Display field	Denomination	Display content	Fault elimination
1	Last alarm source 1)	Display 1…65535	The last 4 DWA set-off ranges are displayed! e.g. '4' = engine bonnet contact switch (possible alarm source ⇒ page 01-63.6)
2	Penultimate alarm source 1)		
3	3rd last alarm source 1)		
4	4th last alarm source 1)		

1) Control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm functions ⇒ page 01-48.

Possible alarm sources for models 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation central locking)

Alarm sources	Display
Not fitted	1
Interior monitoring	2
Engine bonnet contact switch	4
Ignition term. 15	8
Tailgate contact switch	16
Door switch RR, RL	32
Door switch passenger	64
Door switch driver	128
No alarm	255

Display group number 011 for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Immobilizer key detection[1)]	yes no not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Adapt ignition key to the control electronics of the immobilizer. - Test or adapt control electronics of the immobilizer.
2	Automatic switch for inside locking, driver's side[1)]	not activated activated not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Perform function test. - Erase fault memory.
3	Tailgate - Detent[1)]	open closed not fitted	

[1)] It is not fitted on Octavia

Test table for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display group number 001 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Central switch for window lifter (E189) Door switch - driver door	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated not fitted implausible	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	WL thermo fuse DS	yes no not fitted	
3	Child safety catch switch	open closed not fitted	

Display group number 002 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Central switch for window lifter (E189) Front passenger side switch	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated not fitted implausible	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Central switch for window lifter (E189) RR switch	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated not fitted implausible	
3	Central switch for window lifter (E189) RL switch	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated not fitted implausible	

Display group number 003 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Mirror adjustment switch	not activated pos. X+ pos./X- pos./Y+ pos./Y- not fitted implausible	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component.
2	Mirror selection switch	left right fold in not activated not fitted implausible	- Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Mirror adjustment switch DS	folded in folded out not fitted	
4	Mirror heating	on off not fitted	

Display group number 004 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Window lifter switch PS	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated not fitted implausible	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Window lifter thermo fuse PS	yes no not fitted	
3	Mirror adjustment switch PS	folded in folded out not fitted	

Display group number 005 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Switch for window lifter RL (E52)	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated not fitted implausible	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Window lifter thermo fuse RL	yes no not fitted	
3	Switch for window lifter RL (E54)	autom. opening autom. closing man. opening man. closing not activated not fitted implausible	
4	Window lifter thermo fuse RR	yes no not fitted	

Display group number 006 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Voltage tml. 30	xx.x V	- Check voltage.
2	Ignition tml. 15	tml. 15 on tml. 15 off no communi-cation	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	S contact	activated not activated no communi-cation	
4	Signal speed km/h	0-255 km/h	

Display group number 007 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Key button - driver door	lock unlock not activated	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Key switch - PS	lock unlock not activated	
3	Lock/unlock switch - DD	lock unlock not activated implausible	
4	Lock/unlock switch - PD	lock unlock not activated implausible	

Display group number 008 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Engine hood contact	open close not fitted no communi-cation	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Tailgate key switch	lock unlock not activated implausible	
3	Tailgate contact switch	open close no communi-cation	
4	CL thermo fuse	no yes not fitted	

Display group number 009 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	CL acknowledgement DD	lock unlock safe not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	CL acknowledgement PD	lock unlock safe not fitted	
3	CL acknowledgement RL	lock unlock safe not fitted	
4	CL acknowledgement RR	lock unlock safe not fitted	

Display group number 010 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Rotary latch switch DD	open closed	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
2	Rotary latch switch PD	open closed	
3	Rotary latch switch RL	open closed	
4	Rotary latch switch RR	open closed	

Display group number 011 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Immobilizer key detection	yes no not fitted no communi- cation	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check immobilizer ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 96. - Reinitialise key via function 10 „Adaptation“ ⇒ page 01-71.
2	Automatic lock/unlock switch - DD	open closed not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Enable sliding/tilting roof	yes no	
4	Databus	Single wire Two-wire	- Check databus ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 90.

Display group number 012 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Driver’s door equipment	0[1)] 1[2)]	- These display fields only indicate what the relevant vehicle equipment looks like. - Here you can check, e.g. which control units are connected to the system and which are activated or blocked.
2	Front passenger door equipment	0[1)] 1[2)]	
3	Rear left door equipment	0[1)] 1[2)]	
4	Rear right door equipment	0[1)] 1[2)]	

1) No communication.

2) Operation.

Display group number 013 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	HDF switch and tailgate key switch[1)]	not activated	
2	Tailgate contact switch	open close not fitted	- Visual inspection of the cable guide. - Check the correct fitting and tightness of the plug connections of the relevant circuit and check the display again. If the display content is changed during the test, rectify fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform function test. - Interrogate fault memory again.
3	Illumination of switch	0...100%	

1) Not fitted on Octavia

Display group number 014 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Fixed code known[1)]	O.K. N.O.K No measured value: (key not having been activated)	If N.O.K.: - Key code is outside of reception range. Re-initialise radio remote control via function „10“ (adaptation) ⇒ page 01-71.
2	Code in reception range[1)]	O.K. N.O.K No measured value: (key not having been activated)	If „No measured value“: - Battery in key discharged, change battery. - Remote control defective, replace key.
3	Algorithm[1)]	O.K. N.O.K No measured value: (key not having been activated)	
4	Code number[1)]	0...4	When activating a key initialised by radio control, the position in which the key was initialised is displayed here. If the tester display „0“, even though a radio control button was pressed, the key must be re-initialised via adaptation (function 10) ⇒ page 01-71.

1) Only on control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-48.1.

Display group number 015 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Remote control key buttons[3)]	0[1)] 1[2)]	
2	Interior monitor sensor[3)]	yes no not fitted	
3	IRUE deactivation[3)]	on off not fitted	

1) Not activated

2) Activated

3) Only on control unit with receiver for remote control and alarm function ⇒ page 01-48.1.

Display group number 016 for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Display field	Denomination	Display contents	Fault elimination
1	Last alarm source[1)]	Display 1...65535	Only the last 4 alarm sources are displayed! e.g. „32“ = Engine hood contact switch (possible alarm sources see table below)
2	Preultimate alarm source[1)]		
3	3rd Last source[1)]		
4	4th Last source[1)]		

1) Only on control unit with alarm function ⇒ page 01-48.1.

Possible alarm sources for vehicles 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of convenience system)

Alarm sources	Display
Rotary latch switch DD	1
Rotary latch switch RL	2
Rotary latch switch RR	4
Rotary latch switch PD	8
Tailgate contact switch	16
Immobilizer - none or wrong key	17
Interruption of communication with alarm system with independent supply	18
Engine hood contact switch	32
Ignition - tml. 15	64
Interior monitor	128
No alarm	255

Adaptation

For models 07.98 ➤
(1st and 2nd generation central locking system)

Channel number	Page
00- Adaptation of ignition keys with radio remote control, delete key 1) 2)	01-64
01 - Adaptation of ignition keys with radio remote control, update key 1) 2)	01-64
03 - Auto lock/unlock: the vehicle is locked/unlocked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached 2)	01-67
04 - IMON disconnection: interior monitoring is activated or deactivated by pressing the CL/IK twice 2)	01-67
05 - Unlock. Horn off and on 2)	01-68
06 - Lock. Horn off and on 2)	01-69
07 - Unlocking indicators of indicator lights off and on 2)	01-69
08 - Locking indicators of indicator lights off and on 2)	01-70

1) For models ➤ 09.97

2) For models 10.97 ➤

Adaptation of the ignition keys with radio remote control

Notes:

- *only for control unit with radio remote control ⇒ page 01-48.*
- *If new or additional ignition keys are required, they must be adapted to the control electronics of the immobiliser and convenience system.*
- *All, i.e. all available ignition keys must be adapted.*
- *The number of already adapted keys is displayed when the adaptation function is selected.*
- *Adaptation can be interrupted by pressing key 'C' on the V.A.G 1552.*
- *The plant number (workshop code) of the V.A.G 1551 is stored during adaptation of the ignition keys by the immobiliser control.*

Requirements:

- ♦ All ignition keys must be present. If no old key is available see 'Procedure for key loss'.
  ⇒ Electrical system; self-diagnosis; Adaptation of ignition keys, Rep. Gr. 96.
- ♦ Key holder with covered PIN is present, if not see 'Detecting the PIN'
  ⇒ Electrical system; self-diagnosis; Adaptation of ignition keys, Rep. Gr. 96.
- ♦ Insert mechanically fitting ignition key in the ignition.
- Connect fault reader V.A.G 1552 and select central control unit for central locking system ⇒ page 01-46.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys -1- and -0-.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 0 (with channel number 00 all keys are deleted). - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Q Delete learning values?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation → Learned values are deleted	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Enter address word XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 0 and 1 (with channel number 01 all keys are updated).

Channel 1 Adaptation	1	→
Key	1	- ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

The top line displays how many keys must be updated (Standard = 1). Select key number with keys '↑' and '↓', 4 at the most.

- → press key.

Channel 1 Adaptation	3	→
Keys	3	- ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:
Number of radio keys to be updated

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 1 Adaptation	3	Q
Store changed value?		

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 1 Adaptation	3	→
Changed value stored		

◄ Read-out in display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems	HELP
Enter address word XX	

◄ Read-out in display:

- switch off ignition.

- On each radio key to be updated activate a key once (in the above example on 3 keys).

Note:

- *All 3 keys (see example) can be updated in adaptation operation.*
- *When adapting all keys 30 seconds must not be exceeded.*

The adaptation of the ignition keys is automatically terminated, if:

- The number of keys to be updated is reached.
- The key of radio key to be updated is activated more than once.
- The allowed adaptation time of 30 seconds after switching on the ignition with the 2nd key is exceeded (fault is stored).

- Select function 02 ‘interrogate fault memory’. If no fault is stored, the key adaptation was successful.

- Perform functional test for (all) radio keys.

Auto lock/unlock: Vehicle is locked and unlocked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 3.
Channel 3 Adaptation 0 → Auto lock/unlock off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys ‘↑’ and ‘↓’.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Auto lock/unlock on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

IMON disconnection: Interior monitoring is activated or deactivated by pressing CL CU twice

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 0 and 4.

Channel 4 Adaptation	0	→
Interior monitoring	off	- ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.

Channel 4 Adaptation	1	Q
Interior monitoring	on	- ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 4 Adaptation	1	Q
Store changed value?		

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 4 Adaptation	1	→
Changed value stored		

◄ Read-out in display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems	HELP
Select function XX	

◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivating and activating alarm when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems	Q
10 - Adaptation	

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Adaptation
Enter channel number XX

◄ Read-out in display:

- Press keys 0 and 5.

Channel 5 Adaptation	0	→
Unlocked beep	off	- ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.

Channel 5 Adaptation	1	Q
Unlocked beep	on	- ↑ - ↓ -

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 5 Adaptation	1	Q
Store changed value?		

◄ Read-out in display:

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 5 Adaptation	1	→
Changed value stored		

◄ Read-out in display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems	HELP
Select function XX	

◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of alarm when closing

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 6.
Channel 6 Adaptation 0 → Locked beep off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Locked beep on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 6 Adaptation 3 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of indicator lights when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 7.
Channel 7 Adaptation 0 → Unlocked indicators off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Unlocked indicators on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of indicator lights when closing

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 7.
Channel 8 Adaptation 0 → Locked indicators off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 Q Locked indicators on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Adaptation for vehicles 08.98 ➤ (2.5 generation of central locking), 05.01 ➤ (3rd generation of central locking)

Channel number	Page number
00 - Adaptation of ignition keys with radio remote control, erase initialised key	01-64
01 - Adaptation of ignition keys with radio remote control, initialise new key	01-64
03 - Auto-Lock/Unlock: The vehicle is locked when a speed of more than 15 km/h is reached.	01-71
04 - Auto-Lock/Unlock: The vehicle is unlocked when the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock.	01-72
05 - IRUE deactivation: To activate or deactivate interior monitoring press CL-ZU twice	01-72
06 - Unlocking is confirmed by a horn tone	01-73
07 - Locking is confirmed by a horn tone	01-74
08 - Unlocking is confirmed by the indicator lights flashing	01-74
09 - Locking is confirmed by the indicator lights flashing	01-75
10 - Country specific setting for alarm activation with independent power supply	01-76

Auto-Lock/Unlock: The vehicle is locked when a speed of more than 15 km/h is reached

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out on display: - Enter function 10
Vehicle system test Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out on display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out on display: - Press keys 0 and 3.
Channel 3 Adaptation 0 → Auto-Lock/Unlock off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out on display: - Select adaptation value with keys ↑ and ↓.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Auto-Lock/Unlock on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out on display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out on display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 3 Adaptation 1 → Changed value is stored	◄ Read-out on display:

- → press key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Auto lock/unlock: Vehicle is locked and unlocked when ignition key is removed from ignition

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 4.
Channel 4 Adaptation 0 → Auto lock/unlock off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 Q Auto lock/unlock on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 4 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Connection and disconnection of the double lock function - activation and deactivation of interior monitoring

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 5.

Channel 5 Adaptation 0 → Interior monitoring off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 Q Interior monitoring on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 5 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: .
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivating and activating alarm when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 6.
Channel 6 Adaptation 0 → Unlocked beep off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Unlocked beep on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 6 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of alarm when closing

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 1 and 0.
Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 7.
Channel 7 Adaptation 0 → Locked beep off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Locked beep on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 7 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 7 Adaptation 3 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of indicator lights when opening

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 0 and 8.
Channel 8 Adaptation 0 → Unlocked indicators off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 Q Unlocked indicators on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.

Channel 8 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 8 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Deactivation and activation of indicator lights when closing

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display: - Press keys 0 and 9.
Channel 9 Adaptation 0 → Locked indicators off - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 9 Adaptation 1 Q Locked indicators on - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 9 Adaptation 1 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display: - Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 9 Adaptation 1 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display: - → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Setting alarm horn: Programming alarm behaviour in compliance with country regulations

- Press keys 1 and 0.

Test of vehicle systems Q 10 - Adaptation	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Adaptation Enter channel number XX	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Press keys 1 and 0.
Channel 10 Adaptation 1 → Setting alarm horn Rest. Eur. - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Select adaptation value with keys '↑' and '↓'.
Channel 10 Adaptation 2 → Setting alarm horn Germany - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
Channel 10 Adaptation 3 → Setting alarm horn Great Britain - ↑ - ↓ -	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 10 Adaptation 3 Q Store changed value?	◄ Read-out in display:
	- Confirm entry with key Q.
Channel 10 Adaptation 3 → Changed value stored	◄ Read-out in display:
	- → press key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Read-out in display:

Self-diagnosis of electrically operated seats with memory

System description

System consists of:

- Seat control unit
- Convenience system central control unit
- Driver door control unit
- Passenger door control unit
- Switch unit in driver seat
- Electric seat system

The system performs the following functions:

- Adjusting driver seat height into the selected position with switches for individual directions
- Automatic adjustment of driver seat height and adjustment of rear-view mirror by selecting a memory
- Automatic adjustment of driver seat height and adjustment of rear-view mirror when vehicle unlocked with remote control

The control unit for the electrically operated seats with memory is located in the lower area of the driver seat frame.

Operating electrically operated seat with memory ⇒ Owner's Manual.

Initialising seats

When the seat is connected for the first time to the supply voltage, or when the control unit and the mechanism for the electrically operated seat is replaced, it is necessary to carry out an initialisation of the seat.

Initialisation is performed by moving the backrest into the front end stop with the driver open. The seat memory does not operate unless initialising is performed. This initialising must not be performed if the voltage is less than 10.5 V as correct identification of the front stop would not be performed.

Note:

If the automatic movement of the seat is interrupted by adjusting the seat manually, once again operate the switch for the appropriate direction of movement and move the seat the full distance.

Once initialising of the seat has been performed, it is not necessary to repeat initialising after disconnecting the seat and re-connecting it to the voltage supply.

Initialising can be switched off once the backrest has been moved up to the front stop and the switch is operated for a further 5 seconds or so. Switching off initialising is indicated by a double tone signal. It may be necessary to switch off initialising, for example, for installing an existing control unit in a new seat.

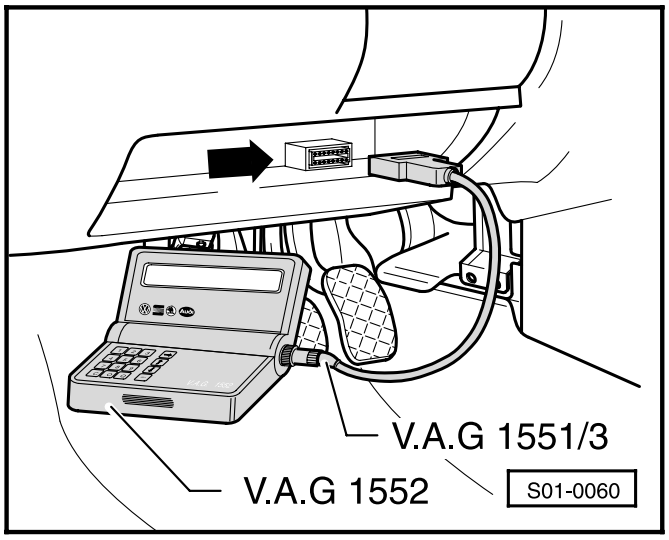
Notes:

- *The description below refers only to vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 with programme card 6.0.*
- *Use of vehicle system tester V.A.G 1551 with programme card 9.0 is similar with the exception of specific differences (e.g. different readouts in display, use of printer).*
- *In order to end diagnosis or to switch to another address word, it is necessary to select function 06 „End output“.*

The fault information displayed is used to refer to a fault table with information regarding the possible causes in order to carry out specific repair measures.

Temporary faults (such as open circuit in wiring or loose contacts at plug connections), are also stored in the fault memory. These faults are indicated as sporadic faults by „SP“.

Connecting vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and selecting address word for driver seat height adjustment



Special tools, testers and aids required

- Vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552
- Diagnostic cable V.A.G 1551/3, 3A, 3B, or 3C

Test requirements for self-diagnosis

- All fuses according to current flow diagram o.k.
- Battery voltage at least 11.5 V

◄- Switch ignition off and connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 with appropriate cable.

- Switch on ignition

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◀ Readout on display:

- Enter address word 36.

Vehicle system test Q 36 - Seat adjustment - Front passenger[1)]	◀ Readout on display:

[1)] Valid for driver seat

- Confirm entry with key Q.

Vehicle system test HELP Tester sends address word 36	◀ Readout on display:

Notes:

- *One of the following four displays will appear in the event of a communication set-up failure between vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and the control unit.*
- *Press „HELP“ key to display the possible fault causes.*

Vehicle system test HELP K-cable does not connect to pos. term.	◀ The ignition must be switched on!
Vehicle system test → No signal from control unit	◀ Malfunctions occurred at the start of or during the program (external sources of interference).
Vehicle system test → Fault in communication set-up	◀ Inspect the connection of the vehicle system tester, also the communication cable and the relevant vehicle system ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations.

- After removing the possible fault causes re-enter address word 36 and confirm the entry with key Q.

Vehicle system test Tester sends address word 36	◀ Readout on display after entering address word 36.
3B1959760A Seat adjustment FS 0003 →	◀ The vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 displays the control unit identification, e. g.:

- Press key →.

Vehicle system test HELP Select function XX	◀ Readout on display:

List of available functions

		Page
01	Interrogating control unit version	⇒ 01-80
02	Interrogating fault memory	⇒ 01-81
05	Erasing fault memory	⇒ 01-82
06	Ending output	⇒ 01-82
08	Reading measured value block	⇒ 01-88

Interrogating control unit version

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 36 ⇒ page 01-78.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX

◄- Readout in display:

- Select function 01.

Test of vehicle systems Q 01 - Interrogate control unit version

◄- Readout in display:

- Confirm entry with the key Q.

3B1959760A Seat adjustment DS 0003 →

◄- The control unit identification number appears in the display of vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 (example):

  - ♦ 3B1959760A = Part No. of control unit
  - ♦ Seat adjustment = System designation
  - ♦ DS = Control unit of driver seat
  - ♦ 0003 = Programme status number

- Press → key.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX

◄- Readout in display:

- End output (function 06) ⇒ page 01-82.

Interrogating fault memory

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 36 ⇒ page 01-78.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Select function 02.
Test of vehicle systems Q 02 - Interrogate fault memory	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
X faults recognised!	◄ The number of stored faults appears in the display.
	The stored faults can be displayed one after the other by pressing the → key.
	Example:
01008 035 - Note: Emergency switch on!	◄ The following readout appears in the display:
	- Rectify fault by referring to the fault table ⇒ page 01-83.
No fault recognised! →	◄ If „No fault recognised“ is displayed, the programme returns to the initial position when the → key is pressed.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	If a different readout appears in the display: ⇒ Operating Instructions of V.A.G 1552.
	- End output (function 06) ⇒ page 01-82.

Note:

If a fault has been detected:

- *1. Rectify fault.*
- *2. Erase fault memory (function 05).*
- *3. Once again interrogate fault memory (function 02).*

Erasing fault memory

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 36 ⇒ page 01-78.

Requirements:

- ♦ Faults have been rectified.
- ♦ Fault memory has been interrogated ⇒ page 01-81.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Select function 05.
Test of vehicle systems Q 05 - Erase fault memory	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Test of vehicle systems → Fault memory was erased	◄ Readout in display:
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- End output (function 06) ⇒ page 01-82.

Notes:

Attention!
Fault memory was not interrogated

◄ ♦ *If this readout appears in the display, the test procedure was not correct.*

♦ *Follow the test procedure exactly: first of all interrogate fault memory and then erase it.*

Ending output

- Select function 06.

Test of vehicle systems Q 06 - End output	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select address word XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Switch ignition off.
	- Separate plug connection to vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552.

Fault table

Notes:

- *All the possible faults which can be recognised by the control unit and displayed by the vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552, are listed in the table on the basis of the 5-digit fault code.*
- *Ignore the SAE code which may be displayed on the right next to the fault code number.*
- *If „Info in literature“ appears in the display at the vehicle system tester, look for the text you require in the fault table on the basis of the fault code.*
- *If components are displayed as faulty, first of all test all the cables and plug connections to these components, as well as the earth connections on the basis of the current flow diagram. Replace the component only if this inspection also does not reveal any fault. This applies in particular to faults which are shown as being sporadic (SP).*

Readout on V.A.G 1552		Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
65535 No fault recognised		If „No fault recognised!“ appears after completing repairs, self-diagnosis is ended.	
00668 Veh. voltage tml. 30	Signal too large	Faulty supply voltage (must be within range of 10.5...16 V)	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
			- Test supply voltage
		Voltage regulator or alternator faulty	- Test voltage regulator or alternator ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 27
	Signal too small	Battery discharged or faulty	- Charge battery or replace
		Voltage regulator or alternator faulty	- Test voltage regulator or alternator ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 27
00994 Sender front height adj. driver seat -G215-	Short circuit to positive	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
			- Replace sender -G215-
	Short circuit to earth	Sender faulty	
	Open circuit	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations

Readout on V.A.G 1552		Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
00995 Sender rear height adj. driver seat -G216-	Short circuit to positive	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short circuit to earth	Sender faulty	- Replace sender -G216-
	Open circuit	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
00998 Driver seat backrest adj. motor -V45-		Seat adjustment motor -V45- is loose or faulty	- Inspect whether seat adjustment motor is correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary
00999 Driver seat front height adj. motor -V29-		Seat adjustment motor -V29- is loose or faulty	- Inspect whether seat adjustment motor is correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary
01000 Driver seat rear height adj. motor -V30-		Seat adjustment motor -V30- is loose or faulty	- Inspect whether seat adjustment motor is correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary
01002 Driver s. front height adj. up pushbutton -E208-		Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, or may be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Check whether pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01003 Driver s. front height adj. down pushbutton -E209-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, or may be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Check whether pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01004 Driver s. rear height adj. up pushbutton -E210-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, or may be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Check whether pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89

Readout on V.A.G 1552		Possible cause of fault	Rectifying fault
01005 Driver s. rear height adj. down pushbutton -E211-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, or may be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Check whether pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01006 Driver seat forward adj. pushbutton -E212-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, or may be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Check whether pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01007 Driver seat back adj. pushbutton -E213-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, or may be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Check whether pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01008 Note: em. off switch operated!		MEM-OFF pushbutton on	- Switch MEM-OFF pushbutton off
01009 Driver seat fwd/ back adj. sender -G218-	Short circuit to positive	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short circuit to earth	Sender faulty	- Replace sender -G218-
	Open circuit	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations

01010 Driver seat backrest adj. sender -G219-	Short circuit to positive	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
	Short circuit to earth	Sender faulty	- Replace sender -G219-
	Open circuit	Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
01173 Driver seat fwd/ back adj. motor -V28-		Seat adjustment motor -V28- is loose or faulty	- Inspect if seat adjustment motor correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary
01328 Convenience databus		Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations If cables o.k. then:
		ECU faulty	- Switch off all doors and switch on again one after the other (observe measured value block) - Replace ECU blocking convenience function databus - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-39
01329 Convenience databus in em. mode		Cables or plug connections faulty	- Test wiring and plug connections according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations If cables o.k. then:
		ECU faulty	- Switch off all doors and switch on again one after the other (observe measured value block) - Replace ECU blocking convenience function databus - Read measured value block, display group number 012 ⇒ page 01-39
01330 Convenience system central control unit -J393-	No communication	Fault in communication line between ECU	- Test cables between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations
		Convenience system ECU faulty	- Replace convenience system ECU ⇒ page 70-3.7

01331 Door control unit driver side -J386-	No communication	Fault in communication line between ECU Driver door control unit faulty	- Test cables between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Replace control unit
01332 Door control unit passenger side -J387-	No communication	Fault in communication line between ECU Driver door control unit faulty	- Test cables between ECU according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Replace control unit
01455 Backrest adj. forward switch -E96-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01456 Backrest adj. back switch -E96-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01459 Driver 1 push-button/memory seat -E218-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, may also be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Inspect if pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01460 Driver 2 push-button/memory seat -E219-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, may also be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Inspect if pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89
01461 Driver 3 push-button/memory seat -E220-	Short circuit to earth	Loose or faulty cables or plug connections Pushbutton loose, may also be faulty	- Test wiring, plug connections and fuses according to CFD ⇒ Current Flow Diagrams, Electrical Fault Finding and Fitting Locations - Inspect if pushbutton correctly installed and tight, replace if necessary - Read measured value block ⇒ page 01-89

Reading measured value block

- Connect vehicle system tester V.A.G 1552 and select address word 36 ⇒ page 01-78.

Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Select function 08.
Test of vehicle systems Q 08 - Read measured value block	◄ Readout in display:
	- Confirm entry with the key Q.
Read measured value block HELP Enter display group number XXX	◄ Readout in display:
	- Enter desired display group number ⇒ page 01-88, „Reading table of measured value block“ and confirm entry with the key Q.
Read measured value block 1 1 2 3 4	◄ Readout in display:
	Split-up of readout in display into individual display blocks ⇒ page 01-88, Reading table of measured value block.
	End test of measured value block:
	- Press → key.
Test of vehicle systems HELP Select function XX	◄ Readout in display:
	Note: *After ending the function „Read measured value block“, interrogate fault memory ⇒ page 01-81.*

Test table

Note:

Proceed as specified in the table below for switching to another display group:

Switching to display group	V.A.G 1552	V.A.G 1551
higher	Press ↑ key	Press key 3
lower	Press ↓ key	Press key 1
other	Press key C	Press key C

Display group 001

Display block	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Memory button 1	0 (not operated) 1 (operated)	- Inspect cables and relevant plug connections for correct installation and tightness and at the same time check the display. If the display does not change during inspection - rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
	Memory button 2	0 (not operated) 1 (operated)	
	Memory button 3	0 (not operated) 1 (operated)	
2	Emergency switch (MEM-OFF)	0 (closed) 1 (not closed)	
	Driver door	0 (opened) 1 (closed)	
3	Key number	0/ 1/ 2/ 3/ 4 (0 = key not operated)	

Display group 002

Display block	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Seat adjustment button	forward back not operated implausible signal	- Inspect cables and relevant plug connections for correct installation and tightness and at the same time check the display. If the display does not change during inspection - rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Current readout for seat adjustment	XXXXX	
3	Backrest angle button	forward back not operated implausible signal	
4	Current readout for backrest angle	XXXXX	

Display group 003

Display block	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Button for raising seat at front	raise lower not operated implausible signal	- Inspect cables and relevant plug connections for correct installation and tightness and at the same time check the display. If the display does not change during inspection - rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Current readout for raising at front	XXXXX	
3	Button for raising seat at rear	raise lower not operated implausible signal	
4	Current readout for raising at rear	XXXXX	

Display group 004

Display block	Designation	Readout in display	Rectifying fault
1	Mirror potentiometer driver horizontal	0...100 %	- Inspect cables and relevant plug connections for correct installation and tightness and at the same time check the display. If the display does not change during inspection - rectify the fault or replace the relevant component. - Erase fault memory. - Perform operational check. - Once again interrogate fault memory.
2	Mirror potentiometer driver vertical	0...100 %	
3	Mirror potentiometer passenger horizontal	0...100 %	
4	Mirror potentiometer passenger vertical	0...100 %	

Indicator Group 005

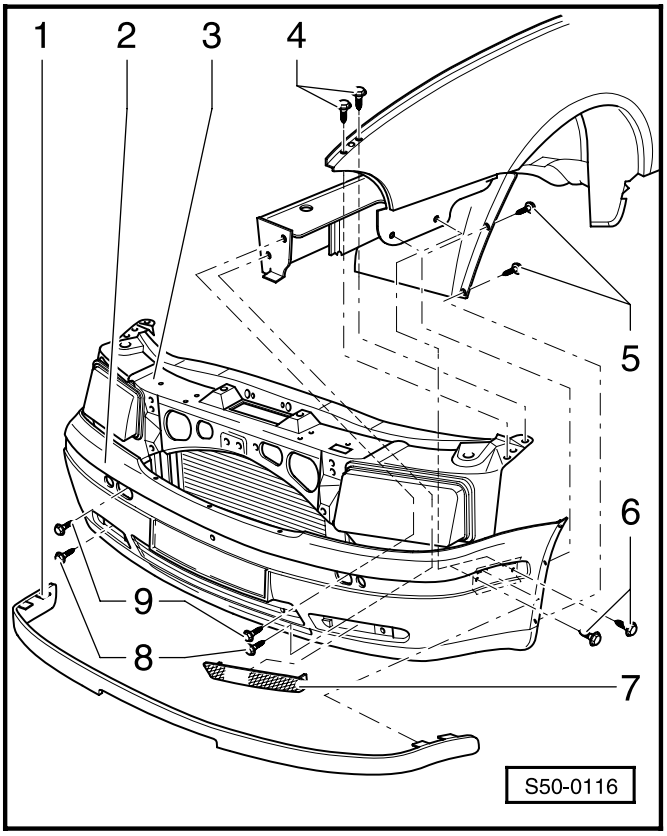
Indicator field	Designation	Readout on the display	Removing the fault
1	On-board voltage, terminal 30	xx,x V	- The on-board voltage must be in the range 10.5 - 16 volts
2	Inputs: Terminal X Switch for the reversing light Undertake a seat initialisation	 0 (inactive) 1 (active) 0 (inactive) 1 (active) 0 (inactive) 1 (active)	- Check the cables and appropriate plug connectors for correct and firm fitting and check the display again. If the readout changes does not change during the test then the fault must be removed or the corresponding part must be replaced. - Delete the fault memory. - Undertake a function test. - Interrogate the fault memory again. - Undertake a seat initialisation ⇒ Page 01-77.
3	Reason for switching of the seat adjustment system: appears in the block Software deactivation Motor running time exceeded	 0 (inactive) 1 (active) 0 (inactive) 1 (active) 0 (inactive) 1 (active)	

Indicator Group 006

Indicator field	Designation	Readout on the display	Removing the fault
1	CAN-BUS status	BUS OK BUS not OK	- Check the cables and appropriate plug connectors for correct and firm fitting and check the display again. If the readout changes does not change during the test then the fault must be removed or the corresponding part must be replaced. - Delete the fault memory. - Undertake a function test. - Interrogate the fault memory again.

Front body

Assembly overview of lock carrier with attached parts



1 - Bumper strip

2 - Bumper

3 - Lock carrier
- Must be installed free of stress

4 - 15 Nm

5 - Screw

6 - 8 Nm

7 - Ventilation grille

8 - 23 Nm
- Accessible after taking off ventilation grille -7-

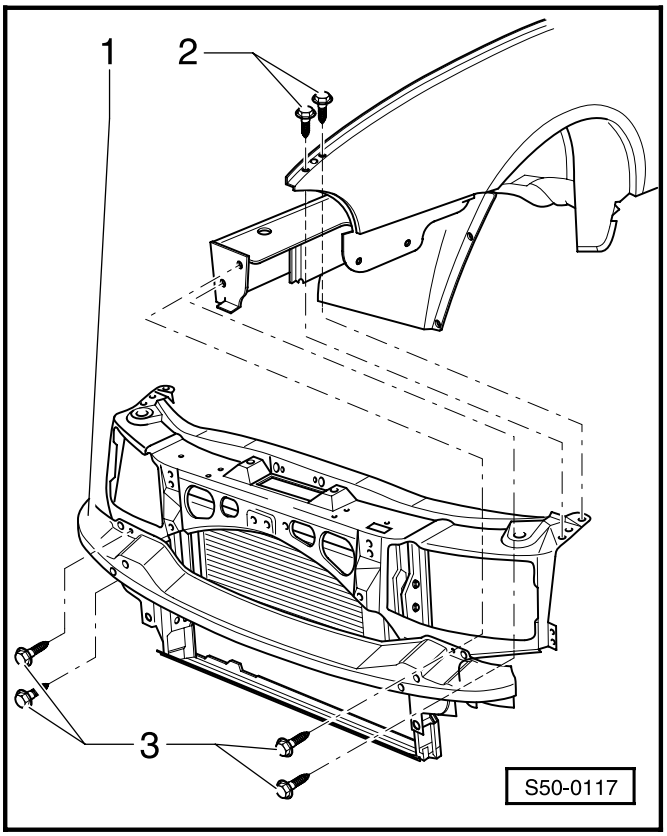
9 - 23 Nm
- Accessible after taking off bumper strip -1-

Removing

- Separate plug connections and coolant hoses, separate plug connection and release cable for bonnet lock.
- Separate plug connection for temperature sensor ⇒ page 63-2.
- Separate hoses for air conditioning (if fitted).
- Remove screws -5-.
- Remove screws -4-.
- Pull off bumper strip -1- and take out bolts -9-.
- Release ventilation grille -7- and take out bolts -8-.
- Pull off lock carrier -3- together with attached parts.

Installing

- The installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Replacing lock carrier

Note:

The coolant circuit of the engine and the refrigerant circuit do not need to be separated provided the radiator and condenser are attached to the engine in a suitable manner.

Removing

◄- Remove bumper ⇒ page 63-1.

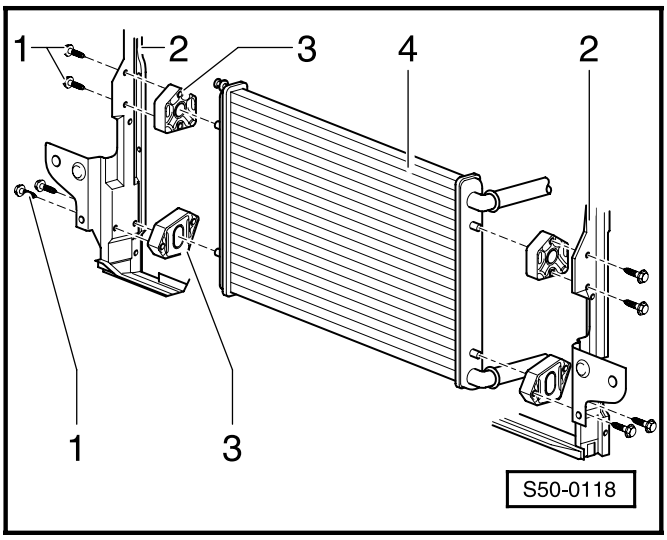
- Remove cross member ⇒ page 63-1.

- Remove headlights
⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 94.

- Separate plug connection and release cable for bonnet lock.

- Take out bolts -3- for lock carrier -1-.

- Slacken top screws -2-.



◄- Remove screws -1- for radiator mountings -3- and attach radiator -4- in a suitable way to the engine.

- Remove screws at top attaching lock carrier.

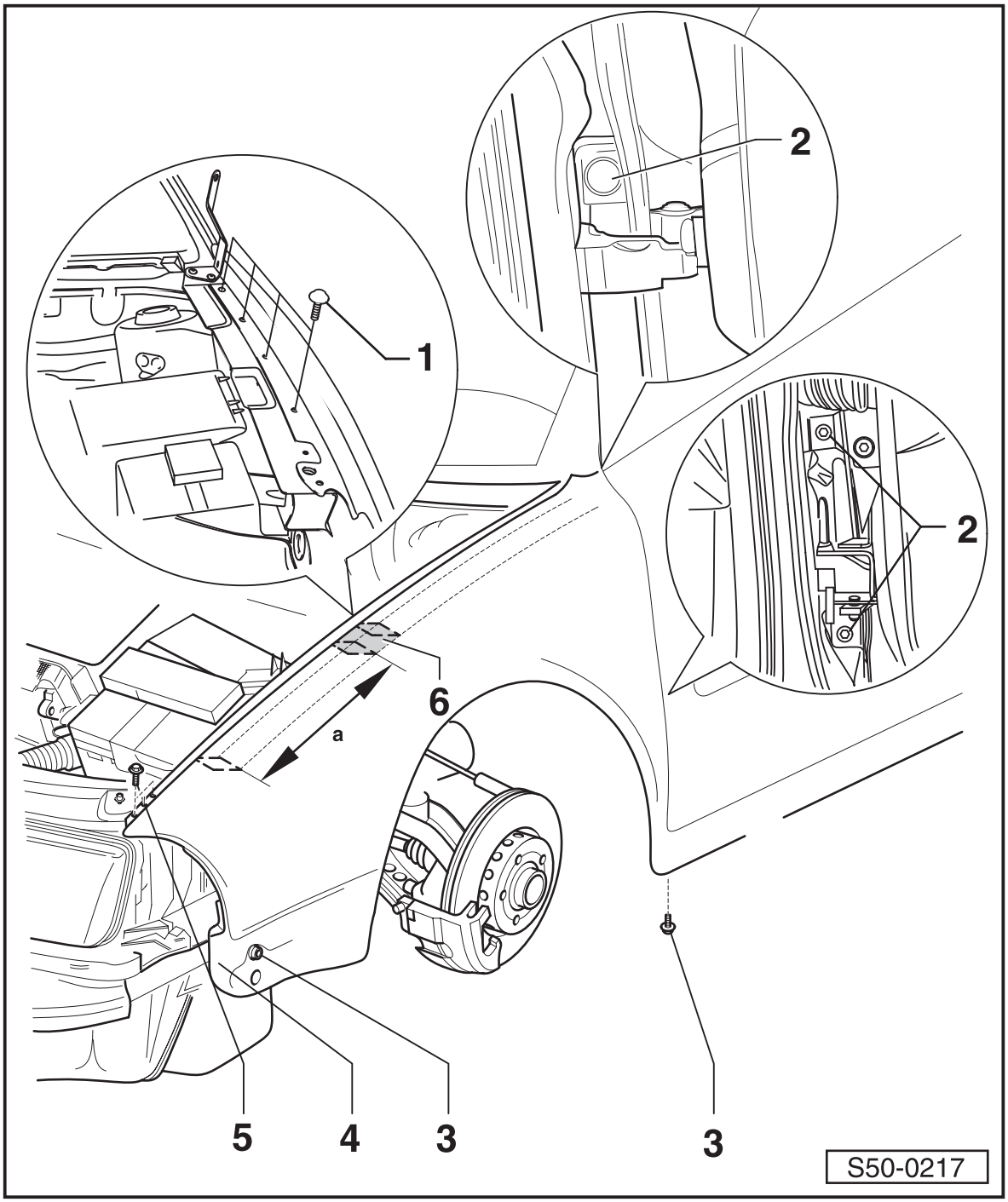
- Pull off lock carrier -2- to the front.

- Remove the remaining attached parts of the lock carrier.

Installing

- Installation is performed in the reverse order.

Removing and installing front wing



1 - 6 Nm

2 - 6 Nm

3 - 4 Nm

4 - Wing

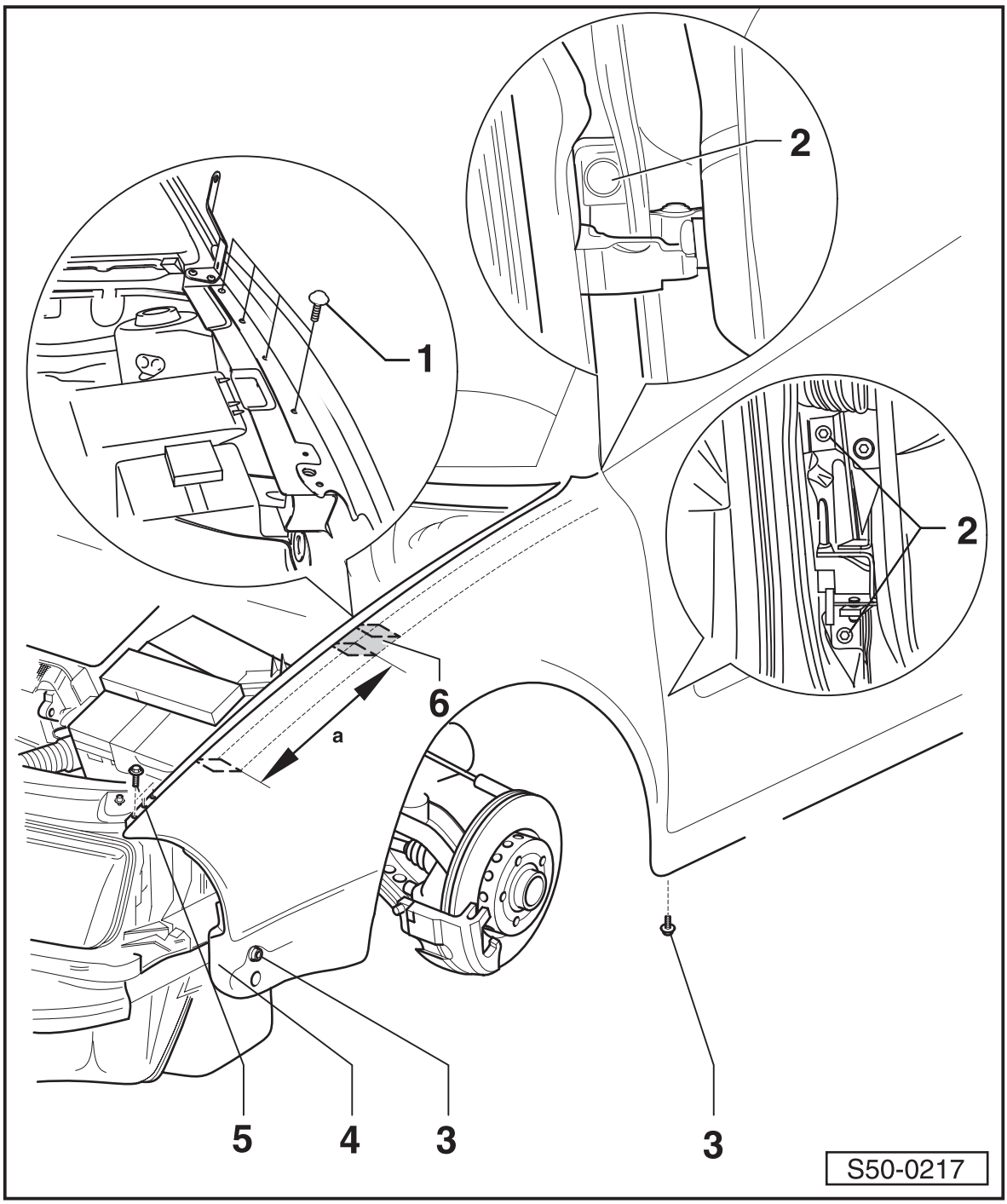
♦ Removing:

- Removing front wheel
- Removing bumper ⇒ page 63-1
- Removing wheelhouse liner ⇒ page 66-3
- Removing turn signal light and side turn signal light ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 94
- Unscrew the fixing screws -5- of the lock carrier on the relevant side.
- Unscrew the top fixing screws -1-.
- Unscrew the remaining top fixing screws -2- and -3- and remove wing -4-

♦ Installing:

- The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 - 6 Nm

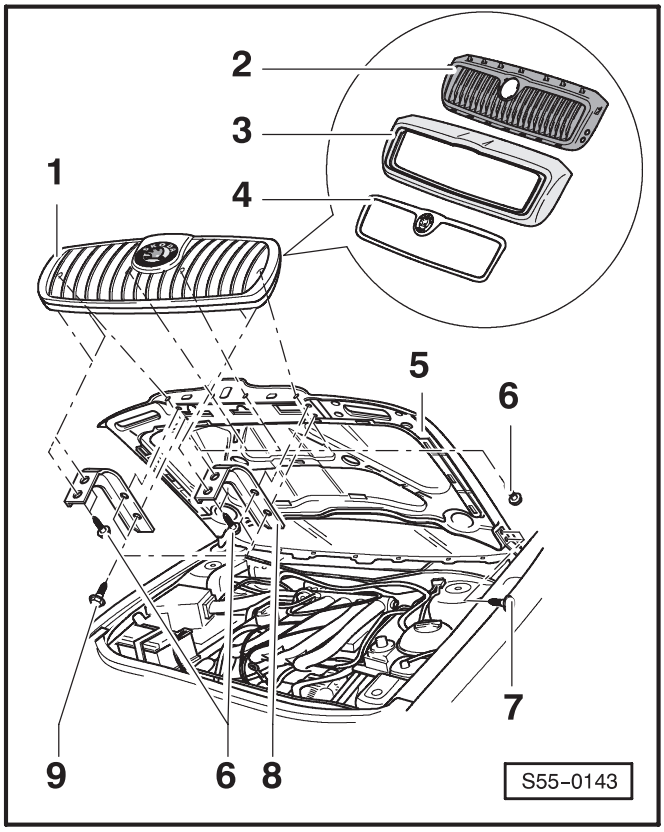


6 - Noise insulation

- only for ATD, ARZ, AUM, ARX, AUQ engines
- Pay attention to fitting position
- Pay attention to dimension a = 450 mm

Bonnet

Survey of components of bonnet



1 - Radiator grill
- ♦ Removing:
- Unscrew screws -6- and -9- and remove radiator grill.
- Disassemble radiator grill in individual parts -2-, -3- and -4- ⇒ page 55-1.1
- ♦ The installation is carried out in reverse order
- ♦ After installation radiator grill must be flush with the engine bonnet

2 - Grid

3 - Radiator grille frame

4 - Decorative strip

5 - Bonnet
- ♦ The tailgate can be adjusted by means of the oval holes on the hinge
- ♦ Protect the hinge and screws against corrosion after assembly or adjustment

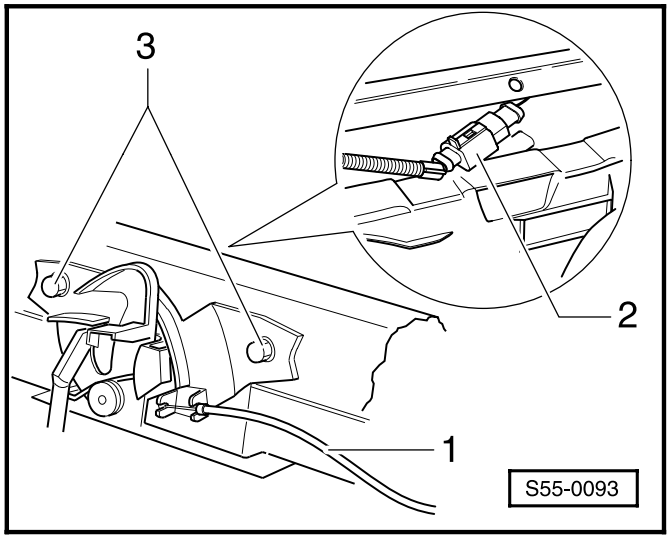
6 - 3.5 Nm

7 - 22 Nm

8 - Bracket

9 - 3.5 Nm

Removing and installing flap lock



Removing:

- Unclip control cable -1- at lock.
- Disconnect plug connection -2- from bonnet.
- Remove screws -3- (14 Nm).

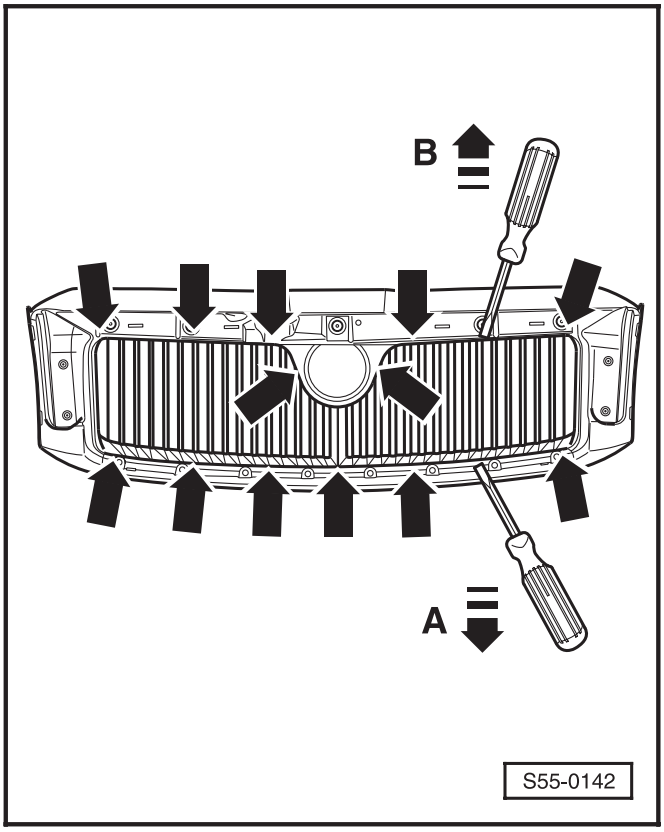
Installing:

The installation is carried out in reverse order.

Adjusting:

- Bonnet must be adjusted flush to the body.
- Pay attention to equal gap dimensions between bonnet and body.
- Adjust buffer and check the closing and opening procedure

Disassembling and assembling radiator grill

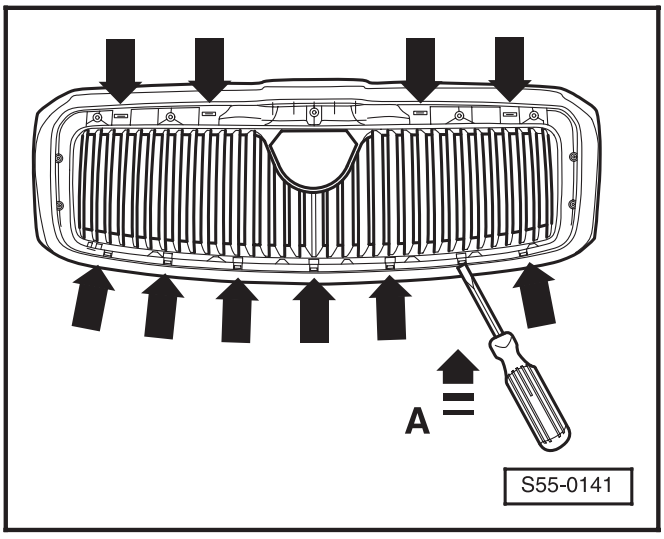


Removing:

- Radiator grill removed from vehicle

◄- Release the bottom catch pegs of the trim strip with screwdriver in direction of -arrow A-.

- Release the top catch pegs of the trim strip with screwdriver in direction of -arrow B-.



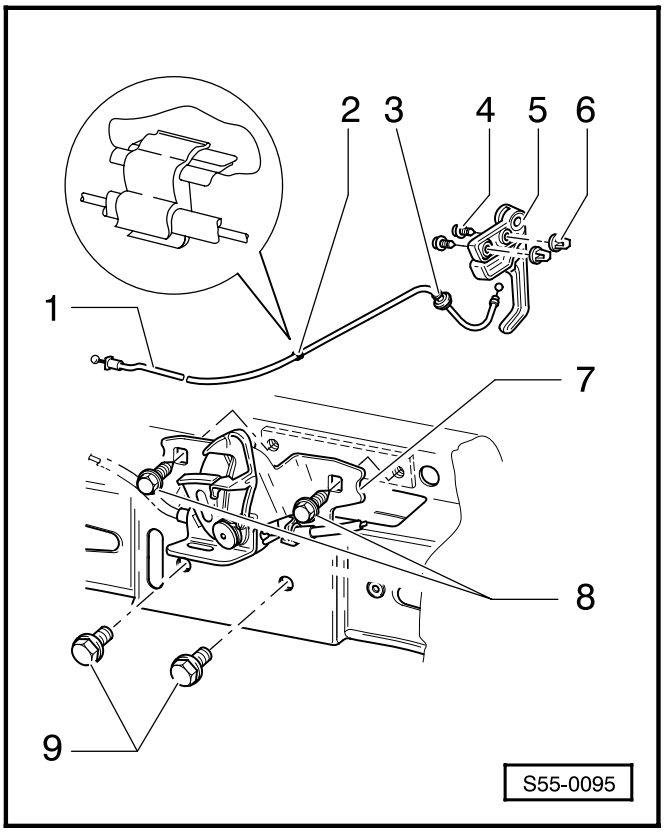
◄- Release the catch pegs -arrows- of the grid with screwdriver in direction of -arrow A- and remove grid from radiator grill frame.

Installing:

The installation is carried out in reverse order. Pay attention to the following points:

Note:

The individual parts of the radiator grill must be locked into one another.



Summary of components of bonnet lock control

1 - Cable
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove control lever -5- (on left side of driver footwell) and lock -7- and release cable.
- On cable nipple (control lever), fasten string or similar material of approx. 1000 mm long and pull cable out from the engine compartment.
- ♦ Installing:
- Use sring or similar material to draw in cable and install other parts.

2 - Clip

3 - Sealing cover

4 - Combination self-tapping screw

5 - Control lever
- ♦ cable fitted in place

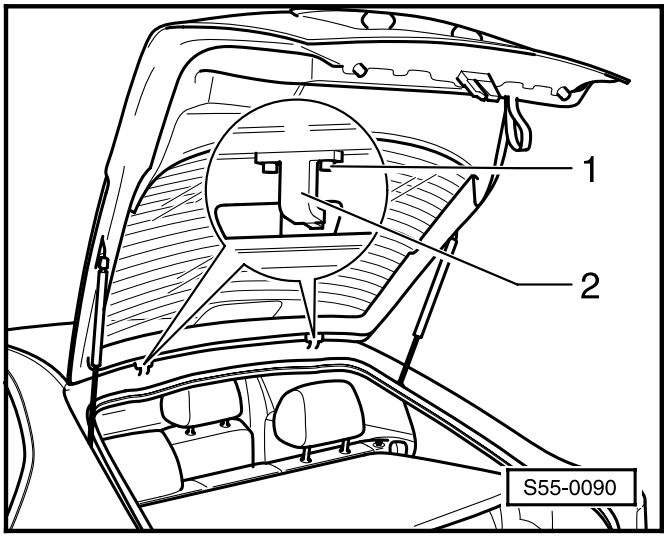
6 - Expanding nut

7 - Lock
- ♦ installing and removing ⇒ page 55-1.

8 - 14 Nm

9 - 5 Nm

Tailgate



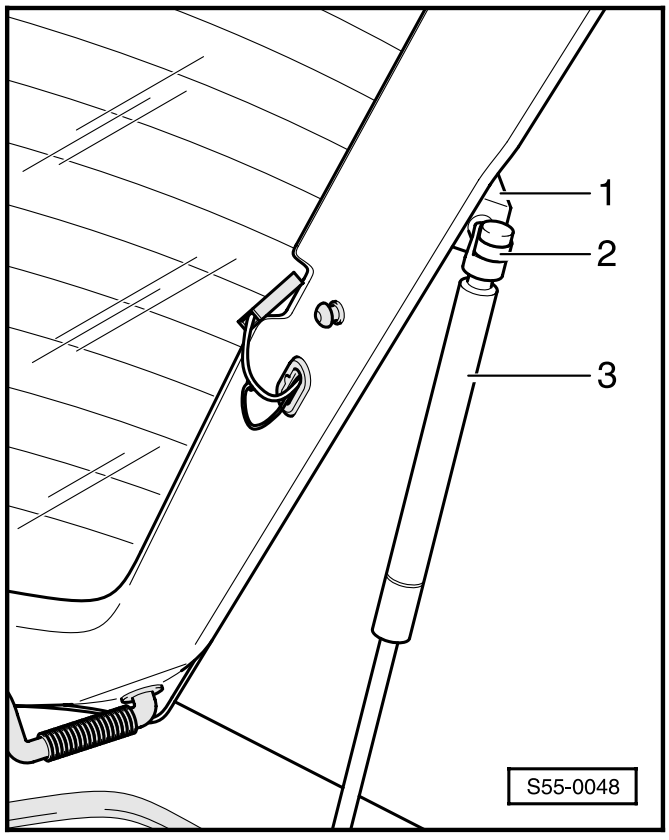
Removing tailgate

- Remove trim panel of tailgate ⇒ page 70-11.
- Separate electrical plug connections and pull cable out of tailgate.
- Remove pressurized gas struts ⇒ page 55-3.

◄- Unscrew the bolts -1- attaching the hinges -2- and take off tailgate.
Tightening torque: 15 Nm

Notes:

- *Use an Allen key the shorter leg of which has been shortened to about 10 mm and mask over surrounding painted area with adhesive tape in order to avoid damaging the paintwork.*
- *A second mechanic is required for removing and installing the tailgate.*



Removing pressurized gas strut

- Open tailgate and support.

◄- Use a screwdriver to raise locking element -2- and pull gas strut off the angle bracket with ball stud -1-.

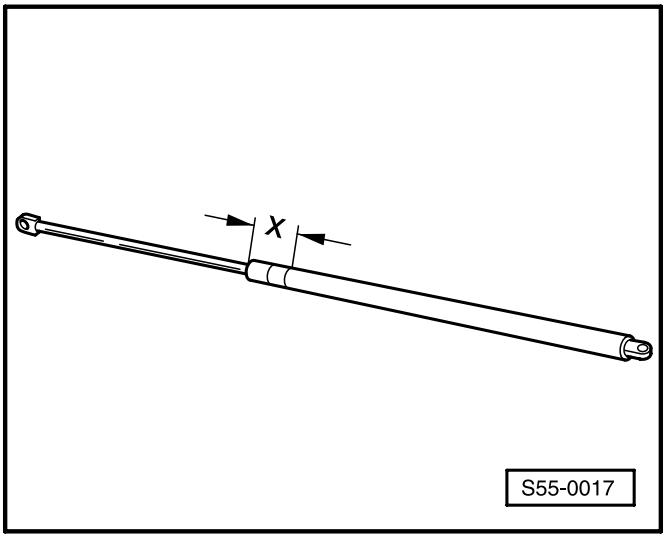
Note:

If the gas strut is to be re-used, do not remove locking element -2- fully from the ball socket otherwise the locking element will be damaged.

1 - Angle bracket with ball stud

2 - Locking element

3 - Pressurized gas strut



Releasing gas from gas strut

◄ - Clamp the gas strut in a vice in the area x = 50 mm.

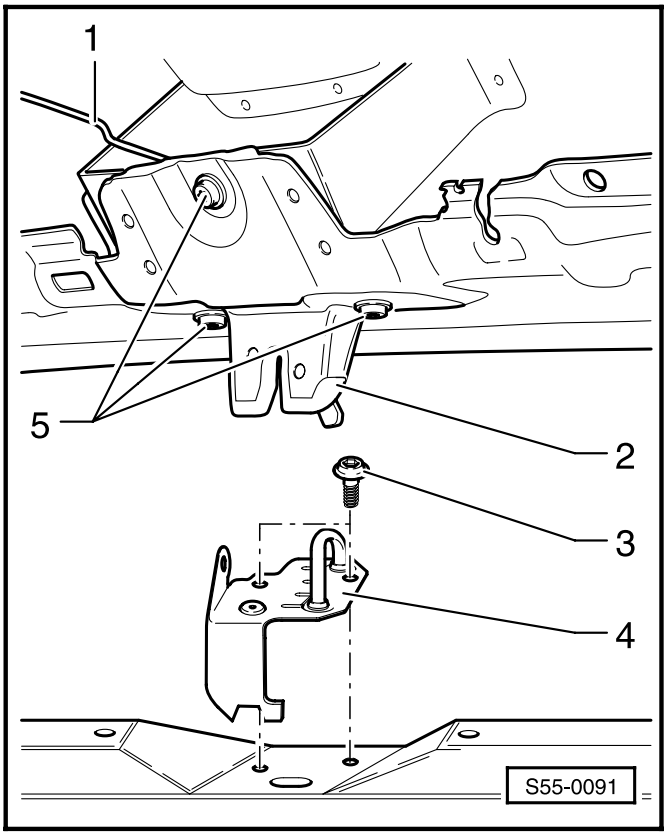
Important!

The gas strut must be clamped in the vice only in this area otherwise risk of accident!

- Cut open cylinder of the gas strut with a saw in the first third of the entire length of the cylinder - starting from the reference edge at the piston rod end.

Notes:

- *Wear eye protection when cutting open the gas strut.*
- *Cover over the area of the saw cut with a cleaning rag.*
- *Dispose of oil and cleaning rags in accordance with the usual disposal regulation.*



Summary of components of tailgate lock

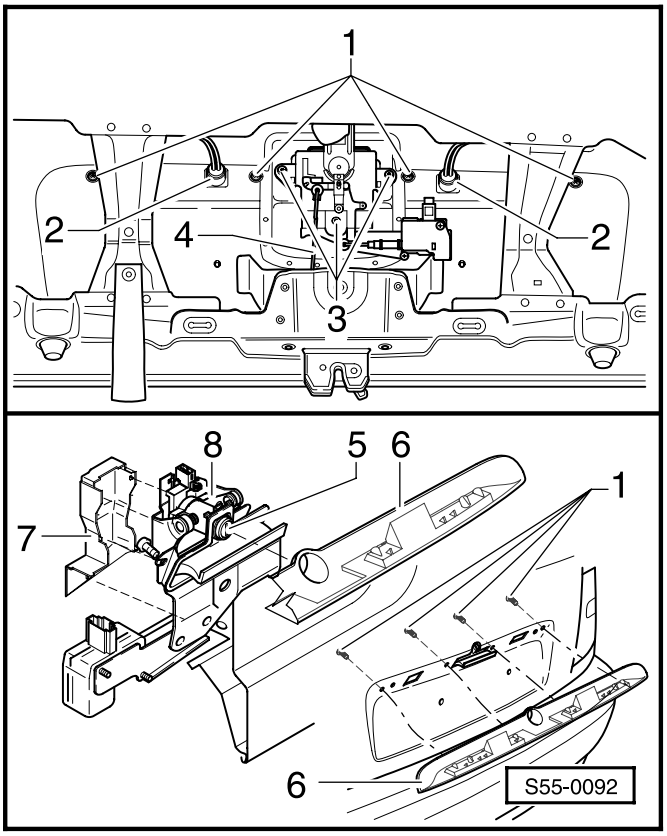
1 - Pull rod

2 - Tailgate lock
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove trim panel of tailgate ⇒ 70-11.
- Unclip pull rod -1-
- Separate relevant plug connections.
- Unscrew bolts -7-
- Press tailgate lock to the inside and take out
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

3 - 30 Nm

4 - Lock striker
- ♦ The tailgate must be adjusted flush with body.
- ♦ The tailgate should close and open without tension.

5 - 30 Nm



Summary of tailgate lock control

1 - Screw

2 - Sleeve

3 - 10 Nm

4 - Pull rod

5 - Lock insert

6 - Grab strip

- ♦ Removing:
- Remove trim panel of tailgate ⇒ 70-11.
- Take out sleeve -2-
- Unscrew bolts -1-
- Take off strip.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

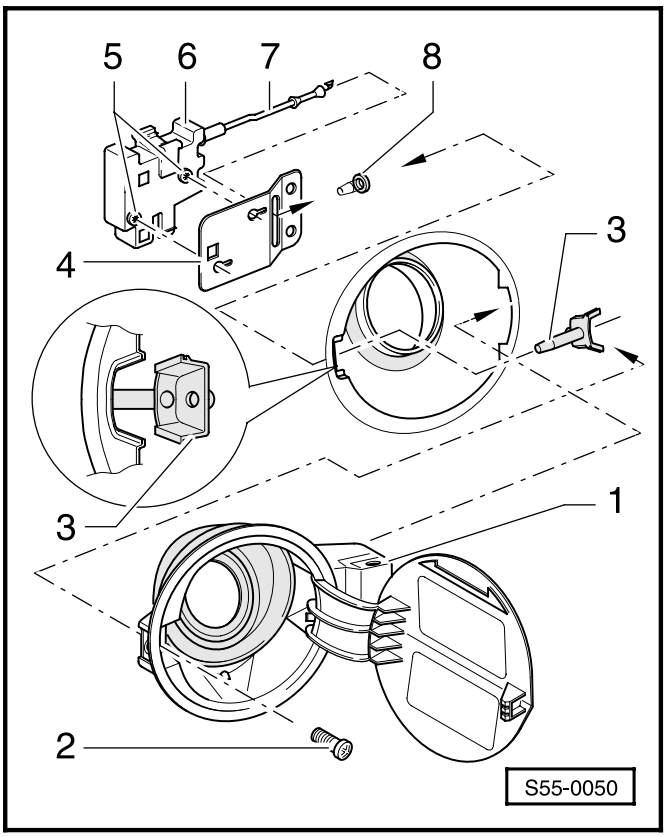
7 - Cover

8 - Tailgate lock control

- ♦ Removing:
- Remove trim panel of tailgate ⇒ 70-11.
- Take off cover -7-
- Release pull rod -4-
- Separate relevant plug connections.
- Unscrew bolts -3-
- Draw in control mechanism to the inside and take out.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Fuel filler flap

Summary of parts of filler flap unit



1 - Fuel filler flap unit
- ♦ consists of cap, fuel filler flap bowl and rubber seal
- ♦ removing:
- remove positioning element -6-
- take off fuel filler cap
- take out screw -2-
- pull assembly part -3- forward off the side part
- push fuel filler flap unit to the rear and take it out of side part

2 - Screw

3 - Assembly part

4 - Bracket
- ♦ welded to body

5 - Torx screws
- ♦ remove with torx bit and small open-jaw wrench

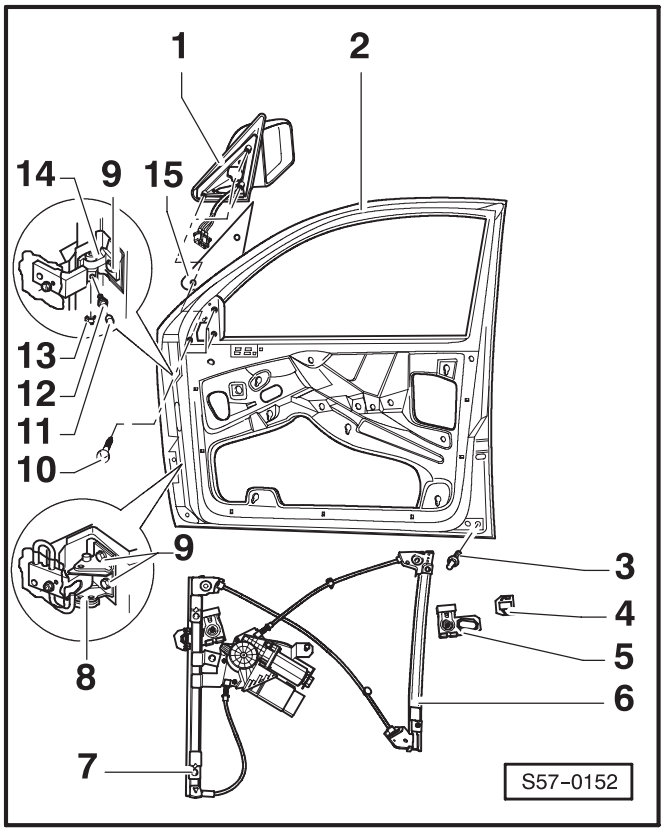
6 - Positioning element
- ♦ removing:
- take out screw -5-
- pull positioning element with locking rod out of assembly part -3-
- separate positioning element from locking rod

7 - Locking rod
- ♦ remove together with positioning element -6-

8 - Seal

Front Door

List of front door components



1 - Exterior mirror

2 - Door
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 57-2.
- Setting ⇒ page 57-3.

3 - Catch bolt
- 40 Nm.

4 - Guide piece
- Fit onto lever strip of the window lifter -6-.

5 - Clip
- Fit into guide piece -4-.

6 - Window lifter
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 57-4.

7 - 10 Nm

8 - Bottom door hinge
- Screw onto door and pillar A.
- With door arrester.

9 - 32 Nm

10 - Screw
- Fixing screw for exterior mirror.

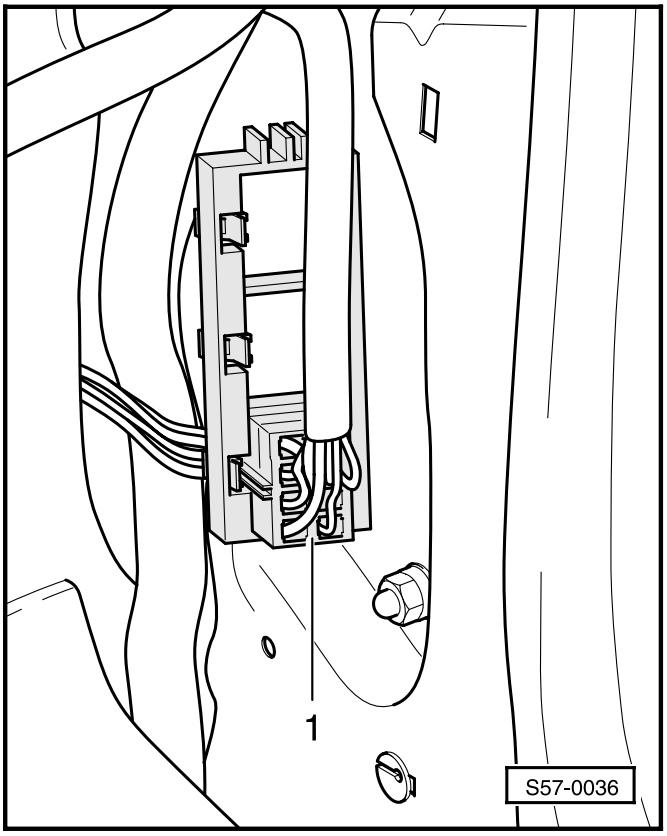
11 - Cap
- For vehicles ➤ 12.99

12 - 20 Nm
- For vehicles ➤ 12.99

13 - Nut, 30 Nm
- For vehicles 01.00 ➤

14 - Top door hinge
- Screw onto door and pillar A. Insert hinge bolt into box section and secure with grub screw -12- or nut -13-.

15 - Base

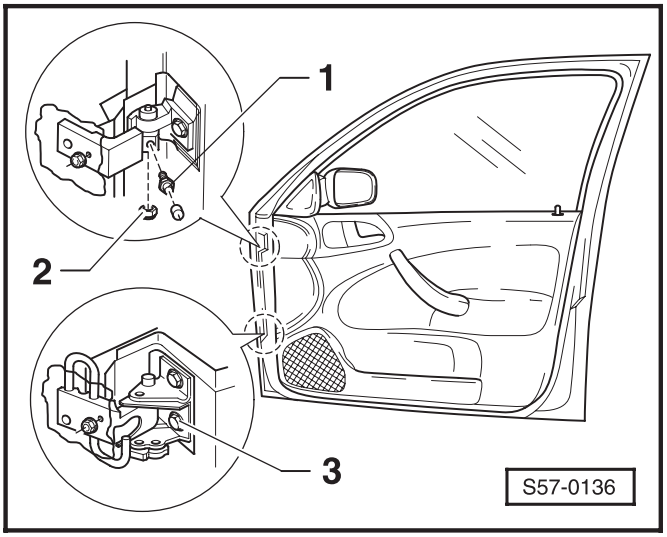


Removing and installing front door

Removing

- Bottom trim panel of pillar A ⇒ page 70-7.

◄- Disconnect multipin plug connection -1- at pillar A.



For vehicles ➤ 12.99

◄- Remove cap and unscrew grub screw -1- from upper hinge.

For vehicles ➤ 01.00

- Unscrew nut -2-.

For all vehicles

- Unscrew bottom screw -3-.
- Lift door up and out of the hinge brackets.

Installing

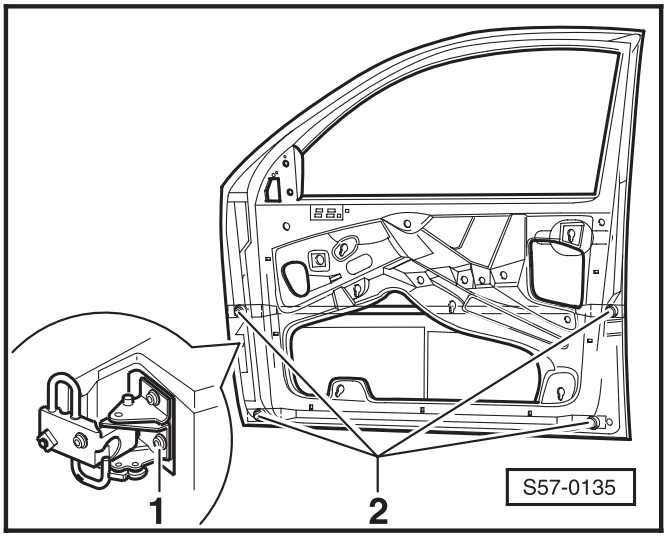
The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

When replacing the doors after the paintwork, screws -1- and -2- must be tightened to the specified torque.

1 - 32 Nm

2 - 22 Nm

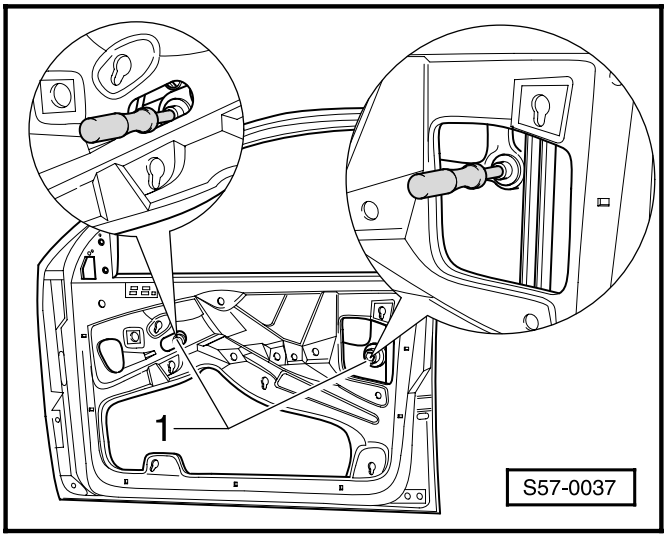


Adjusting door

The door hinge has to be slackened at the pillar and at the door in order to correctly align the door. Other measures such as aligning the doors upward, are of no effect. The door drops down again when pressure is subsequently applied.

- Slacken torx screw until door can be moved (e.g. with V.A.G 3320 with torx bit T45).

- The doors are correctly adjusted if they have an even distance to the door opening all round when closed, do not stand too far in or out and the contours are aligned.



Removing door window

- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4.

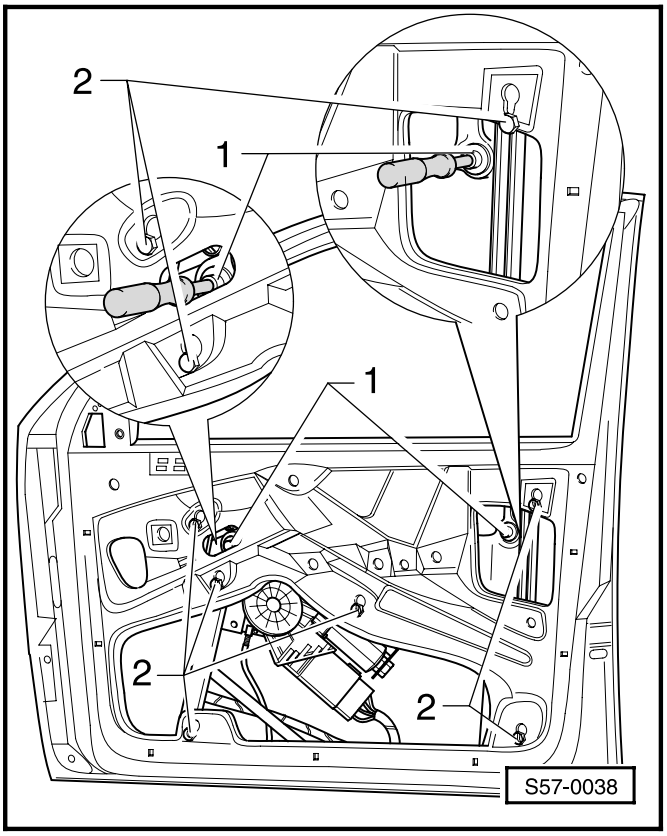
- Detach insulation sheeting ⇒ page 70-6.

- Pull inner window slot seal off the flange.

- Open or close the door window sufficiently until the clamping jaws are positioned in the assembly openings.

◄ - Slacken hexagon nuts -1- and press clamping jaws apart.

- Pull door window up, tilt it forward and lift it out of the window slot.



Removing and installing window lifter

- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4.
- Detach insulation sheeting ⇒ page 70-6.
- Open or close window sufficiently until the clamping jaws are positioned in the assembly openings -arrows-.

◄ - Slacken hexagon nuts -1- and press clamping jaws apart.

- Push door window up and fix in position (e.g. with adhesive tape).
- Slacken screws -2- of the window lifter (10 Nm).
- Release clips for bowden cables.
- If power windows fitted, separate plug connection.
- Raise window lifter slightly so that the screws -2- can be pulled through the assembly holes.
- Pull window lifter down and out of the assembly opening.

Removing and installing power window motor

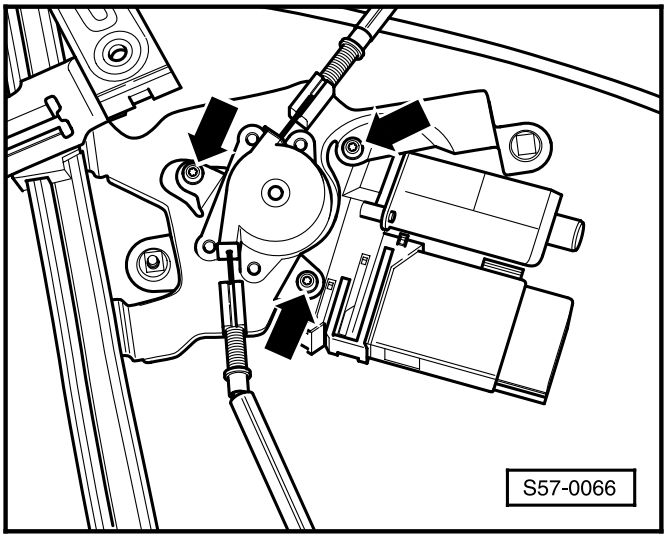
Note:

The front and rear power windows are of identical design.

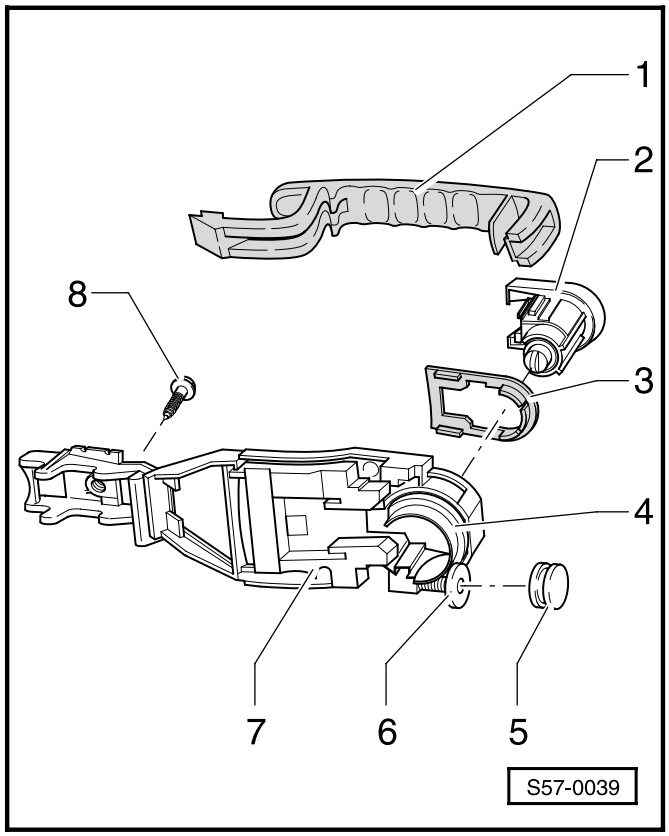
- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4.1.
- Detach insulation sheeting ⇒ page 70-6.
- Remove power window ⇒ page 57-4 and 58-4, respectively.

Note:

The power window motor can be removed with the window lifter in any position.



◄- Remove screws -arrows- and take off motor.
- Fit on new motor and tighten screws -arrows- (6.5 Nm).
- Install window lifter and install door window.
- Stick on insulation sheeting ⇒ page 70-6.
- Install door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4.1.
- Switch ignition on and off.
- Switch ignition on again.
- Raise door window as far as the stop and continue to press power window switch for about 3 seconds. This ensures the basic setting is performed and the automatic opening function is activated.



Summary of components of door handle

1 - Door handle
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57-6.

2 - Lock cylinder
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57-7.

3 - Base

4 - Clamping ring

5 - Cap

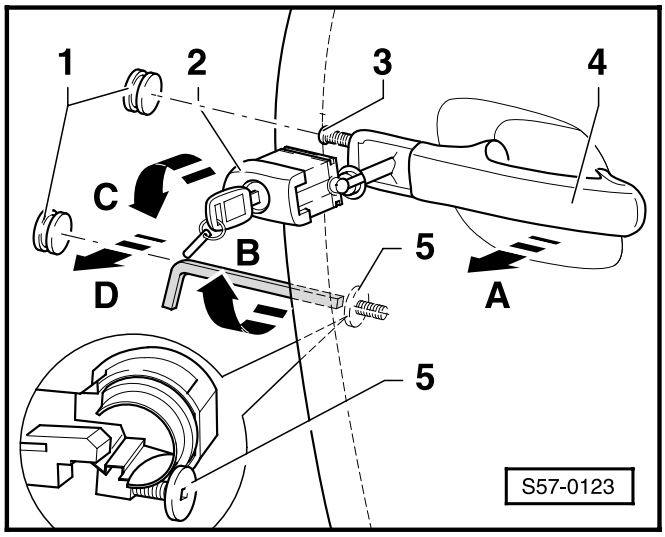
6 - Screw
- ♦ Moves the clamping ring -4-.

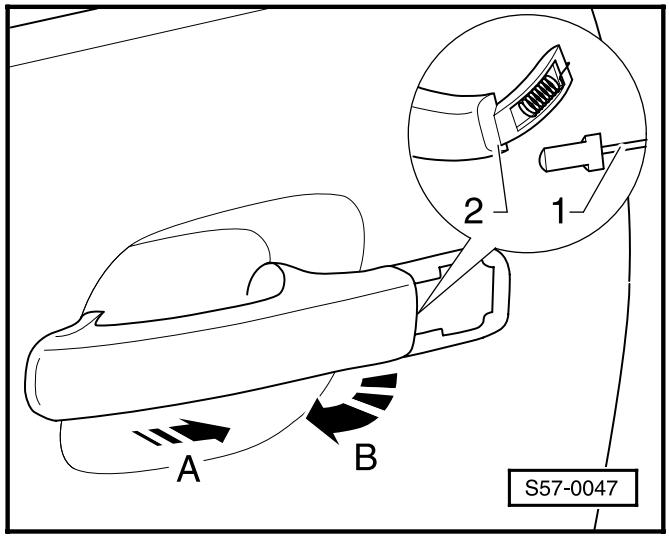
7 - Inner part of door handle
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove door handle -1-.
- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4.1.
- Remove screw -8-.
- Push inner part of door handle back and remove.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

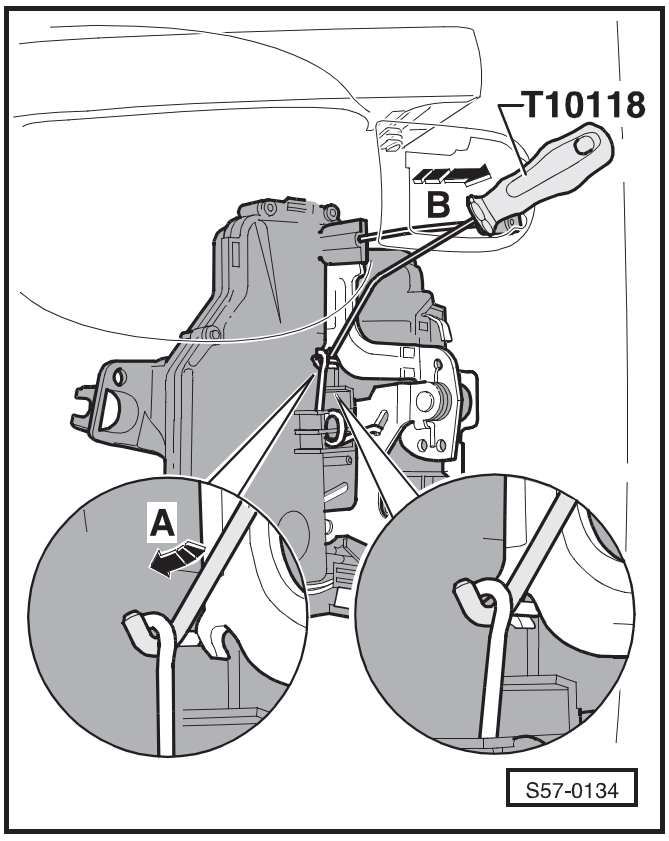
Note:

When inner part of door handle is removed, the hexagon socket screw -6- must not be turned.

8 - Screw







Removing and installing outer door handle

Special tools, testers and aids required:

- Square wrench or TORX 20
- Assembly tool T10118

Removing

◄ - Remove trims -1-.

- Unscrew locking screw -3-.
- Pull outer door handle -4- up to the stop in direction of actuation -arrow A- and hold in this position.
- Turn screw -5- in the direction indicated -arrow B- until resistance is perceptible.

Note:

Screw -5- must not be turned as long as the outer door handle is removed.

- Turn lock cylinder -2- with inserted key -arrow C- and pull out -arrow D-

Note:

On vehicles fitted with radio control, the front passenger door lock is replaced by a trim panel.

◄ - Unclip control cable -1- from door handle -2-.

- Slide door handle -2- to the rear -arrow A- and swivel out of the door -arrow B-

Installing:

- Swivel door handle into the door.

For vehicles 05.98 ➤

◄ - Hang device T10118 in the spring fixed to the door lock -arrow A- and hang the spring in the lock lever -arrow B-.

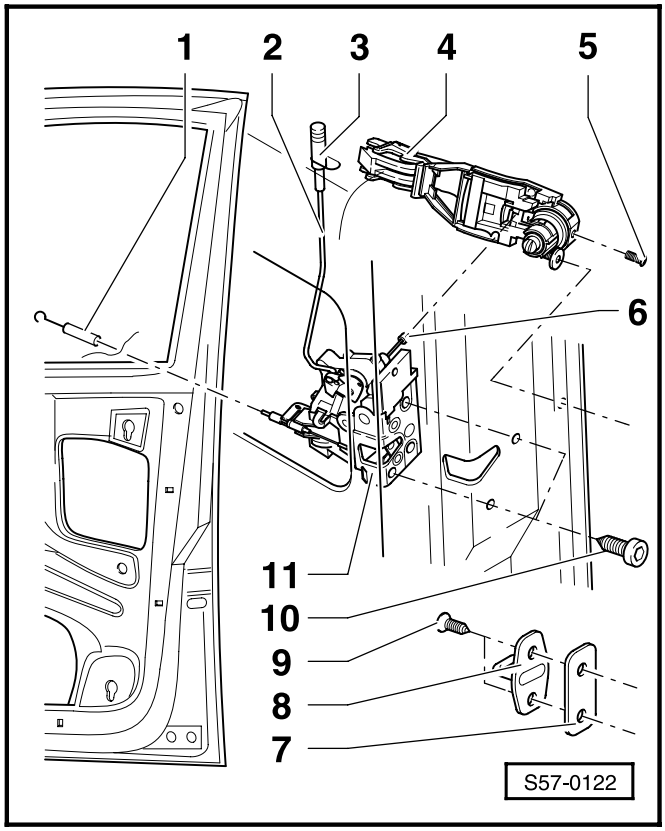
For all vehicles

Further installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

The control cable must lock securely into the outer door handle.

Door lock - assembly overview



1 - Cable for internal mechanism
- Attached into internal mechanism

2 - Locking rod

3 - Locking button
- Screwed on

4 - Inner part of door handle
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 57-5

5 - Locking screw, 5 Nm

6 - Cable for exterior mechanism
- Attached into door handle

7 - Base plate

8 - Locking plate

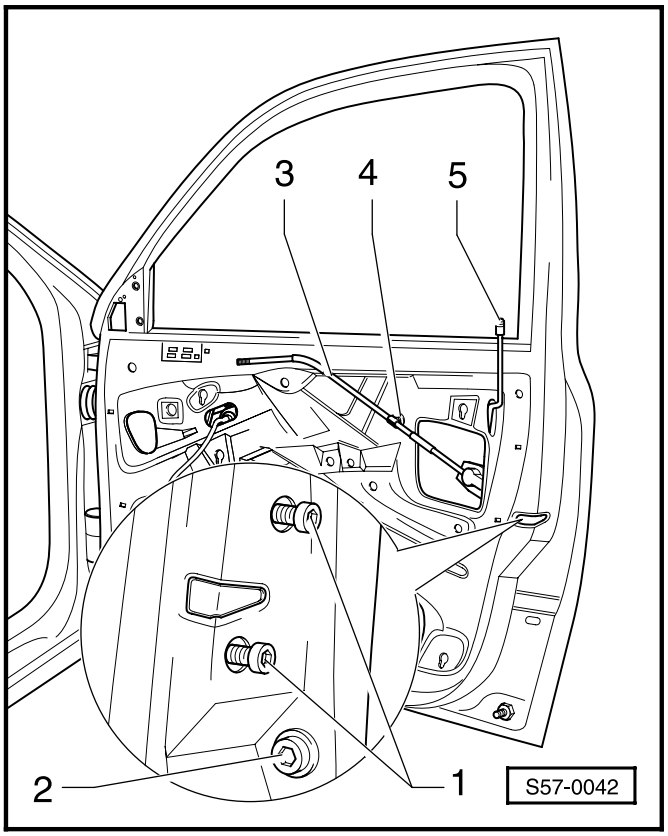
9 - 30 Nm

10 - 30 Nm

11 - Door lock
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 57-7

Notes:

- *Procedure for removing and installing door lock with and without power operation is identical.*
- *On models MY 99 ➤ with remote control of central locking, no lock cylinder is fitted to passenger-side door.*



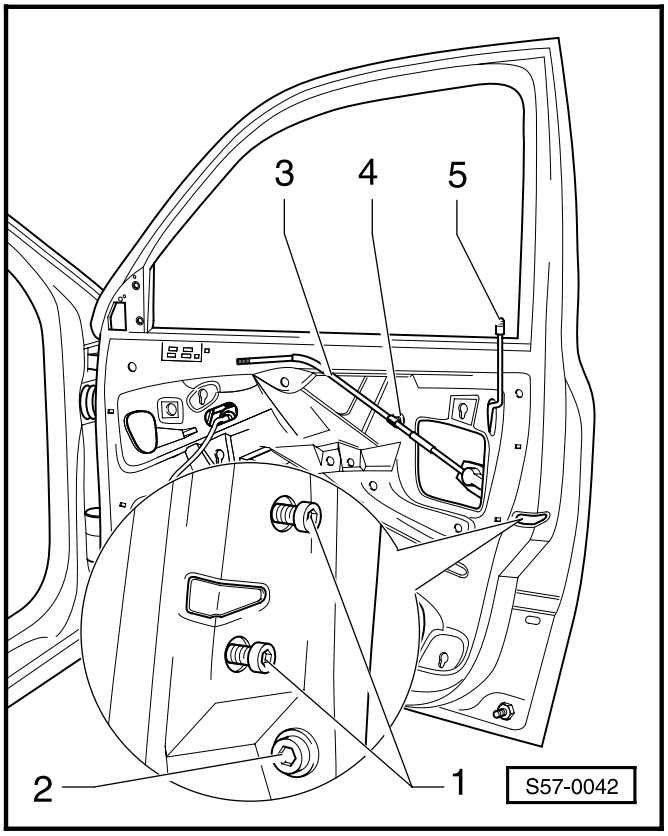
Removing and installing door lock

Removing

- Remove door handle ⇒ page 57-6.
- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4.
- Detach sound insulation sheet ⇒ page 70-6.
- Remove window lifter ⇒ page 57-4.

◄ - Take out screws -1-
Tightening torque = 8 Nm.

- Slacken screw -2- attaching impact bar. (The front screw for attaching the bar is not shown in the illustration).



◄ - Unhook retaining clip -4- of control cable -3-, pull door lock with tension rod -5- and control cable -3- through the assembly opening from the door.

Installing

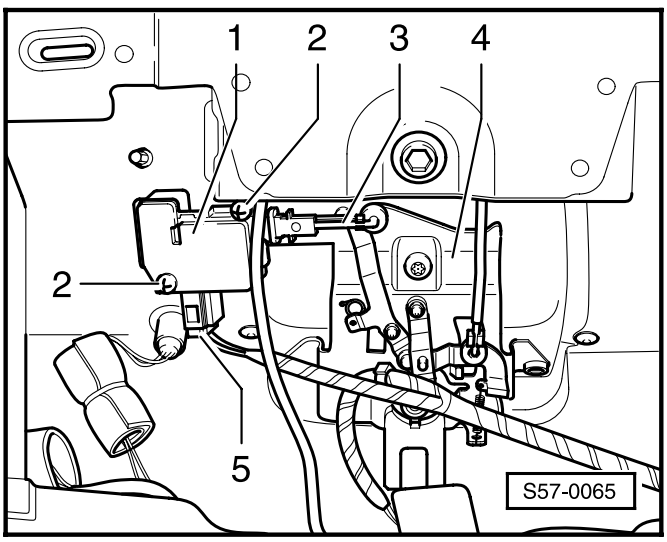
The installation is carried out in reverse order.

Central locking

Notes:

- *The control motors for front and rear door central locking are part of the door locks and cannot be replaced separately.*
- *Removing and installing door locks ⇒ page 57-7 or page 58-8.*
- *After replacing the door lock with the central locking motor perform control unit coding, interrogate the fault memory and erase ⇒ page 01-16, Self-diagnosis for convenience system or ⇒ page 01-45, Self-diagnosis for central locking.*

Removing and installing control motor for tailgate



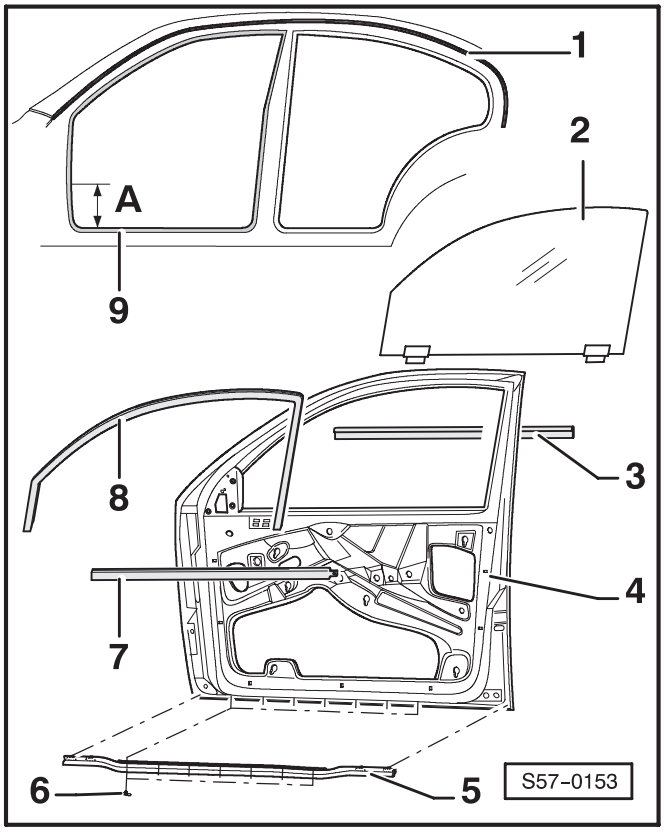
- Removing trim panel of tailgate ⇒ page 70-11.

◄ - Disconnect plug connection -5-.

- Remove screws -2-.
- Pull tension rod -3- of control motor -1- out of the tailgate lock -4-.
- Take out control motor -1-.

Removing and installing positioning element for fuel tank lid

⇒ Summary of components, page 55-6.



Front door seals - Summary of components

1 - Top door seal
- ♦ Adhesive

2 - Door window
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 57-3.

3 - Outside window shaft seal
- ♦ Fit onto flange

4 - Door
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 57-2.
- ♦ Setting ⇒ page 57-3.

5 - Outside door seal - front

6 - Clip

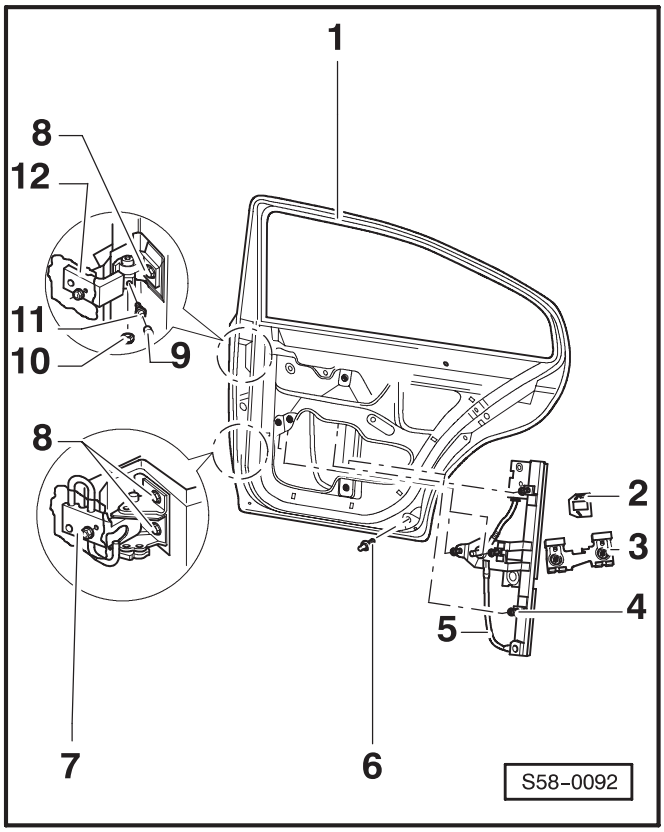
7 - Inside window shaft seal
- ♦ Fit onto flange

8 - Window run
- ♦ Fit into window frame

9 - Inside door seal
- ♦ The joining must have a distance -A- of approx. 300 mm ± 100 mm from door bottom.

Rear Door

List of rear door components



1 - Rear door
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 58-2.
- Setting ⇒ page 58-2.

2 - Guide piece
- Fit onto lever strip of window lifter -5-.

3 - Clip
- Fit into guide piece -2-.

4 - 10 Nm

5 - Window lifter
- Removing ⇒ page 58-4.

6 - Catch bolt
- 40 Nm.

7 - Bottom door hinge
- Screw onto door and pillar B.
- With door arrester.

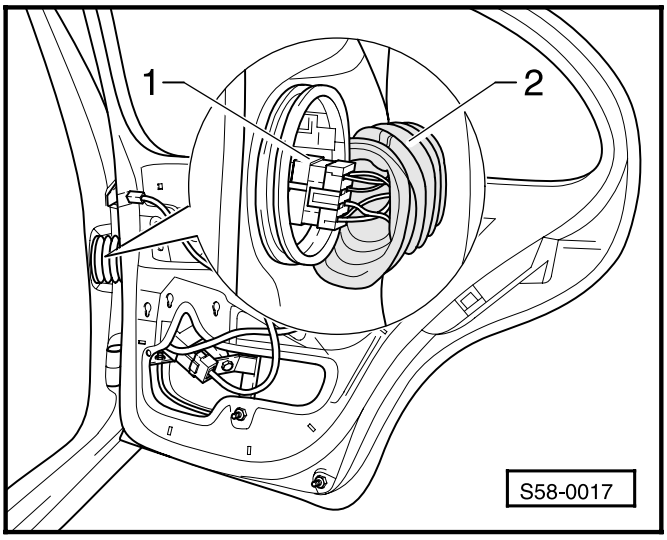
8 - 32 Nm

9 - Cap
- For vehicles ➤ 12.99

10 - Nut, 30 Nm
- For vehicles 01.00 ➤

11 - 20 Nm
- For vehicles ➤ 12.99

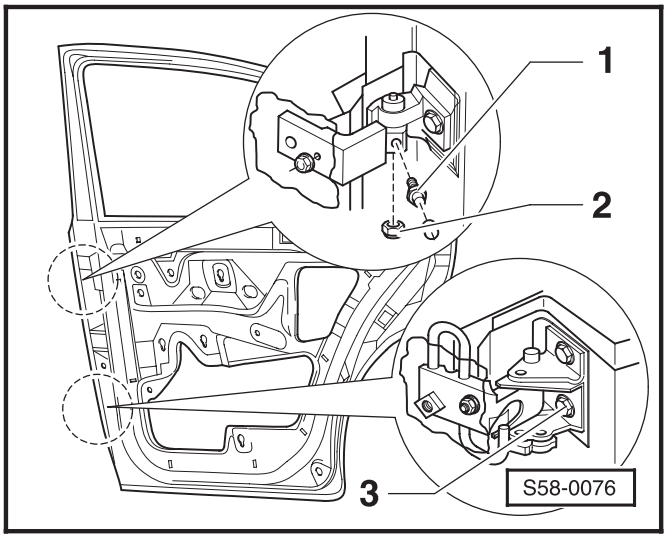
12 - Top door hinge
- Screw onto door and pillar B. Insert hinge bolt into box section and secure with grub screw -11- or nut -10-.



Removing and installing rear door

Removing

◄- Disconnect in grommet -2- the horizontal plug connection -1- at pillar B.



For vehicles ➤ 12.99

◄- Remove cap and unscrew grub screw -1- from upper hinge.

For vehicles 01.00 ➤

- Unscrew nut -2-.

For all vehicles

- Unscrew bottom screw -3- from door.
- Lift door up and out of the hinge brackets.

Installing

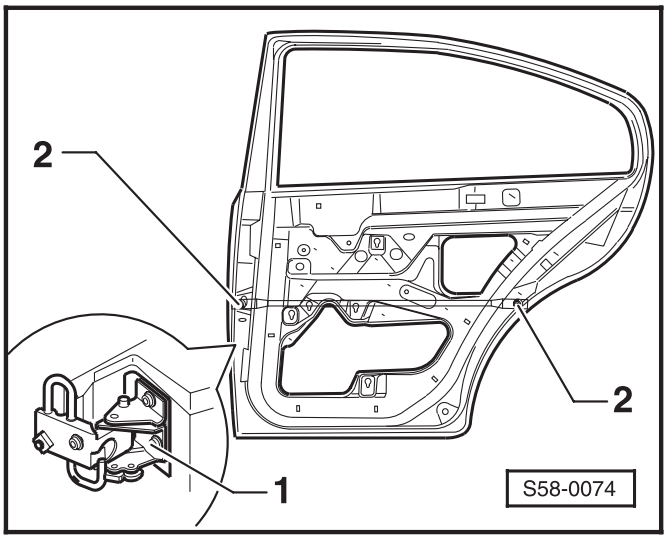
The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

- *When replacing the doors after the paintwork, screws -1- and -2- must be tightened to the specified torque.*
- *The process for the rear door is identical for the Octavia Estate.*

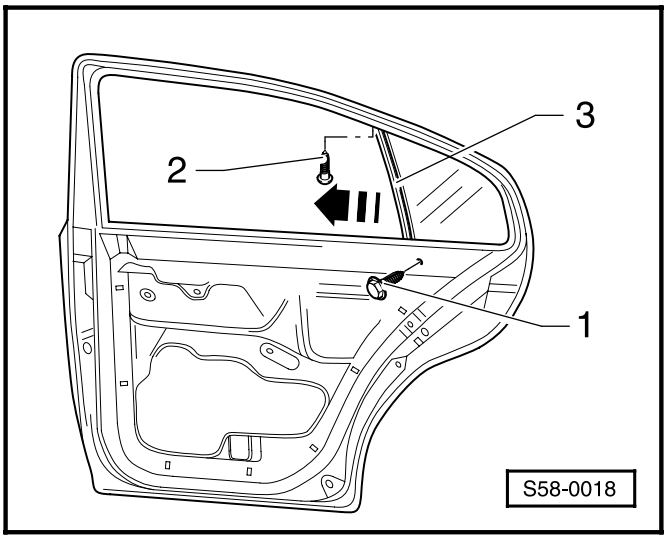
1 - 32 Nm

2 - 22 Nm



Door adjustment

- To correctly adjust the door, the door hinges must be loosened on the pillar and door. Other adjusting measures, e.g. aligning the doors towards the top are ineffective. The door will drop again at the following overpressures.
- Doors are correctly adjusted if, when closed, they are at an equal distance from the frame all round, are not positioned too far to the inside or outside and the contours are aligned.

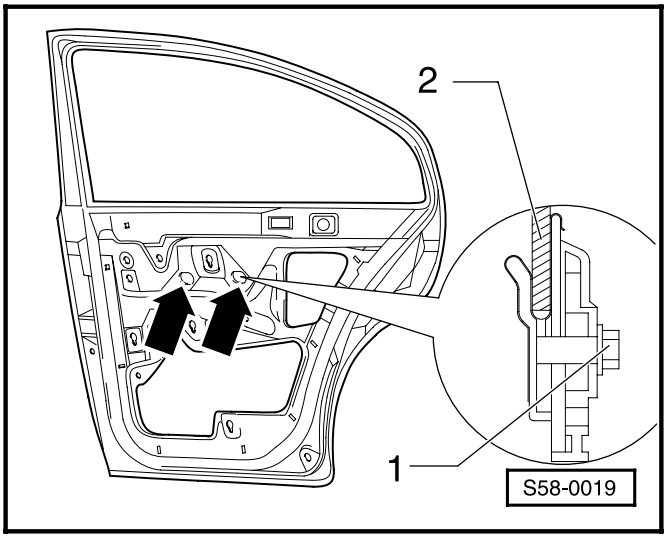


Removing door window

- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-5.
- Detach insulation sheeting ⇒ page 70-6.
- Pull inner window slot seal off the flange.
- Lower door window.

◄ - Take out screws -1- and -2- for window guide -3- and pull window guide off the triangular window -arrow-.

- Take out window guide.



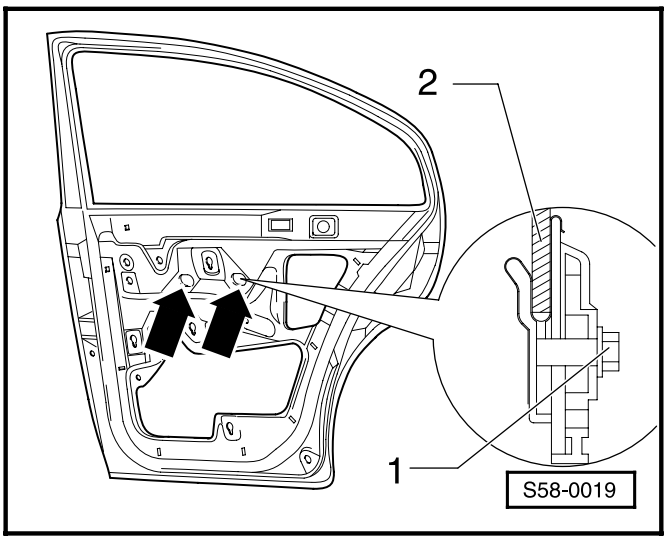
- Close door window sufficiently until the clamping jaws are positioned in the assembly openings -arrows-.

◄ - Slacken hexagon nuts -1- and press clamping jaws apart.

- Pull door window -2- up and lift it out of the window slot.

Removing window lifter

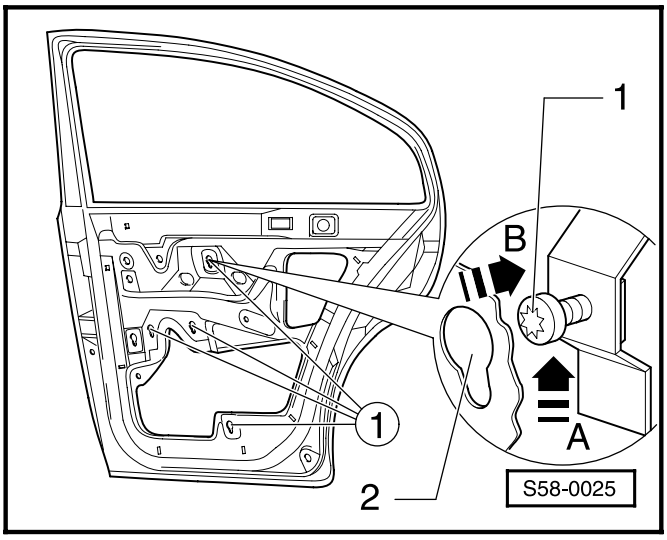
Removing



- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-5.
- Detach insulation sheeting ⇒ page 70-6.
- Close or open door window sufficiently until the clamping jaws are positioned in the assembly openings -arrows-.

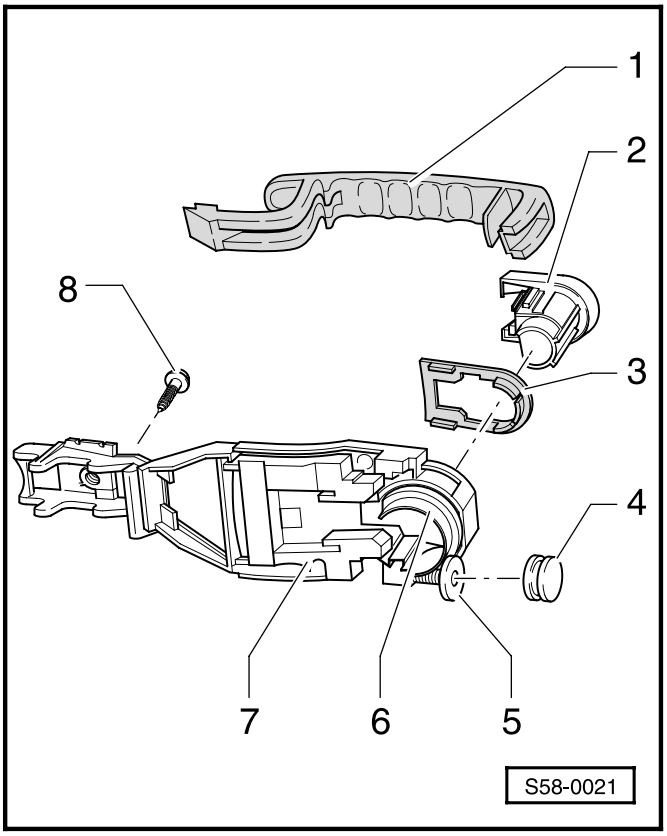
◄ - Slacken hexagon nuts -1- and press clamping jaws apart.

- Push door window -2- up and fix in position (e.g. with adhesive tape).



◄ - Slacken screws -1- (10 Nm).

- If power fitted, separate plug connection.
- Raise window lifter slightly -arrow A- so that the screws -1- can be tightened through the assembly holes -2- -arrow B-.
- Take window lifter up and out of the assembly opening.



Summary of components of door handle

1 - Door handle
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58-6.

2 - Cover

3 - Base

4 - Cap

5 - Screw
- ♦ Moves the clamping ring -6-.

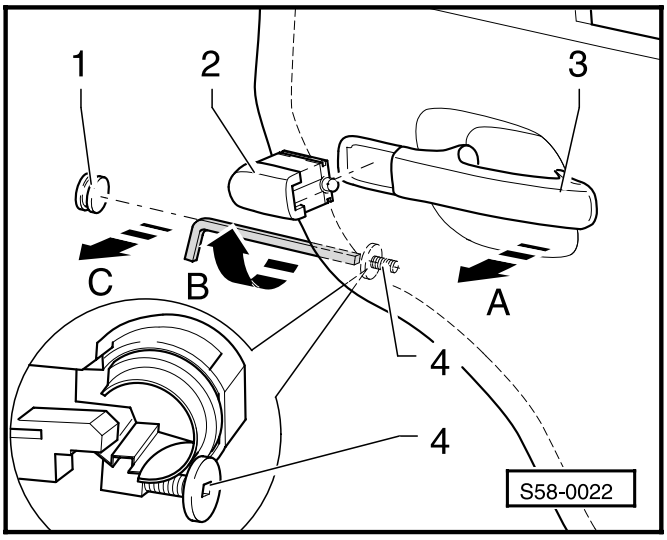
6 - Clamping ring

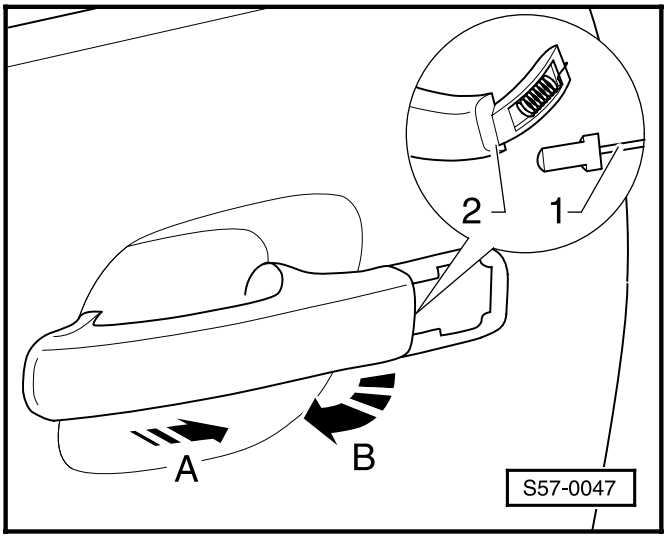
7 - Inner part of door handle
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove door handle -1-.
- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4.1.
- Remove screw -8-.
- Push inner part of door handle back and take out.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

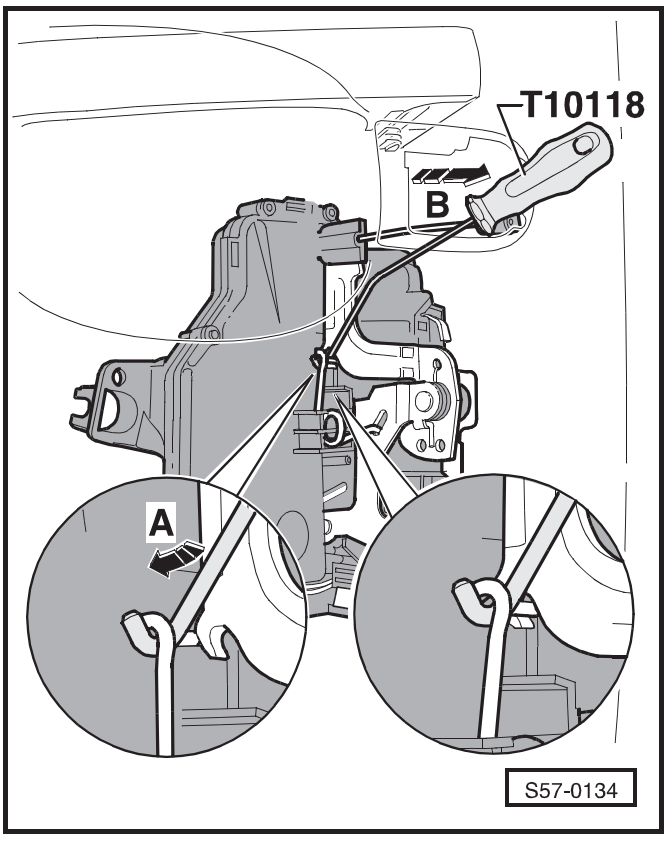
Note:

When inner part of door handle is removed, the screw -5- must not be turned.

8 - Screw







Removing and installing outer door handle

Special tools, testers and aids required:

- Square wrench or TORX 20
- Assembly tool T10118

Removing

◄ - Pull outer door handle -3- up to the stop in direction of actuation -arrow A- and hold.

- Remove cap -1-.
- Turn screw -4- in the direction indicated -arrow B- until resistance is perceptible.

Note:

Screw -4- must not be turned as long as the outer door handle is removed.

- Pull out cover -2- -arrow C-

◄ - Unclip control cable -1- from door handle -2-.

- Slide door handle -2- to the rear -arrow A- and swivel out of the door -arrow B-

Installing:

- Swivel door handle into the door.

For vehicles 05.98 ➤

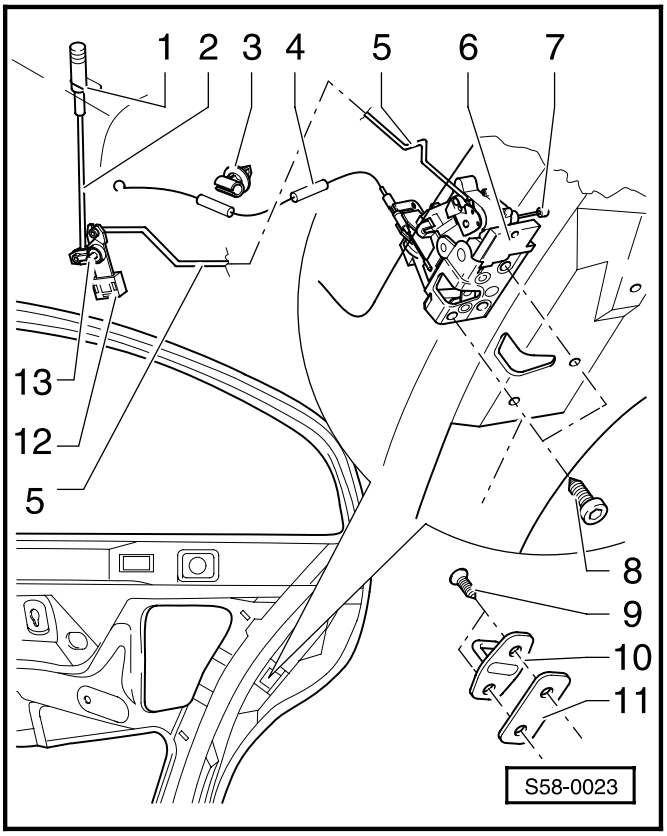
◄ - Hang device T10118 in the spring fixed to the door lock -arrow A- and hang the spring in the lock lever -arrow B-.

For all vehicles

Further installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

The control cable must lock securely into the outer door handle.



Summary of door lock parts

1 - Locking knob
- ♦ screwed on

2 - Locking rod

3 - Linkage clip

4 - Cable for interior mechanism
- ♦ attached to interior mechanism

5 - Locking rod

6 - Door lock
- ♦ removing and installing ⇒ page 58-8

7 - Cable for external mechanism
- ♦ attached to door handle

8 - 30 Nm

9 - 30 Nm

10 - Locking plate

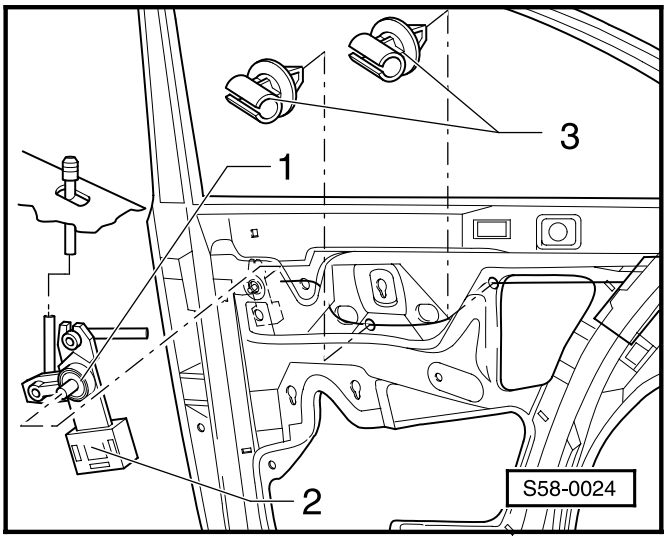
11 - Base

12 - Fulcrum lever

13 - Expanding pin

Removing and installing door lock

Removing

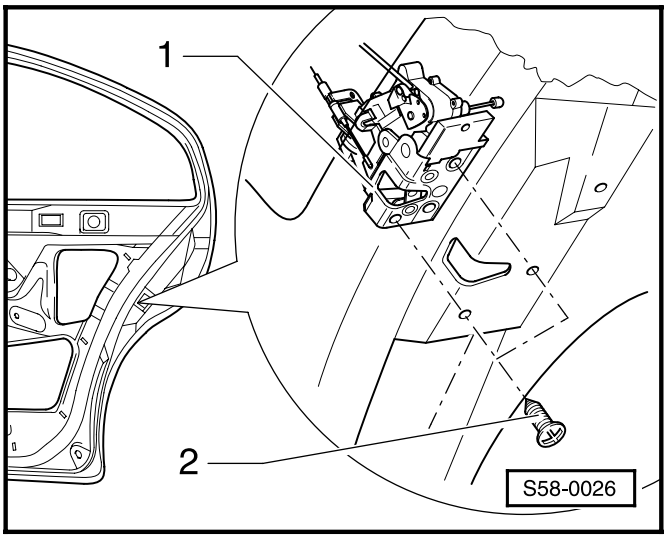


Door window should be closed.

- Remove door handle ⇒ page 58-6.
- Remove door trim panel ⇒ page 70-5.
- Detach insulating sheeting ⇒ page 70-6.

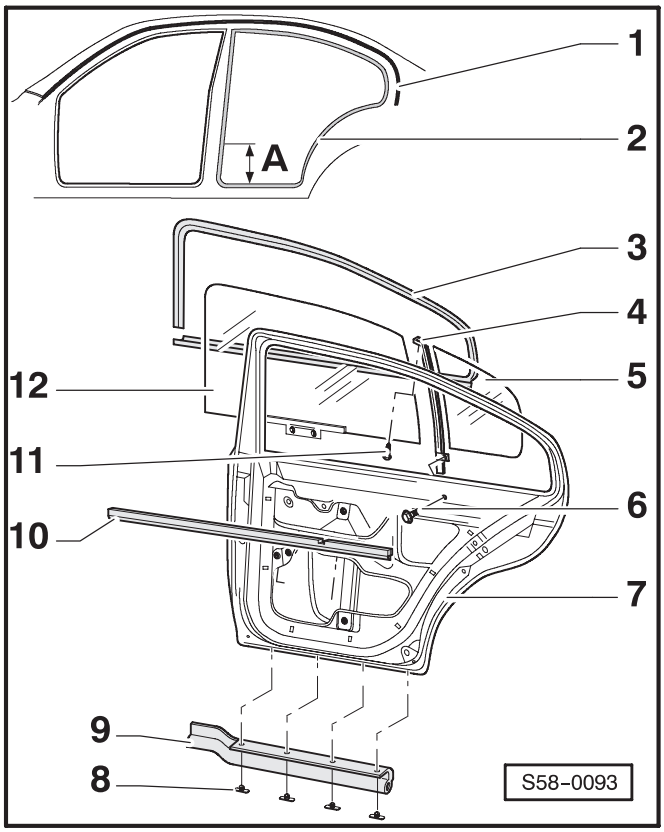
◄- Push through expanding pin -1- of the fulcrum lever, take fulcrum lever -2- off the door and detach locking rod.

- Detach clips -3- for attaching the locking rod.
- It is essential to remove the expanding pin from the door (rattling noises).



◄- Take out screws -2-.
Tightening torque = 8 Nm.

- Pull door lock -1- out of the assembly opening.



Rear Door - Summary of components

1 - Top door seal
- ♦ Adhesive

2 - Inside door seal
- ♦ The joining must have a distance -A- of approx. 300 mm ± 100 mm from door bottom.

3 - Window run
- ♦ Fit into window frame.

4 - Window separator bar

5 - Triangular window

6 - 10 Nm

7 - Door
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 58-2.
- ♦ Setting ⇒ page 58-2.

8 - Clip

9 - Outside door seal - rear

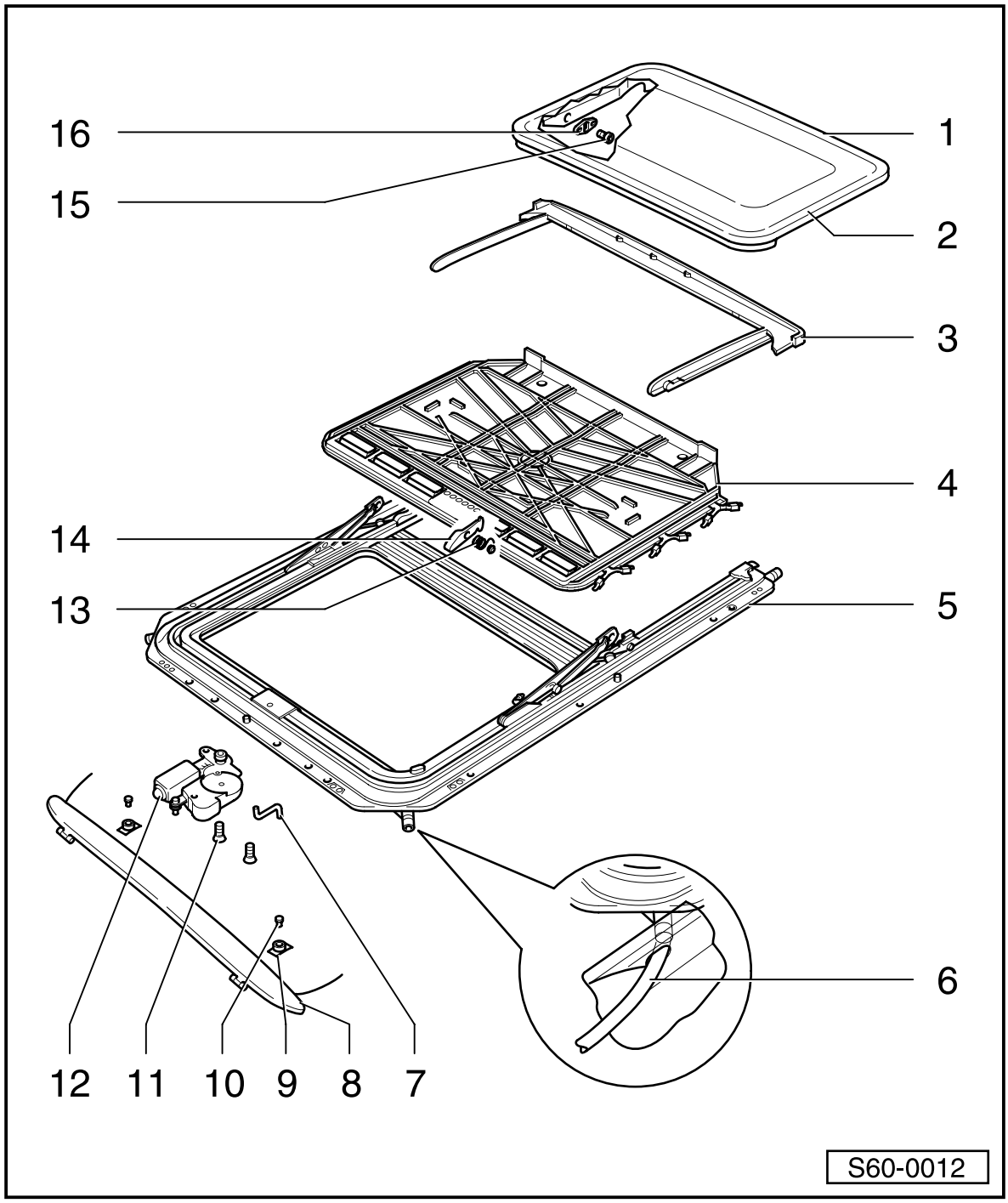
10 - Inside window shaft seal
- ♦ Fit onto flange.

11 - 1 Nm

12 - Door window
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 58-3.

Rockwell sliding/tilting roof with glass panel

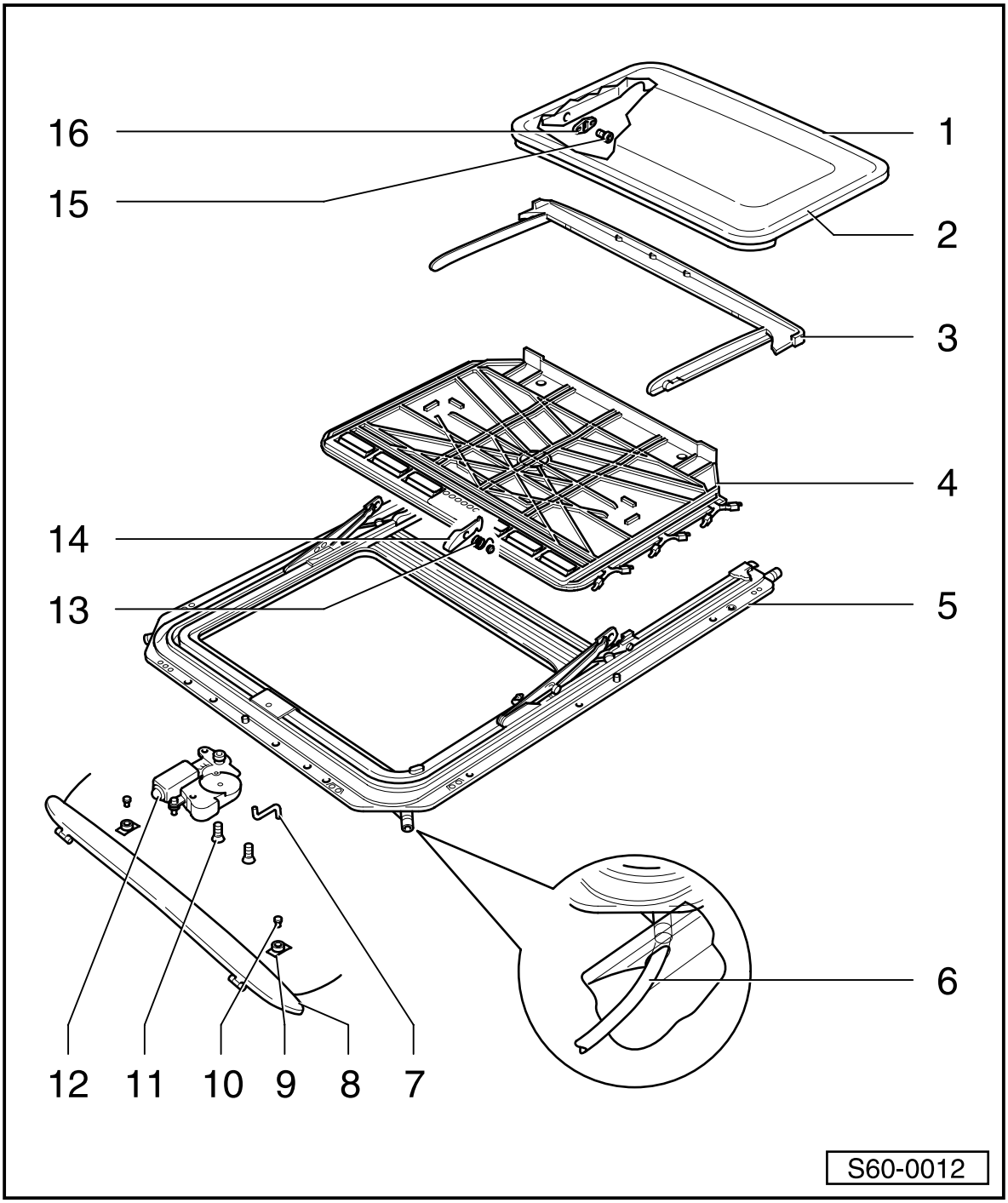
Assembly overview of sliding/tilting roof with glass panel



1 - Glass panel for sliding/tilting roof (single safety glass)
- Removing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-3
- Installing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-4
- Aligning glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-4

2 - Glass panel weatherseal
- Aligning glass panel weatherseal ⇒ page 60-5
- Joint of seal must be positioned in the middle on the right-hand side
- Treat installation channel of weatherseal with lubricant (water) before installing

3 - Trim surround



4 - Sun screen
- Removing and installing sun screen ⇒ page 60-7 and 60-8

5 - Assembly unit
- Removing and installing assembly unit ⇒ page 60-8
- Assembly unit includes the following parts:
- U-frame (with guiding ducts)
- Rear guides with control cables
- Front guides
- If necessary grease the guide ducts with special grease G 052 778 only as otherwise the functions cannot be guaranteed.

6 - Water drain hoses
- Cleaning water drain hoses ⇒ page 60-9

7 - Hexagonal wrench for emergency operation
- Clipped into the E-drive

8 - Draught deflector
- Open glass panel to the rear and unscrew draught deflector

9 - Bush for draught deflector
- Thread should point to the rear at an angle

10 - Screw for securing draught deflector

11 - Countersunk screws (microencapsulated)
- Screws for attaching electric drive
- Always use new countersunk screws
- 3 Nm

12 - Electric drive
- Testing electric drive (0 position) ⇒ page 60-6

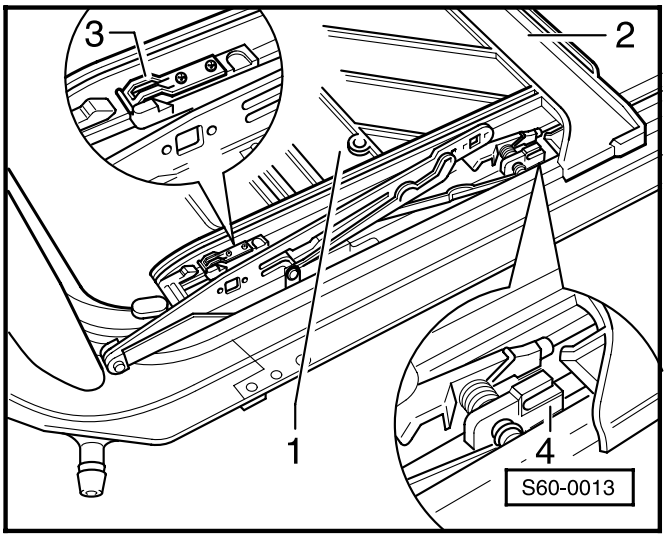
13 - Catch hook spring

14 - Catch hook

15 - Torx screw
- Torx screw insert T 25
- 6 Nm

16 - Clamping plate

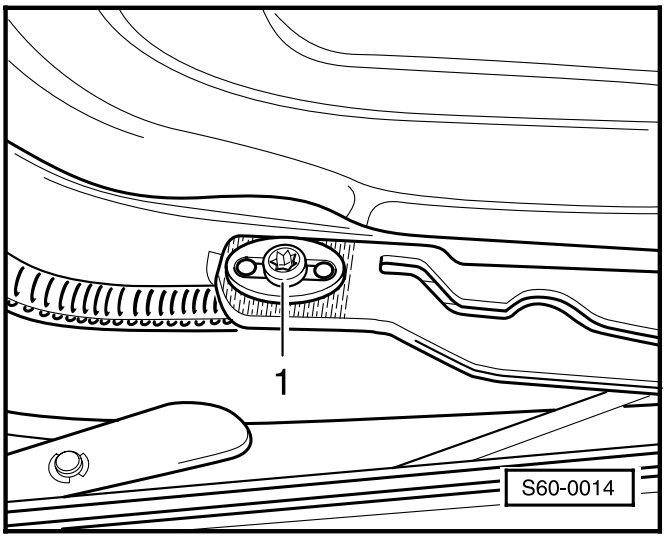
Removing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof



- Tilt sliding/tilting roof open.

◄ - Push sun protection -1- to the rear.

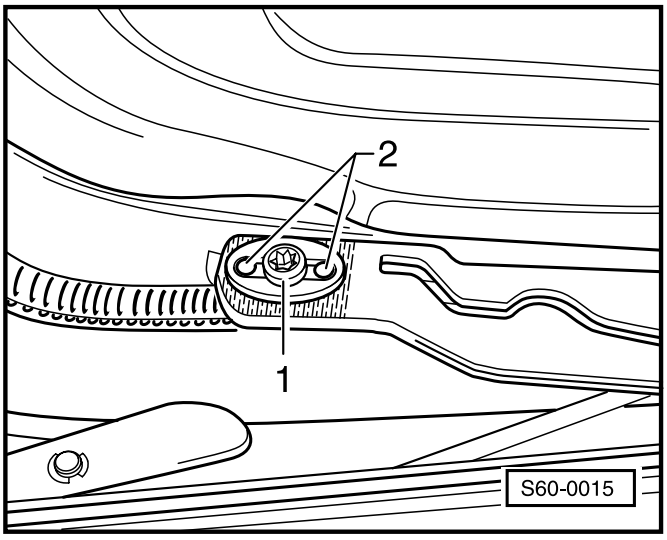
- Push trim frame -2- to the rear (clipped on in the area of the front guides -3- and guided in the rear area by studs -4-).



◄ - Remove the securing screws -1- (Torx screw insert T 25) and take off.

- Lift glass panel up and out.

- Pull out trim frame (if necessary).



Installing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof

The glass panel should be installed in 0 position (glass panel closed).

- Check parallel running and adjust if necessary ⇒ page 60-6.

◄ - Insert glass panel for sliding/tilting roof from above and insert the securing screws -1-. When doing this, ensure the centering pins -2- are correctly located on the rear of the clamping plates.
Tightening torque: 6 Nm

Note:

Tighten securing screws after adjusting height of glass panel (6 Nm).

- Carry out height adjustment ⇒ page 60-4.

- Check installation of glass panel seal, adjust if necessary ⇒ page 60-5.

- Push trim frame forward and clip into front guide.

- Check that sliding/tilting roof operates properly.

Adjusting glass panel for sliding/tilting roof (height adjustment)

- Move glass panel into tilt function.

- Push back sun protection fully.

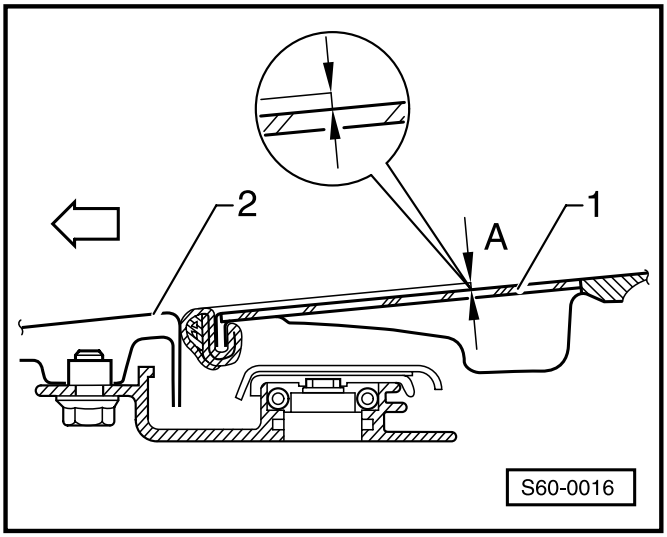
- Push trim frame to the rear (clipped on in area of the front guides and guided in the rear area by studs).

- Check parallel running and adjust if necessary ⇒ page 60-6.

- Slacken all four screws of the glass panel (floating centering in roof opening).

- Move glass panel into „closed“ position.

- Carry out height adjustment of glass panel at front and rear on both sides as follows:

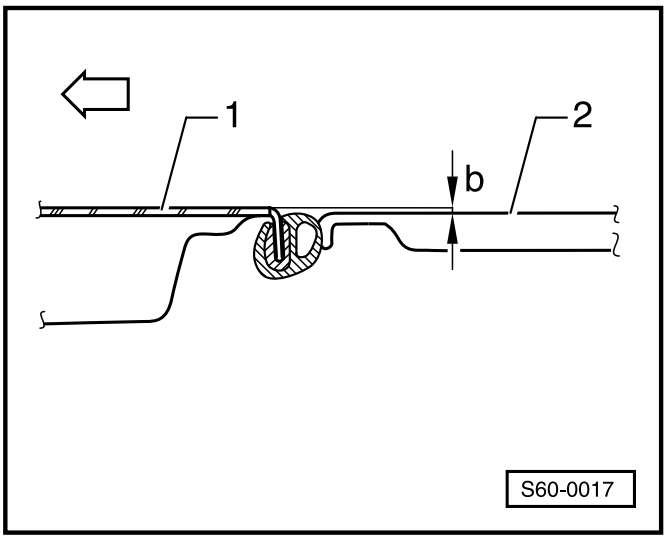


◄ Adjustment of glass panel at front:

A = 1 mm lower than roof panel -2-

-1- = Glass panel

Arrow = Direction of travel



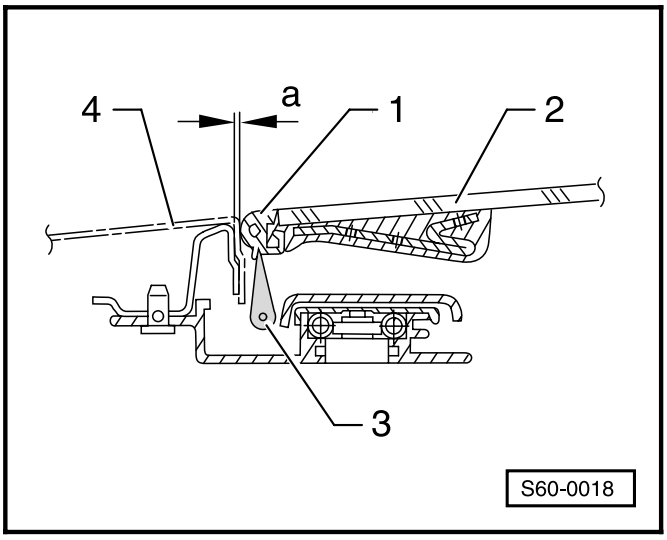
◄ Adjustment of glass panel at rear:

b = 1 mm higher than roof panel -2-

Arrow = Direction of travel

-1- = Glass panel

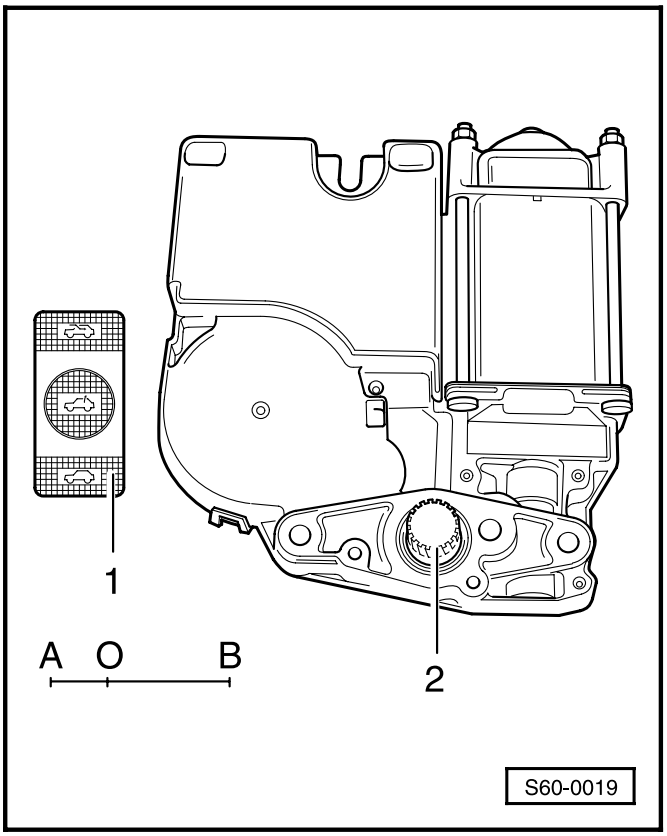
- Tighten the screws of the glass panel (6 Nm).
- Push trim frame forward and clip into place (clipped on in area of front guides and guided in the rear area by studs).



Adjusting glass panel seal

◄ - Use a strip of cardboard about 0.3 mm thick (a = 0.3 mm, for example business card) to check that the preload between glass panel seal -1- and body -4- is even all round. It should be possible to pull the cardboard strip through between glass panel seal and body with a certain resistance.

- If the prestress is insufficient, the glass panel seal can be pressed apart with a wedge -3-, e.g. plastic spatula or similar, or, if the prestress is excessive, it can be pressed together. The glass panel -2- should be removed for adjusting the seal ⇒ page 60-3.



Testing electric drive (0 position)

If the electric drive is replaced, it has to be installed in the 0 position (glass panel for sliding/tilting roof closed).

- Plug together the connector of electric drive/sliding/tilting roof wiring harness.

- Operate switch -1- until the 0 position of the electric drive is reached.
  The end cut-off point -B- is reached by turning the drive pinion to the right and the end cut-off point -A- by turning the drive pinion to the left.

Note:

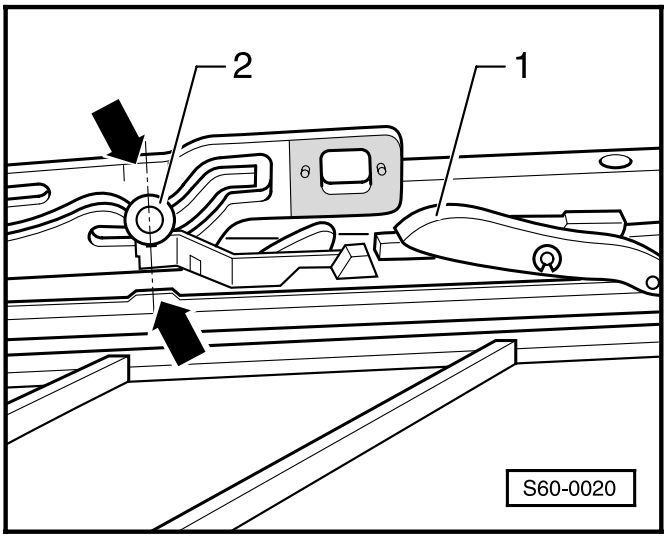
The zero position is set automatically if the switch is operated in the close position.

-A- End cut-off point, glass panel tilt function = 2 turns until 0 position

-B- End cut-off point, glass panel sliding function = 8.25 turns to 0 position

Inspecting and adjusting parallel running

Inspecting



- Move glass panel into „closed“ position.

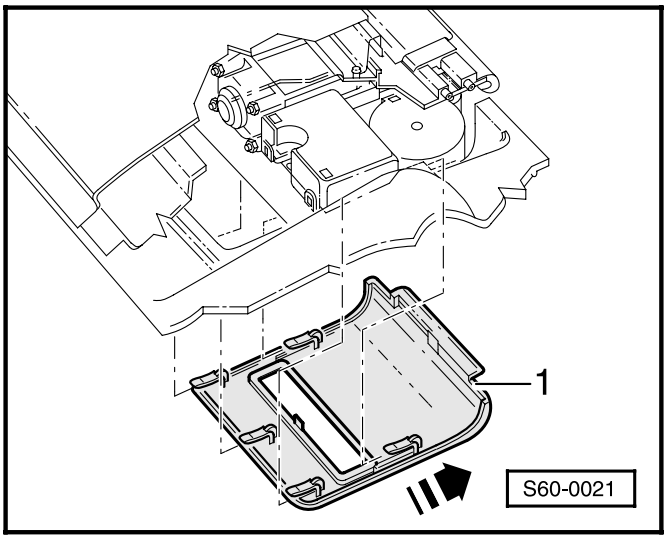
- Push back sun protection fully by hand.

- Push trim frame to the rear (clipped on in the area of the front guides and guided in the rear area by studs).

◄ Catch hooks (with roller) -1- should be engaged in the guide rails.

Pins -2- should be positioned within the markings (notches) -arrows-.

If this is not the case, adjust parallel running as follows:

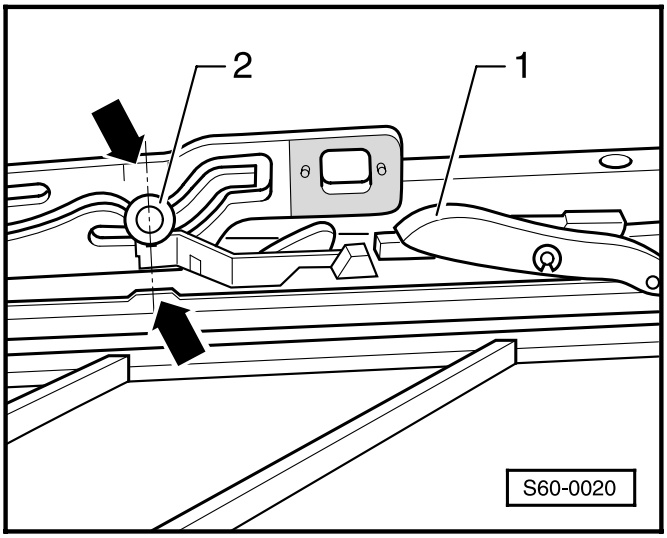


Adjusting

- Disconnect earth strap of battery.

◄ - Release cover -1- for electric drive in direction of arrow.

- Remove electric drive.



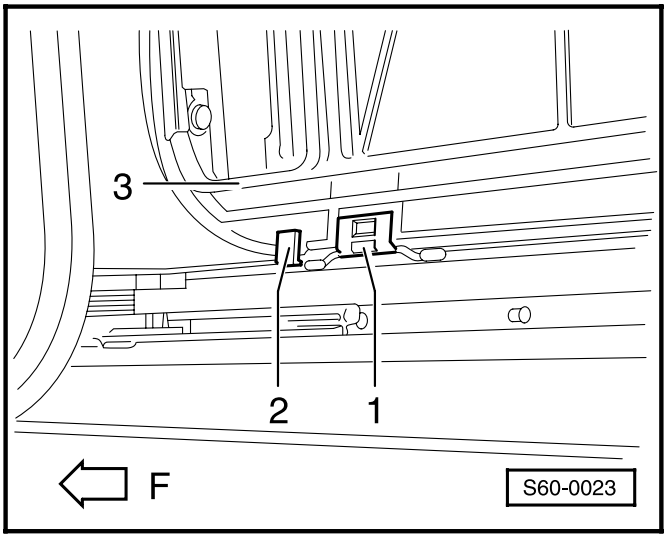
◄ Catch hooks (with roller) -1- should be engaged in the guide rails.

- Push rear guides with pins -2- only from front to rear between the notches -arrows-.

- Install electric drive in this position (0 position).

- Always use new screws (securing screws are microencapsulated), 3 Nm.

- Install glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-4.



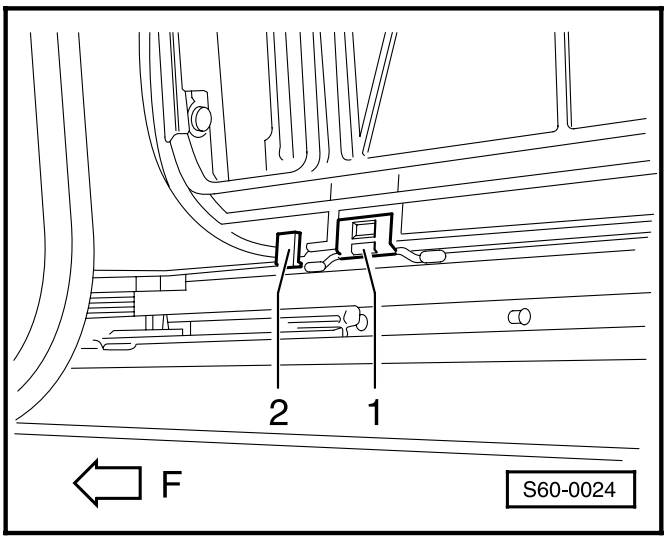
Removing sun protection

Glass panel and trim frame for sliding/tilting roof removed and sliding/tilting roof unit in „closed position“.

◄ - Unclip stops -2- on one side and push sun protection to this side. Use a screwdriver to lever runner -1- on the opposite side (from front to rear) out of the guide channels.

- Swivel sun protection -3- up and out of the assembly unit.

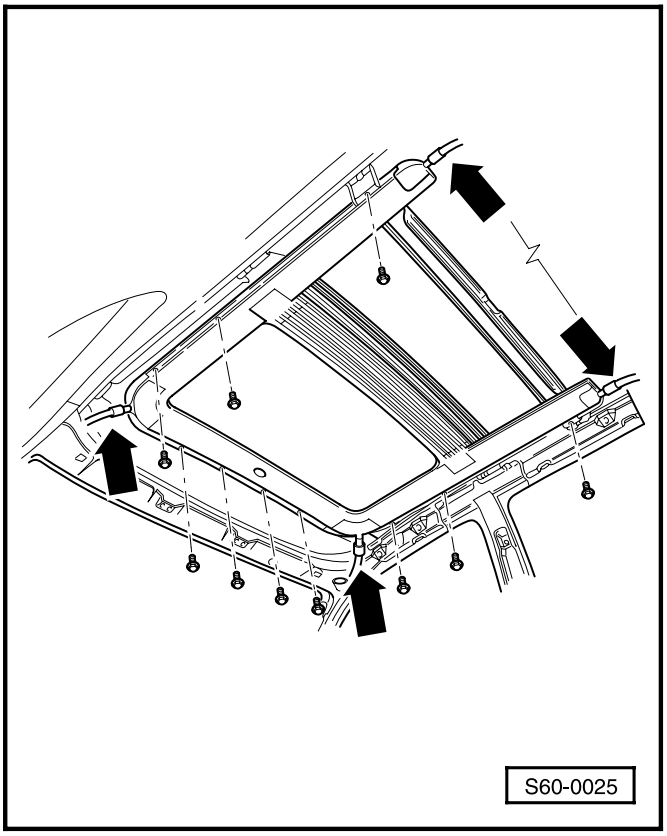
Arrow = Direction of travel



Installing sun protection

◄ - Insert sun protection into the roof opening. Insert runner of the sun protection (runners locked in place in sun protection) into the guide channels. Insert runner -1- on the other side into the guide channels and fit on the side stops -2-.

Arrow = Direction of travel



Removing and installing assembly unit

Removing

- Remove electric drive.
- Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 70-13.
- Detach water drain hoses -arrows- from the assembly unit.
- To facilitate removal and installation, take out glass panel of sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-3.

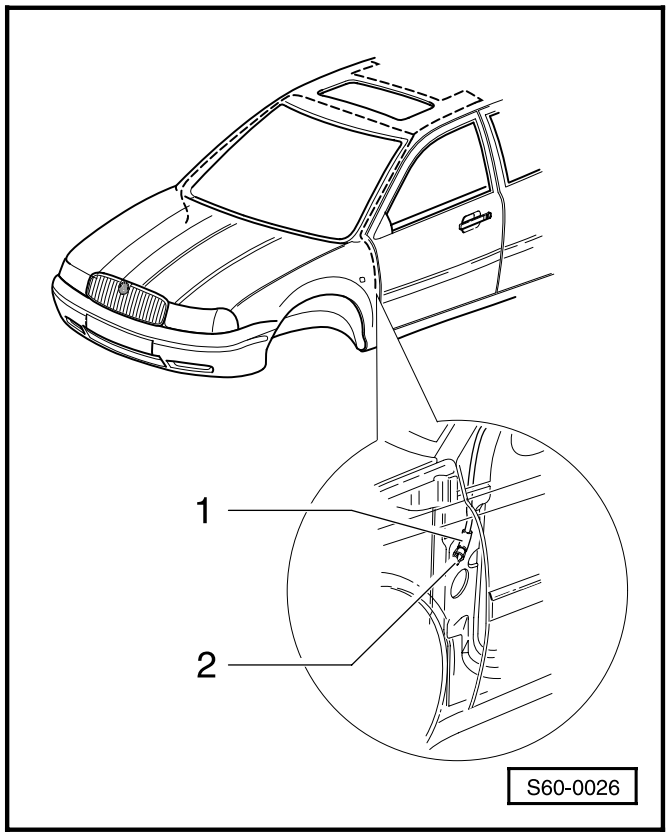
Note:

The assembly unit can also be removed complete with glass panel, sun protection and trim frame.

- Unscrew hexagon bolts and lift assembly unit out of the vehicle with the help of a second mechanic.

Installing

- Fit assembly unit onto the rear mounts and swivel up (the three locating pins should engage in the mounting holes).
- Tighten assembly unit (7.5 Nm).



Cleaning water drain hoses

Front water drain hoses:

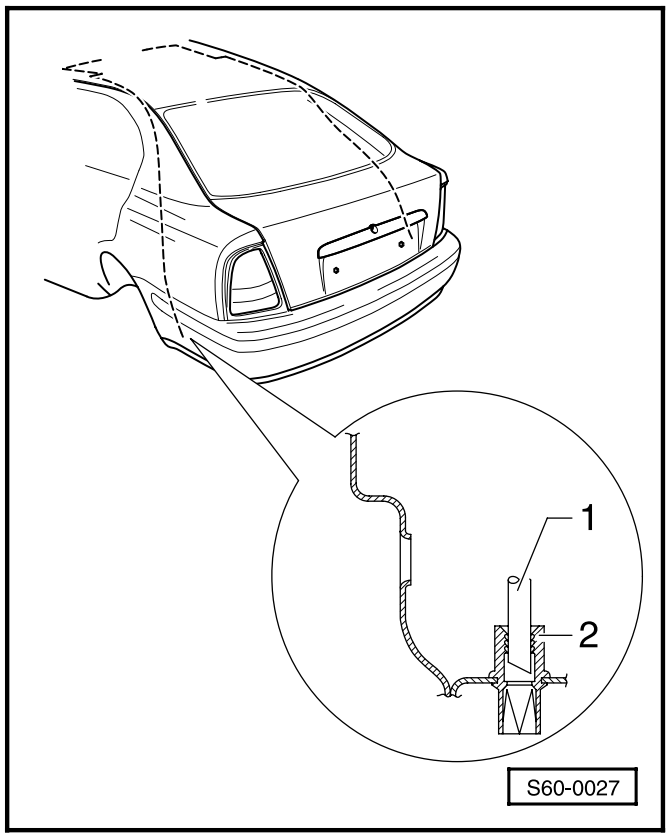
The front water drain hoses -1- run in the A pillars and end between door and A pillar. They are cleaned from the opening in the sliding/tilting roof.

1 - Front water drain hose

2 - Water drain valve

Note:

It is recommended to shop-make a tool for cleaning the hoses - a probe, about 2300 mm long, made from the core of a speedometer drive shaft.



Rear water drain hoses:

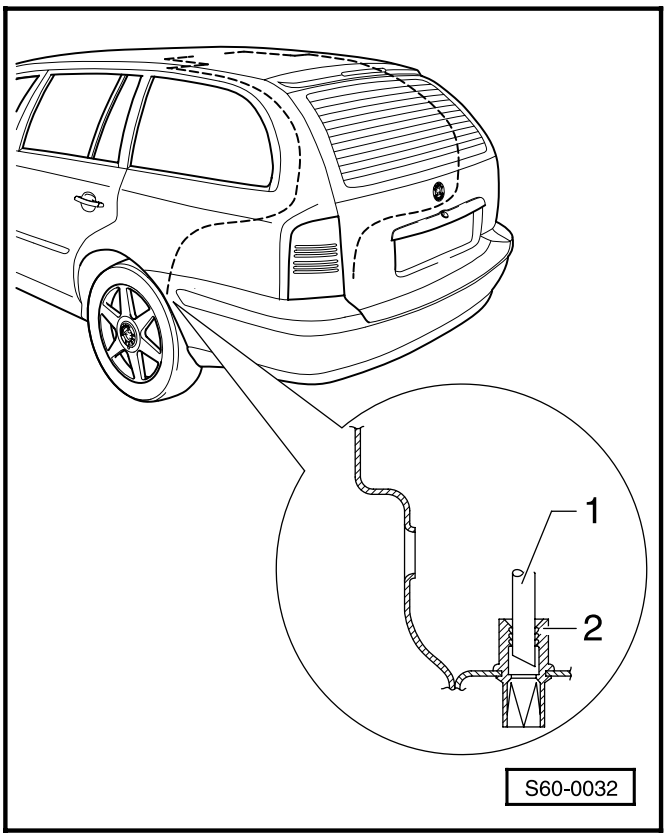
The rear water drain hoses -1- run in the C pillars and end at the side behind the bumper cover. They are cleaned from the bottom end of the hose. The hoses can remain installed for cleaning.

1 - Water drain hose

2 - Water drain valve

Note:

It is recommended to shop-make a tool for cleaning the hoses - a probe, about 2300 mm long, made from the core of a speedometer drive shaft.



Rear water drain hoses (Octavia Estate)

The rear water drain hoses -1- run in the D pillars and end at the side behind the bumper cover. They are cleaned from the bottom end of the hose. The hoses can remain installed for cleaning.

1 - Water drain hose

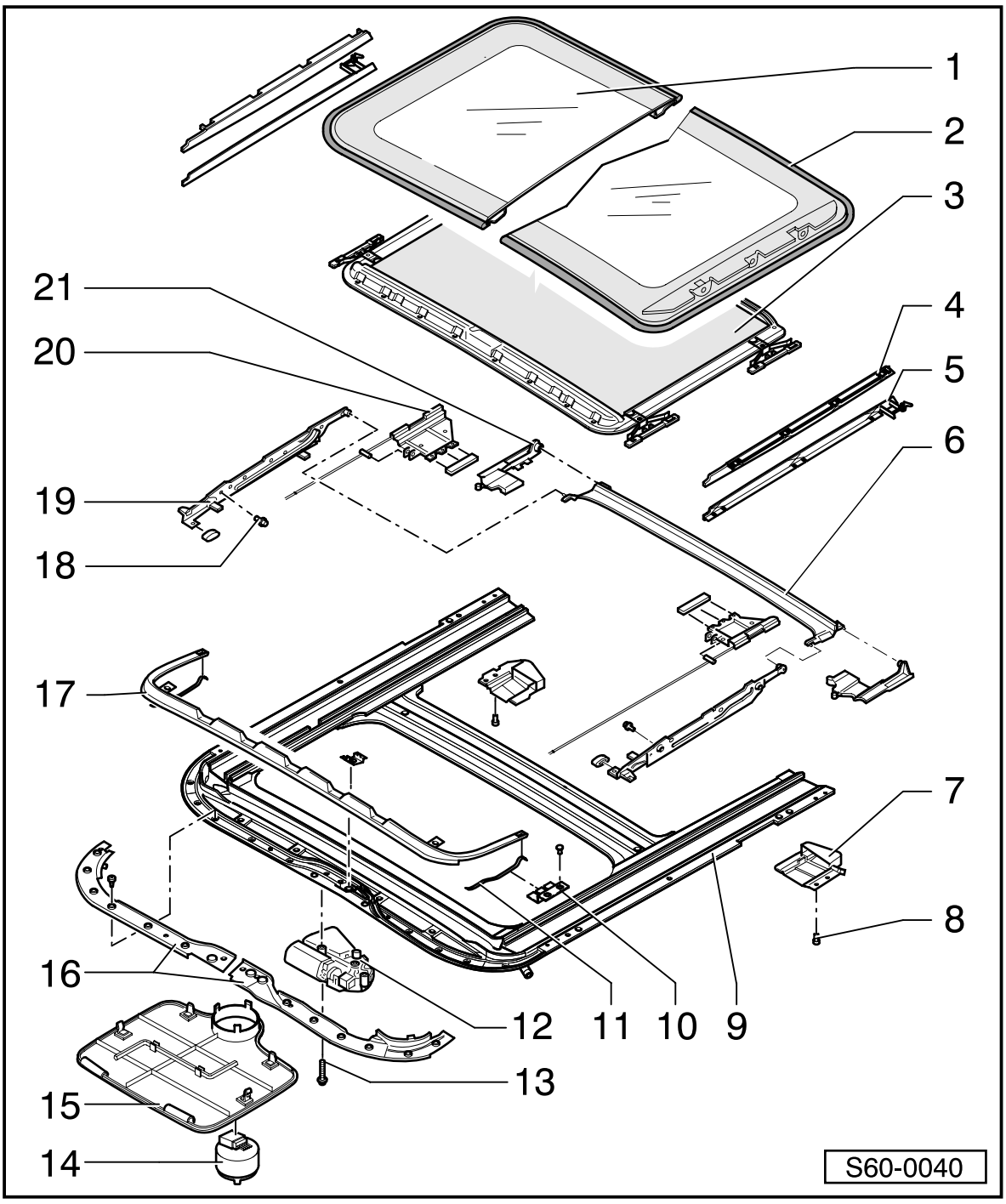
2 - Water drain valve

Note:

It is recommended to shop-make a tool for cleaning the hoses - a probe, about 2300 mm long, made from the core of a speedometer drive shaft.

Webasto sliding/tilting roof with glass panel

Assembly overview of sliding/tilting roof with glass panel



1 - Glass panel for sliding/tilting roof (single safety glass)
- Removing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-14
- Installing glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-14
- Aligning height of glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-15

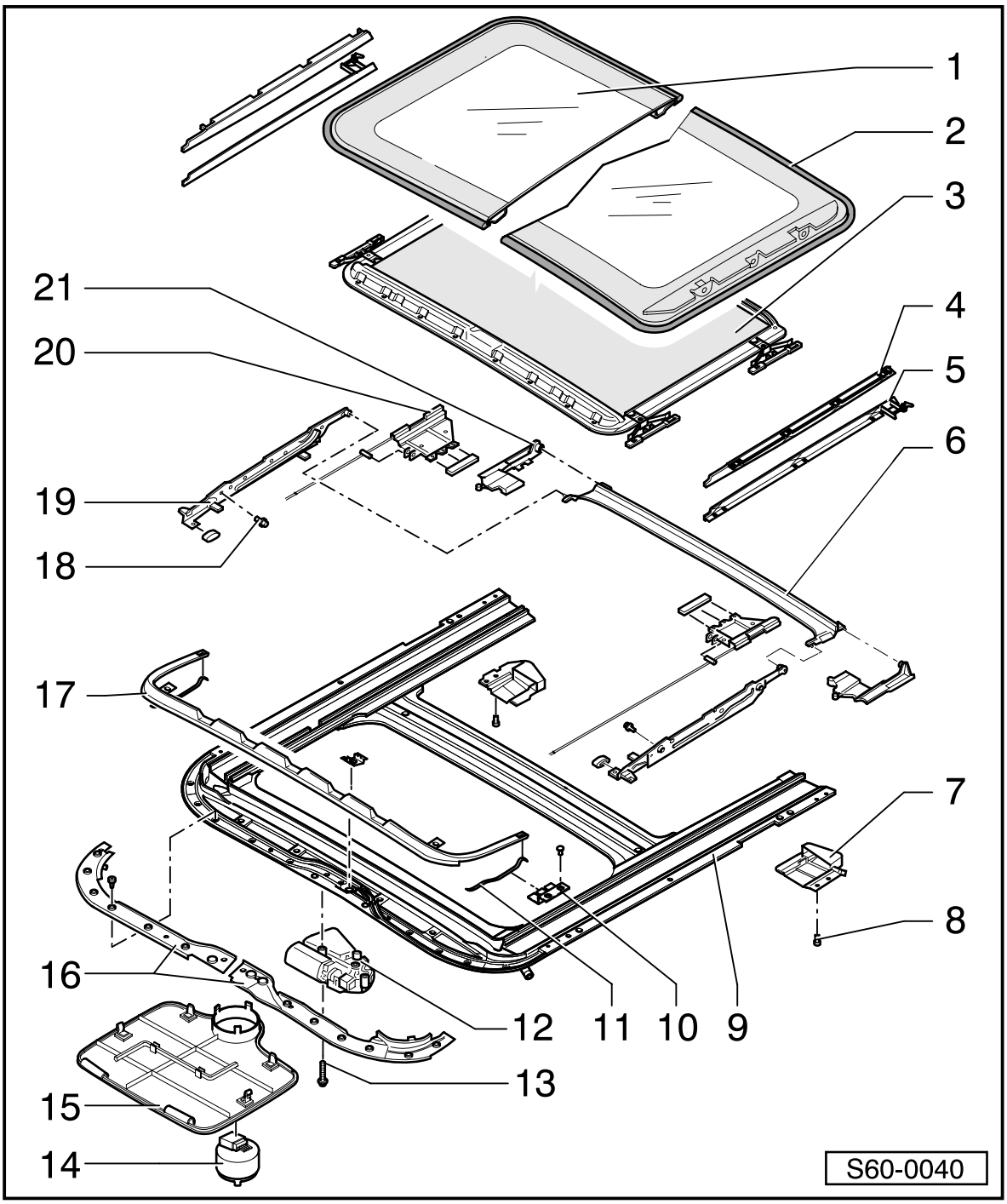
2 - Glass panel weatherseal
- Replacing glass panel weatherseal ⇒ page 60-16

3 - Sun shield
- Removing and installing sun shield ⇒ page 60-17

4 - Top trim
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 60-14

5 - Bottom trim
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 60-14

6 - Water channel
- Remove together with link guide ⇒ item 19



7 - End piece
- Use AKL 450 005 05 for bonding

8 - Screw

9 - Assembly unit
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 60-19
- If necessary, the guide channels should be greased only with special grease G 000 450 02 otherwise proper operation is not assured

10 - Bracket

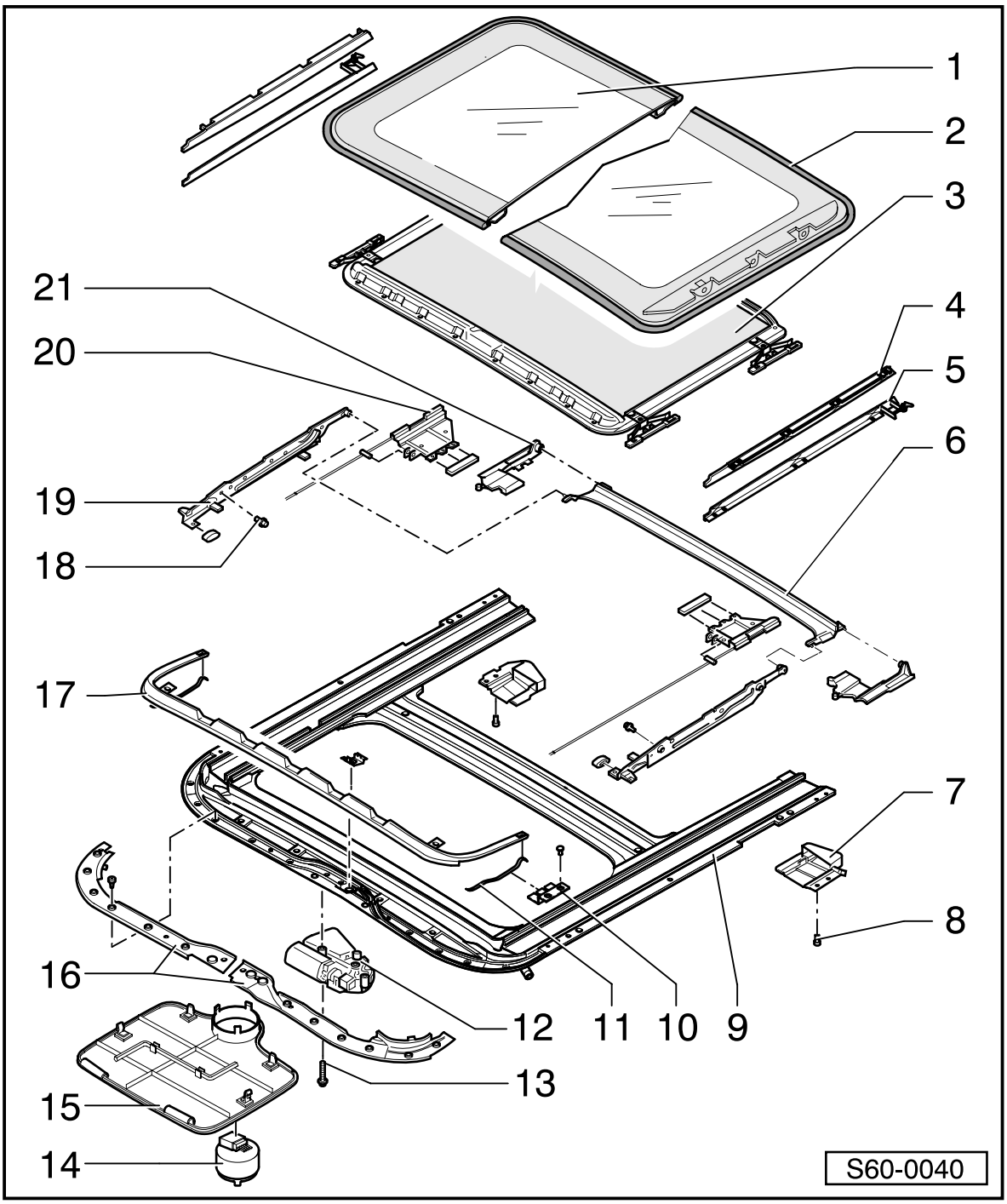
11 - Spring

12 - Electric drive
- Removing and installing ⇒ page 60-17
- Inspecting electric drive (zero position) ⇒ page 60-18

13 - Bolt

14 - Automatic preselect system

15 - Cover panel
- Hexagon wrench for manual operation is clipped into cover panel for electric drive



16 - Cover

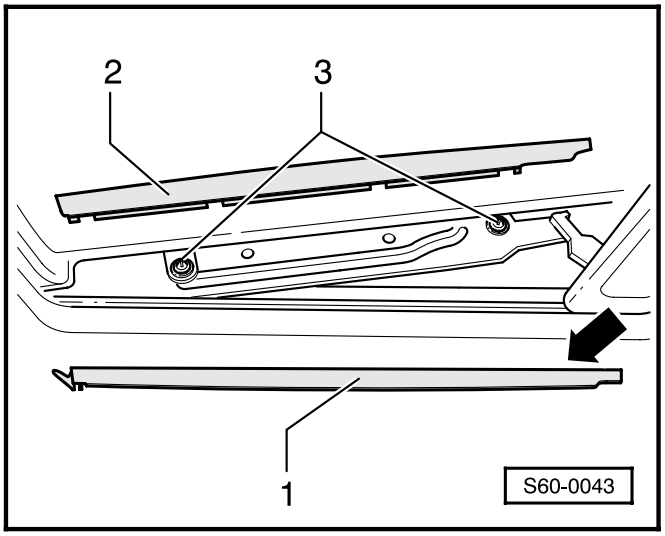
17 - Draught deflector

18 - 4.5 Nm

19 - Link guide

20 - Slide with cable

21 - Fixture

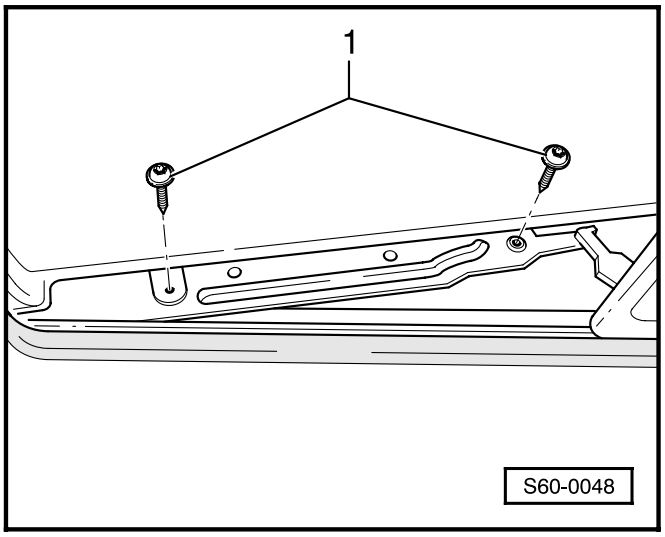


Removing glass panel for sliding/ tilting roof

- Push sun screen back.
- Tilt sliding/tilting roof.

◄- Unclip bottom trim -1- in rear area -arrow-, push forward and take it off the roof surround.

- Unclip front trim at top -2- and in the middle and release at the rear.

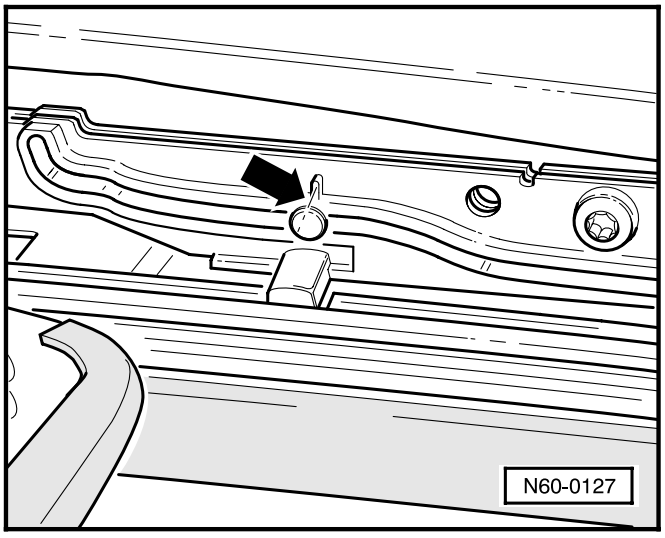


◄- Remove screw -1-.

- Take glass panel up and out.

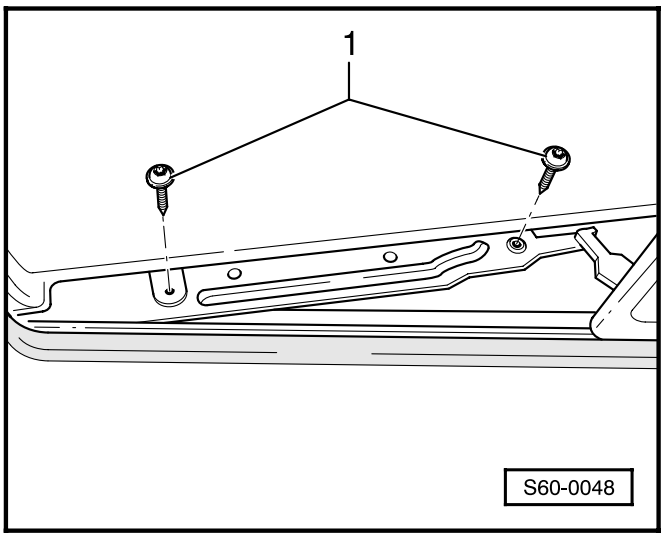
Installing glass panel for sliding/ tilting roof

Glass panel must be installed in the 0 position (glass panel closed).



◄- The shaft of the link pin must be aligned with the marking on the link -arrow-.

- Is this not the case, adjust parallel running ⇒ page 60-19.



◄- Insert glass panel for sliding/tilting roof from the top and tighten securing screws -1- slightly.

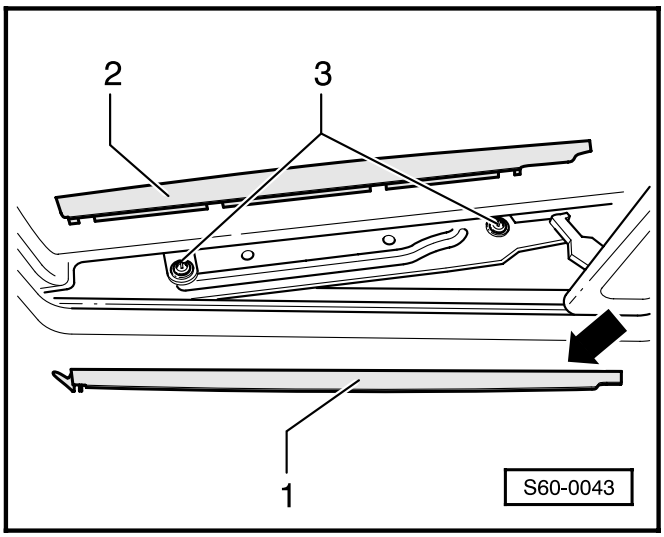
Note:

Tighten securing screws after adjusting height of panel (4.5 Nm).

Aligning glass panel for sliding/tilting roof (adjusting height)

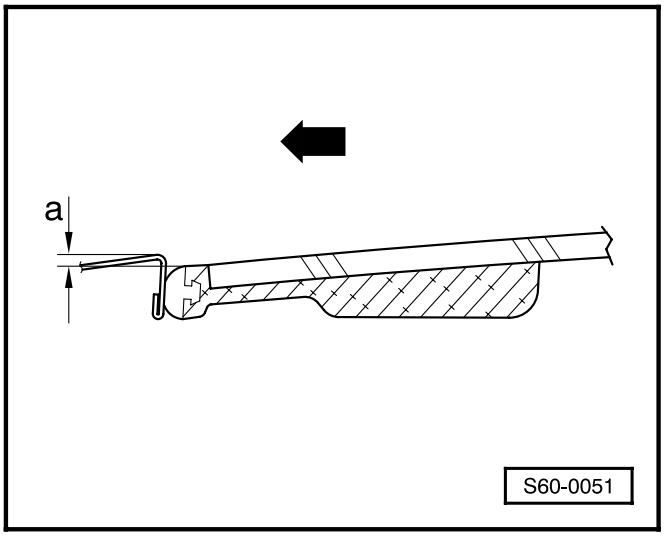
Zero position of sliding/tilting roof must be o.k.

- Tilt sliding/tilting roof.
- Push sun screen back.



◄- Unclip bottom trim -1- in the rear area -arrow-, push forward and take it off the roof surround.

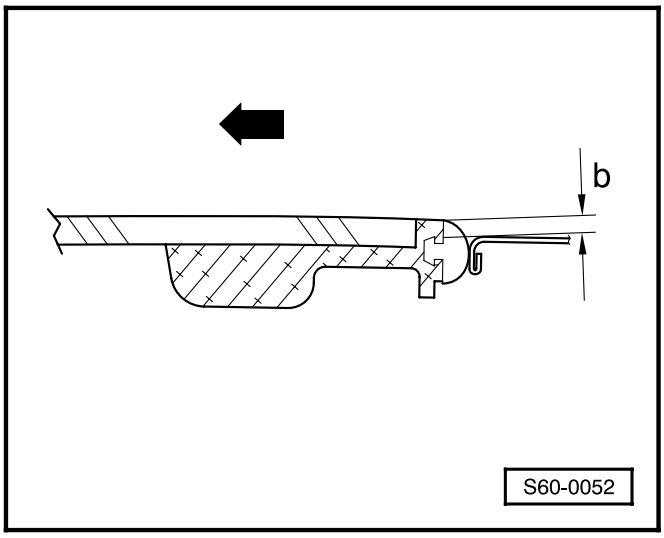
- Unclip front trim at top -2- and in the middle and release at the rear.
- Securing screws -3- (4.5 Nm).
- Close glass panel, open and close again (it is essential to keep to this order for correctly aligning).
- Perform alignment of height of glass panel at front and rear on both sides as follows:



◄ Alignment of panel at front:

a = 0...1 mm lower than roof

Arrow = direction of travel



◄ Aligning panel at rear:

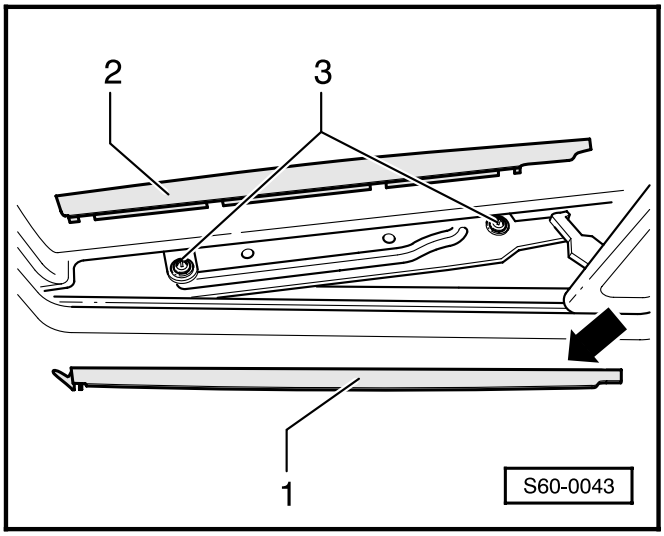
b = 0...1 mm higher than roof

Arrow = direction of travel

- Tighten screws of glass panel fully (4.5 Nm).
- Always align left and right sides of glass panel symmetrically.

Note:

The height alignment is checked by opening and closing the sliding/tilting roof.

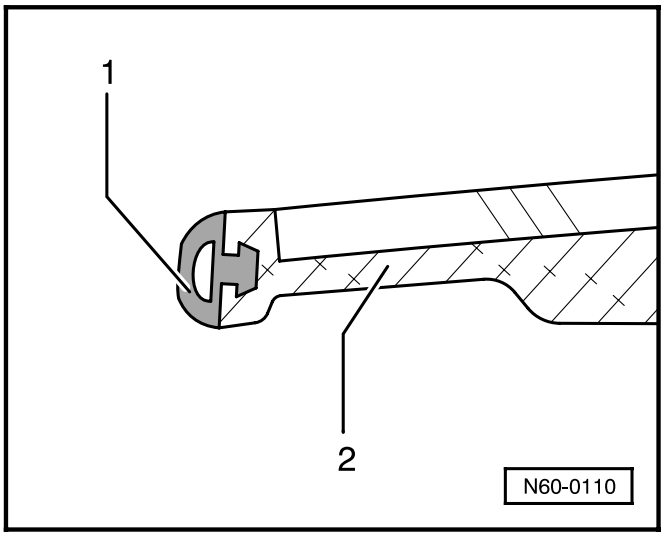


- Tilt sliding/tilting roof.

◄ - Attach top trim -2- at rear and clip in place in the middle and at the front.

- Move bottom trim -1- at rear in slot in direction of arrow and clip in place in the front.

Adjusting glass panel weatherseal



- Remove glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-14.

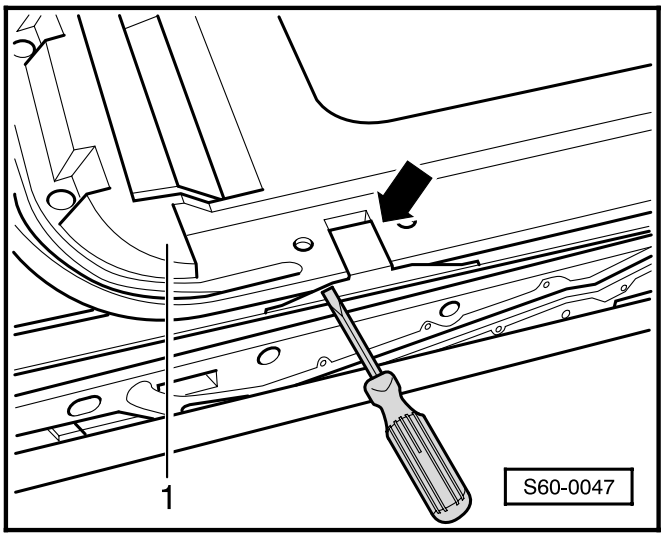
◄ - Pull weatherseal -1- off the glass panel.

- Press new weatherseal centred into the glass panel -2-.

Note:

Coat weatherseal with lubricant (water) to facilitate installation.

Removing and installing sun screen



Removing

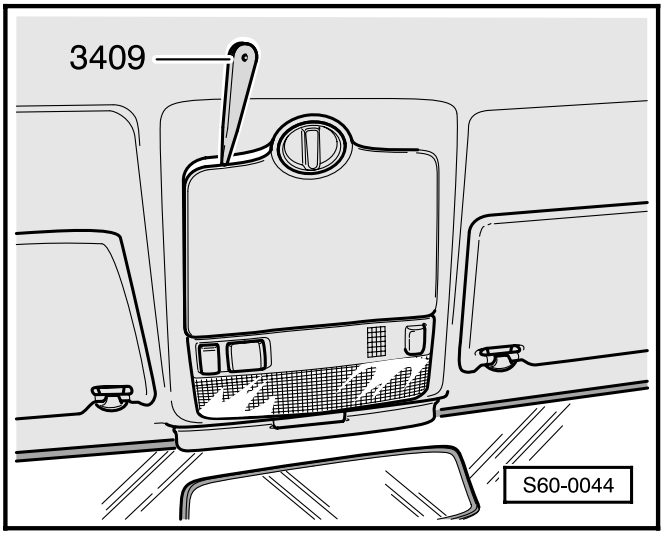
- Remove glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-14.
- For easier mounting slide sun screen slightly backwards.

◄ - Lever off front and rear slide with a screwdriver and remove sun screen -1- from the top.

Installing

The installation is carried out in reverse order.

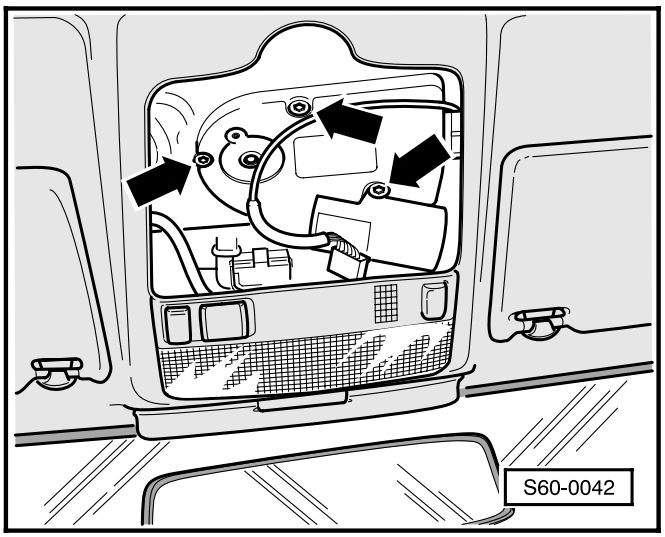
Removing and installing E-drive for sliding/tilting roof



Removing

- Disconnect earth strap.

◄ - Lever off E-drive cover with device 3409.



Note:

The E-drive can only be removed and installed when the sliding/tilting roof is closed.

- Disconnect plug connection.

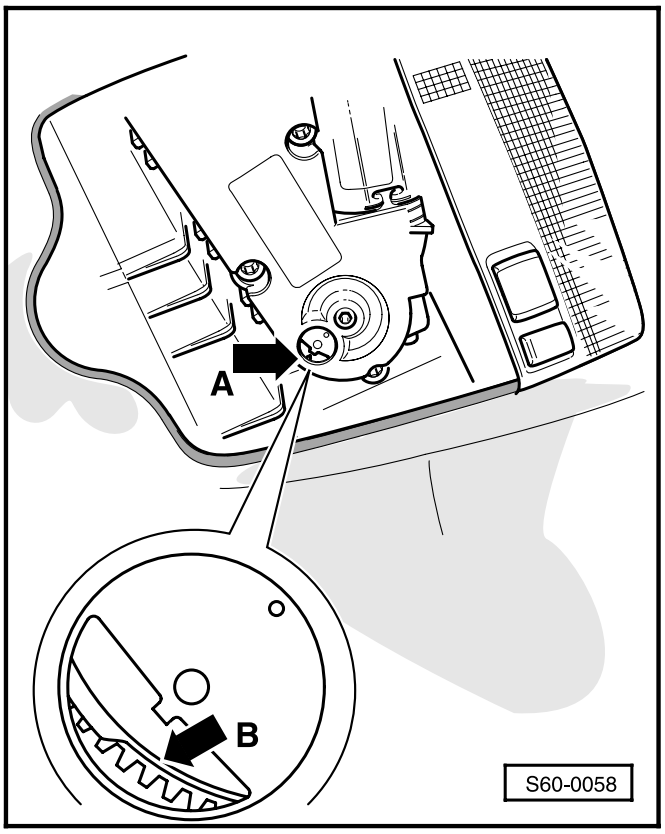
◄ - Unscrew screws -arrows- and remove drive.

Installing

The installation is carried out in reverse order.

Note:

Always replace the drive screws with new ones (3.5 Nm).



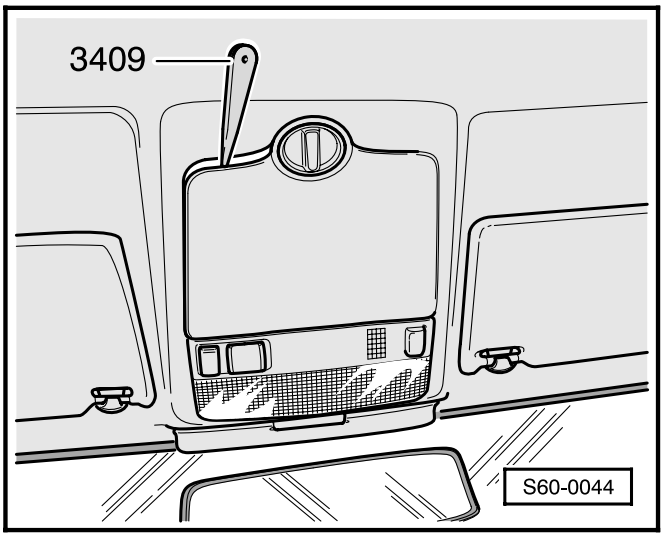
Setting electric drive (setting „0“ position)

It is necessary to set the „zero position“ if the drive was removed when it was not in the „zero position“, or if the sliding/tilting roof has been closed or opened using the emergency manual operation.

Drive removed and electric cables connected.

- Select „Roof tilted“ by turning the rotary switch of the automatic preselector.
- Select „Roof closed“ by turning the rotary switch of the automatic preselector.
- Select „Roof tilted“ by turning the rotary switch of the automatic preselector.
- Select „Roof closed“ by turning the rotary switch of the automatic preselector.
- Install drive in the „zero position“ with the sliding/tilting roof closed.

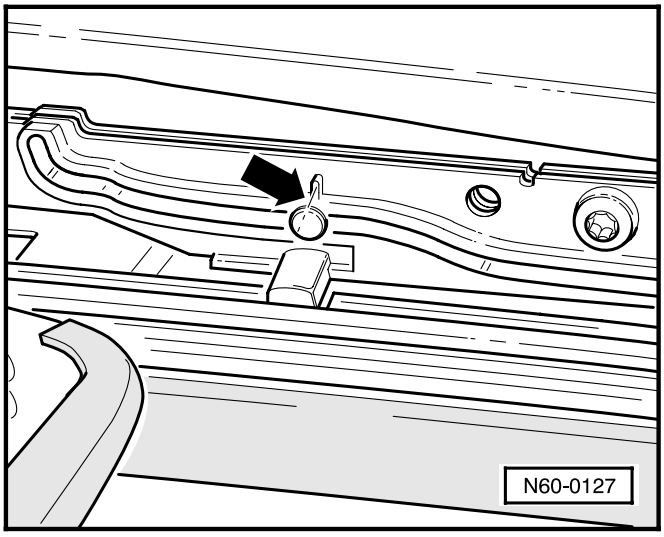
◄ - „Zero position“ is recognisable through a window -arrow A- at the motor from the ground face on the ring gear -arrow B-.



Removing automatic preselector

◄ - Use wedge 3409 to take off the cover of the electric drive.

- Take automatic preselector switch out of the cover.



Inspecting parallel running

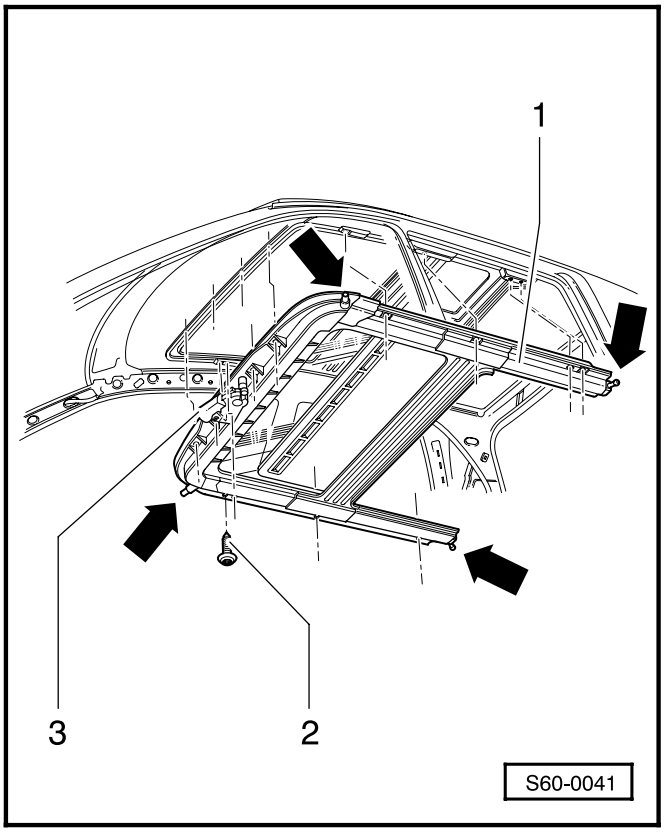
- Remove glass panel for sliding/tilting roof ⇒ page 60-14.

◄ - The shaft of the link pin must be aligned with the marking on the link -arrow-.

Adjusting parallel running

- Open glass panel for sliding/tilting roof halfway.
- Remove electric drive ⇒ page 60-17.
- Push the glass panel of the sliding/tilting roof as far as the rear stop.
- Install electric drive ⇒ page 60-17.

Removing and installing assembly unit

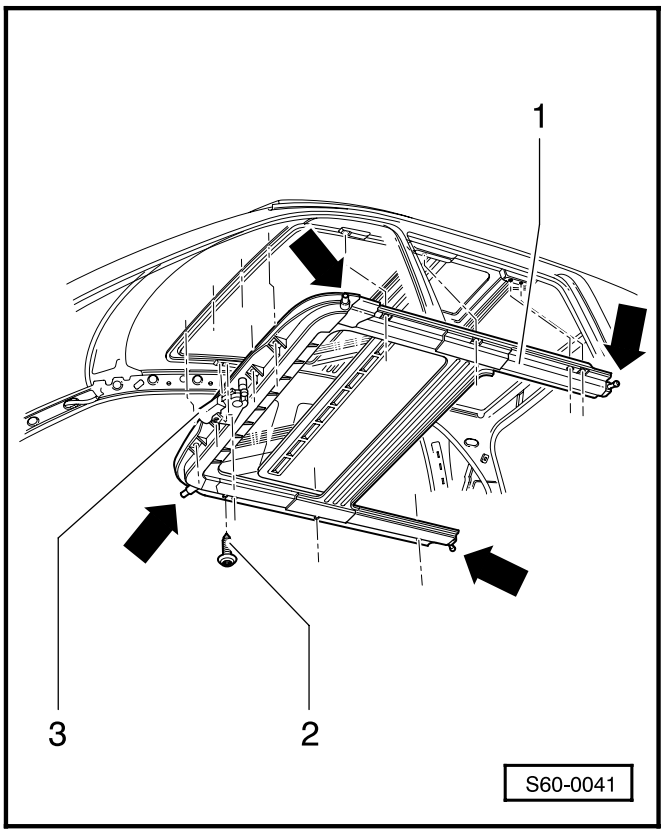


Removing

- Remove automatic preselector ⇒ page 60-18.
- Remove moulded headliner ⇒ page 70-13.
- Detach water drain hoses -arrows- from the assembly unit -1-.
- Unscrew hexagon bolts -2- and take assembly unit out of vehicle.

Note:

A second person is required for removal and installation.



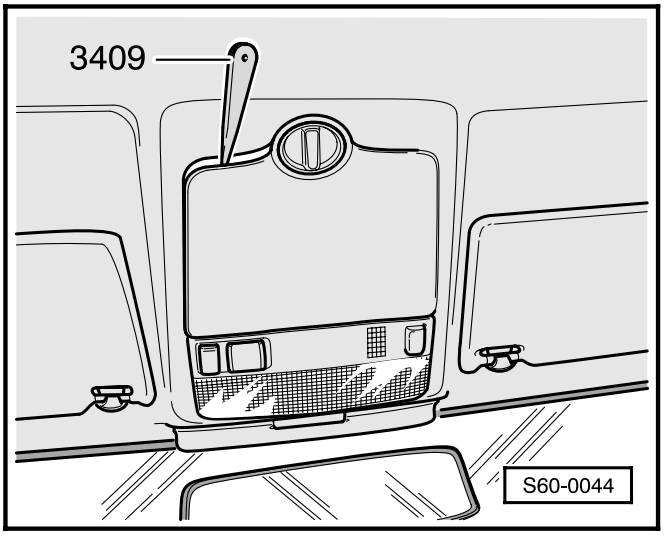
Installing

- Insert assembly unit -1- into the roof.
- Align assembly unit -1- and screw into the roof frame.
- Check and if necessary ensure proper routing of cables and plug connections of all electrical components at the roof.
- Screw -2- assembly unit -1- and drive -3- tight (8 Nm).
- Install water drain hoses -arrows-.
- Install plug connection for E-drive.

Adapting the E-drive

- Switch on ignition.

For vehicles MY 03



◄- Remove the E-drive cover using the wedge 3409.
- Pull out the plug for the E-drive at the roof opening.
- Connect plug connection for E-drive.
- Insert E-drive cover.

For all vehicles

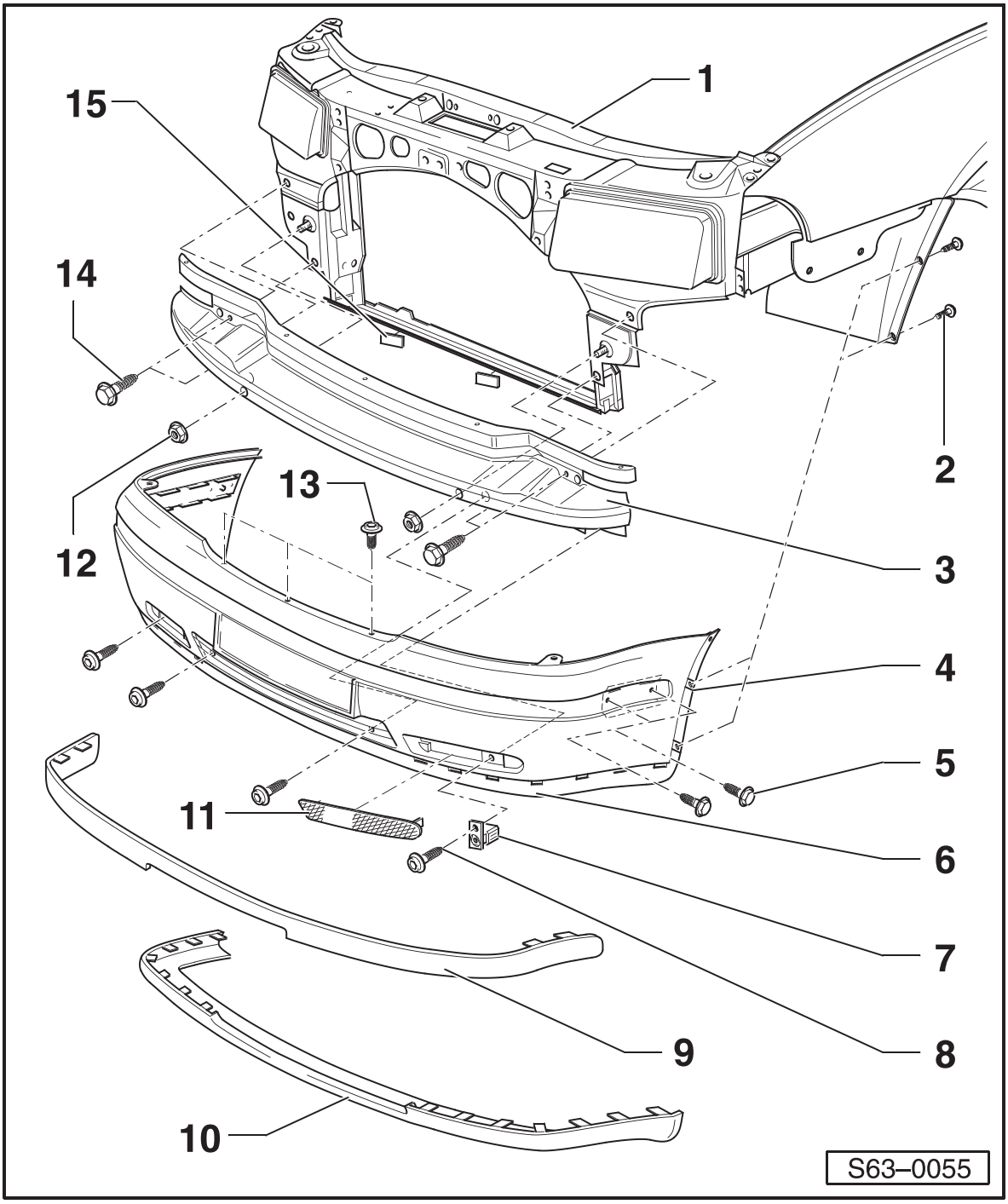
- Close sliding/tilting roof.
- Activate the automatic preselection mechanism for at least 3 seconds in position „roof closed“, the basic setting of the drive is completed.

Cleaning the water drain hoses

⇒ Cleaning the water drain hoses, page 60-9.

The front bumper

Summary of components of bumpers ➤ 12.01



1 - Lock carrier

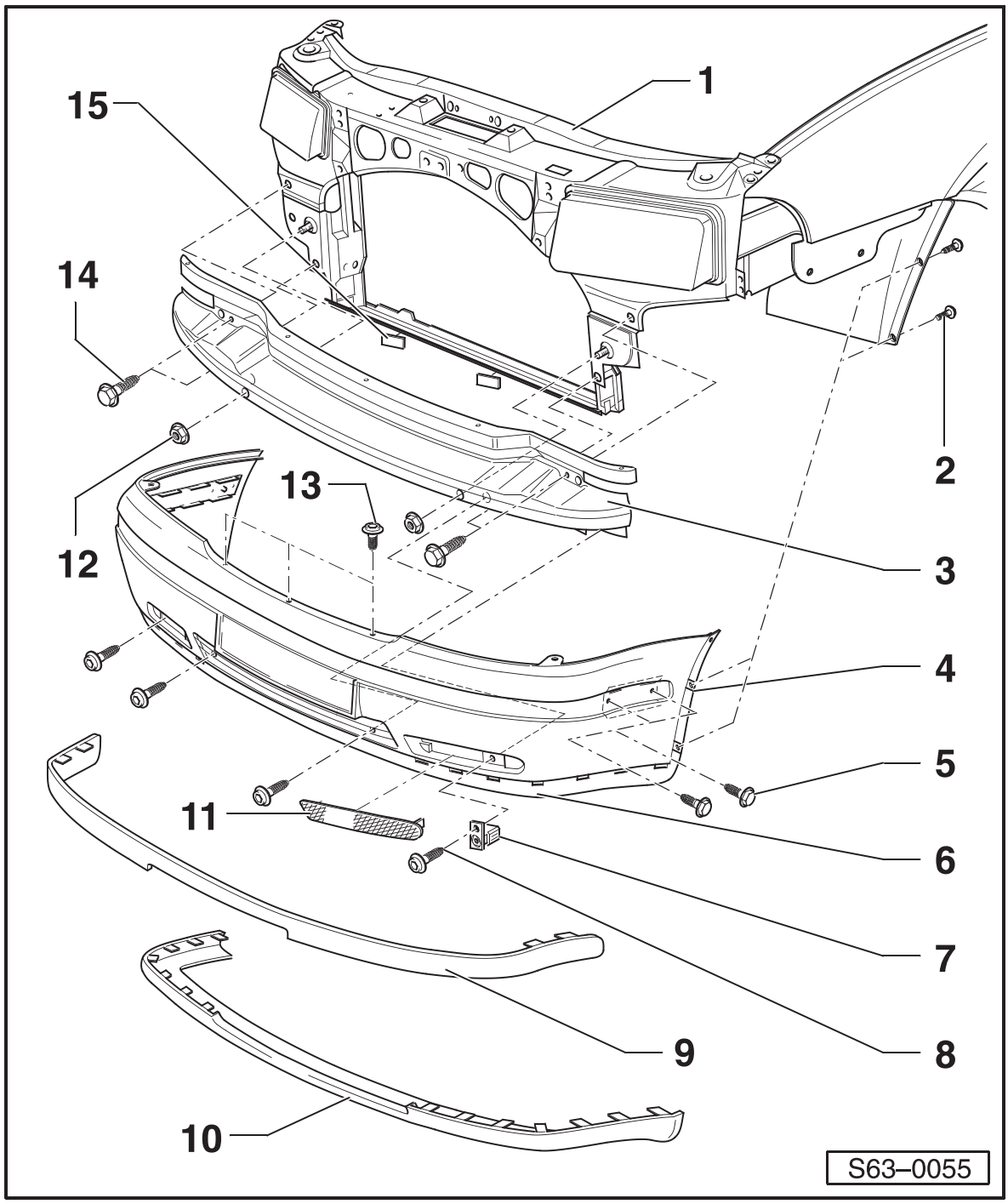
2 - Screw
- ♦ Fixed onto the wheelhouse hull

3 - Cross-member
- ♦ Removal:
- - Remove the bumper -6-
- - Unscrew the nuts -12-
- - Remove the screws -14-
- ♦ Installation takes place in reverse order

4 - Nut

5 - 8 mm
- ♦ After removal the bumper strip -9- becomes accessible.

6 - Bumper
- ♦ Removal:
- - Open the flap at the front
- - Remove the screws -2-
- - Remove the bumper strip -9-
- - Remove the screws -5- on both sides
- - Remove the ventilation grille -11-
- - Remove screws -8-
- - Remove screws -13-



- Unclamp the plug connections if necessary
- Pull out the washing jets of the headlight washing system (only for vehicles with a headlight washing system).
- Bring the bumper forwards
- ♦ Installation takes place in reverse order

7 - Temperature feeler

- ♦ Only for vehicles with a multi-functional indicator

8 - 1 Nm

9 - Bumper strip

10 - Bumper strip

- ♦ Press into the bumper clips.
- ♦ Does not have to be removed to remove the bumper.
- ♦ Integrated into the bumper for vehicles 08.00 ➤

11 - Ventilation grille

12 - 20 Nm

13 - 1 Nm

14 - 23 Nm

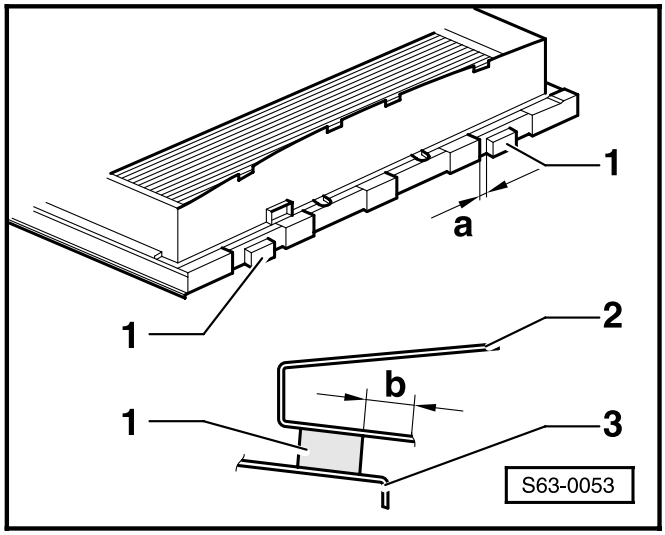
15 - Support

- ♦ For vehicles 08.00 ➤ 12.01
- ♦ Bonded joints ⇒ Page 63-2.1

Bonded joints for front bumpers for vehicles 08.00 ➤ 12.01

The bumpers at the front are bonded with the self-adhesive support on the lower frame of the vehicle radiator.

The self-adhesive support is replaced by a holder on vehicles 01.02 ➤ ⇒ Page 63-2.3 Position 16.



Sequence of work operations

- Clean the bonding surfaces for the front bumper and on the lower frame of the vehicle radiator with a degreasing white spirit solution.

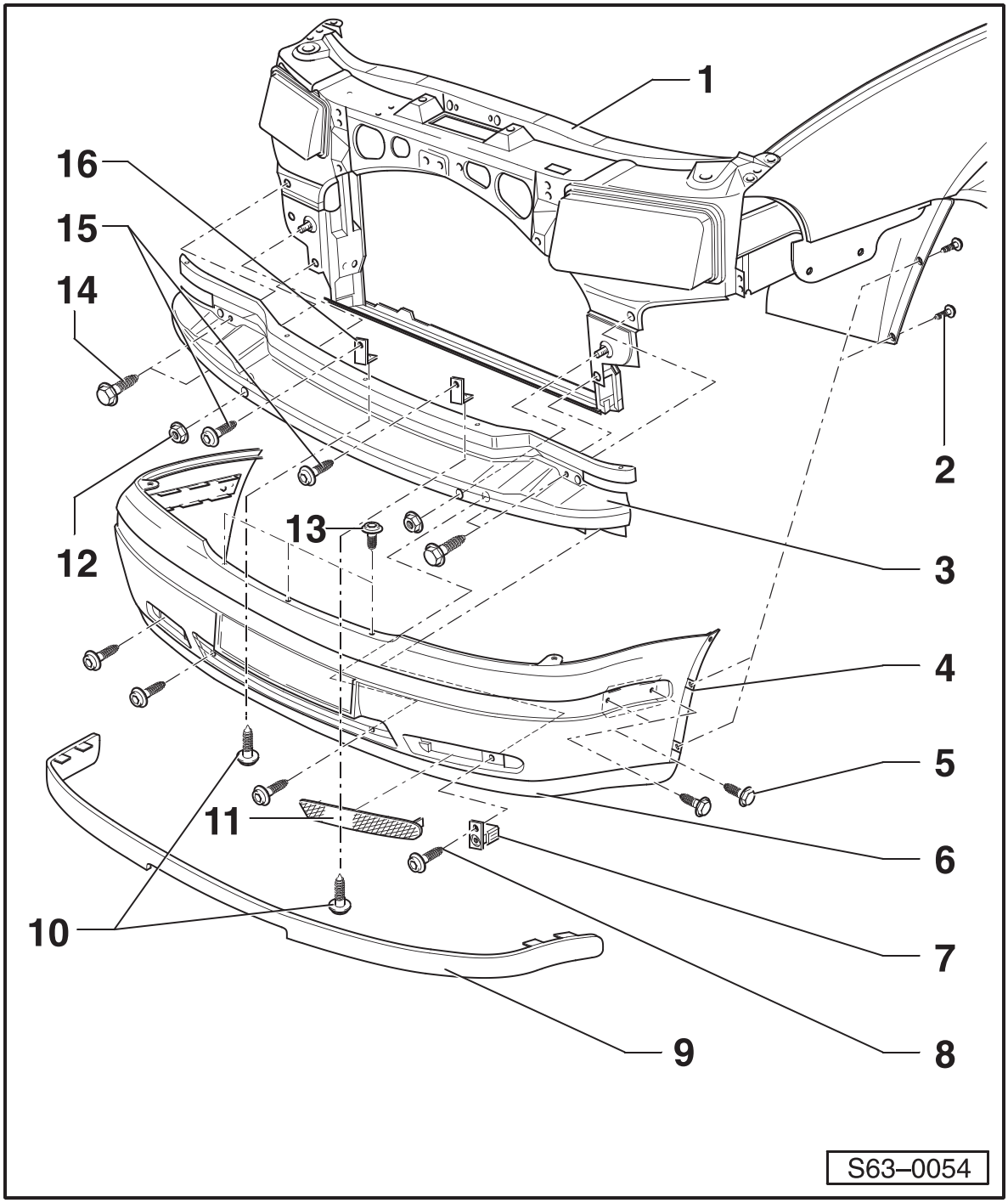
◄ - First glue the support -1- to the radiator frame -2-.

- Maintain the dimensions:
  a = 24 mm
  b = 17 mm

- Install the bumper at the front.

- Press the bumper -3- onto the radiator frame -2-.

Summary of components of bumpers 01.02 ➤



1 - Lock carrier

2 - Screw
- ♦ Fixed onto the wheelhouse hull

3 - Cross-member
- ♦ Removal:
- - Remove the bumper -6-
- - Unscrew the nuts -12-
- - Remove the screws -14-
- ♦ Installation takes place in reverse order

4 - Nut

5 - 8 mm
- ♦ After removal the bumper strip -9- becomes accessible

6 - Bumper

- ♦ Removal:
- - Open the flap at the front
- - Remove the screws -2-
- - Remove the bumper strip -9-
- - Remove the screws -5- on both sides
- - Remove the ventilation grille -11-
- - Remove screws -8-
- - Remove screws -10-
- - Remove screws -13-
- - Unclamp the plug connections if necessary
- - Pull out the washing jets of the headlight washing system (only for vehicles with a headlight washing system).
- - Bring the bumper forwards
- ♦ Installation takes place in reverse order

7 - Temperature feeler

- ♦ Only for vehicles with a multi-functional indicator

8 - 1 Nm

9 - Bumper strip

10 - 5 Nm

11 - Ventilation grille

12 - 20 Nm

13 - 1 Nm

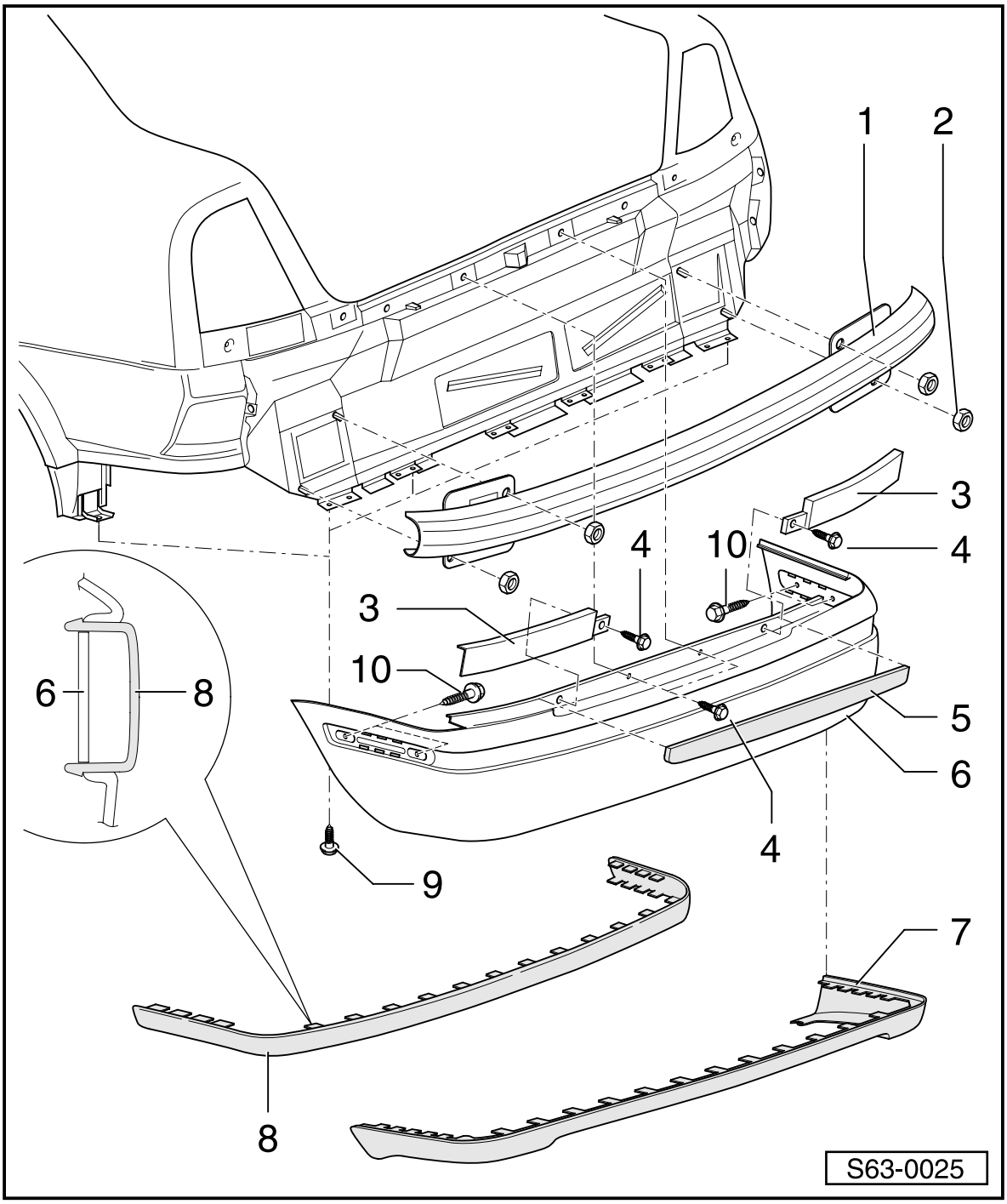
14 - 23 Nm

15 - 5 Nm

16 - Bumper holder

Rear bumper

Summary of components of rear bumper



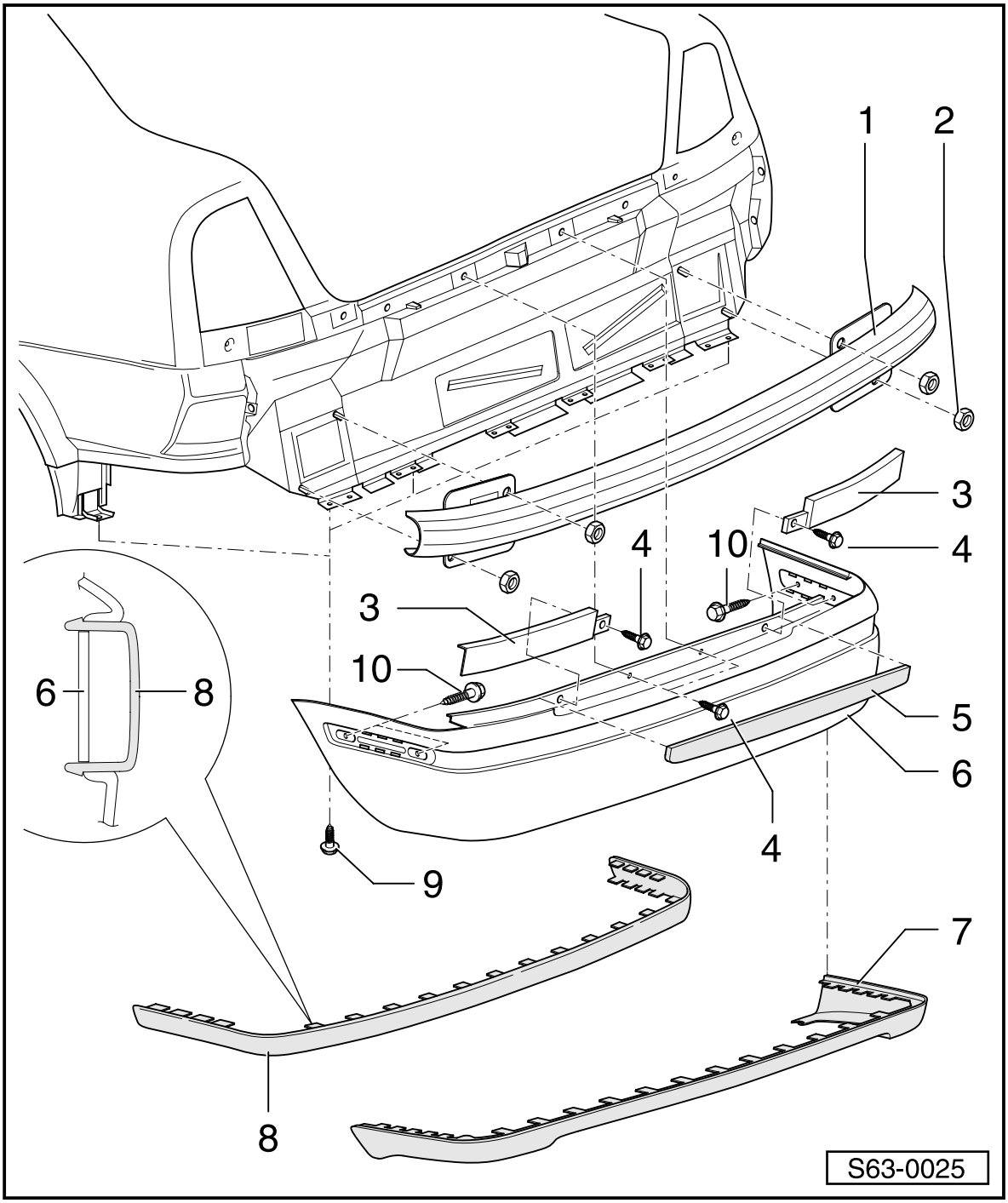
1 - Deformation element
- ♦ On models with towing device, replaced by frame of towing device
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove rear moulding -6-
- Unscrew nut -2- and take off deformation element.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Nut, 20 Nm

3 - Bumper strip beneath tail light

4 - 1 Nm

5 - Bumper strip
- ♦ Clipped onto rear moulding -6-



6 - Bumper

- ♦ Removing:
- Open tailgate.
- Pull off cover strip -5-.
- Unscrew bolts -4-, push cover strip below tail light -3- toward middle of vehicle and take off.
- Pull off bumper strip -8-.
- Pull off luggage compartment side trim panel and remove bolts -10-.
- Pull out bumper to the rear.

Note:

Before taking off the bumper, it is necessary to separate the plug connections of the park sensors (if fitted).

- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

7 - Rear spoiler

- ♦ Press into bumper clips -6-.
- ♦ Pull off luggage compartment trim slightly for removing.
- ♦ Models 08.00 ➤ integrated in bumper.

8 - Bumper strip

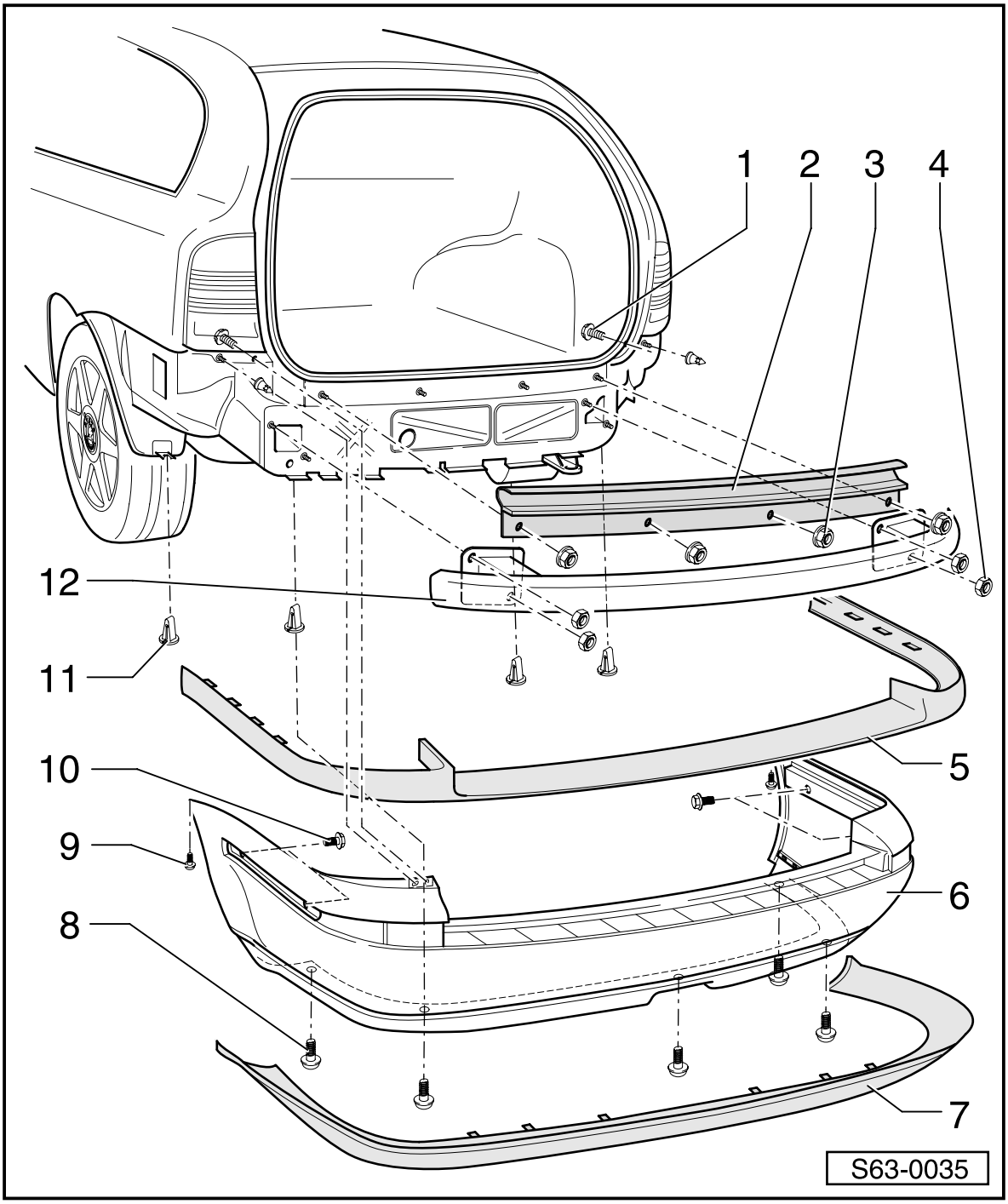
- Press into bumper clips -6-.

9 - Screw

10 - 8 Nm

- Accessible from luggage compartment.
- Pull off luggage compartment trim slightly to remove.

Summary of components of rear bumper (Octavia Estate)



1 - Bolt, 1 Nm
- ♦ Accessible from luggage compartment
- ♦ Open luggage compartment trim panel for unscrewing.

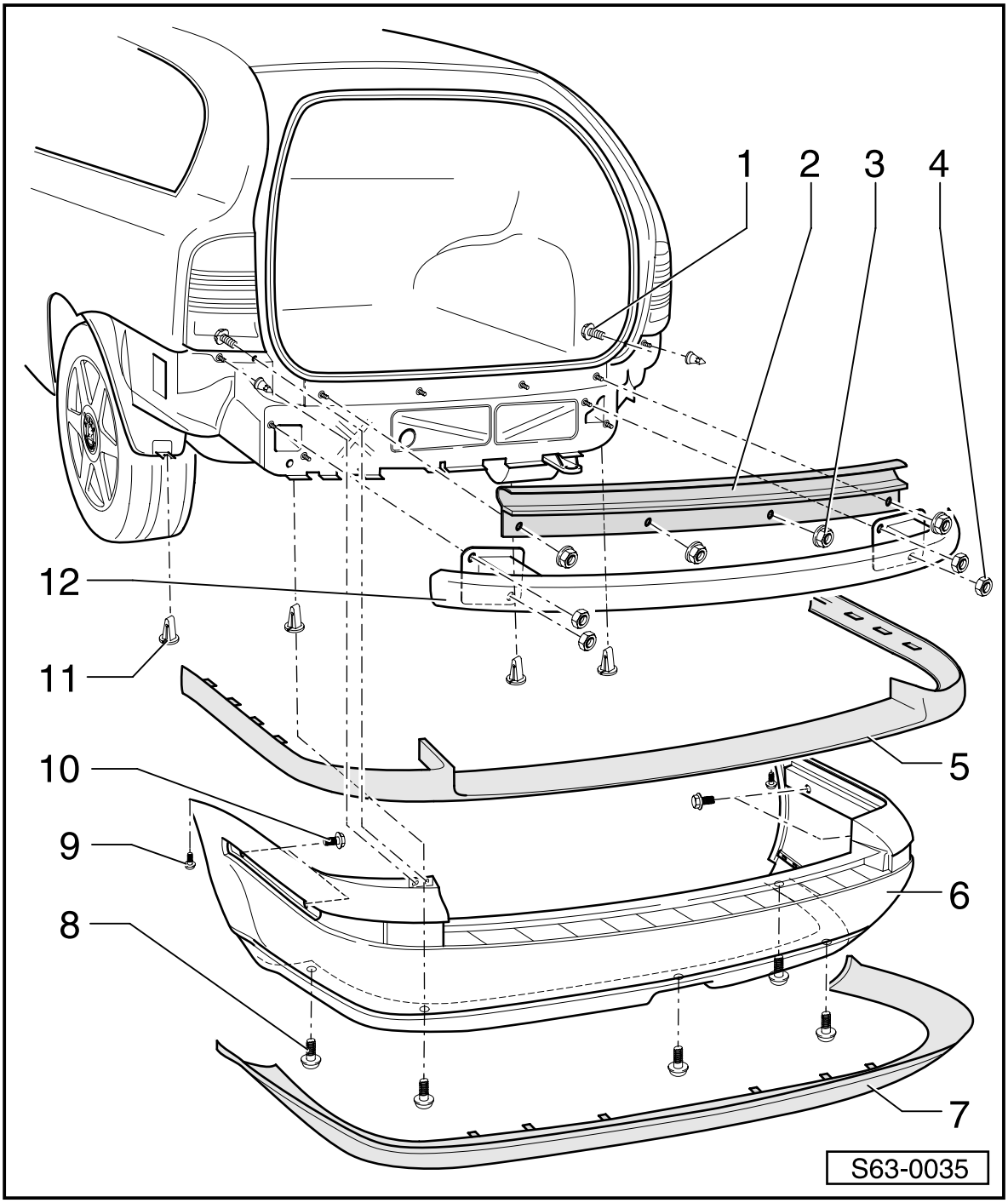
2 - Mounting strip

3 - Nut, 8 Nm

4 - Nut, 20 Nm

5 - Protective strip
- ♦ Clipped onto rear moulding -6-

6 - Rear moulding
- ♦ Removing:
- - Open tailgate.
- - Open side trim panel of luggage compartment and remove bolts -1- and -10-.
- - Unscrew bolts -8- and -9-.
- - Pull out moulding to the rear.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Note:

Before taking off the bumper cover, it is necessary to separate the plug connections of the park sensors (if fitted).

7 - Rear spoiler

- Press into bumper clips -6-.
- Models 08.00➤ integrated in bumper.

8 - Bolt

9 - Bolt

10 - 8 Nm

- Accessible from luggage compartment.

11 - Plastic nut

12 - Cross member

- On models fitted with towing device, replace by towing frame.
- Removing:

- Remove bumper -6-.
- Remove nuts -4- and take off cross member.

- Installation is performed in the reverse order.

Bonded windows

Removing and installing bonded windows

Notes:

For safety reasons, re-using the cut-out windscreen is not permissible. The windscreen must always be replaced with a new original part. The cut-out rear and side windows can be re-used after a thorough inspection.

Special tools, testers and aids required

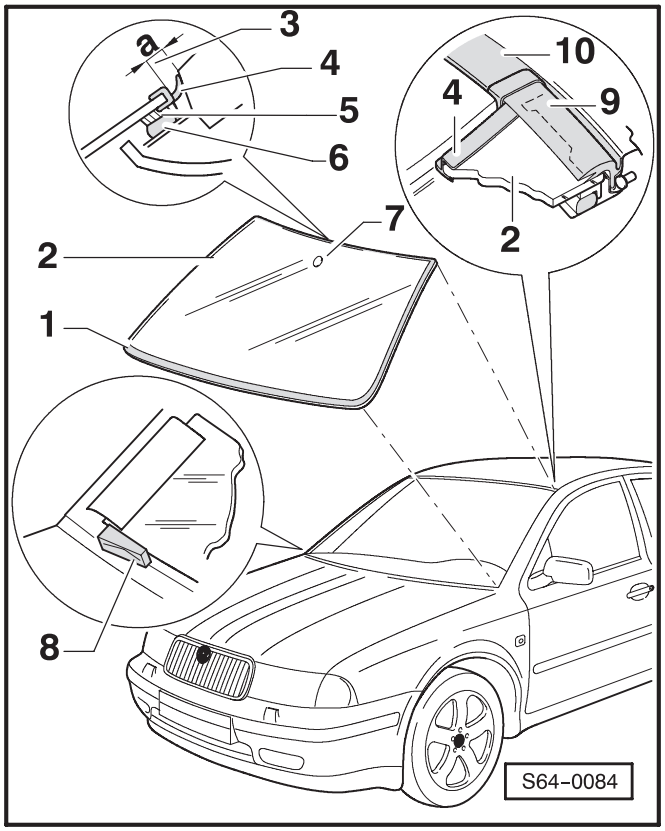
- Cutting tool or tool DGE-100 and TWH 200 made by Equalizer.
- Straightening knife e.g. SB - 531 or glass scraper SC - 170.
- Tool for inserting cutting cord or cutting wire.
- Spooler e.g. V.A.G 1654 A with guide pulley V.A.G 1474/1.
- Cutting wire e.g. 357 853 999 A.
- Cutting cord e.g. 357 845 955.
- Double suction cup gripper, e.g. V.A.G 1344 or tool ESM-911 made by Equalizer.
- Pneumatic gun e.g. VAS 5237.
- Cartridge heating box e.g. V.A.G 1939A.

Adhesive materials	Spare Parts No.	Purpose, application range	Denomination, manufacturer, comment
2K Window glue (PUR)	DA 004 600 A2[1)]	Strong glueing of windscreen and side windows.	Caution: It is absolutely necessary to follow the manufacturer's instructions.
1K Window glue (PUR)	DH 009 100[1)2)]	Adhesive hardens fast so the work must be done swiftly and skillfully.	300 ml filling
1K Window glue (PUR)	DH 009 100 03[1)2)3)]	Strong glueing of windscreen, side windows and rear windows.	110 ml small filling
Activator	D 181 801 A1	Activate the cut back layer.	
Applicator	D 009 500 25	Apply primer and activator.	Order volume 25 pieces
Primer for windows and painted surfaces	D 009 200 02	Priming the windows. Must be applied to window. Is applied to paint before applying glue and sealant (PUR).	
Cleaning solution	D 009 401 04	Clean all surfaces to which primer or glue is applied.	
Glue remover	D 002 000 10	Remove residual glue.	Must not be applied on adhesive areas before glueing.

1) Respect waiting time ⇒ page 64-8.

2) Heat according to manufacturer's instructions with cartridge heater e.g. V.A.G 1939.

3) Small cartridge 110 ml, for sealing work or if the 300 ml cartridge is insufficient.



Windscreen - Summary of components

1 - Ceramic layer

2 - Windscreen
- Removing windscreen ⇒ page 64-3.
- Installing windscreen ⇒ page 64-3.

3 - Dimension -a-
- a = 4±1 mm

4 - Sealing section
- Component part of the windscreen.

5 - PUR-application (component part of the pre-layering)

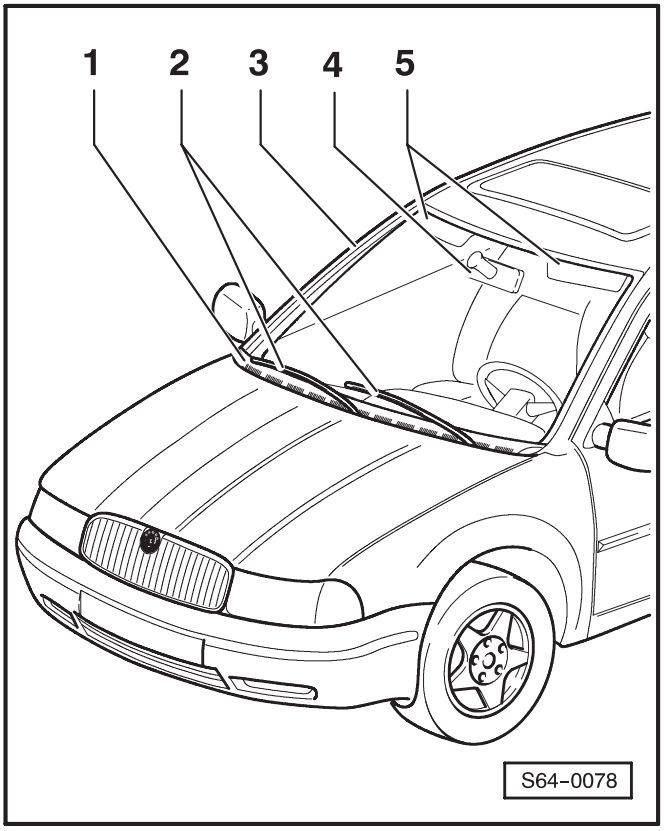
6 - PUR glue sealing material

7 - Retaining plate for rear-view mirror

8 - Positioning wedge
- For adjusting the top window columns.
- An eccentric must be used.

9 - Water collection strip

10 - Roof strip



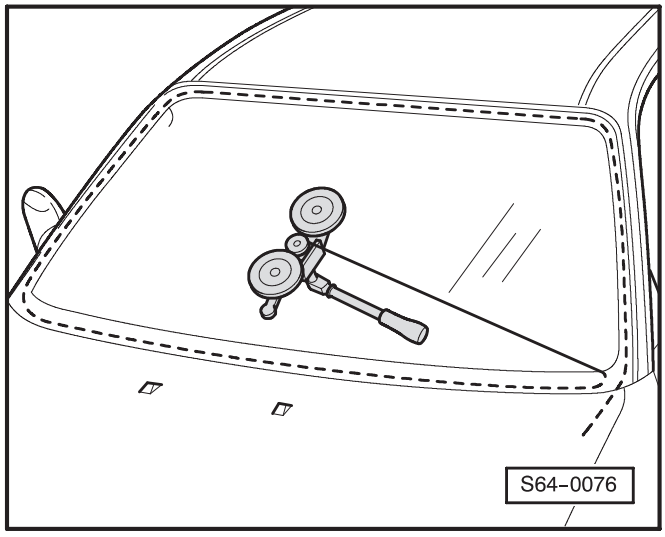
Removing and installing windscreen

Warning!

Wear protective gloves and goggles when cutting hardened PUR glue and when handling cutting cord.

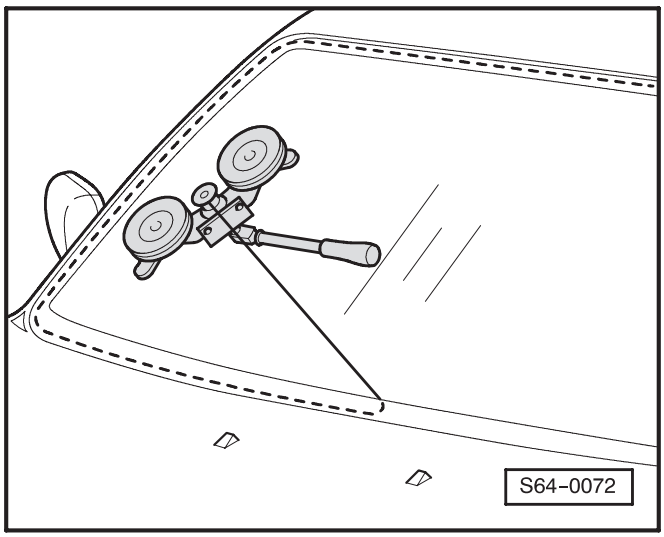
Removing undamaged windscreen

- Remove water collection strips -3-.
- Unscrew wiper arms -2- Mu = 20 Nm
- Remove the cooling water tank cover -1- ⇒ page 66-1.
- Removing interior mirror -4- ⇒ page 68-1.
- Removing trim panel of pillar A ⇒ page 70-7.
- Unscrew sun visors -5- (clearance between window flange and moulded headliner is achieved in this way).
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.
- Pierce glue sealing material in the left bottom corner with piercing needle.
- Pull cutting wire through the needle and attach the wire end to the windscreen wiper support.
- Position the cutting wire all around the windscreen behind the sealing section.

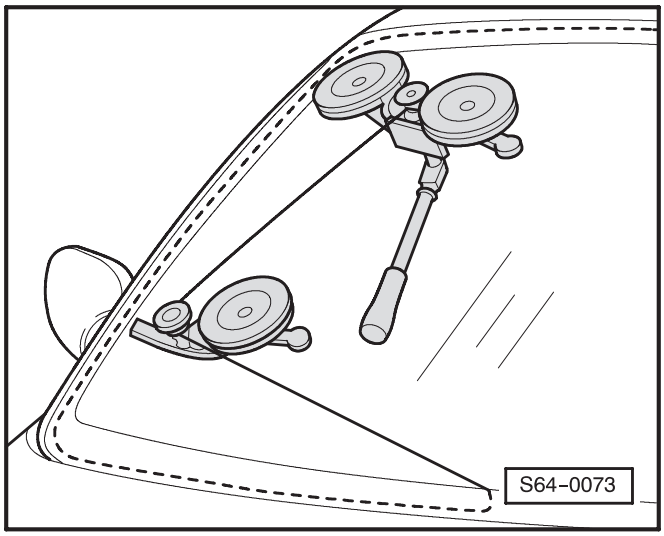


◀ - Attach spooler V.A.G 1654 A to the inner side of the windscreen and insert the other wire end into the spooler.

- Cut through glue sealing material with spooler V.A.G 1654 A.



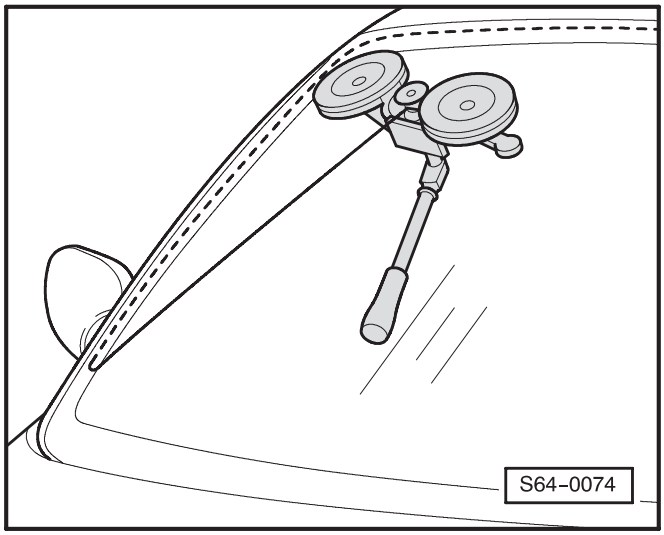
◄ - Offset spooler V.A.G 1654 A and continue with cutting.



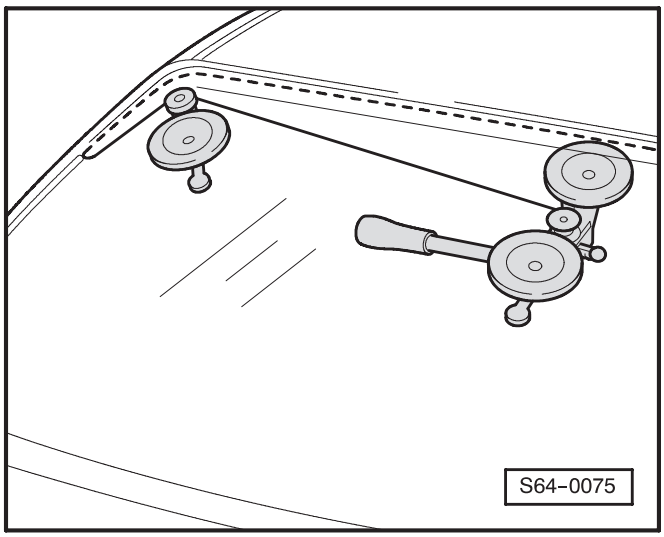
◄ - Offset spooler V.A.G 1654 A and position guide pulley V.A.G 1474/1 on the inside of the window.

Note:

Cut through glue sealing material as long as the cutting wire is guided in the guide pulley V.A.G 1474/1.



◄ - Remove guide pulley V.A.G 1474/1and continue with cutting through of the glue sealing material.



◄ - Offset spooler V.A.G 1654 A and position guide pulley V.A.G 1474/1 on the inside of the window

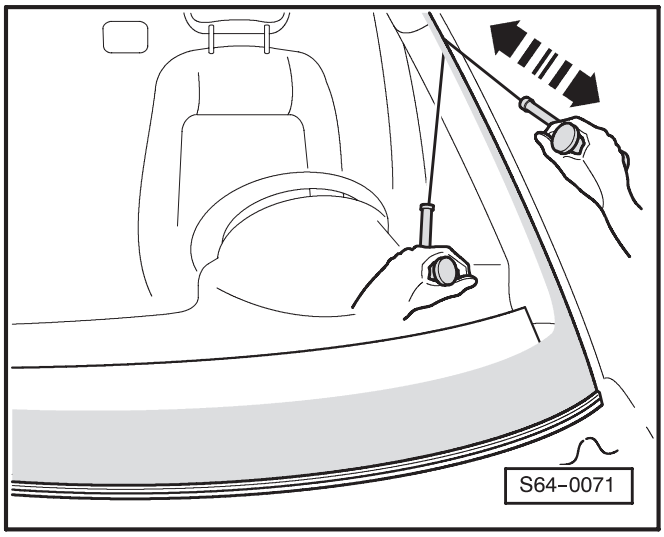
Note:

Cut through glue sealing material as long as the cutting wire is guided in the guide pulley V.A.G 1474/1.

- Remove guide pulley V.A.G 1474/1and continue with cutting through of the glue sealing material.
- Repeat work steps in upper and lower of left window corner.
- Remove windscreen with the double suction cup gripper, e.g. V.A.G 1344 or ESM-911 manufactured by the company Equalizer.

Removing damaged windscreen

- Remove water collection strips -5-.
- Unscrew wiper arms -2- Mu = 20 Nm
- Removing the cooling water tank cover -1- ⇒ page 66-1.
- Removing interior mirror -3- ⇒ page 68-1.
- Removing trim panel of pillar A ⇒ page 70-7.
- Unscrew sun visors -4- (clearance between window flange and moulded headliner is achieved in this way).
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.



- Pierce glue sealing material with piercing needle.
- Pull cutting cord through the needle and attach the wire end to the windscreen wiper support.

◄ - Cut out windscreen with cutting cord along the window circumference.

- Remove the windscreen.

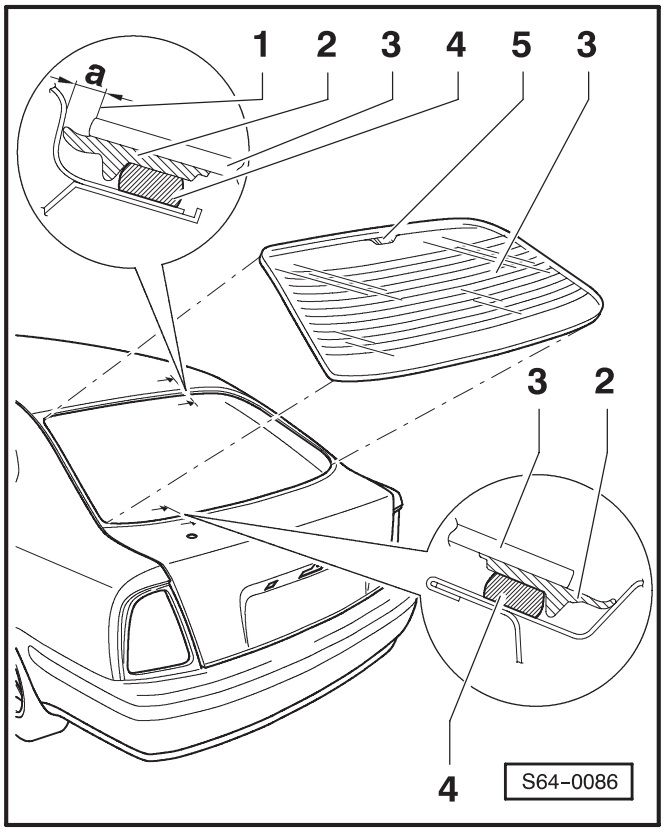
Installing

Prepare new window for fitting ⇒ page 64-5.

Prepare flange for fitting ⇒ page 64-7.

Mounting instructions ⇒ page 64-6.

Waiting time ⇒ page 64-8.



Rear window - Summary of components

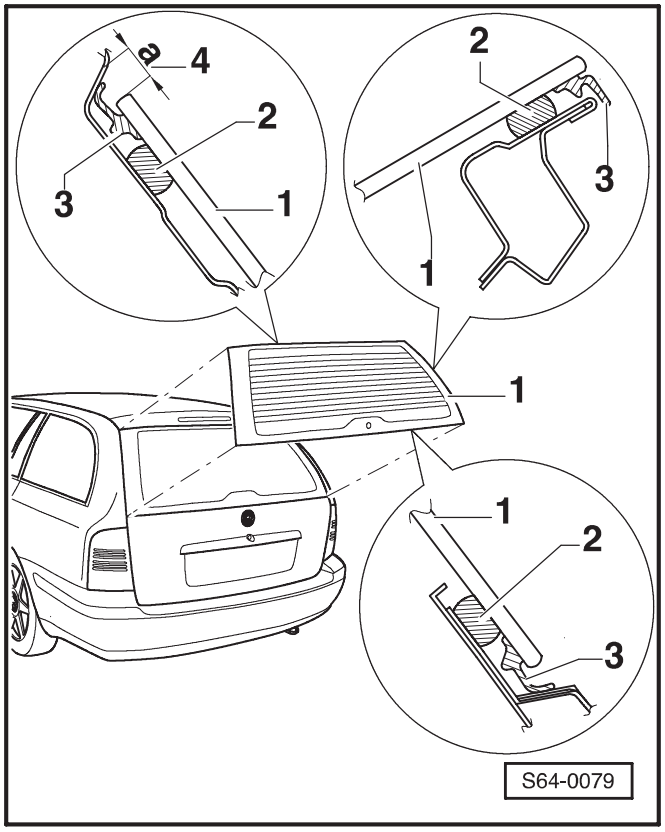
1 - Dimension -a-
- ♦ a = 3.6 ± 1 mm

2 - Sealing lip

3 - Rear window

4 - PUR glue sealing material

5 - Support for high-mounted brake light



Summary of components of rear window (Octavia Combi)

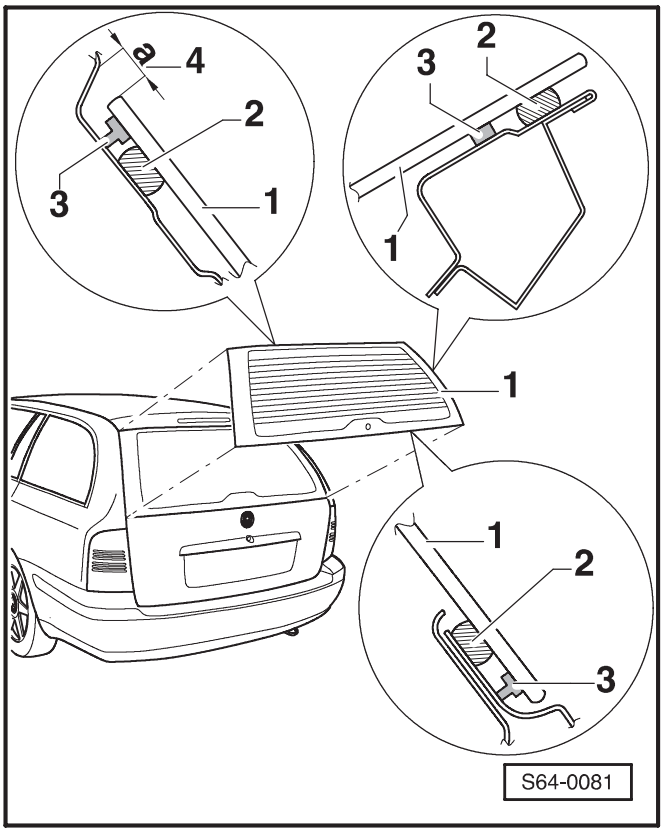
Rear window (Octavia Combi) ➤ 09.03

1 - Rear window

2 - PUR glue sealing material

3 - Sealing lip

4 - Dimension -a-
- ♦ a = 3.6 ± 1 mm



Rear window (Octavia Combi) 10.03 ➤

1 - Rear window

2 - PUR glue sealing material

3 - Stop
- for fitting the window

4 - Dimension -a-
- a = 3.6 ± 1 mm

Removing and installing rear window

Removing undamaged rear window

- Remove high-mounted brake light
- Remove rear heated window connections and press connector tongue onto the window
- Continue in the same way as for removing the windscreen ⇒ page 64-3, remove windscreen.

Removing damaged rear window

Warning!

Always wear protective goggles and gloves.

- Protect vehicle interior from glass splinters.
- Remove rear heated window connections.
- Remove glass residues.
- Cover the painted surfaces along the window with textile adhesive tape.
- Cut through the glue (with glass residue) e.g. with the cutting tool e.g. V.A.G 1561/10 (with stop roll).

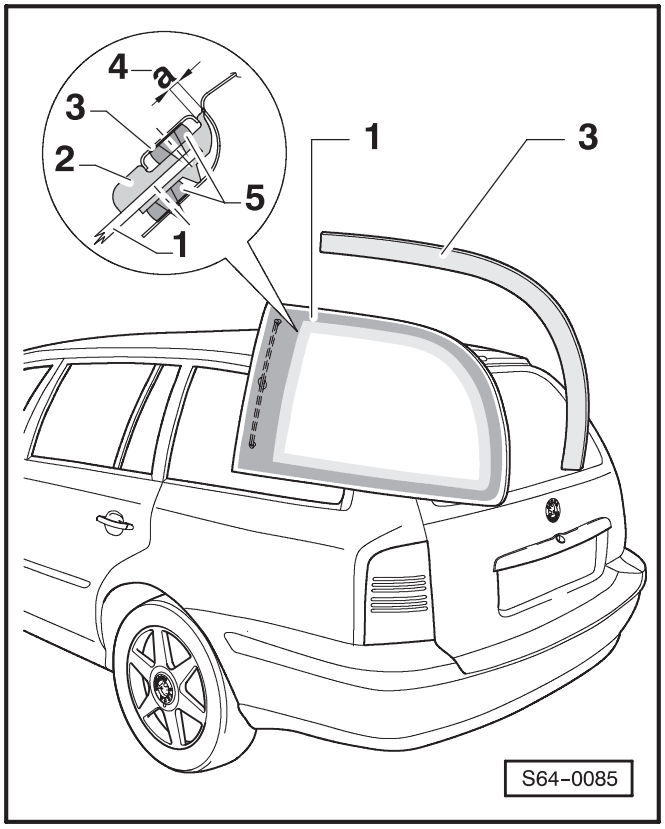
Installing rear window

Prepare new window for fitting ⇒ page 64-5.

Prepare body flange for fitting ⇒ page 64-7.

Mounting instructions ⇒ page 64-6.

Waiting time ⇒ page 64-8.



Summary of components of side window (Octavia Combi)

1 - Side window

2 - Sealing lip (component part of the pre-layering)

3 - Decorative strip
- affixed to the sealing lip -2-
- destroyed when removing without side window.

4 - Dimension -a-
- a = 3 ± 1.6 mm

5 - PUR glue sealing material

Removing and installing side window (Octavia Combi)

Removing undamaged rear window

Note:

Decorative ⇒ page 64-4.2 Pos. 3 is removed together with the side window.

- Remove trim panel of pillar C ⇒ page 70-9.1.

- Remove trim panel of pillar D ⇒ page 70-9.2.

- Continue in the same way as for removing the windscreen ⇒ page 64-3.

Removing damaged side window

- Remove in the same way as for removing the windscreen ⇒ page 64-4.1.

Installing side window

- Prepare new window for fitting ⇒ page 64-7.

- Prepare flange for fitting ⇒ page 64-5.

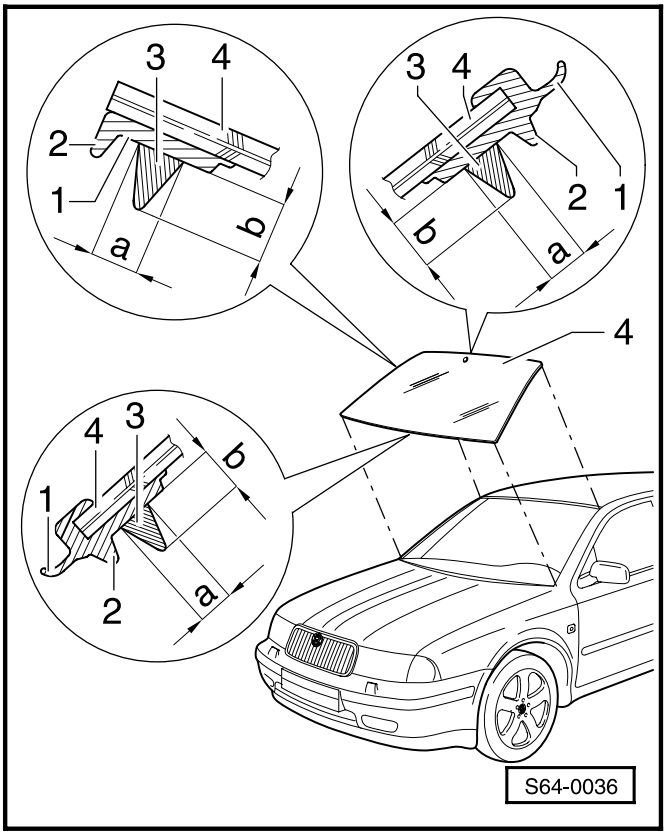
Pay attention to mounting instructions ⇒ page 64-6.

- Glue in side window.

Glue in side strip.

- Coat glued surface of decorative strip with paint primer D 009 200 02 and apply after drying the sealing mass on the pre-painted decorative strip and glue in decorative strip

Waiting time ⇒ page 64-8.



Prepare new window for fitting

Windscreen ➤ 05.98

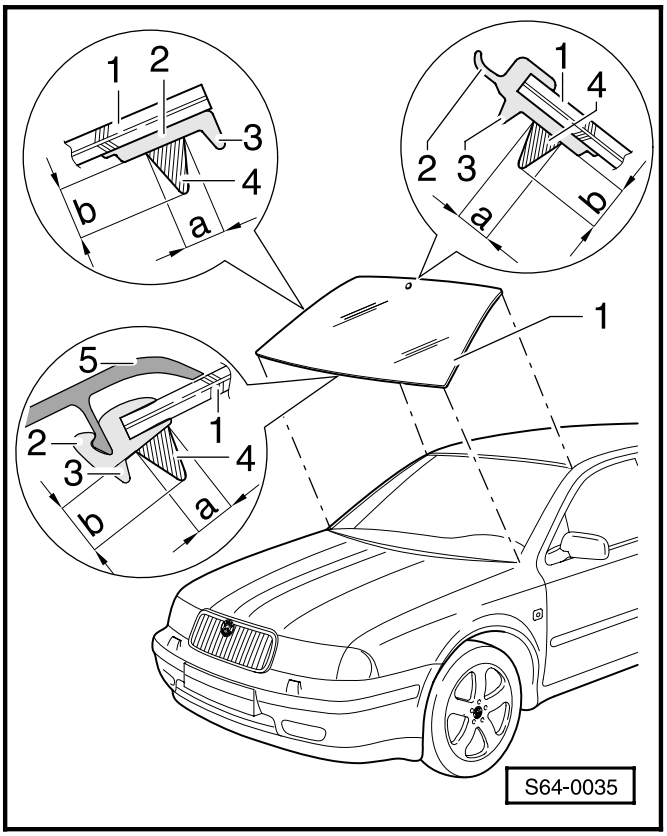
New windscreens are supplied with the sealing section -PUR-

1 - Sealing section
- Wipe adhesive application surface with a dry, non-fluffy cloth

2 - Spacer plate
- of sealing section
- stop for fitting the window

3 - Applied bead
- Application of bead ⇒ page 64-7
- Dimensions:
  a = 8 mm
  b = 12 mm

4 - Windscreen bonded



Windscreen 06.98 ➤

New windscreens are supplied with the sealing section -PUR-

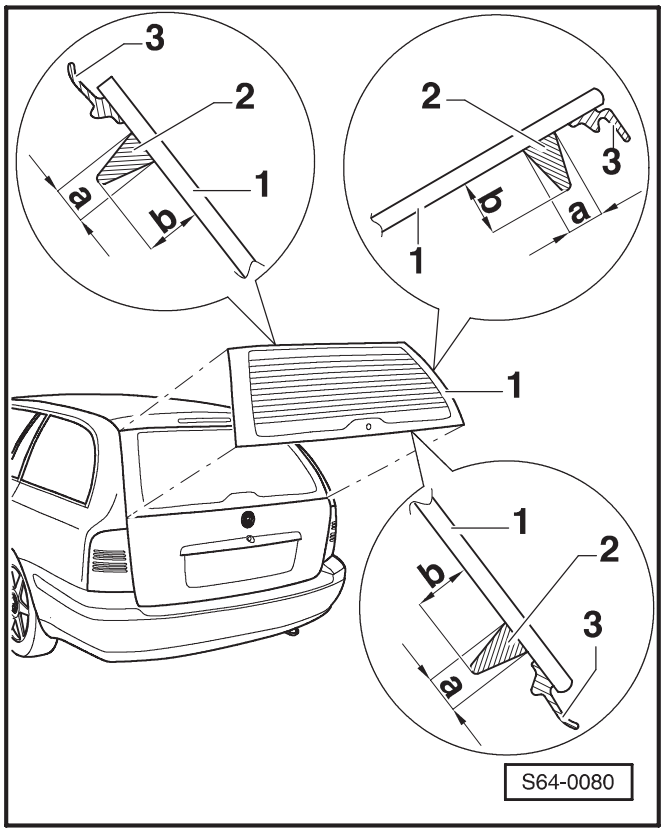
1 - Windscreen bonded

2 - Sealing section
- Wipe adhesive application surface with a dry, non-fluffy cloth

3 - Spacer plate
- of sealing section
- stop for fitting the window

4 - Applied bead
- Application of bead ⇒ page 64-7
- Dimensions:
  a = 8 mm
  b = 12 mm

5 - Water box cover



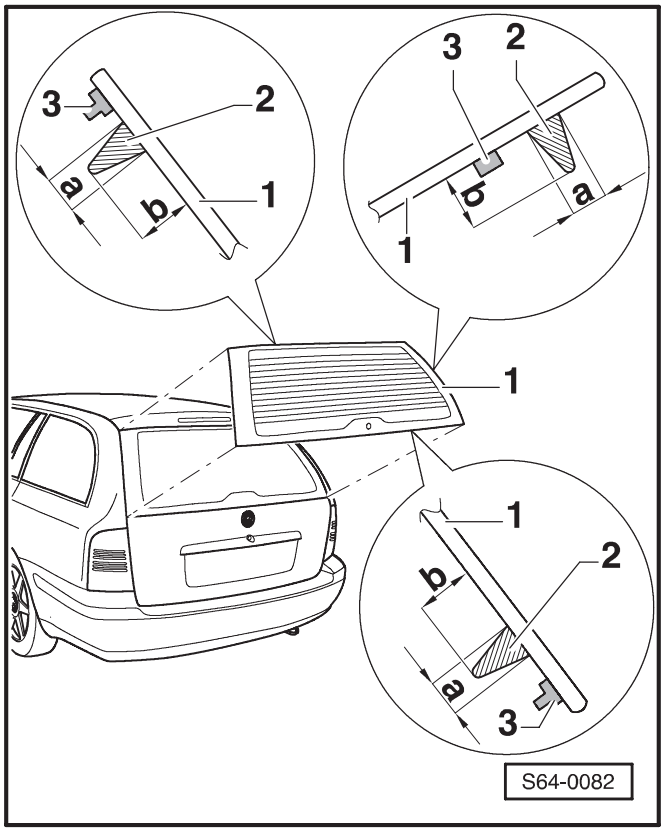
Rear window (Octavia Combi) ➤ 09.03

New windscreens are supplied with the sealing section PUR

1 - Rear window glued

2 - Applied bead
- Application of bead ⇒ page 64-7
- Respect dimensions:
  a = 8 mm
  b = 12 mm

3 - Sealing profile

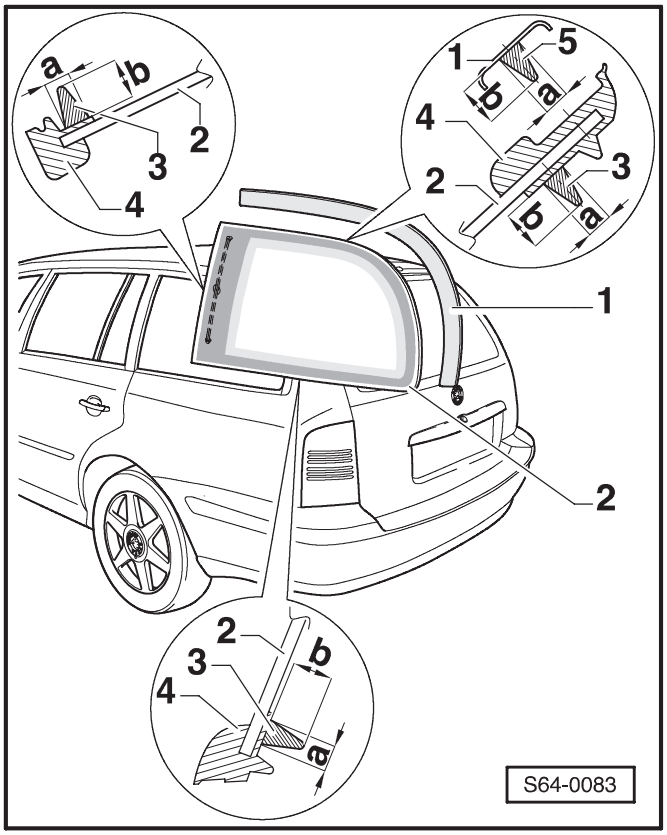


Rear window (Octavia Combi) 10.03 ➤

1 - Rear window glued

2 - Applied bead
- Application of bead ⇒ page 64-7
- Respect dimensions:
  a = 8 mm
  b = 12 mm

3 - Stop
- for fitting the window



Side window (Octavia Combi)

New windscreens are supplied with the sealing section PUR

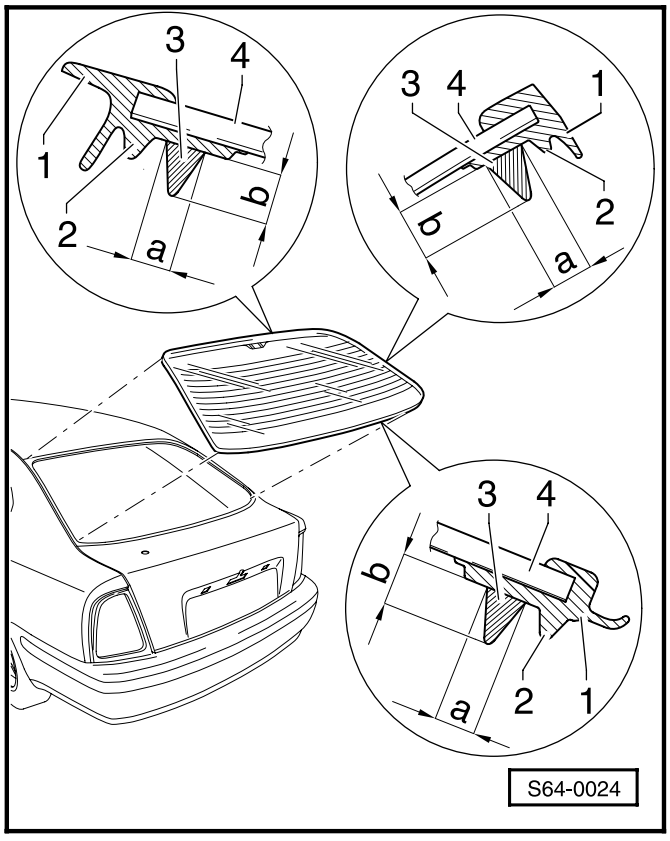
1 - Decorative strip
- affixed to the sealing lip -4-
- destroyed when removing without side window.

2 - Side window

3 - Sealing section
- Application of bead ⇒ page 64-7
- Respect dimensions:
  a = 8 mm
  b = 12 mm

4 - Sealing section

5 - Applied bead
- Application of bead ⇒ page 64-7
- Respect dimensions:
  a = 8 mm
  b = 12 mm



Rear window

New windscreens are supplied with the sealing section PUR

1 - Sealing section
- Wipe dhesive application surface with a dry, non-fluffy cloth

2 - Spacer plate
- of sealing section
- stop for fitting the window

3 - Applied bead
- Application of bead ⇒ page 64-7
- Respect dimensions:
  a = 8 mm
  b = 12 mm

4 - Rear window (hard glass)

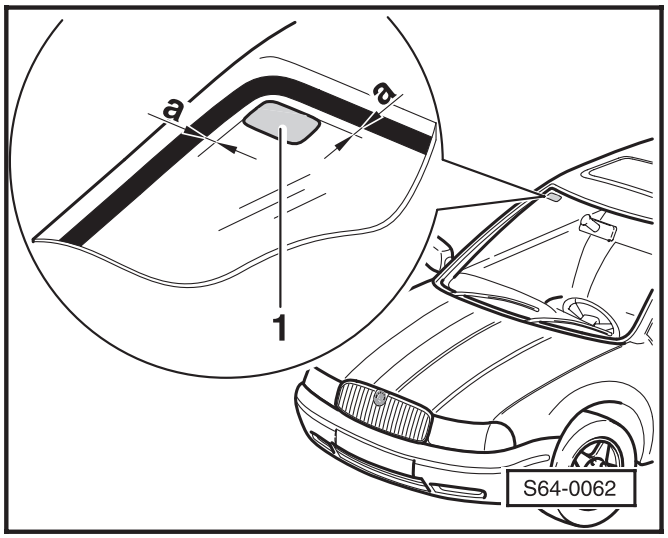
Affix sticker onto the new windscreen

Special tools, testers and aids required

♦ Degreased white spirit solution

Note:

The sticker with the safety instructions on the windscreen is replaced with a new original part, if the windscreen is replaced or the sticker is damaged.



- Clean and degrease inside of windscreen (e.g. with degreased white spirit solution).

- Remove base paper from self-adhesive sticker.

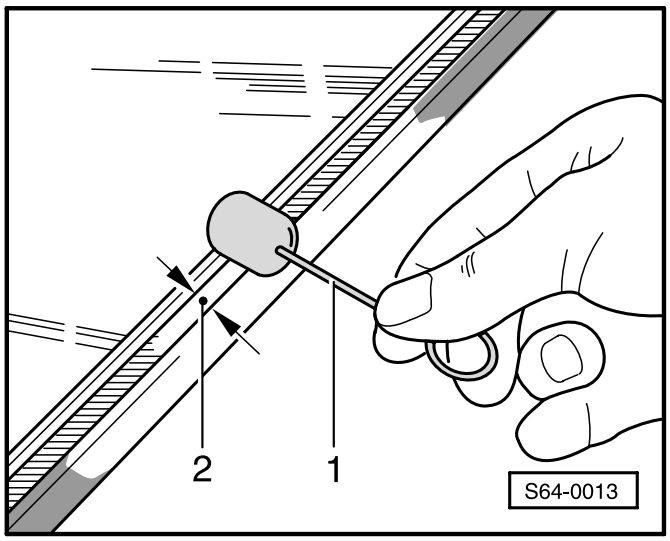
◄ - Affix self-adhesive sticker -1- onto the inside of the windscreen.

  Dimension a = 10±2 mm (from edge of ceramic layer)

Mounting instructions

Warning!

Do not treat sealing section with primer or cleaning solution.



◄ - Apply a thin coat of activator AMV -2- 181 800 02 with the help of the applicator -1- D 009 500 25 (felt ball on wire).

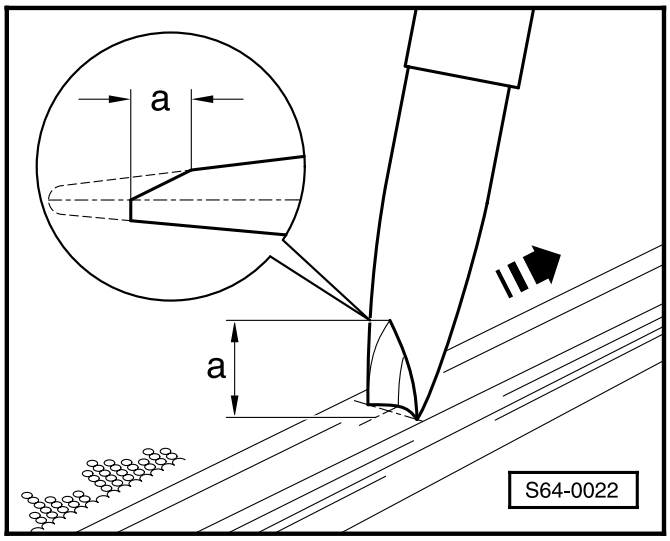
- Allow activator to work in for at least 10 minutes.

Prepare flange for fitting

- Cut back hardened PUR with e.g. glass scraper SC - 170 or straightening knife SB - 531 to approx. 1 mm thickness.
- Apply a thin coat of activator to the cut back glue layer.
- Allow activator to work in for at least 10 minutes.

Notes:

- *The remainder of the hardened glue sealing compound serves as a base for newly applied glue sealing compound. Keep the surfaces to be glued clean and free from grease.*
- *The activator must not come into contact with paintwork, otherwise it will be damaged.*
- *If the flange was only partly replaced or if the paintwork was damaged clean this area again after painting and treat with primer.*



Glueing

- After completing the preparations cut the nozzle for applying the glue into shape as shown in the figure.
- Dimension -a- = 12 mm.
- Bead width 8 mm.
- Application direction -arrow-.

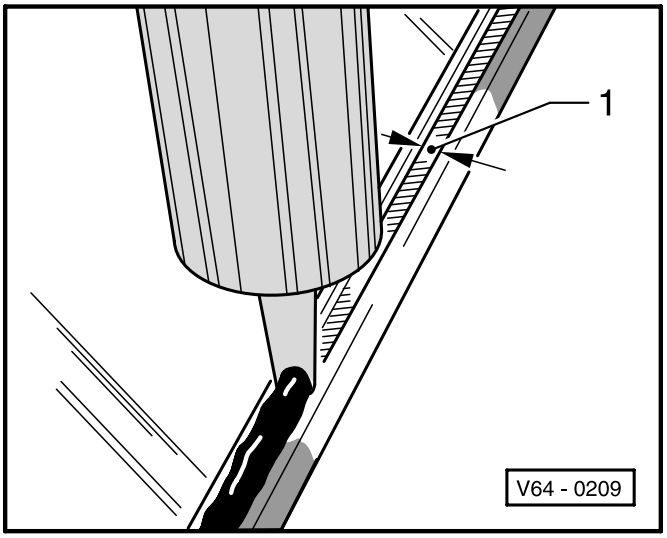
Notes:

- *The bead section is dependent on the section of the nozzle and the application speed.*
- *When using a 1 component glue DH 009 100 or DH 009 100 03 preheat the glue cartridges for 20 minutes with cartridge heater V.A.G 1939.*
- *When using a 2 component glue DH 004 300 05 mix the components with mixer D 009 700.*

Warning!

Comply with the manufacturer's handling instructions.

- *Use disposable gloves when working with glues and adhesive materials.*



◄ - Apply adhesive vertically to the sealing profile -1- all round the surface of the window.

Notes:

- *Apply adhesive at a temperature of 10 to 30 °C.*
- *Open all the windows of the vehicle before inserting the windshield into the frame.*

- Place window into the frame with the aid of two double suction cups (e.g. V.A.G 1344), centre and press onto the spacer plates.

Warning!

The windshield must be installed without delay otherwise the adhesive properties of the adhesive decrease significantly.

- Align window in frame with adjusting wedges or eccentrics (applies to windshield).

- Fix window in place with adhesive tape during the hardening process.

- If an excess amount of adhesive is applied and it is pressed out at the heating elements of the rear window heater, it should then be removed.

Waiting time

Notes:

- *Waiting time: from inserting window until vehicle driven.*
- *During the waiting time the vehicle must be parked on a flat surface at an ambient temperature higher than 15 °C.*
- *Higher temperatures and greater relative air humidity shorten the waiting time for hardening of the adhesive.*

Type of window	Vehicle	Adhesive	Waiting time
Windshields	with airbag	DH 009 100	16 hours
		D 004 600 A2	3 hours
	without airbag	DH 009 100	4 hours
		D 004 600 A2	3 hours
Side windows		DH 009 100	4 hours
		D 004 300 05	1 hour
Rear windows		DH 009 100	4 hours

Warning!

The vehicle is not in a safe condition for driving until after the waiting time has elapsed.

Eliminating paint damage

The paint structure must be restored in accordance with the instructions in the „Paint Repairs“ handbook and if necessary anti-corrosion measures must be carried out according to the applicable repair technology of the company Škoda.

Cleaning and removing glue sealing material

- It is recommended to use the glue remover D 002 000 10 as a cleaning solution. Observe the safety instructions during use.

Warning!

When cleaning the vehicle interior do not press against the freshly glued window.

- Clean the paint surfaces with a dry cloth. Remove the glue residue with glue remover D 002 000 10.

- Clean plastic coverings: Allow glue sealing material to harden (approx. 1 hour) and then pull off.

Stick self-adhesive foils 4x4 onto the heated rear window

Materials

♦ Degreased white spirit solution

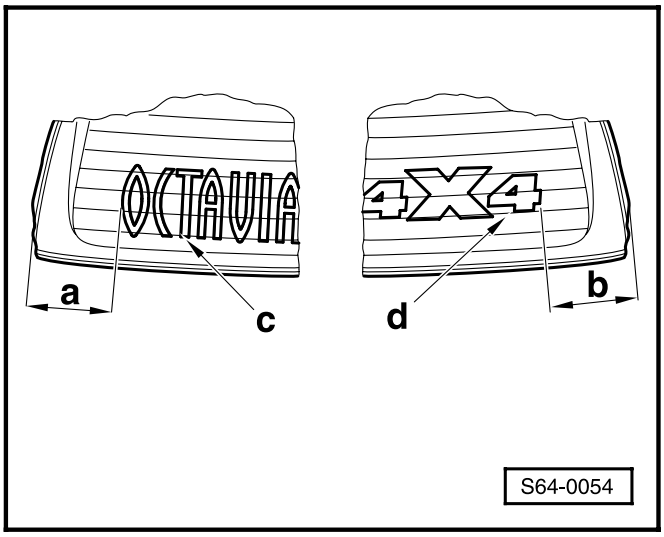
Note:

When working, wear recommended protection (protective gloves).

- Clean inside of the tailgate window and degrease (e.g with degreased white spirit solution).

- Moisten inside of window with water.

- Remove base paper from self-adhesive foils.



◄- Glue the self-adhesive label onto the moistened interior glass pane.

- Dimension -a- 125 mm.

- Dimension -b- 125 mm.

- Position -c-: The letters „CTA“ must lie on the second heatable line counted from below.

- Position -d-: The number „4“ must lie on the third heatable line counted from below.

- Smoothen the lettering over the application paper.

- Remove the application paper.

- Smoothen the lettering again if necessary (e.g. using a rubber cylinder).

The adhesive is dry after about one hour.

Removing the self-adhesive foil 4x4 from the heatable rear window

Comments:

- *Observe the lack of possibility of damaging the heatable lines for the rear window.*
- *Always wear the recommended protective equipment when undertaking the work (gloves).*

It may be possible to use the work sequence ⇒ Page 66-12.

Materials

- Glue remover 3M Scotchcal 221

- Shake up the contents of the glue remover somewhat and pour out the specified amount into the container.

- Paint a layer of glue onto the foil evenly using a brush or roller.

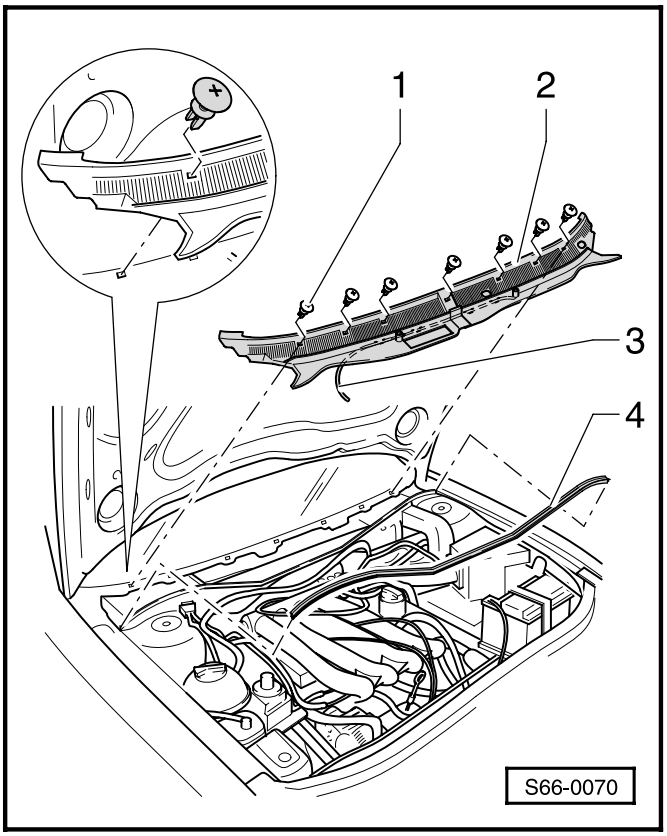
- Let it set for about 15 minutes (the glue remover creates a coherent gel-like layer)

- Pull off the foil by pulling on it with a medium force at a sharp angle.

- Clean off the surface with a white spirit solution.

Trim panels

Removing and installing cover of plenum chamber ➤ 05.98



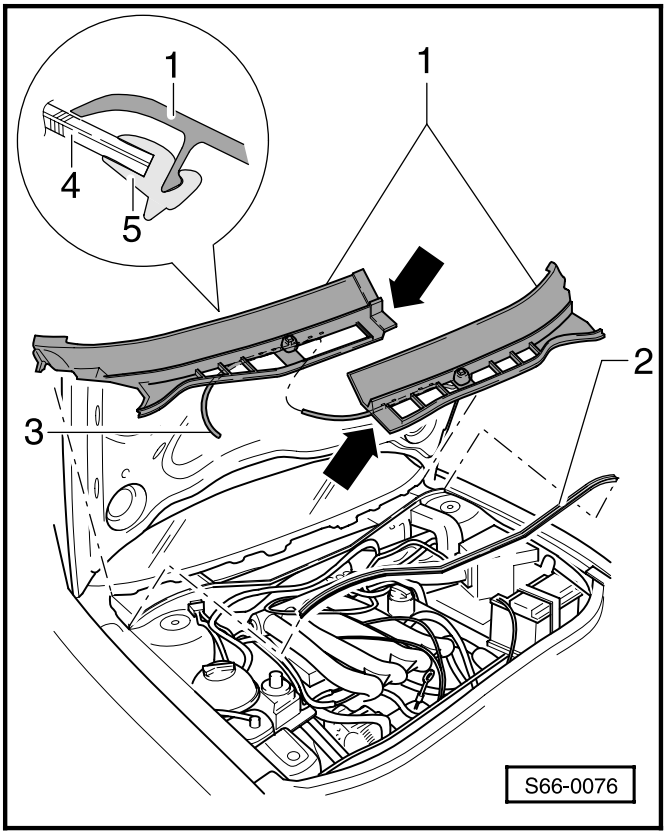
1 - Expanding clip
- ♦ Two-part

2 - Cover panel
- ♦ Two part
- ♦ Removing:
- - Unscrew windscreen wipers.
- - Turn out top part of expanding clips -1- a few turns and pull out expanding clips.
- - Detach windscreen washer hoses.
- - Take off cover parts.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

3 - Windscreen washer hose

4 - Gasket of plenum chamber
- ♦ Fitted onto the flange

Removing and installing cover of plenum chamber 06.98 ➤



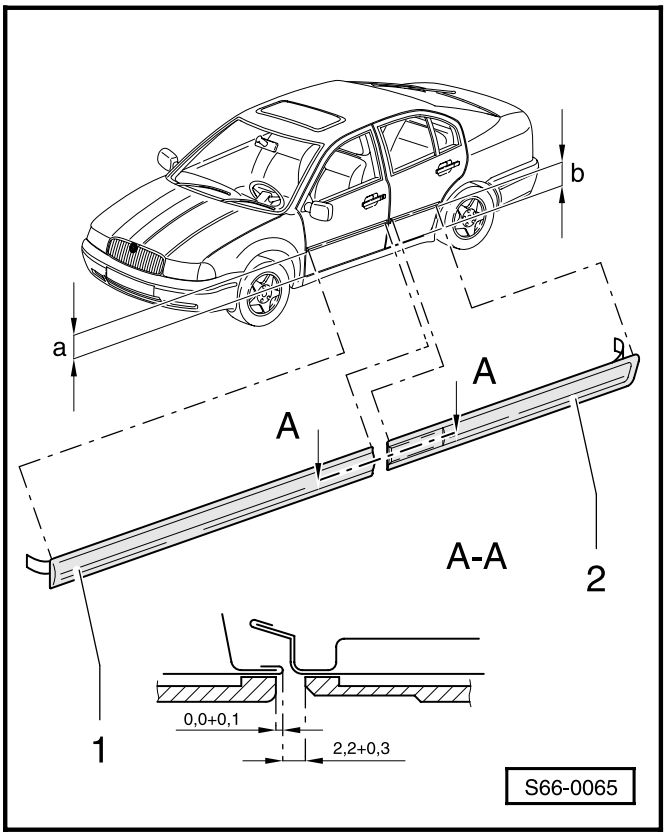
1 - Cover of plenum chamber
- ♦ Two part
- ♦ Clipped into sealing section of windscreen -5-.
- ♦ Removing:
- - Remove windscreen wipers.
- - Pull off right cover part where it overlaps with left cover part -arrow- in direction of windscreen.
- - Pull off left cover part.
- - Detach windscreen washer hoses.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

2 - Gasket of plenum chamber
- ♦ Fitted onto the flange

3 - Windscreen washer hose

4 - Windscreen

5 - Sealing section of windscreen



Protective strips

Removing and installing side protective strips

1 - Front door protective strip
- ♦ Self-adhesive

2 - Rear door protective strip
- ♦ Self-adhesive

Removing

- Heat side protective strip with hot air fan (e.g. V.A.G 1416) for removing, and pull strip off the door.

Installing

- Clean adhesive area on outer panel with petroleum, treat with silicone remover and rub dry.

- Mark position of side protective strips on vehicle.

a = 205 mm

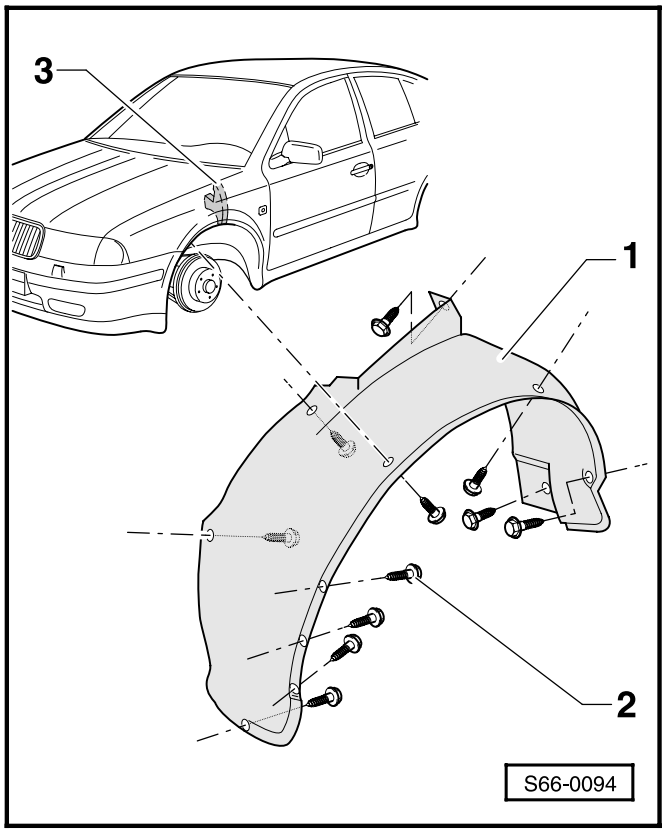
b = 237 mm

Note:

If side protective strips are still fitted to the vehicle, the replacement side protective strips should be aligned according to these.

- Pull off protective backing sheet, position side protective strip on body and apply firm pressure (before applying pressure, check to ensure position of side protective strip has not altered). The temperature of the outer panel and of the side protective strip should be about 40 °C.

Wheelhouse liner



Removing and installing front wheelhouse liner

Removing

◄ - Take off wheel, tightening torque = 110 Nm.

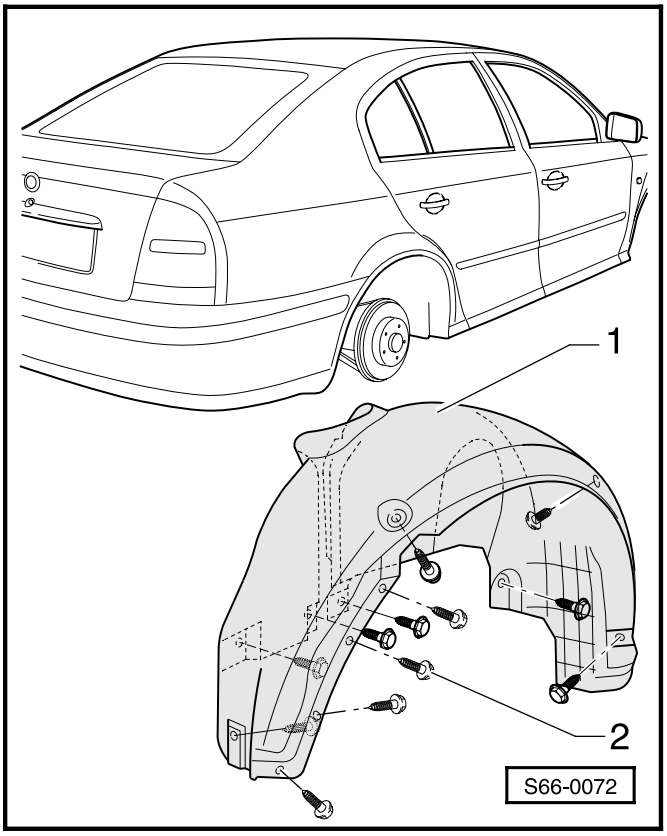
- Remove Torx screws -2-.
- Pull wheelhouse liner -1- out of wheelhouse.

Note:

Models with engine code ATD, ARZ, ARX, AUM, AUQ: When taking off wheelhouse liner, wheelhouse noise insulation -3- may drop out. It should be inserted again, or replaced if necessary.

Installation

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing rear wheelhouse liner

Removing

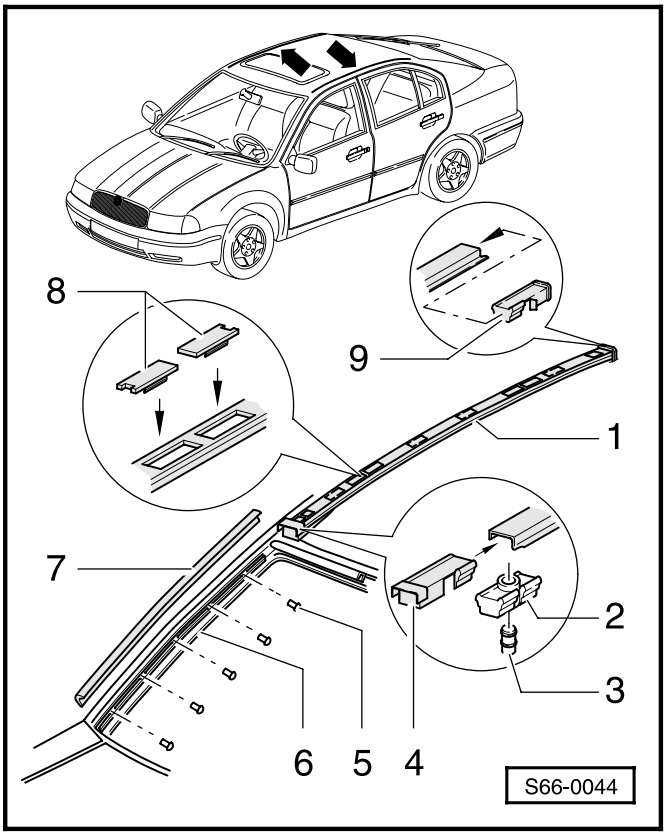
◄ - Take off wheel, tightening torque = 110 Nm.

- Remove Torx screws -2-.
- Pull wheelhouse liner -1- out of wheelhouse.

Installation

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Roof trim strip



Removing and installing roof trim strip

1 - Roof trim strip

2 - Securing clip
- ♦ Replace if damaged
- \- Press securing clips together with pliers and take them off the T pins.

3 - T pin
- ♦ Welded to body

4 - Front end piece

5 - Rivet

6 - Retaining strip

7 - Cover strip

8 - Cover plates
- ♦ Clipped in place
- ♦ Conceals mounts for roof rack

9 - Rear end piece

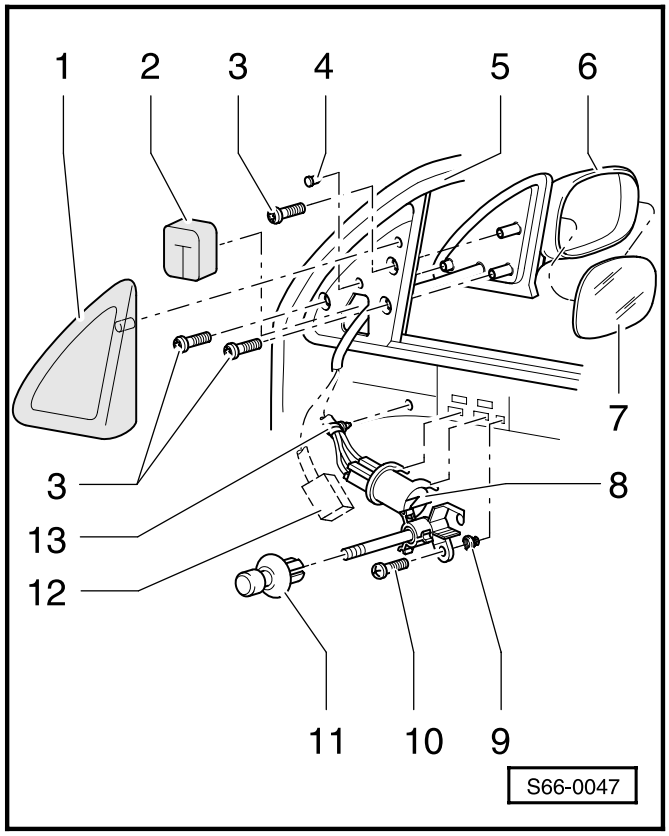
Removing

- Use special tool 3409 (plastic wedge) to lever roof trim strip -1- off the securing clips -2-.

Installing

- Align roof trim strip and press on to the securing clips with the ball of your hand.

Rear-view mirrors



Summary of components of rear-view mirrors

1 - Cover
- ♦ Pull of from door window through right angle.
- ♦ When removing or installing, disconnect or connect the plug connection for the tweeter (if present).

2 - Sealing

3 - 2 Nm

4 - Clip

5 - Door

6 - Mirror housing

7 - Mirror glass
- ♦ Clipped on with both versions (manually and electrically adjustable)
- ♦ Removing:
- Separate plug connections for electric mirror heater (if present).
- Separate mirror glass by pressing on it, first at the bottom and then at the top (using special tool MP 8-506 or MP 8-602/1). Protect mirror housing against damage.
- ♦ Installing:

Installation is performed in the reverse order.

Note:

Press only on the centre of the glass - make sure to wear protective gloves.

8 - Control (manual)

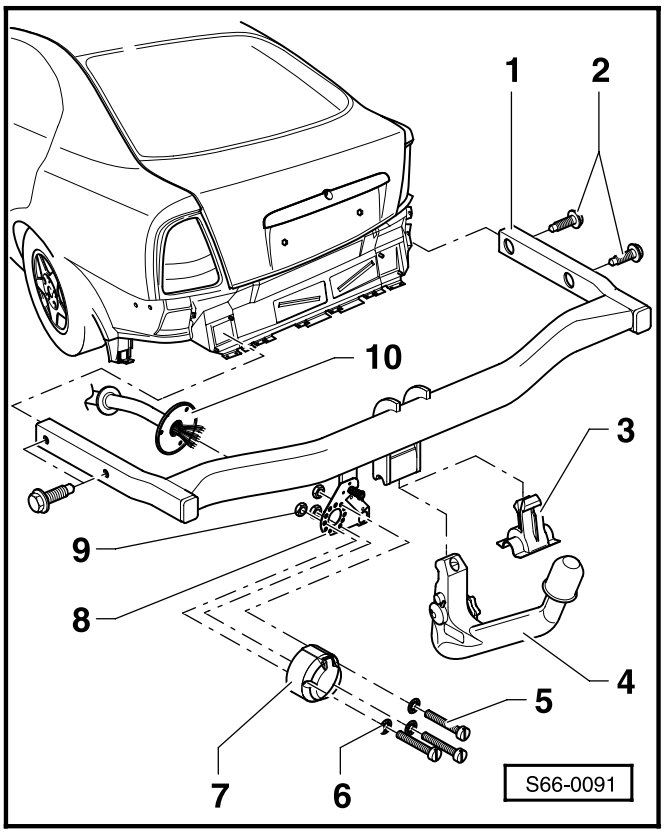
9 - Pull-in nut

10 - Screw
- ♦ For manual mirror control
- ♦ 2 Nm

11 - Control button
- ♦ For manual mirror control
- ♦ Fitted onto control

12 - Plug connection
- ♦ For electric mirror control

13 - Retaining clip
- ♦ For manual mirror control



Trailer coupling

Assembly overview of trailer coupling

1 - Trailer coupling frame
- ♦ Removing:
- Take off trailer coupling arm -4-.
- Insert dummy cover -3- into the hole of the trailer coupling arm.
- Remove rear bumper ⇒ page 63-3.
- Remove plug connection -7-.
- Remove bolts -2-.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

The procedure for removing and installing trailer couplings of the make PEKA and of the make PROF-SVAR is identical; there are only slight differences in the shape and function of the components.

2 - Bolt with spring washer, 80 Nm

3 - Blind cover
- ♦ Inserted into hole for trailer coupling arm

4 - Trailer coupling arm
- ♦ Removing:
- Open lock at trailer coupling arm.
- Take off arm.
- Insert dummy cover -3- into hole for trailer coupling arm.
- ♦ Install in reverse order

5 - Screw

6 - Washer

7 - Plug connection
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove screws -5-.
- Separate electric installation.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order

Note:

Use plug connection and electrical installation conforming to the regulations of the country concerned.

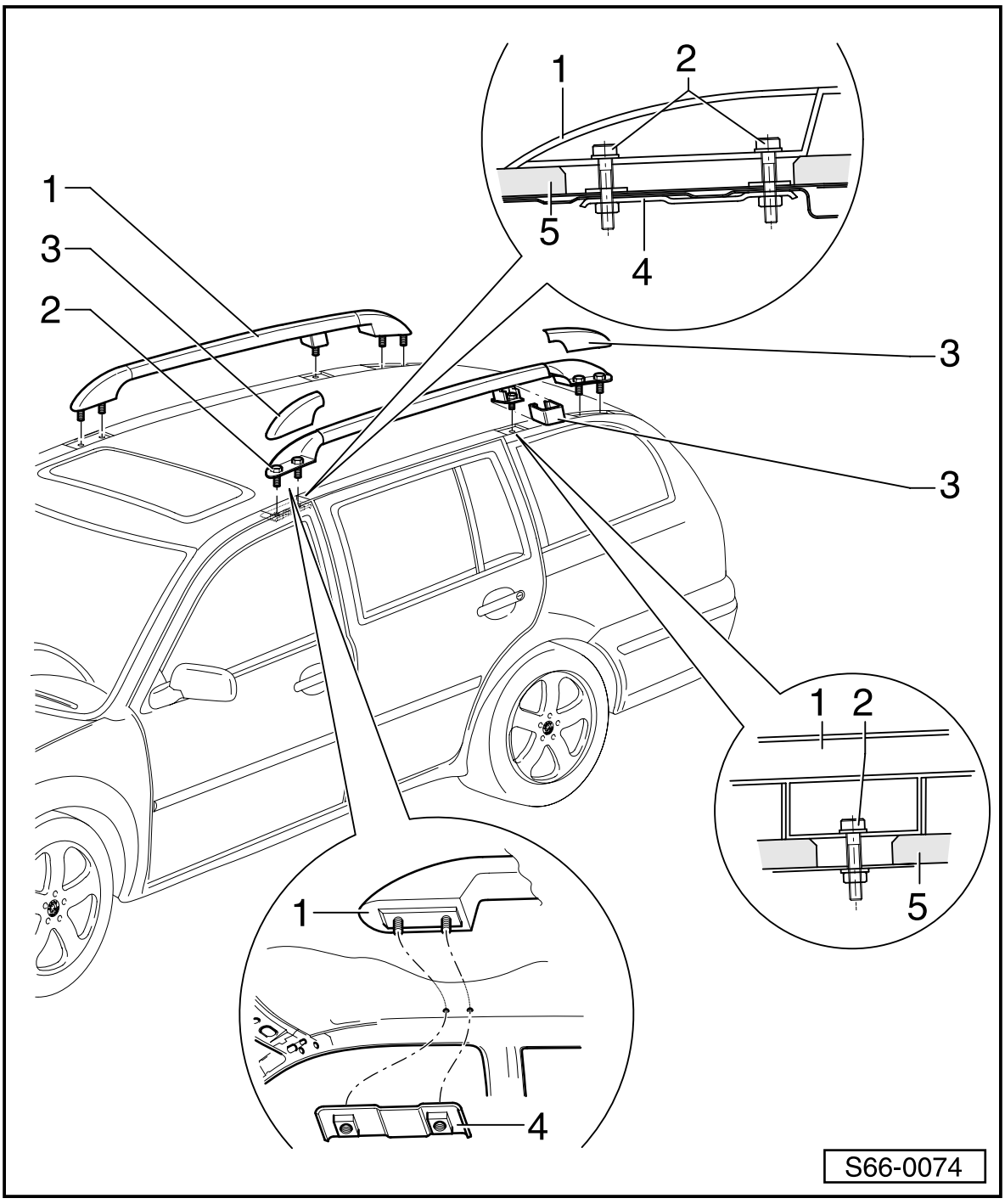
8 - Bracket

9 - 2.5 Nm

10 - Grommet for electrical installation

Roof railing

Assembly overview of roof railing (Octavia Estate)



1 - Roof railing

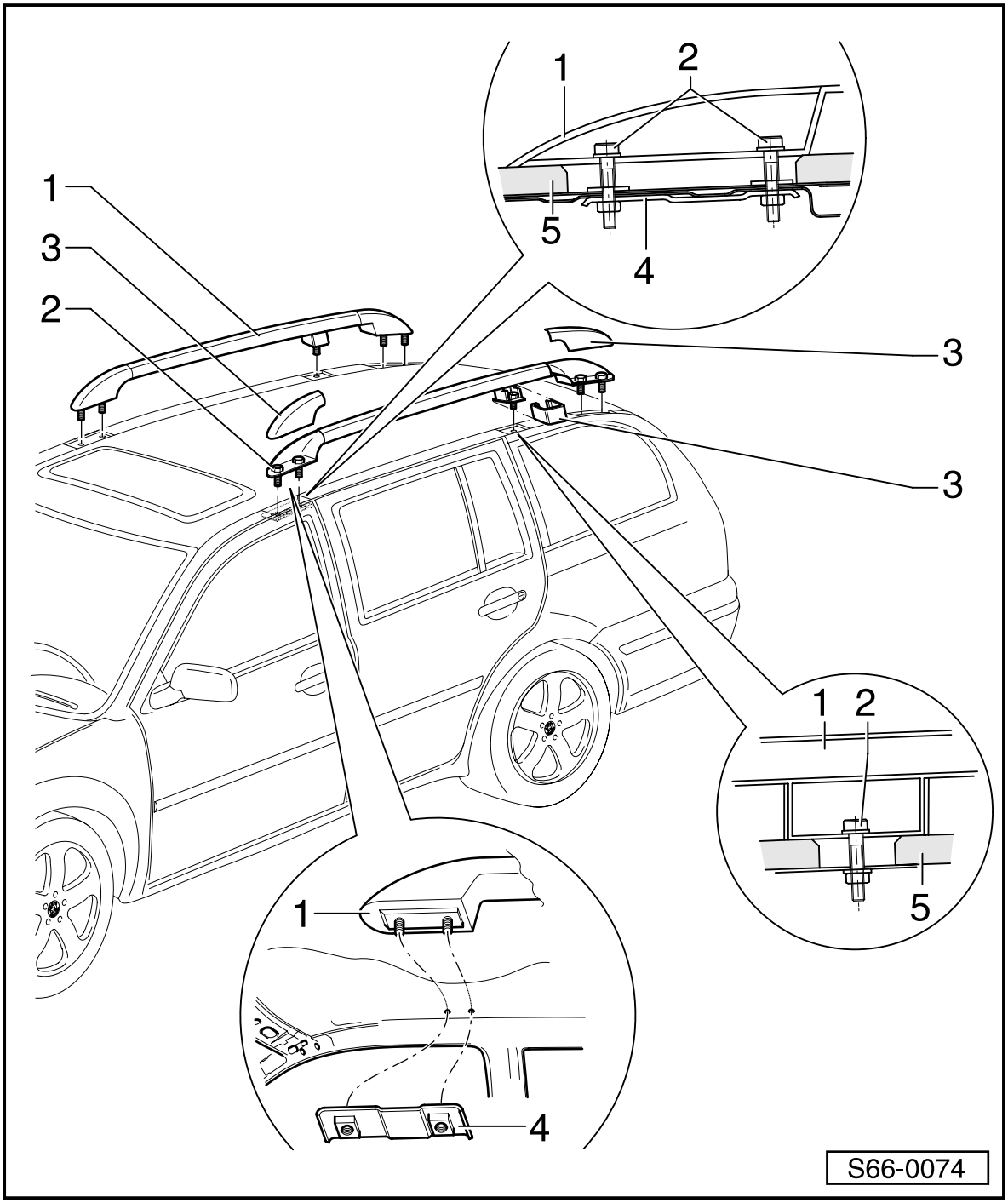
♦ Removing:

- Remove headliner ⇒ page 70-13.
- Take off covers -3-.
- Remove screws -2-, take off threaded plates -4- and take out roof railing.

♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

Holes for roof railing are provided on all models.



2 - 8 Nm

3 - Cover

4 - Threaded plate

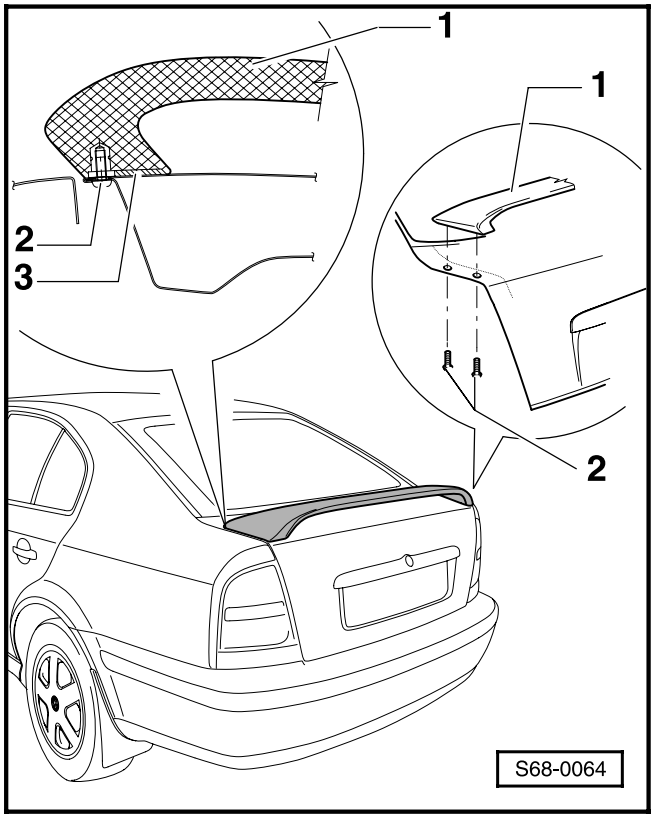
♦ Removing:

- Remove headliner ⇒ page 70-13.
- Take off covers -3-.
- Remove screws -2-, take off roof railing -4- and take out threaded plates.

♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 - Roof trim

Rear spoiler



Assembly overview - tailgate spoiler

1 - Rear spoiler

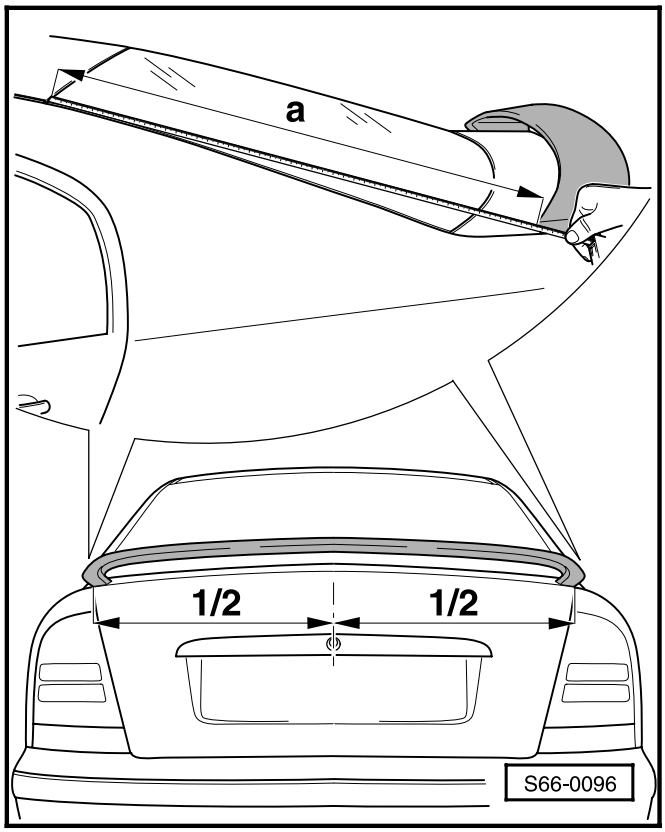
2 - 5 Nm

3 - Adhesive sealing compound

Removing and installing tailgate spoiler

Special tools, testers and aids required

- 4 stud screws (approx. 15 mm long, ground off at tip)
- Ø 6 mm drill
- Cutting wire with holder
- Adhesive sealing compound Terostat 9120 - white
  Part No. HHA 381 013
- Universal cleaning solution
  Part No. HHA 381 011



Removing spoiler

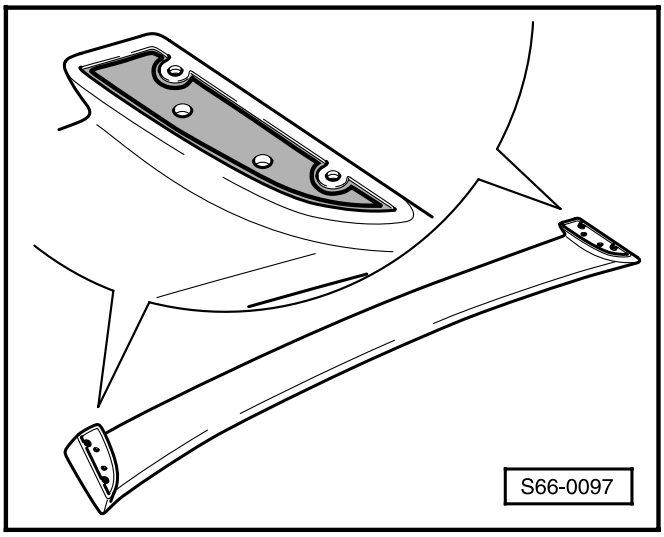
- Remove the screws attaching the spoiler.
- Separate spoiler from tailgate (cut through adhesive compound).
- Take off spoiler.

Installing spoiler

- Insert stud screws into the spoiler.

◄ - Position spoiler in the specified position:
a = 867 mm (measured from edge of rear window to front of spoiler)

- Centre spoiler on tailgate.



- Apply even pressure to spoiler until points of stud screws leave an impression in the paint.
- Take spoiler off the tailgate and drill holes for the screws which attach the spoiler at the points marked by means of the stud screws.
- Remove stud screws.
- Clean holes and apply corrosion protection.
- Clean the contact surfaces of spoiler and tailgate with a universal cleaner; pay attention to information of adhesive manufacturer.

◄- Apply adhesive round the entire coloured spoiler surface; pay attention to information of manufacturer.

- Fit spoiler onto tailgate and tighten screws attaching spoiler (5 Nm).
- Clean off any dirt with cleaner.

Notes:

- *Leave adhesive sealing compound to harden for 2 hours; do not drive the vehicle during this time.*
- *Wait at least 24 hours after attaching the spoiler before having the car washed in a car washing plant.*

The self-adhesive foils Octavia RS - WRC

Important comments concerning the gluing on of self-adhesive foils

Note:

This work sequence requires a second person to be present

Required special tools, testing and measuring equipment as well auxiliary devices and material:

- A degreasing white spirit solution
- A shampoo solution (98% water, 2% shampoo)
- Hot air pistol e.g. HLG - 600
- Technical petrol

Preparing the vehicle surface

- Clean the vehicle surface and degrease (e.g. with a degreasing white spirit solution).
- Spray the vehicle surface with a shampoo solution

Preparing the self-adhesive foils

- Remove the base paper from the self-adhesive foil.
- Spray with a shampoo solution while removing the application paper of the self-adhesive foil, position -9- ⇒ Page 66-13.

Reworking foils after gluing them on

- Smoothen off the foil using a spatula.
- Dry off the foil using the hot air pistol emitting air at a maximum temperature of 100 ºC.
- Remove the auxiliary markings according to the type of foil.

Note:

Do not run the vehicle though the car-wash for 24 hours after gluing on foils.

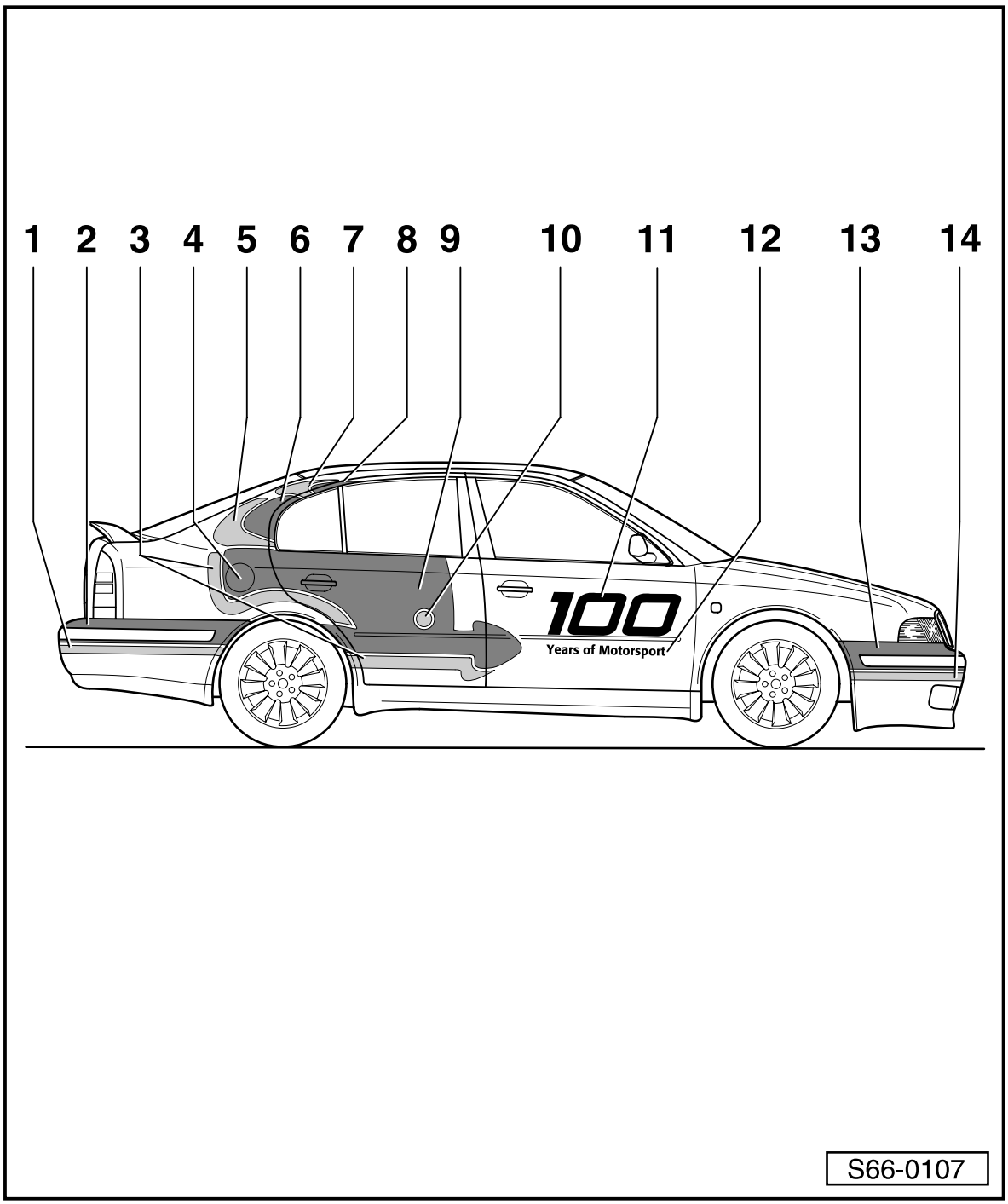
Removing self-adhesive foils

- Heat the foil to be removed using the hot air pistol emitting air at a maximum temperature of 100 ºC.

- Pull off the foil by pulling on it with a medium force at a sharp angle.

- Clean off the adhesive residue from the vehicle using technical petrol.

Assembly overview of side self-adhesive film



Notes:

- *Pay attention to the important information on affixing self-adhesive film ⇒ page 66-11.*
- *Use a shampoo solution (98% water, 2% shampoo) for affixing.*

1 - Rear bumper shadow

2 - Rear bumper
- painted section

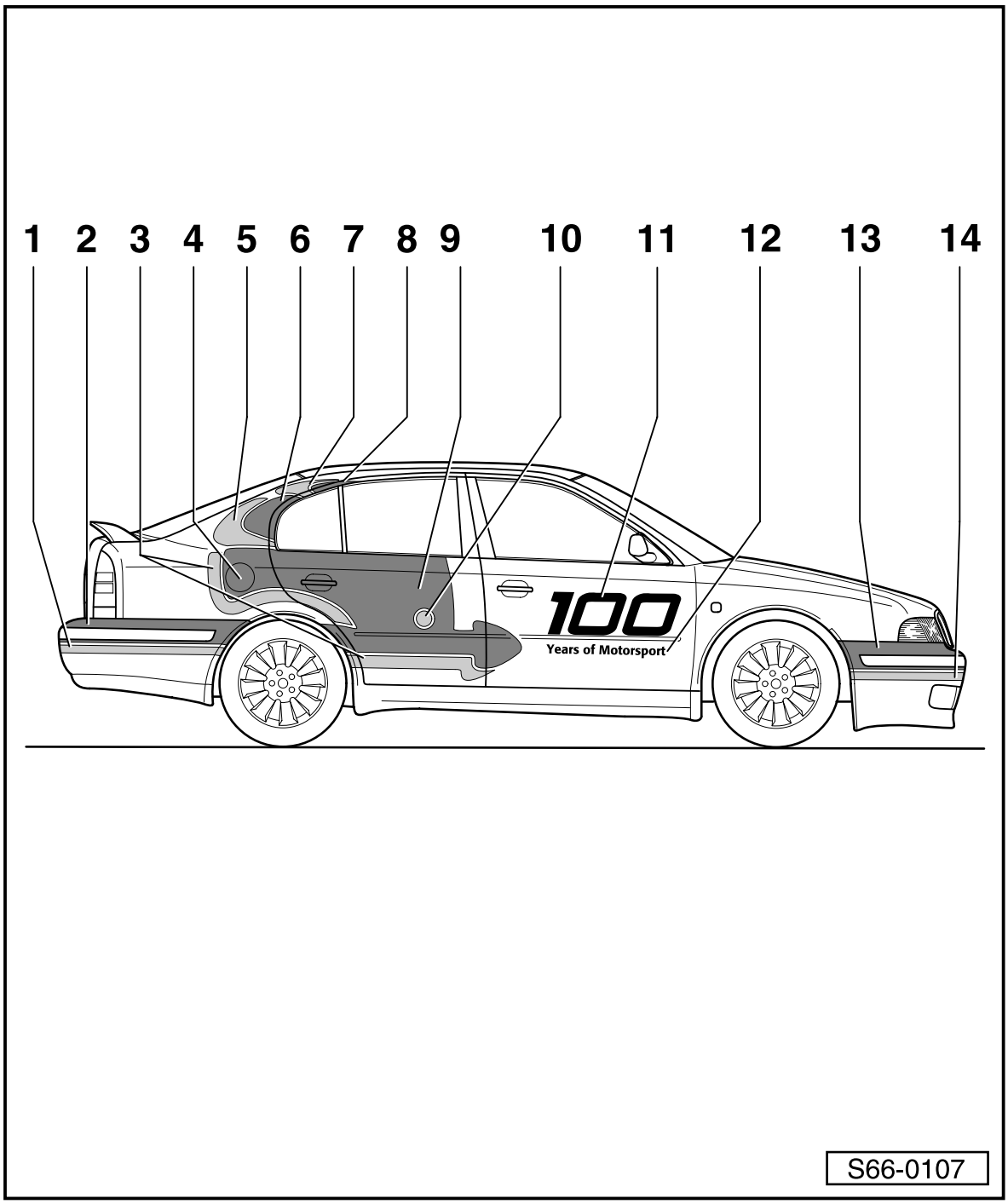
3 - Side shadow

4 - Fuel filler flap

5 - Shadow of rear side window

6 - Highlight of rear side window

7 - Shadow of rear side window



8 - Highlight of rear side window

9 - Highlight of rear door
- ♦ when removing application paper, spray with shampoo solution

10 - Shadow of highlight eye

11 - Inscription of front door

12 - Inscription „Years of Motorsport“

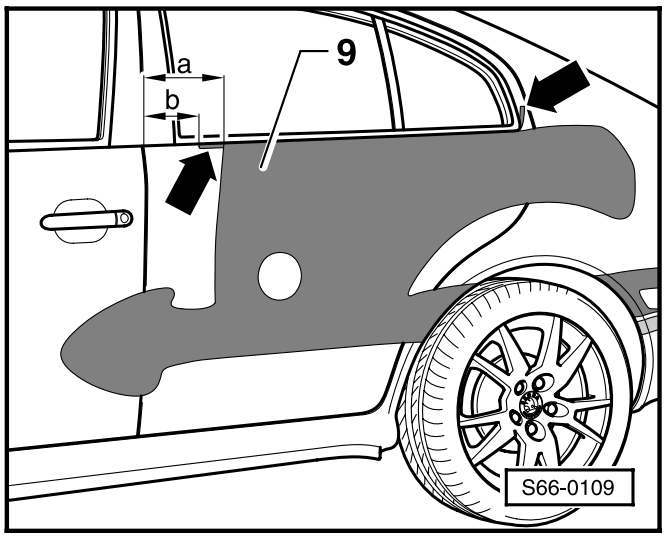
13 - Front bumper
- ♦ painted section

14 - Shadow of front bumper

Affixing side self-adhesive film

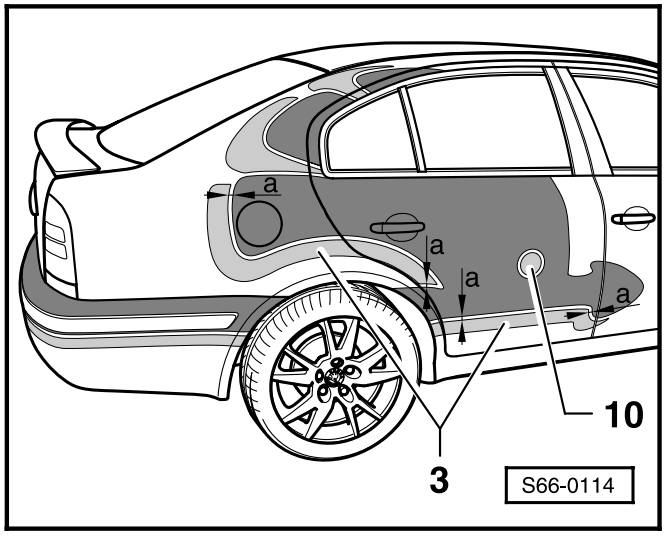
Highlight of rear door

- Remove rear door handle ⇒ page 58-6.
- Remove fuel filler flap unit ⇒ page 55-6.
- Remove window seals of rear door ⇒ page 58-1.



◄ - Affix aid marking (green in colour) -arrows- into the specified position:
-b- = approx. 148 mm from edge of rear door.

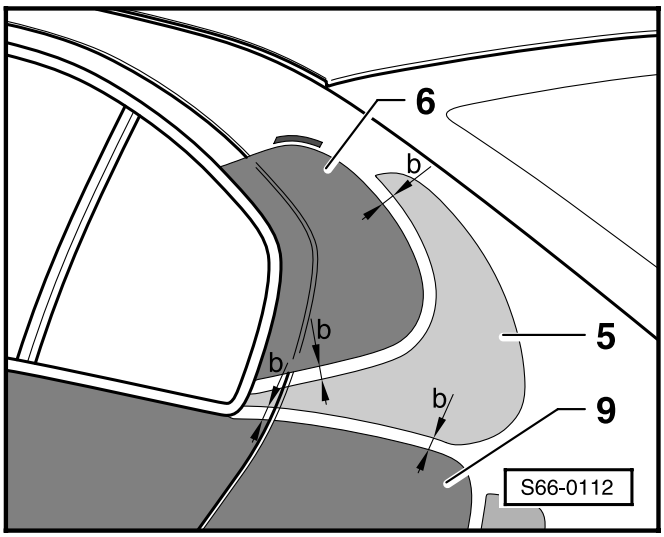
- Install window seals of rear door ⇒ page 58-1.
- Highlight -9- into the specified position:
  - The top edge of the highlight must be aligned with the bottom edge of the window seal.
  - Maintain the distance -a- = approx. 187 mm from edge of rear door.
- Cut remains of aid markings and affix -arrows-.
- Cut the film -9- along the rear door (projection of film at C pillar is approx. 4 mm).
- Cut out an opening for fuel filler neck with projection (approx. 4 mm).
- Shape projections of film.
- Cut out an opening for door handle lock.
- Use hot air gun to shape the film into the door bead in the area of the door handle lock and in the area of the fuel filler flap.
- Install rear door handle ⇒ page 58-6.
- Install fuel filler flap unit ⇒ page 55-6.



Side shadows

◄ - Affix side shadows -3- into the specified position:
-a- = approx. 12 mm.

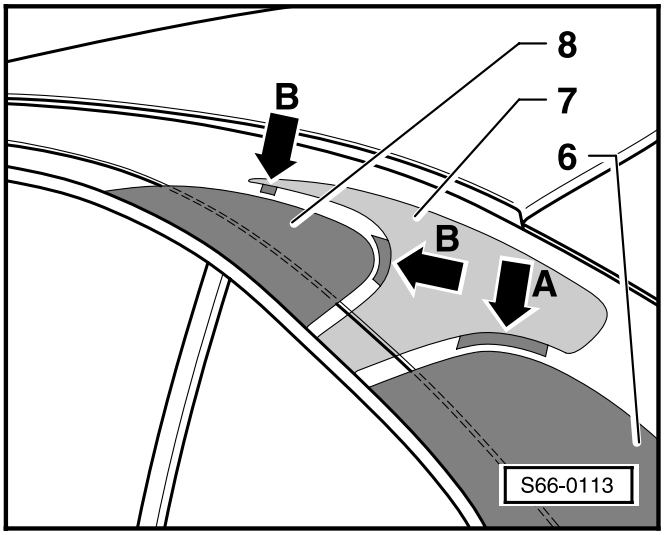
- Cut the film -3- along the rear door (projection at C pillar is approx. 4 mm).
- Shape projections of film to match C pillar.
- Affix shadows -10- into the middle of the film eye.



Self-adhesive film at rear windows

◄- Affix side shadows -5- at a distance -b- (approx. 12 mm) from top edge of rear door highlight -9-.

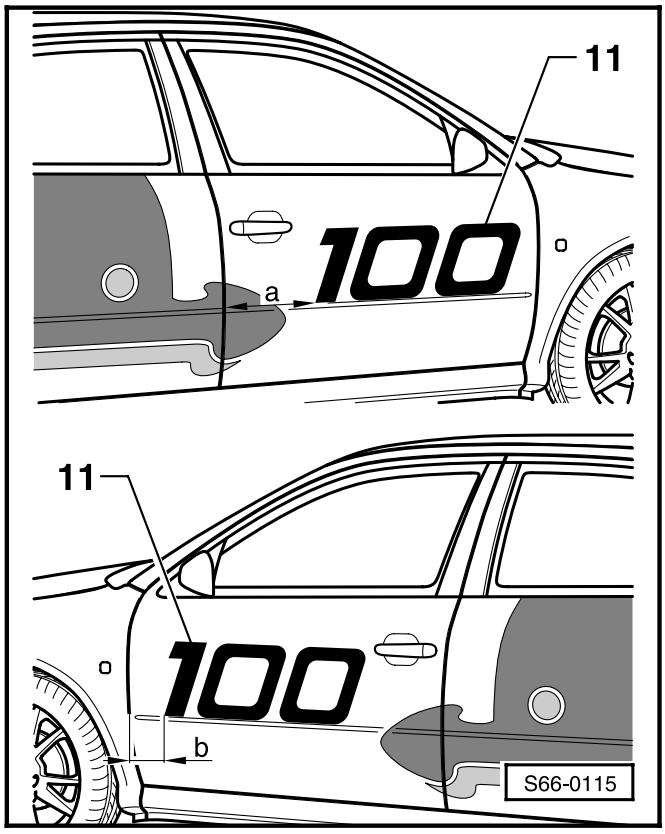
◄- Affix highlight of side window -6- at a distance -b- (approx. 12 mm) from top edge of side shadow -5-.



◄- Affix side shadow -7- matching aid marking of highlight -6- -arrow A-.

◄- Affix highlight of side window -8- matching aid markings of shadow -7- -arrows B-.

- Cut film -5-, -6-, -7- and -8- along the rear door (projection at C pillar is approx. 4 mm).
- Shape projections of film to match C pillar.

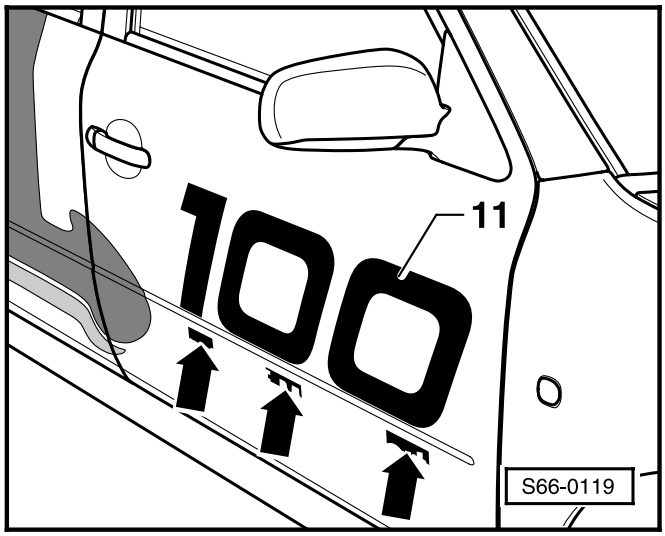


„100“ inscription on front doors

◄- Affix inscription -11- to the top edge of the bead of the side rub strip and maintain the dimensions:

Right door: -a- = approx. 265 mm

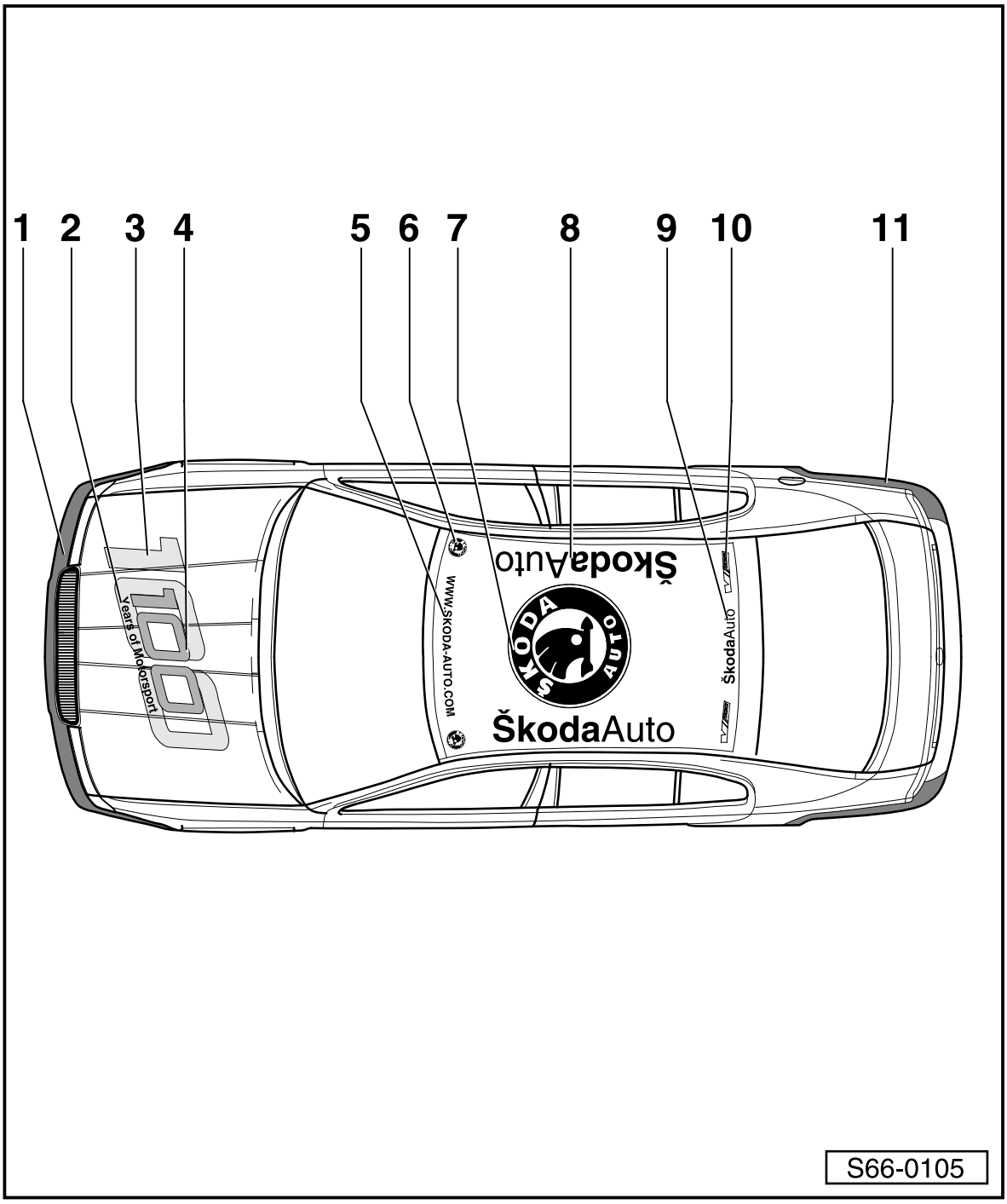
Left door: -b- = approx. 56 mm



„Years of Motorsport“ inscription on front doors

◄- Affix „Years of Motorsport“ inscription aligned to the aid markings -arrows- of inscription -11-.

Assembly overview of roof and bonnet self-adhesive film



Notes:

- *Pay attention to important information on affixing self-adhesive film ⇒ page 66-11.*
- *Use shampoo solution (98% water, 2% shampoo) for affixing.*

1 - Front bumper
- painted section

2 - Inscription „Years of Motorsport“

3 - Grey inscription „100 Years of Motorsport“

4 - Red inscription „100“

5 - Inscription „WWW.SKODA-AUTO.COM“

6 - Side highlights

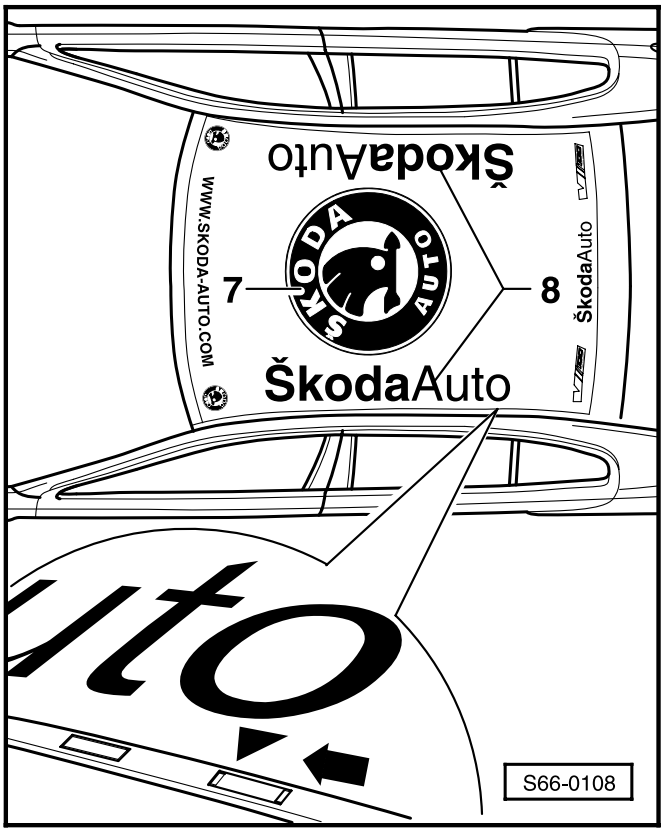
7 - Centre highlight

8 - Side inscription „Škoda Auto“

9 - Rear inscription „Škoda Auto“

10 - Inscription „V100“

11 - Rear bumper
- ♦ painted section



Affixing roof and bonnet self-adhesive film

Inscriptions „Škoda Auto“

Note:

Do not mix up the right and left sides when affixing.

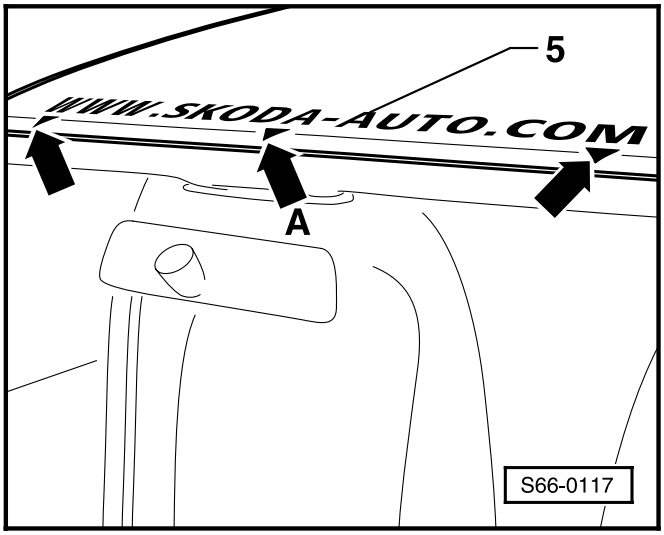
◄- Affix inscription -8- beginning from dummy plug for rear roof rack, matched to aid markings -arrow-:
left side from letter **-o-**
right side from letter **-Š-**

- Match up inscription „Škoda Auto“ -8- with roof trim strip according to aid markings.

Highlight „Škoda Auto“

- Affix the outer centre highlight -7- into the middle of the roof matching the aid markings.

- Affix the inner centre highlight into the middle of the outer highlight matching the aid markings.



Inscription „WWW.SKODA-AUTO.COM“ and side highlights

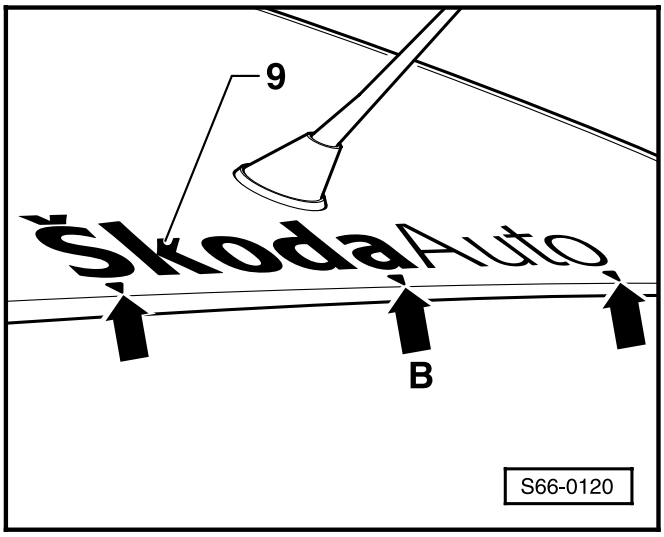
- Mark middle of edge of roof above windshield.

◄- Affix inscription -5- to middle of roof (-arrow A- identifies middle of inscription -5-).

- At the same time align inscription -5- to edge of roof based on aid markings -arrows-.

- Affix the outer side highlights into the corner of the roof based on the aid markings.

- Affix the inner side highlights into the middle of the outer highlight matching the aid markings.



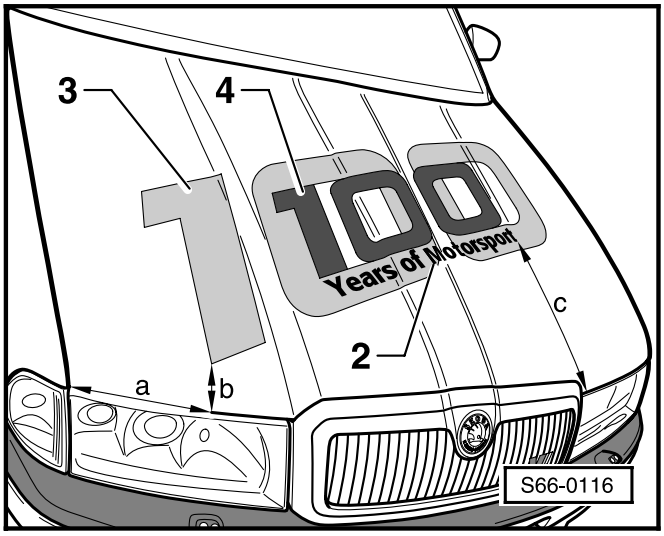
Inscription „Škoda Auto“ and side inscription „V100“

- Mark middle of edge of roof above windscreen.

◄- Affix inscription -9- to middle of roof (-arrow B- identifies middle of inscription -9-).

- At the same time align inscription -9- to edge of roof based on aid markings -arrows-.

- Affix inscriptions „V100“ matching aid markings.



Inscription „100 Years of Motorsport“ on bonnet

◄- Mark the following points on the bonnet:

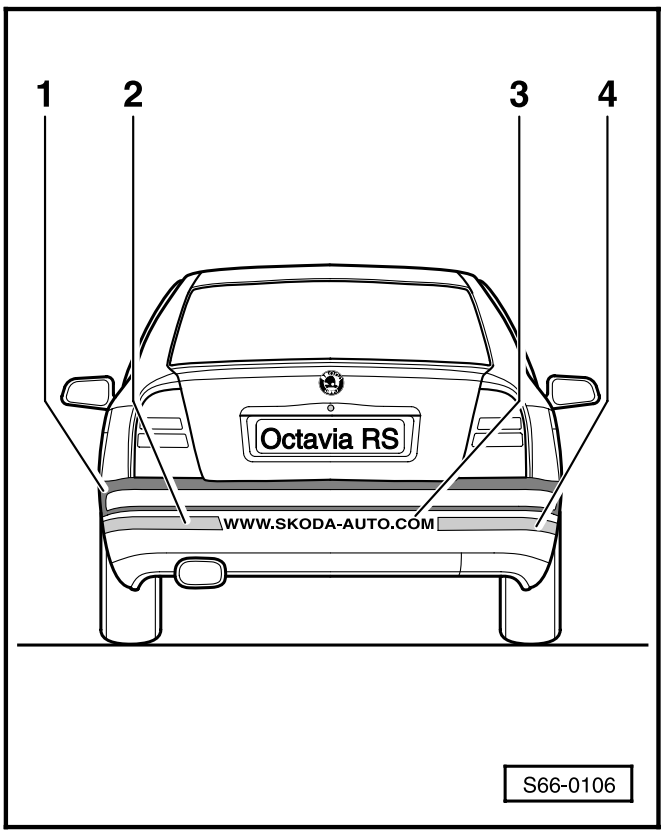
-a- = approx. 215 mm

-b- = approx. 73 mm

-c- = approx. 395 mm (measured from edge of bonnet to bottom edge of the letter **-t-**)

- Affix film -3- to the bonnet matching the points marked.

- Affix the film -2- and -4- into the inscription -3- matching the aid markings.



Assembly overview of self-adhesive film for rear bumper

Note:

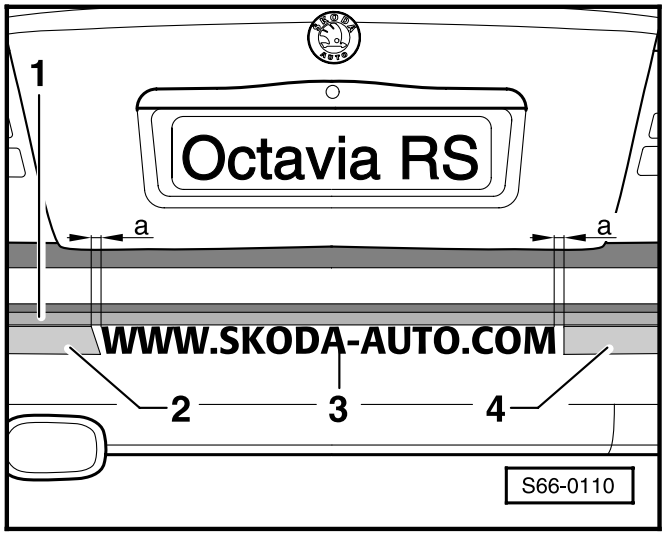
Pay attention to important information on affixing self-adhesive film ⇒ page 66-11.

1 - Rear bumper
- ♦ painted section

2 - Left shadow for rear bumper

3 - Inscription „WWW.SKODA-AUTO.COM“

4 - Right shadow for rear bumper



Affixing self-adhesive film for front and rear bumper

◄ - Affix a 12 mm wide aid strip -1- (e.g. made of textile) below the painted surfaces of the bumpers at front and rear. If necessary, mark the 12 mm distance from the painted surfaces.

- Mark the middle of the rear bumper.

- Mark the middle of the inscription „WWW.SKODA-AUTO.COM“.

- Affix inscription -3- into the middle of the bumper.

- Align inscription -3- to bottom edge of aid marking -1-.

- Affix shadows for rear bumper -2- and -4-: -a- = approx. 12 mm from the edge of the first and last letter of the inscription -3-.

- Remove aid strip -1- as appropriate.

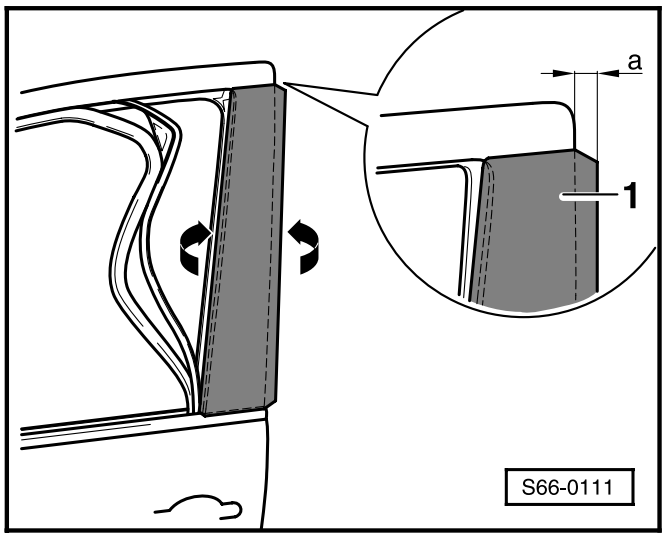
The procedure for affixing the shadows at the front bumper is identical to that at the rear bumper; pay attention to the following point:

Approx. 5 mm projection in frame for vehicle licence plate.

Affixing self-adhesive film for doors and centre pillar

Note:

Pay attention to important information on affixing self-adhesive film ⇒ page 66-11.



- Lower the front and rear door windows.

- Partially remove window seals at front and rear doors.

Front door

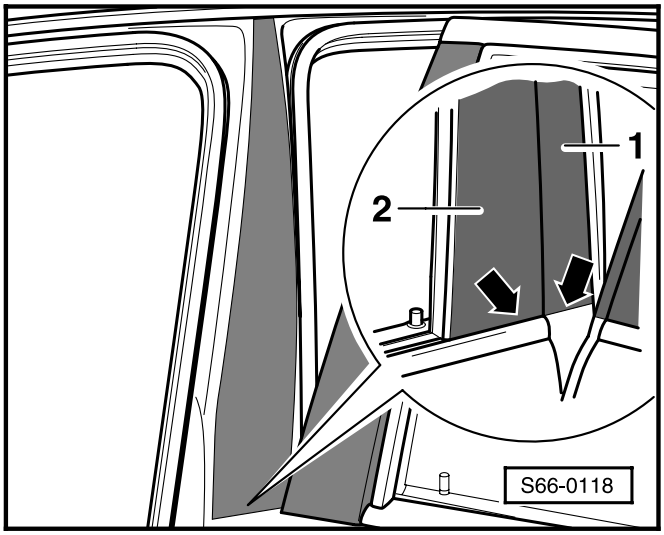
◄ - Affix film -1- to the front door.

- At the same time align top edge of film -1- to the perforated edge of window, while maintaining the projection of -a- = 5 mm.

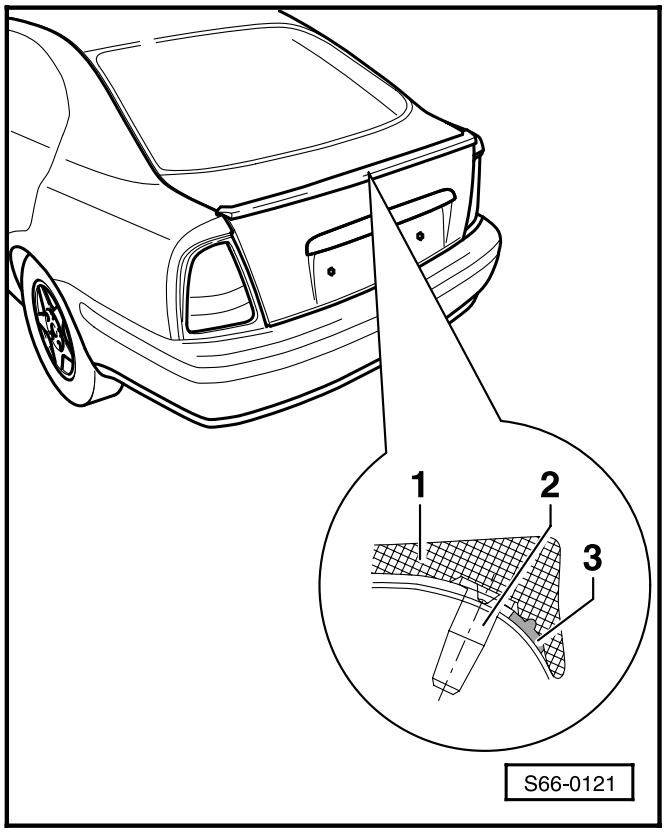
Rear door

- Affix film to the rear door.
- At the same time align top edge of the film to the perforated edge of the window, while maintaining the projection of 5 mm.

Centre pillar



- Affix film -1- to the centre pillar.
- ◄ At the same time align bottom edge of film -1- to the bottom edge of film -2- -arrows-.
- Install window seal of front and rear doors.
- Close front and rear door windows.



Rear spoiler (for Octavia Sedan 4x4 models)

Installation survey of complete rear spoiler

1 - Rear spoiler

2 - Dowel sleeve

3 - Adhesive compound

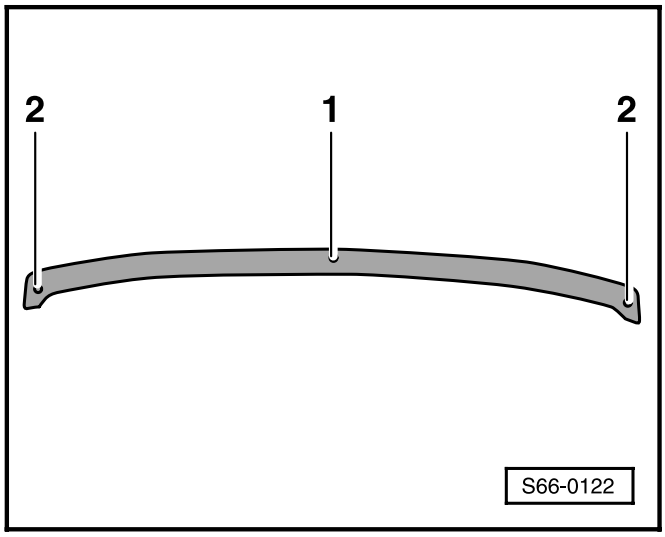
Removing and installing complete rear spoiler

Special tools, testers and aids required

- Cutting wire with fixture, e.g. V.A.G 1351
- Adhesive compound Terostat 9120 - white Part No. HHA 381 013
- Cleaning solution D 009 401 04

Removing spoiler

- Separate spoiler from tailgate by cutting off (cut through adhesive compound).
- Remove spoiler.



Installing spoiler

◄ - Remove dowel sleeve -1- and clips -2- from spoiler.

- Clean spoiler surfaces and surface of tailgate with cleaning solution D 009 401 04; pay attention to instructions of adhesive manufacturer.
- Apply adhesive to spoiler all round; pay attention to manufacturer's instructions.
- Place spoiler onto tailgate (4.7 ± 1 mm from edge of tailgate to edge of spoiler).

The dimension 4.7 ± 1 mm must be just as large on the left as on the right side of the tailgate.

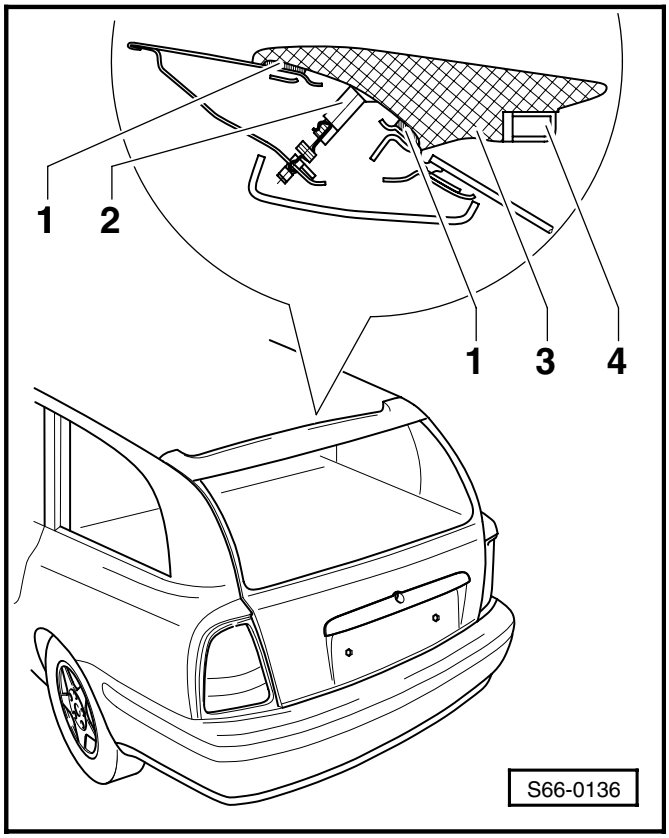
- Secure the correct location of the spoiler using adhesive tape.

- Remove any dirt present using a cleaner.

Notes:

- *The glue sealing mass must dry for 24 hours. Do not drive the vehicle in this time.*
- *Do not drive into the carwash within 24 hours of gluing on the spoiler.*

Rear spoiler (for vehicles Octavia Estate RS)



Summary of the components - for the complete rear spoiler

1 - Glue sealing mass

2 - Spring holder

3 - Rear spoiler

4 - Additional brake light

Removing and installing complete rear spoiler

Special tools, testers and aids required

- Cutting wire with holder e.g. V.A.G 1351
- Glue sealing mass Terostat 9120 - white Part No. HHA 381 013
- Universal cleaning solution Part No. HHA 381 011

Removing

- Remove centre trim panel of tailgate ⇒ page 70-12.2.

- Cut off the spoiler from the tailgate (cut through the glue sealing mass).

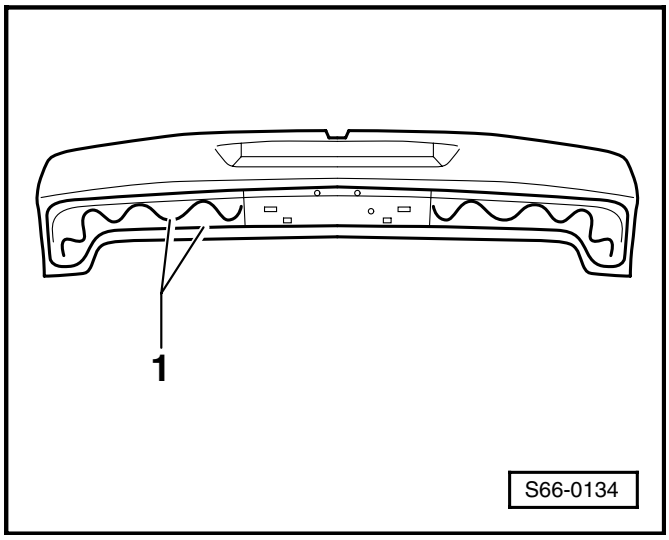
- Slacken two spring holders from the tailgate.
- Unplug connector from additional brake light and spray nozzle hose and remove spoiler.

Note:

Do not damage the painted surfaces.

Installing

- Clean the seating area for the spoiler and the tailgate with cleaning solution HHA 381 011 while observing the instructions issued by the glue manufacturer.



◄ - Apply glue -1- all around the spoiler while observing the instructions issued by the manufacturer.

- Connect spray nozzle hose and connector of additional brake light.
- Fit spoiler onto the tailgate according to the spring holders (4.7 ± 1 mm from the edge of the tailgate to the spoiler tailgate).

The dimension 4.7 ± 1mm must be just as large on the left as on the right side of the tailgate.

- Secure the correct location of the spoiler using adhesive tape.
- Remove any dirt present using a cleaner.
- Remove centre trim panel of tailgate ⇒ page 70-12.2.

Notes:

- *The glue sealing mass must dry for 24 hours. Do not drive the vehicle in this time.*
- *Do not drive into the carwash within 24 hours of gluing on the spoiler.*

Removing and installing additional brake light (for vehicles Octavia Estate RS)

Special tools, testers and aids required

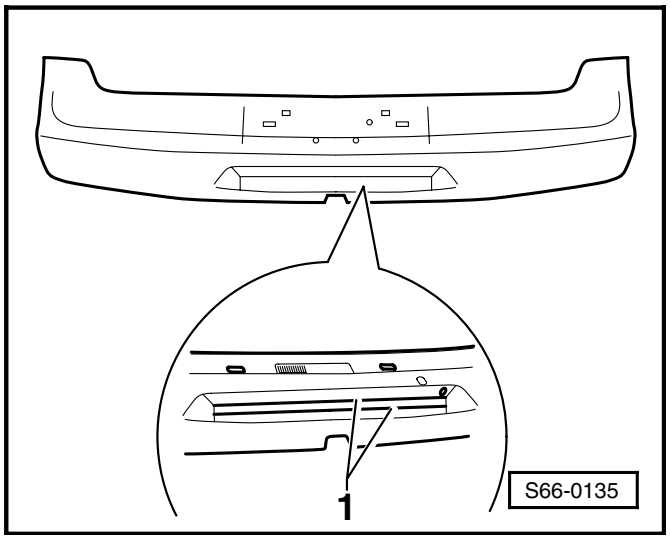
- Universal cleaning solution Part No. HHA 381 011
- Silicone sealant Würth 892 310 91

Removing

- Cut off the upper edge of the additional brake light from the tailgate and carefully separate additional brake light from below.
- Remove additional brake light from spoiler.
- Unplug connector from additional brake light.

Installing

- Clean the seating area for the spoiler and the tailgate with cleaning solution HHA 381 011 while observing the instructions issued by the glue manufacturer.



◄ - Apply silicone sealant -1- while observing the instructions issued by the manufacturer.

- Connect plug of additional brake light.
- Fit additional brake light into spoiler
- Secure the location of the additional brake light using adhesive tape.
- Remove any dirt present using a cleaner.

Notes:

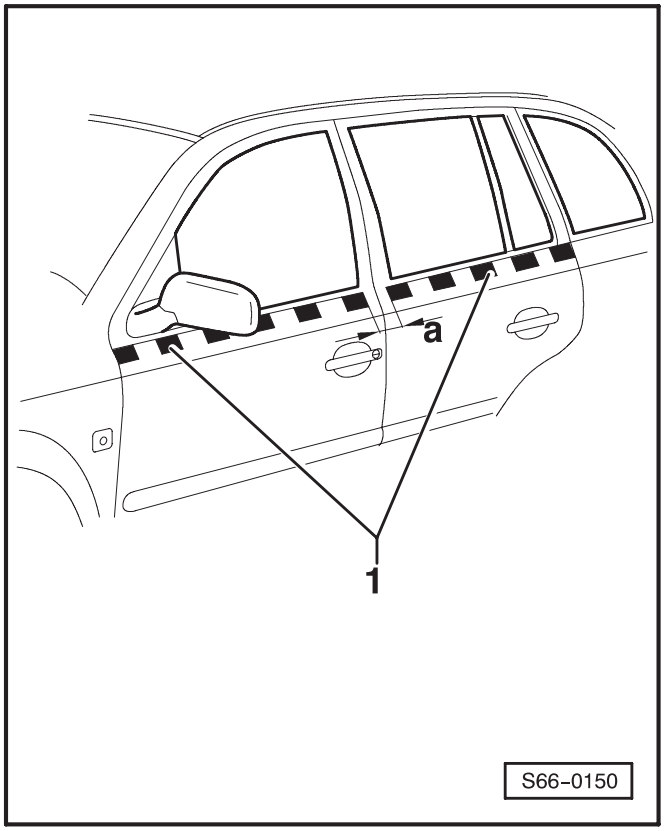
- *The glue sealing mass must dry for 2 hours. Do not drive the vehicle in this time.*
- *Do not drive into the carwash within 24 hours of gluing on the spoiler.*

Decorative sheets TAXI

Stick on decorative sheets and remove

Special tools, testers and aids required

- Degreased white spirit solution
- Technical petrol
- Shampoo solution (98 % water, 2 % shampoo)
- Hot air blower



Sticking on

- Clean and degrease front and rear doors (e.g with degreased white spirit solution).
- Spray front and rear doors with shampoo solution.

◄ - Remove base paper from self-adhesive foils -1-.

- Stick self-adhesive foils -1- onto the front and rear doors. Pay attention to the following:

Position top edge of the foils onto the bottom edge of the door window seal.

Dimension a = 90 mm (joint between front and rear door).

- Wrap the projecting foil parts -1- around the door edges (approx. 10 mm)
- If necessary smoothen the foils (e.g. with rubber cylinder).

The process for the right doors is identical.

Notes:

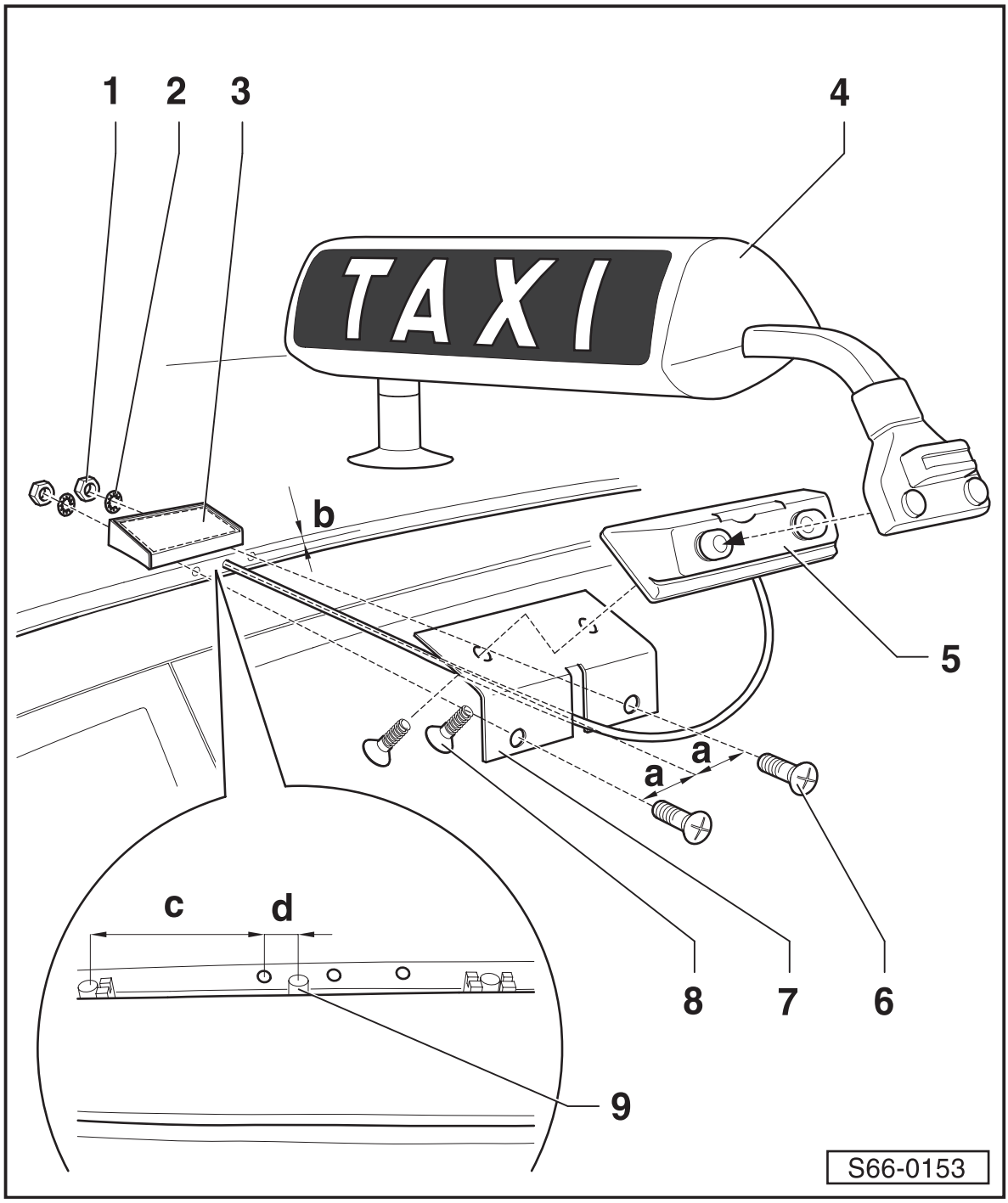
After sticking on the foils do not drive into the carwash within 24 hours.

Removing

- Heat the removed foils with hot air piston at an air temperature of max. 100 °C.
- Remove foils in a sharp angle through extensive pulling.
- Clean vehicle surface with technical petrol.

Dimension of holes for the TAXI roof sign

Summary of components of TAXI roof sign



1 - Nut

2 - Washer

3 - Rubber washer

4 - TAXI roof sign

5 - Holder

6 - 9 Nm

7 - Holder for TAXI roof sign

8 - 7 Nm

9 - T-pin

a = 35 mm

b = 7.3 mm

c = 88 mm

- Valid for Octavia Combi
- Measure from fifth T-pin

d = 11 mm

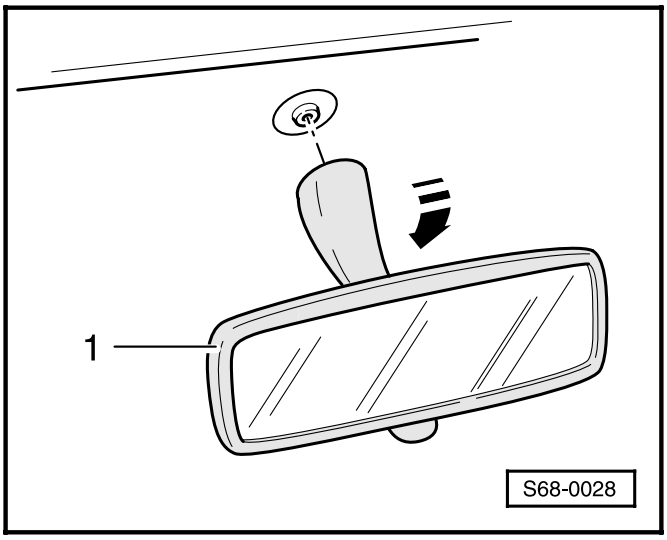
- Valid for Octavia
- Measure from sixth T-pin
- Break off T-pin -9- according to the positioning of the holes

Hole diameter for screws and cable is 6 mm.

Note:

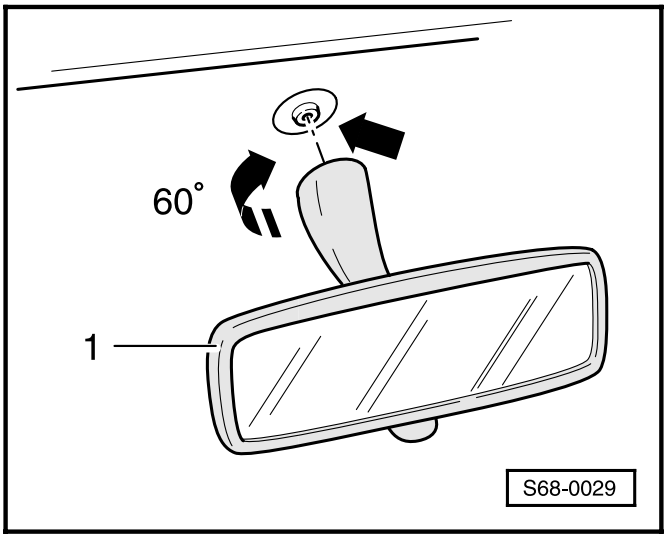
Clean holes and carry out protection against corrosion.

Interior rear-view mirror



Removing interior rear-view mirror

◄ - Position interior mirror -1- down at an angle -arrow- and press it off the mounting plate (clamping springs in base of mirror).



Installing interior rear-view mirror

◄ - Position mirror -1- turned 60 to 90° to the left relative to the mounting position and then turn to the right -arrow- until locking spring engages.

Repair method with glass-metal adhesive

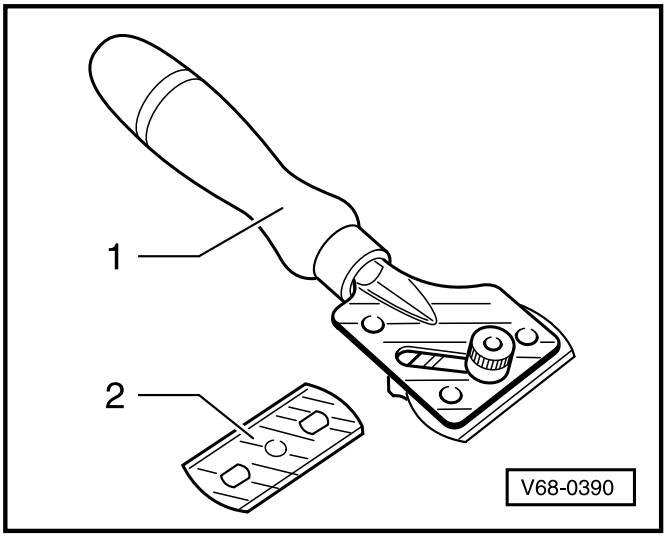
Materials:

♦ Glass-metal adhesive set D 000 703 A1

◄ **Tools:**

1 - Glass scraper

2 - Blade



- Take mirror plate out of base of mirror.
- Use a wire brush to remove PUR adhesive material from mirror plate.

- Place sanding paper (360/400 roughness) onto flat surface for this step. Sand off the three spacer studs on the bonded surface.

- Keep sanding surface free of dirt and grease.

- Use glass scraper to scrape PUR adhesive material and primer on the windscreen down to the ceramic layer.

- Clean bonding surface with adhesive remover D 009 401 04.

Warning!

Do not damage surrounding layer. Scratches always remain visible.

- Cut nylon mesh fabric exactly to the size of the mirror base.

Note:

Wear protective rubber gloves for this step.

- Apply sufficient adhesive evenly to the base of the mirror.

- Place nylon mesh fabric onto base of mirror.

- Apply further adhesive by dabbing the nylon mesh fabric with the tube.

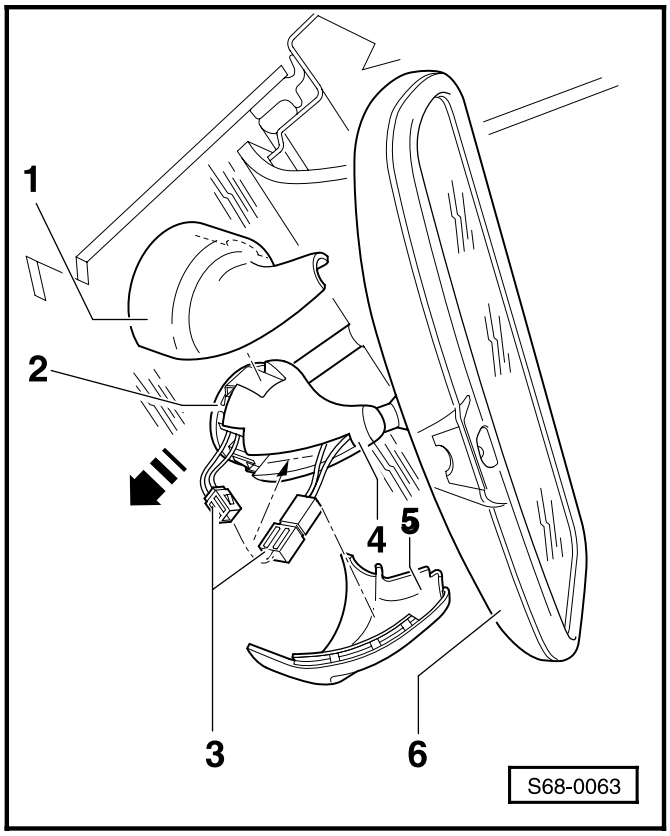
Do not exceed 30 seconds between placing the nylon mesh fabric onto adhesive and pressing it onto the windscreen.

- Press base of mirror firmly against the windscreen (do not use force) for 15 seconds.

- Remove excess adhesive with a cleaning cloth.

Note:

The interior rear-view mirror can be fitted on after 15 minutes.



Removing and installing the interior rear-view mirror with rain sensor

Special tools, testers and aids required

- Plastic wedge 3409

Removing

◄ - Press apart pedestal halves -1- and -5- with plastic wedge 3409.

- Pull connector -3- out of pedestal and separate.

- Pull pedestal -4- with mirror -6- downwards and away from retaining plate -2- -arrow-.

Installing

Notes:

After removing the rain sensor (if necessary when changing the windscreen) a new rain sensor must be installed for a perfect functioning.

Installation is performed in the reverse order.

Attaching the pedestal retaining plate

Notes:

- *By applying the following repair procedure, you can avoid having to replace the windscreen.*
- *It is possible to reuse the old, fallen off retaining plate.*

Preparing windscreen

- On the outside of the windscreen, mark the position of the retaining plate, using a felt-tip pen for example.

- Any remaining glue or primer must be removed down to the ceramic layer.

Warning!

Do not damage the ceramic layer, as scratches will be permanently visible.

- Clean the bonding surface with cleaning solution D 009 401 04.

- Leave to dry for min. 10 minutes.

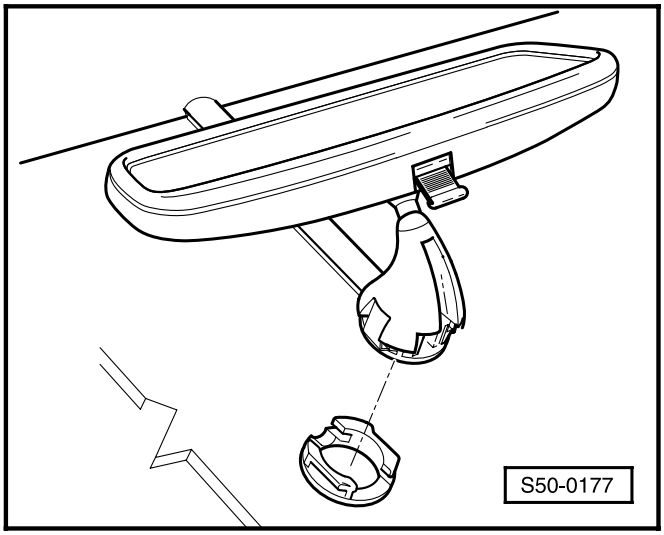
- Apply primer D 009 200 02 to windshield.
- Maintain the air drying time: at least 10 minutes up to max. 1 hour.

Preparing mounting plate for bonding

- Remove any adhesive residues.
- Sand bonded surface wet with very fine sanding paper (800 - 1200 roughness).
- Clean bonded surface with cleaning solution D 009 401 04.

Bonding mounting plate

- Apply adhesive D 180 KD2 A1 directly to the bonding surface of the mounting plate.
- Diameter of adhesive bead about 3 mm.

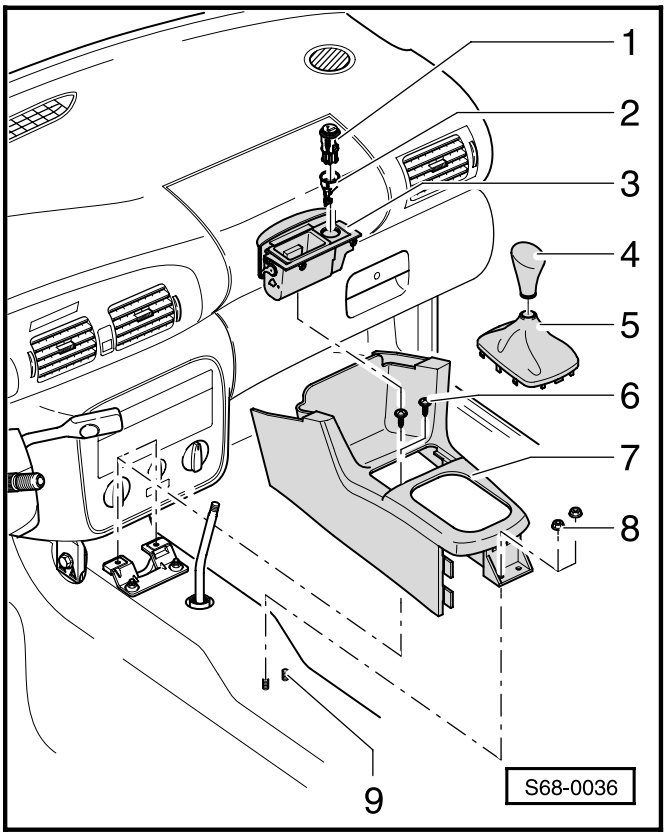


◄- Press mounting plate onto the prepared windshield immediately after applying the adhesive.

- Centre mounting plate in the specified position on the ceramic layer and fix in place with adhesive tape.
- Remove adhesive tape carefully after about one hour.
- Use a cloth to remove excess adhesive and clean with cleaning solution.

Note:

The interior rear-view mirror can be fitted on only after a waiting time of 2.5 hours.



Stowage compartments, covers and trim panels

Assembly overview of centre console 08.96 ➤

1 - Cigarette lighter

2 - Mount for cigarette lighter

3 - Front ashtray

4 - Gearshift knob

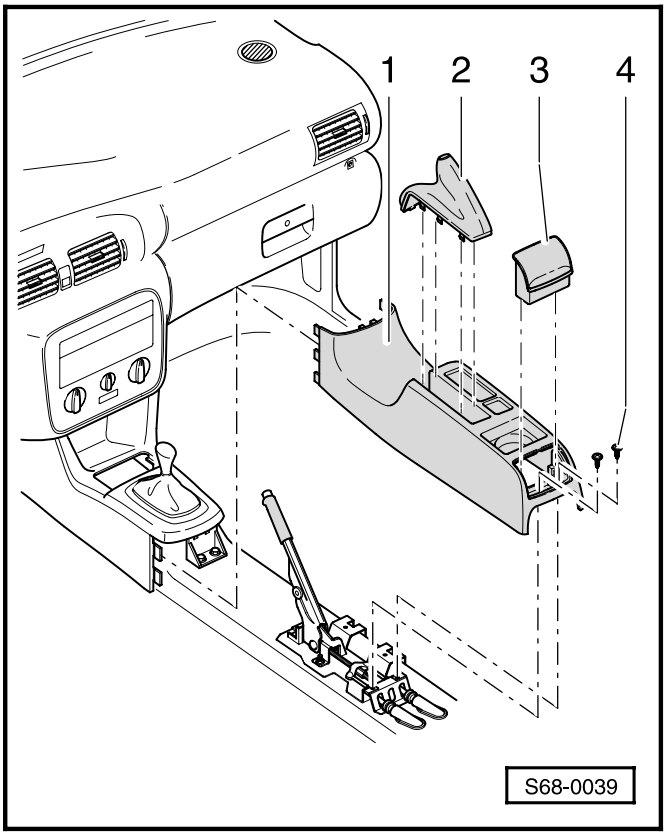
5 - Cover for gearshift lever
- ♦ Clipped into centre console

6 - 1.5 Nm

7 - Centre console
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove trim for handbrake lever ⇒ page 68-4.
- Take off gearshift knob -4-.
- Unclip cover -5- and lift up and off.
- Unscrew hexagon nut -8-.
- Remove screw -6-.
- Lift rear of centre console off the headless set screws -9- and lift off at gearshift lever.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

8 - 2 Nm

9 - Headless set screws



Summary of components of trim panel for handbrake lever 08.96 ➤

1 - Trim panel for handbrake lever

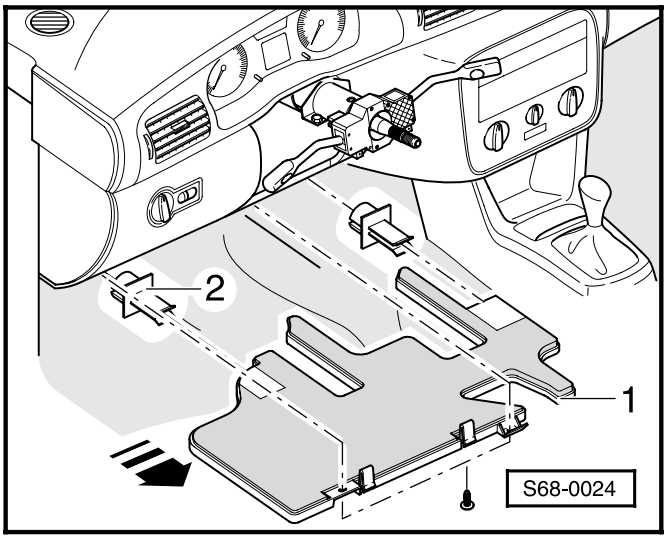
- ♦ Removing:
- Raise handbrake lever.
- Pull cup -2- up and out of clip connection.
- Pull rear ashtray -3- up and out.
- Unscrew cross-recessed screws -4-.
- Pull trim panel for handbrake lever to the rear and then pull up and off the handbrake lever.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

2 - Cup for handbrake lever

- ♦ Clipped on
- ♦ Pull over handbrake lever for removing.

3 - Rear ashtray

4 - 1.5 Nm



Removing and installing footwell trim panel on driver side

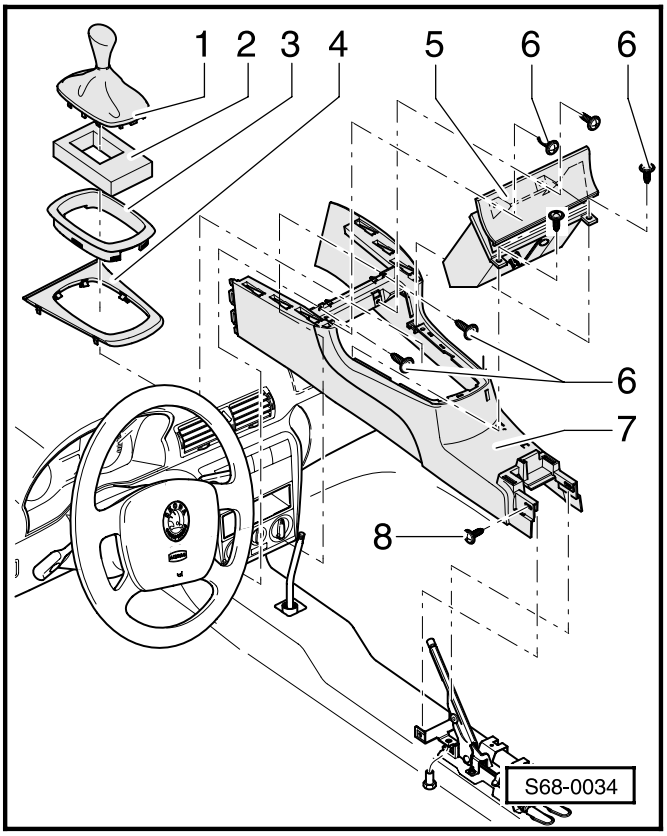
Removing:

◄ - Unscrew bolts.

- Pull footwell trim panel -1- out of holders -2-.

Installing:

Installation is performed in the reverse order.



Summary of components of centre console 08.98 ➤

1 - Gearshift cup

2 - Gearshift damper (SDI only)

3 - Frame

4 - Gearshift cover

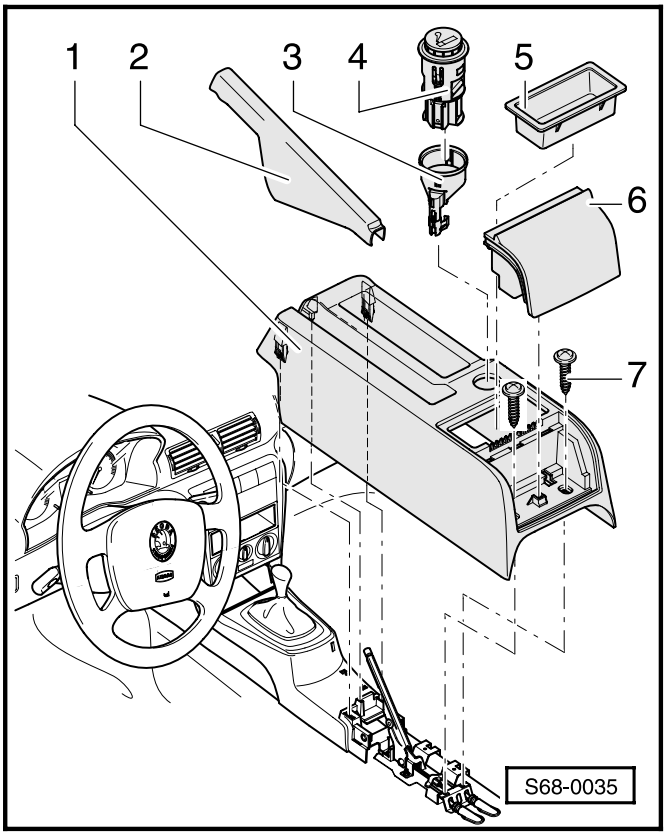
5 - Front ashtray

6 - 1.4 Nm

7 - Centre console

- ♦ Removing:
- Remove trim panel for handbrake lever ⇒ page 68-4.2.
- Pull out ashtray insert.
- Take off gearshift cup -1-.
- Take out gearshift cover -4- together with frame -3-.
- Unscrew screws -6- and take out front ashtray.
- Unscrew screws -8-.
- Using a thin screwdriver carefully detach the trim panel of 6 attachments connecting the centre console with the dash panel centre.
- Pull off trim panel of attachment to the rear and pull over gearshift lever.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

8 - 1.4 Nm



Summary of components of trim panel for handbrake lever 08.98 ➤

1 - Trim panel for handbrake lever

- ♦ Removing:
- Remove arm rest ⇒ page 68-4.3.
- Raise handbrake lever.
- Pull cup -2- up and out of clip connection.
- Pull rear ashtray -3- up and out.
- Unscrew cross-recessed screws -7-.
- Separate glog connection of cigarett lighter -4-.
- Pull trim panel for handbrake lever to the rear and then pull up and off the handbrake lever.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

2 - Cup for handbrake lever

- ♦ Clipped on
- ♦ Pull over handbrake lever for removing.

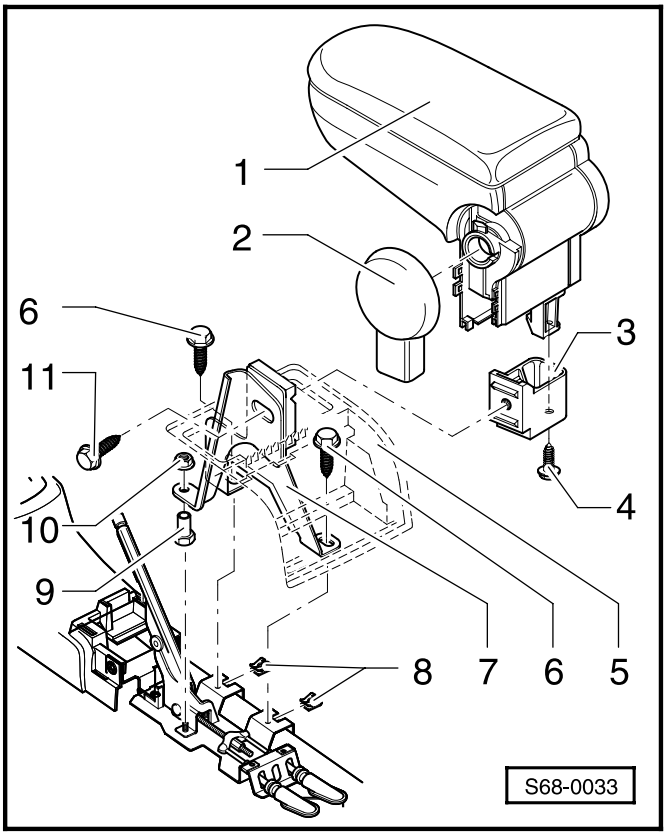
3 - Grommet with lighting

4 - Cigarette lighter

5 - Moulding

6 - Rear ashtray

7 - 1.4 Nm



Summary of components of front arm rest

1 - Arm rest
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove trim panel -2- for holder.
- Unscrew bolt -11-.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

2 - Holder cover
- ♦ Removing:
- Prise off left part of trim panel.
- Take off right part of trim panel.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

3 - Adapter
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove arm rest -1-.
- Unscrew bolt -4- and take off adapter -3-.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

4 - 14 Nm

5 - Trim panel for handbrake lever

6 - 18 Nm

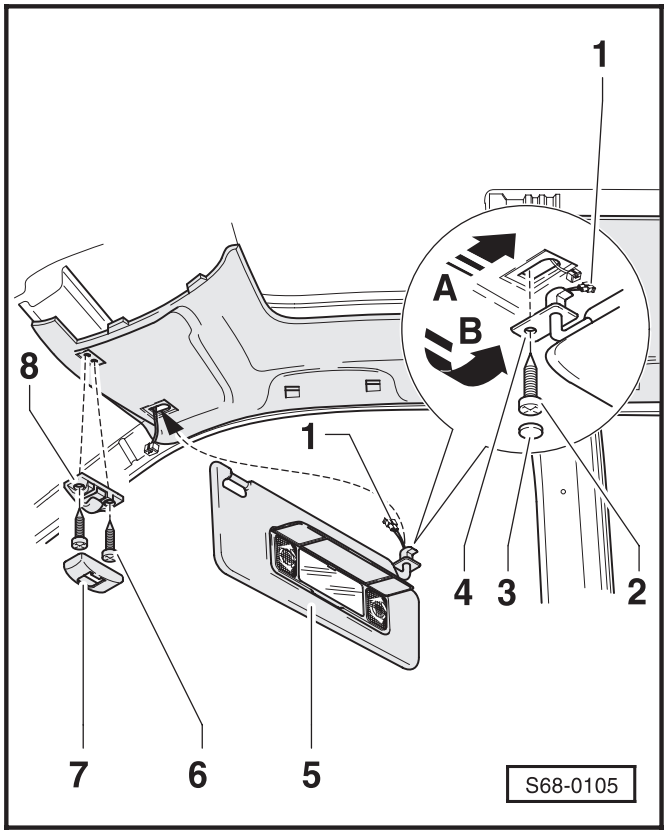
7 - Holder
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove arm rest -1-.
- Remove trim panel for handbrake lever ⇒ page 68-4.2.
- Unscrew bolts -6-.
- Take off holder.
- ♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

8 - Plate nut

9 - Adapter - 20 Nm

10 - 18 Nm

11 - 18 Nm



Removing and installing the sun visor

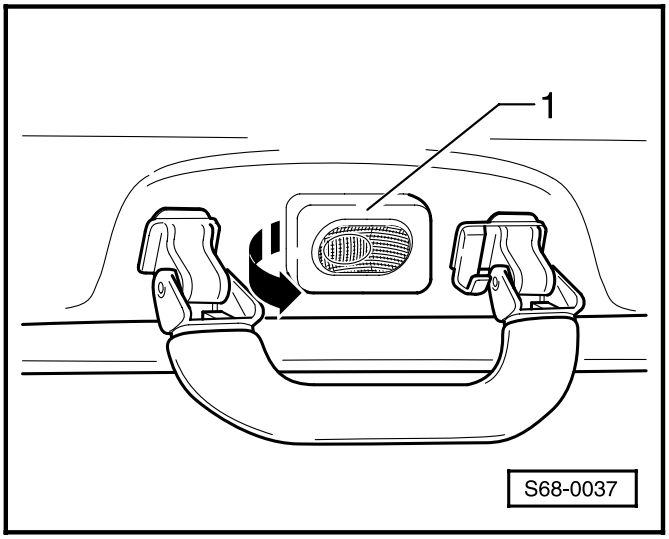
Removing:

◄ - Unhook sun visor -5- from the holder -8-.

- Release cap -3- e.g. with upholstery pin
- Release screw -2-.
- Press holder -4- in direction of -arrow A- and unhook holder -4- in direction of -arrow B-.
- Disconnect plug connections -1- for lighting (if present)
- Remove sun visor -5-.
- Lever off cap -7-.
- Unscrew screws -6- and remove holder -8-.

Installing:

Installation is performed in the reverse order.



Removing and installing the rear reading light

Removing:

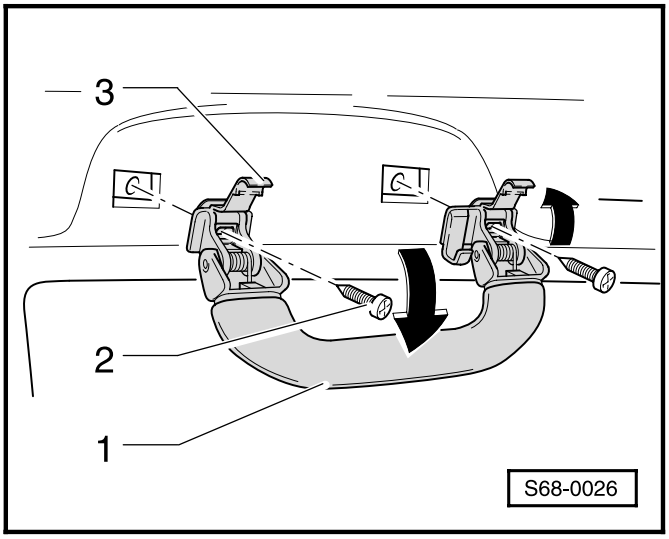
◄ - Remove reading light -1- in direction of -arrow-.

- Disconnect plug connection and remove reading light.

Installing:

Installation is performed in the reverse order.

Recessed handle

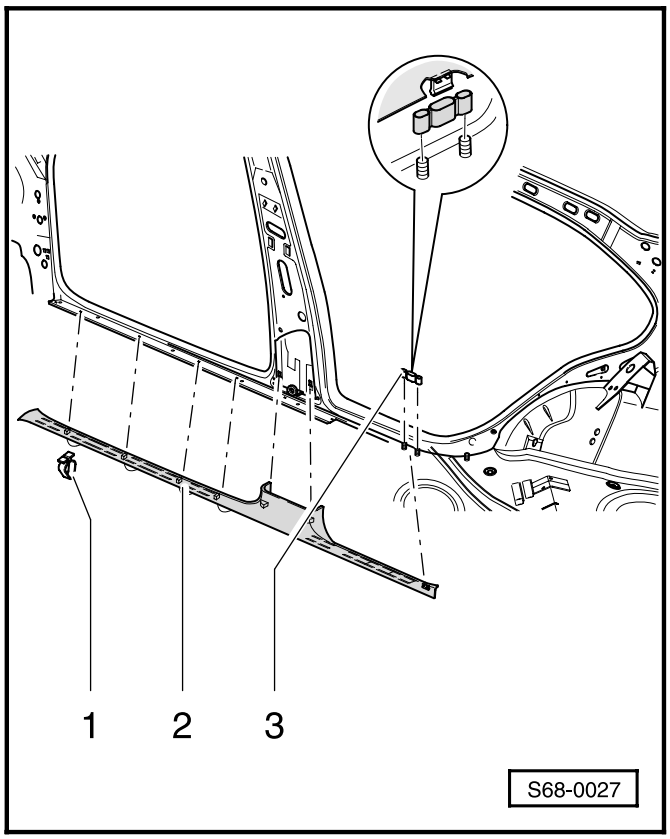


Removing and installing recessed handle (roof)

Removing:

◄ - Fold down recessed handle -1-.

- Lever off cap -3- with screwdriver and open.
- Release screws -2- (1.5 Nm) and remove recessed handle -1-.



Installing:

Installation is performed in the reverse order.

Entrance plates

Removing and installing entrance plate

1 - Retaining clip

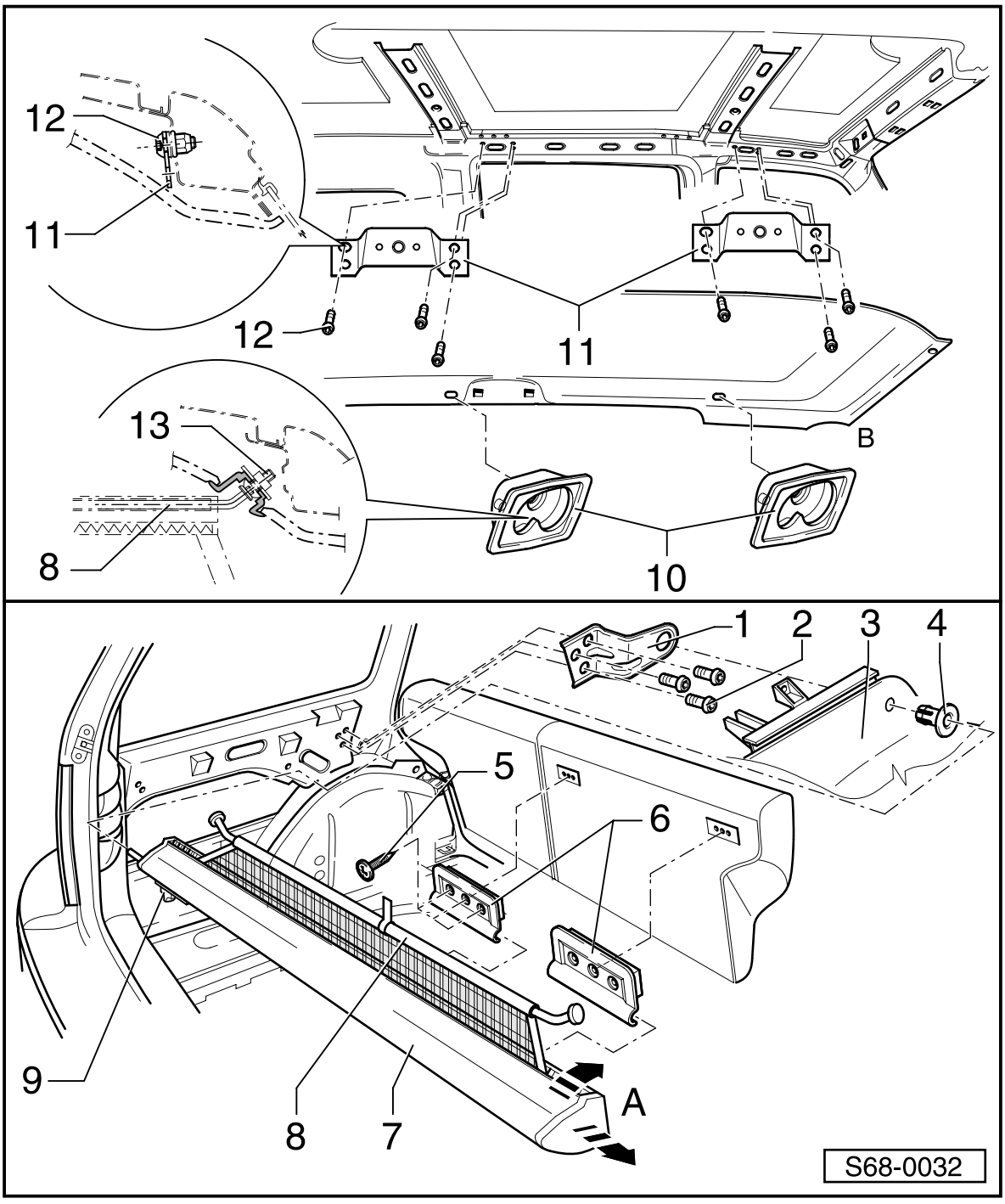
2 - Entrance plate

- ♦ Removing:
- Pull out entrance plate upwards with the clips -1-.
- ♦ Installing:
- Make sure the clamps -1- are correctly positioned on the entrance plate.
- Press the entrance plate and clamps onto the holder -3-.

3 - Holder

Net partition

Summary of components



1 - Bracket
- For mounting trim ring -4-.

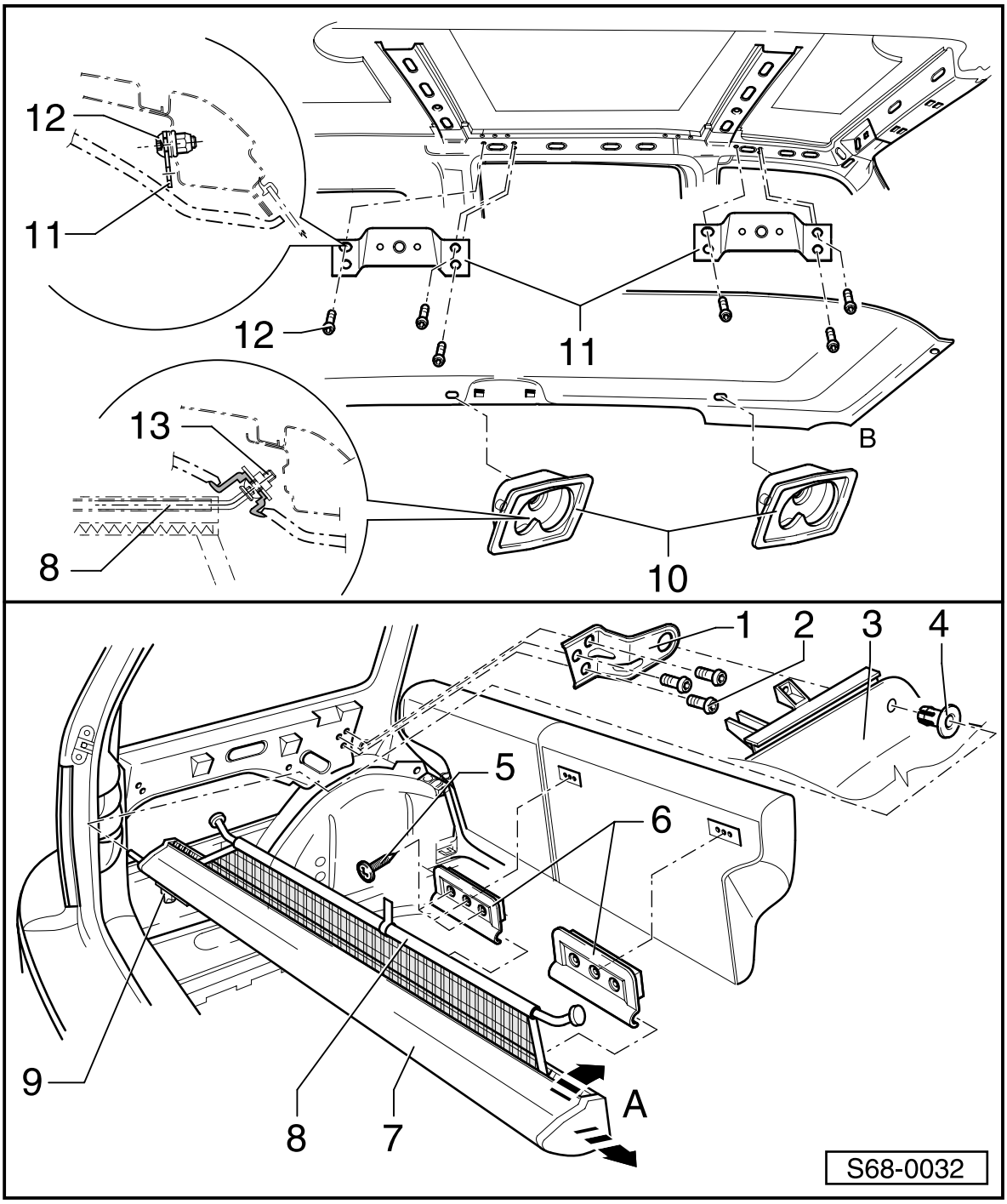
2 - Screw
- 15 Nm

3 - Side trim panel of luggage compartment
- With hole for trim ring -4-.

4 - Trim ring
- For mounting retaining pins of net partition -7-.
- Inserted into bracket -1-.

5 - Screw

6 - Bracket
- For attaching net partition -7- to backrest.



7 - Net partition
- To remove from vehicle, push locking button -item 9- to the right, and lift out -arrow A- (backrest should be folded back for removing partition).

8 - Tube of net partition

9 - Locking button

10 - Insertion eyes
- Attached with bolt -13- to mounting plate -11-.

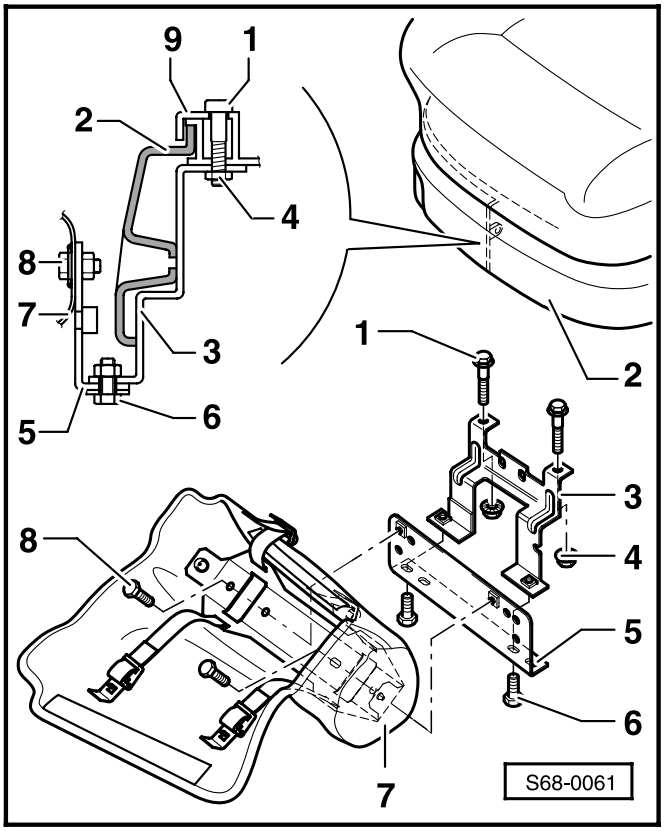
11 - Mounting plate
- Attached with screw -12- to body.

12 - Screw
- 15 Nm

13 - Bolt
- 15 Nm

Mounting bracket for fire extinguisher

Removing and installing mounting bracket for fire extinguisher



♦ *Inner part of mounting bracket of fire extinguisher can only be removed if the seat has been taken out of vehicle.*

1 - Bolt

2 - Seat cover

3 - Inner part of mounting bracket
- ♦ Removing:
- - Remove handle of seat height adjuster ⇒ page 72-2.
- - Remove cover and upholstery ⇒ page 74-1.
- - Unscrew bolt -1- and take off the mounting bracket.
- ♦ Installing:
- - Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

4 - 4.5 Nm

5 - Outer part of mounting bracket
- ♦ Removing:
- - Remove bolts -6- and take outer part of mounting bracket off inner part -3-.
- ♦ Installing:
- - Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

6 - 10 Nm

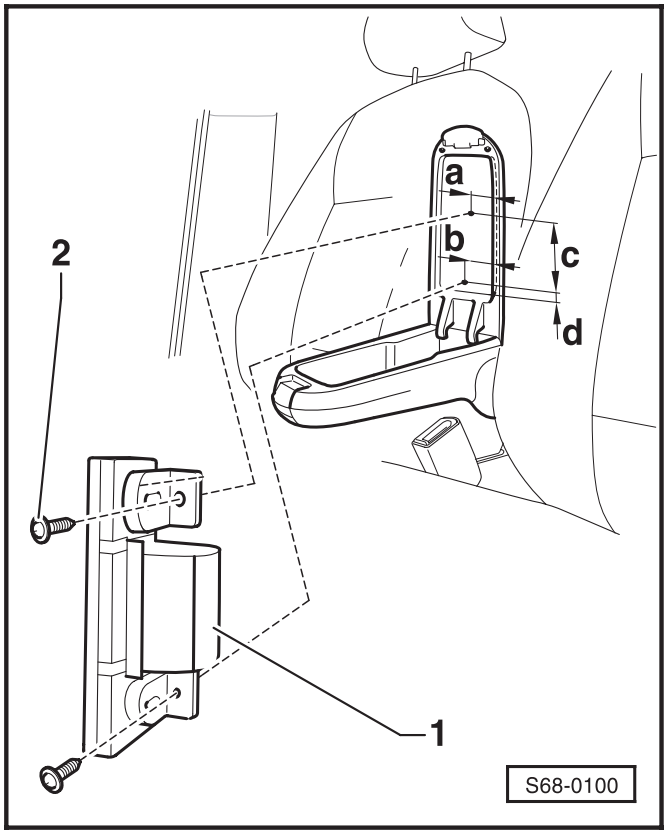
7 - Protective sleeve of fire extinguisher
- ♦ Removing:
- - Unscrew bolts -8- and take protective sleeve off outer part of mounting bracket -5-.
- ♦ Installing:
- - Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

8 - 10 Nm

9 - Seat frame

Hole dimensions for Taxi

Summary of components of the printer



1 - Printer

2 - Screw

a = 36 mm

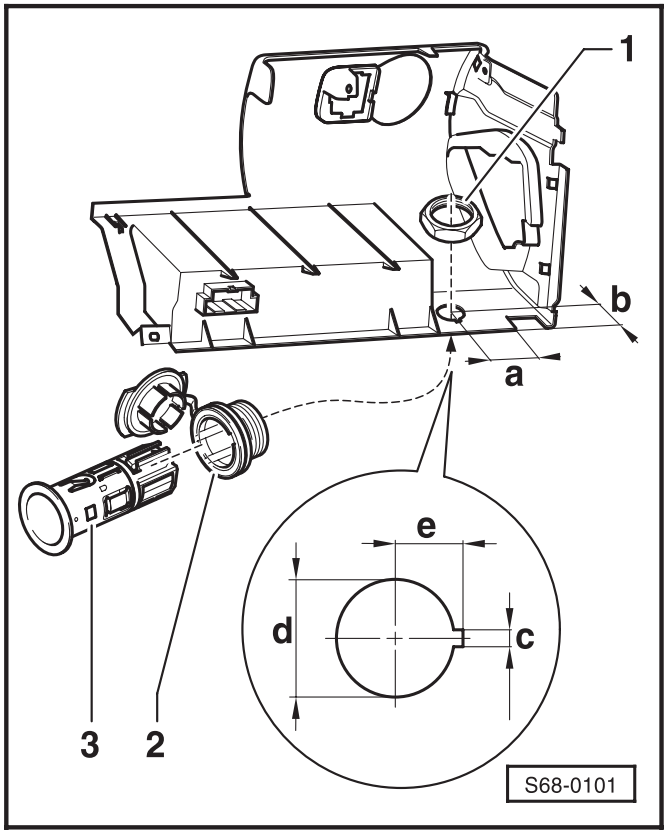
b = 38 mm

c = 112 mm

d = 16 mm

Hole diameter is 3 mm. Drill depth 8 mm.

Summary of components of the power socket



1 - Nut

2 - Socket

3 - Power socket

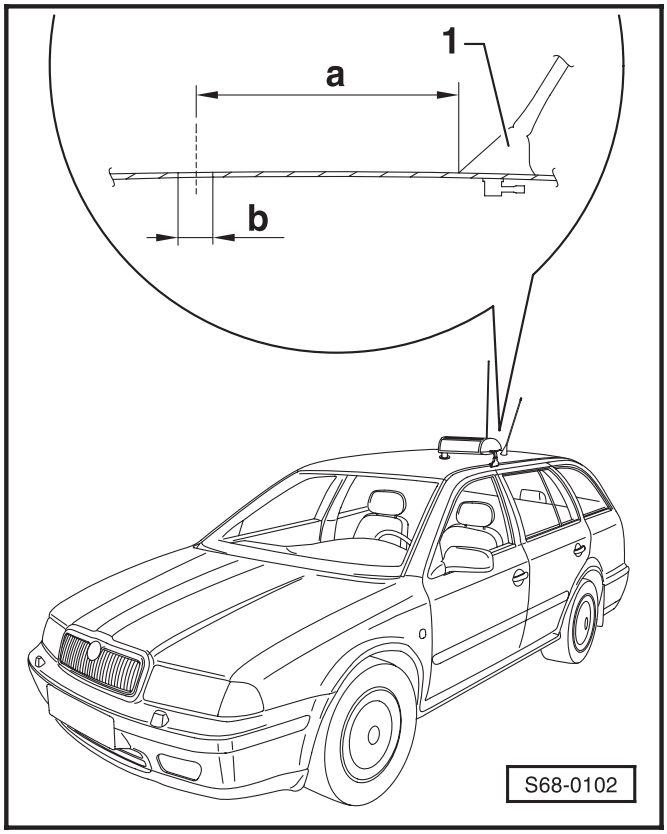
a = 60 mm

b = 30 mm

c = 4 mm

d = 27.8 mm

e = 16 mm



Roof antenna hole for TAXI two-way radio system

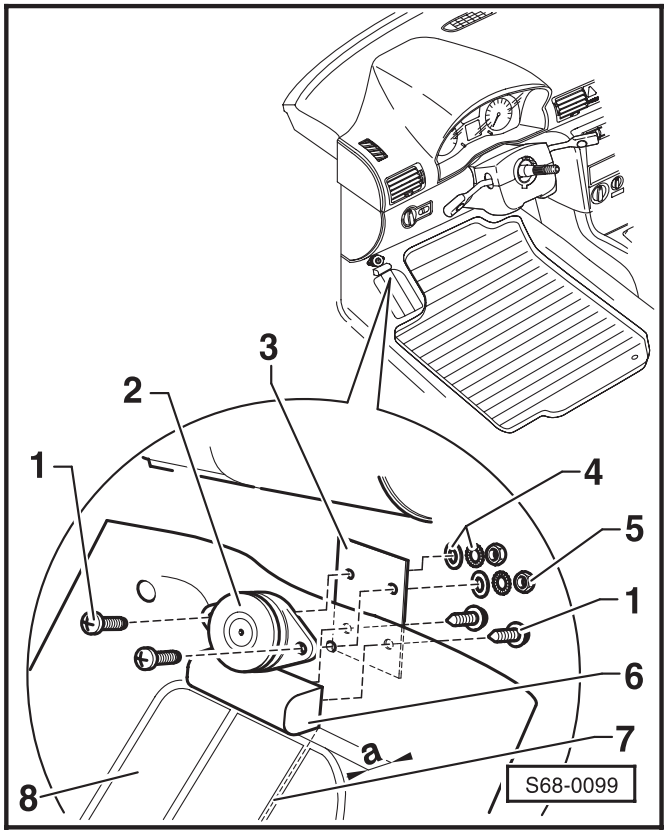
1 - Radio antenna

a = 210 mm

Hole diameter -b- is 13.2 mm.

Note:

Clean holes and carry out protection against corrosion.



Summary of components for alarm system switch

1 - Screw

2 - Alarm system switch

3 - Shim

4 - Washer

5 - Nut

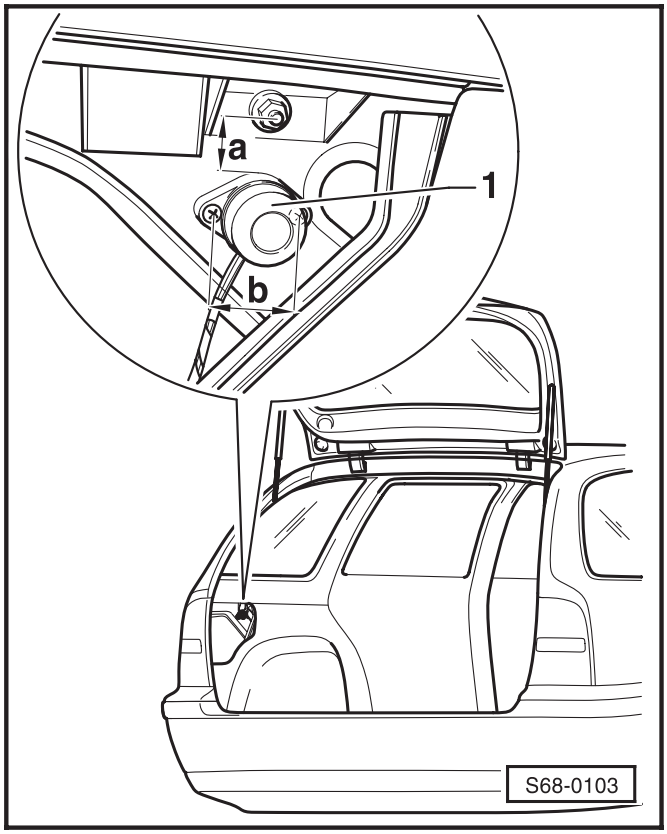
6 - Support

7 - Recess axis

8 - Foot support

a = 5 mm

Support -6- is located in the recess axis -7- for foot support -8-.



Summary of components of the alarm system circuit breaker

1 - alarm system circuit breaker

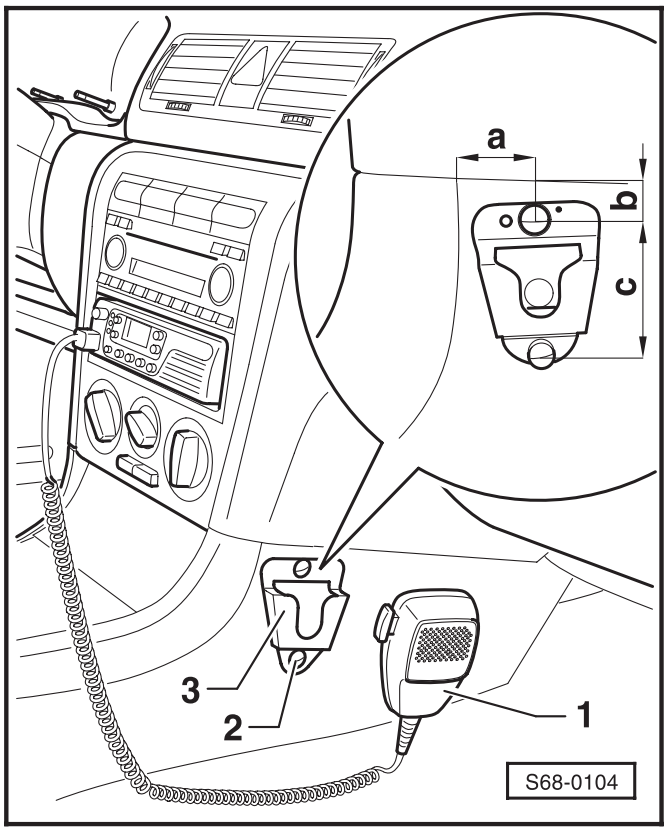
a = 25 mm

b = 40 mm

Hole diameter for screws is 3 mm.

Note:

Clean holes and carry out protection against corrosion.



Summary of components of the microphone holder

1 - Microphone

2 - Screw

3 - Microphone holder

a = 20 mm

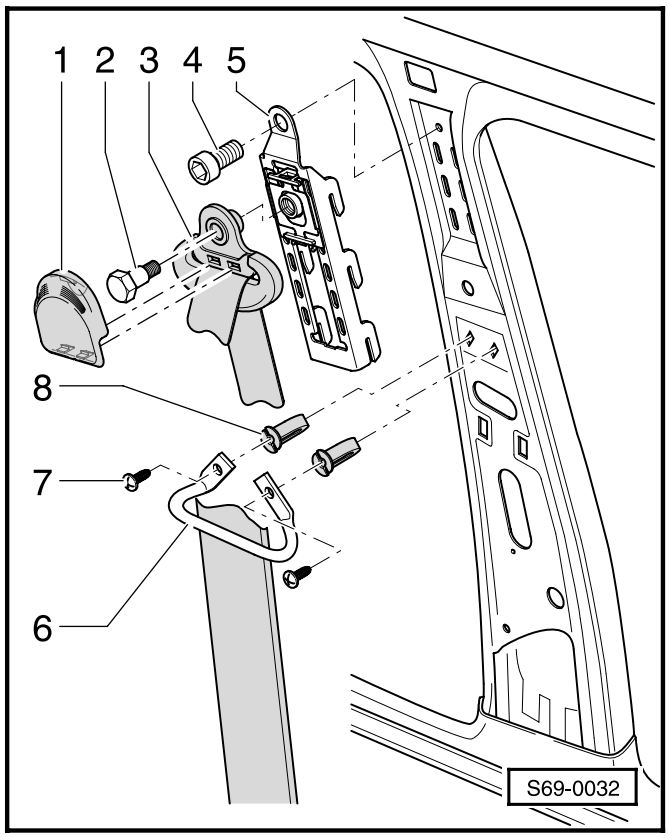
b = 10 mm

c = 40 mm

Hole diameter for screws is 3.5 mm.

Seat belts

Removing and installing front seat belt height adjustment



Notes:

- *Inspecting seat belts ⇒ page 69-4.*
- *Remove the trim panels of B pillar if necessary.*

1 - Cap
- Fitted on

2 - 40 Nm

3 - Belt guide fitting

4 - 22 Nm

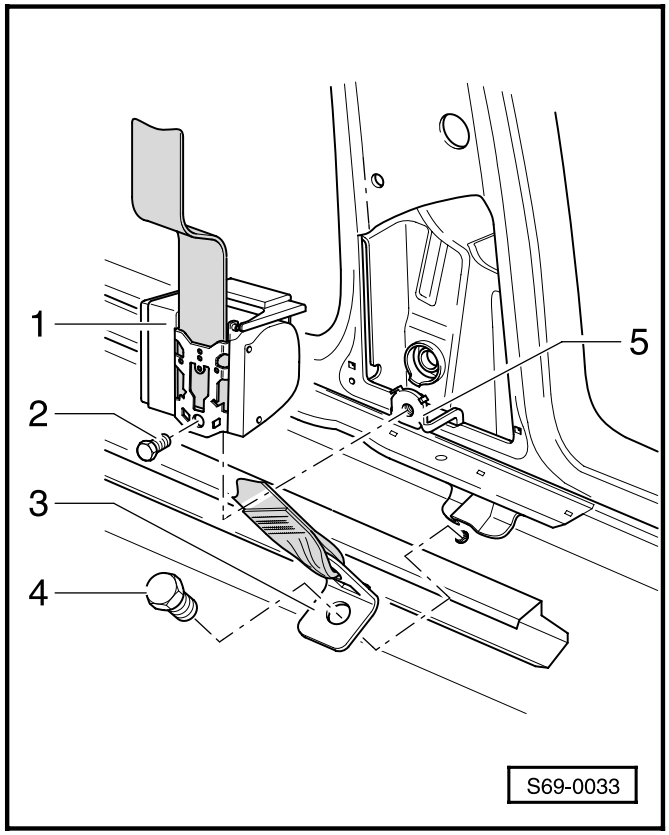
5 - Belt height adjustment

6 - Belt webbing guide

7 - Cross-head screw

8 - Push-fit nut

Removing and installing front inertia reel and front belt fitting



Notes:

- *Inspecting seat belts ⇒ page 69-4.*
- *Remove the trim panels of the pillar if necessary.*
- *Unbolting/bolting on belt fitting at front belt height adjustment ⇒ page 69-1.*

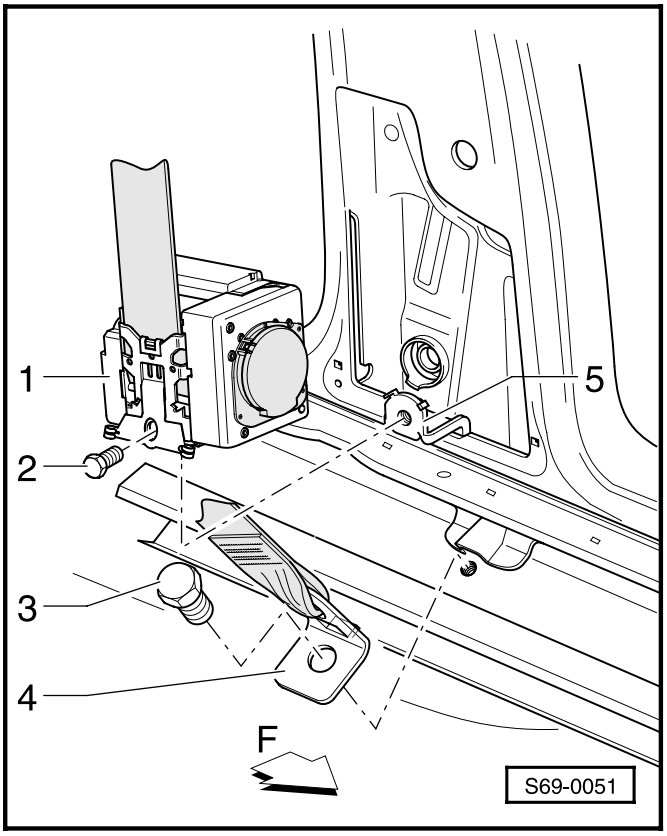
1 - Front belt inertia reel

2 - 40 Nm

3 - Front belt fitting

4 - 40 Nm

5 - Attachment point of inertia reel
- The retaining lugs determine the position of the inertia reel



Assembly overview of front seat belt inertia reel with belt tensioner

Notes:

- *Pay attention to safety precautions ⇒ page 69-2.2.*
- *Inspecting seat belts ⇒ page 69-4.*
- *Removing trim panels of B pillar ⇒ page 70-8 and entry plates ⇒ page 68-6.*
- *Unscrewing and screwing on seat belt fitting at front belt height adjuster ⇒ page 69-1.*
- *Arrow F = direction of travel.*

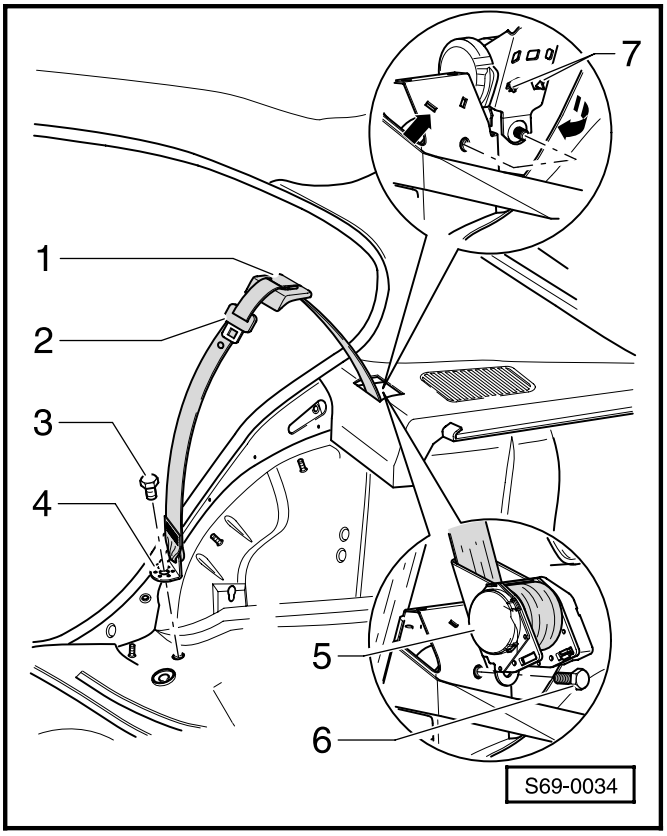
1 - Front inertia reel with belt tensioner

2 - 35 Nm
- The belt tensioner is unblocked (activated) by turning in the mounting bolt

3 - 35 Nm

4 - Bottom belt fitting

5 - Mounting point of inertia reel
- Retaining lugs determine position of inertia reel



Assembly overview of rear seat belt inertia reel

Notes:

- *Inspecting seat belts ⇒ page 69-4.*
- *Remove pillar and side trim panels to the extent necessary.*

1 - Belt guide
- Inserted into support of luggage compartment cover

2 - Seat belt buckle tongue

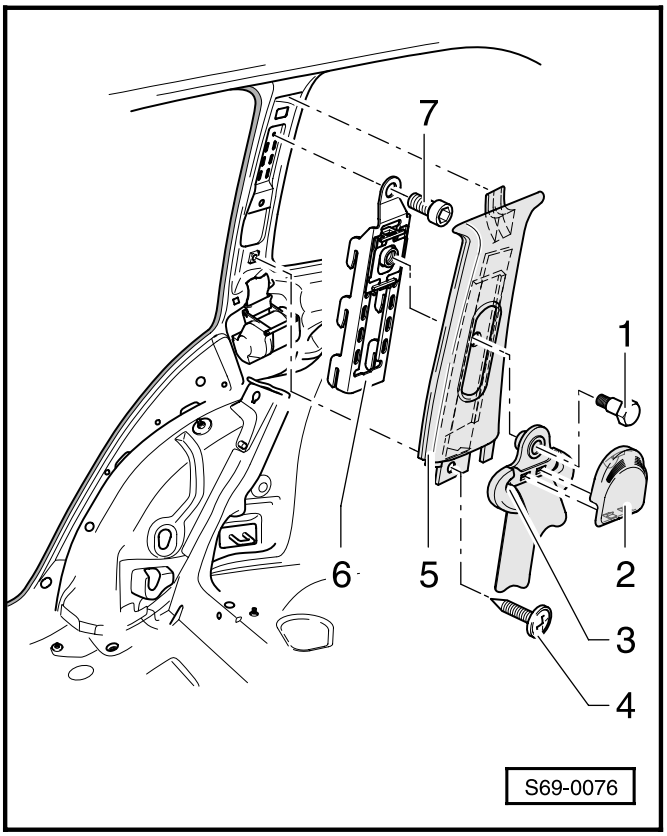
3 - 35 Nm

4 - Bottom belt fitting

5 - Inertia reel
- Bottom belt fitting -4- and belt guide -1- must be drawn through the support for luggage compartment cover
- Retaining lugs -7- determine position of inertia reel

6 - 35 Nm

7 - Retaining lugs



Removing and installing rear seat belt height adjuster (Octavia Estate)

Note:

- *Inspecting seat belts ⇒ page 69-4.*

1 - 40 Nm

2 - Cap
- Fitted on

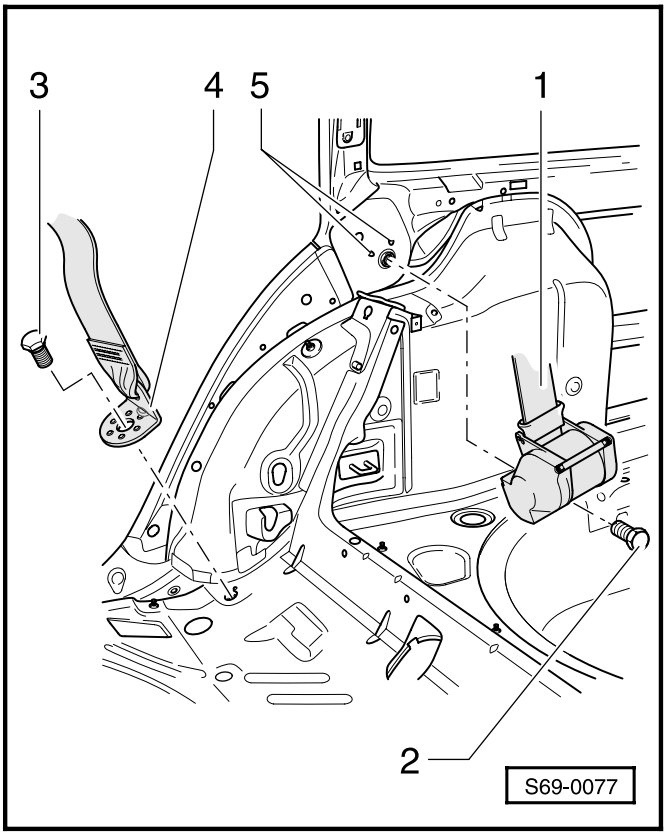
3 - Top belt relay fitting

4 - 1.5 Nm

5 - Top trim of C pillar
- Removing ⇒ page 70-9.1

6 - Seat belt height adjuster

7 - 22 Nm



Removing and installing rear inertia reel (Octavia Estate)

Note:

- *Inspecting seat belts ⇒ page 69-4.*

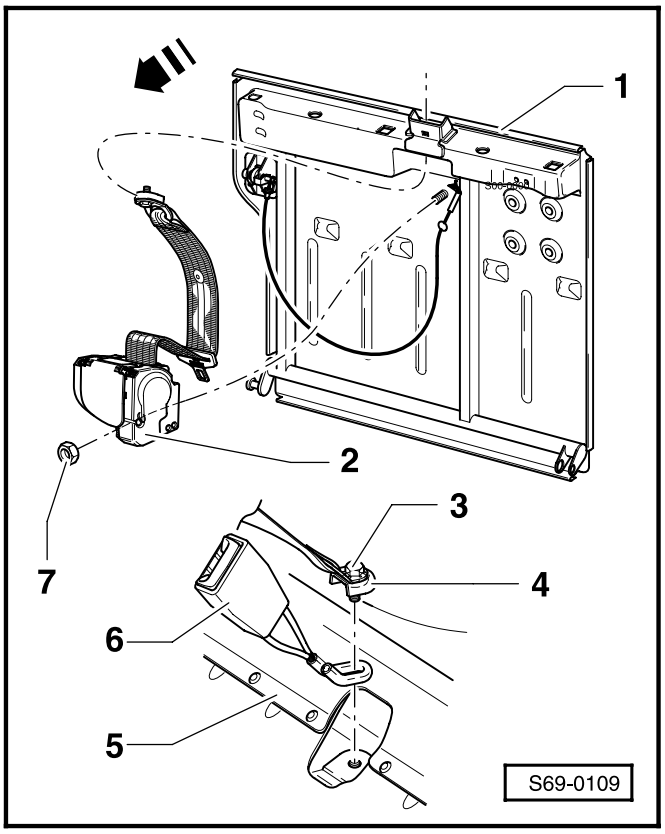
1 - Rear inertia reel
- Position of inertia reel is fixed by holes for retaining lugs of rear inertia reel -5-.
- Removing:
- Remove top trim of C pillar ⇒ page 70-9.1.
- Remove side trim of luggage compartment ⇒ page 70-12.1.
- Unscrew bolt -2- and take off inertia reel.

2 - 40 Nm

3 - 40 Nm

4 - Bottom belt fitting

5 - Holes for retaining lugs



Assembly overview of centre three-point seat belt at rear

Notes:

- *Arrow = direction of travel.*
- *Inspecting seat belts ⇒ page 69-4.*
- *Inertia reel is equipped with Interlock system - inertia reel is blocked if backrest frame is folded forward. Inertia reel is not released until the backrest frame has been pushed fully into the lock.*
- *Retaining lugs determine position of inertia reel.*
- *When backrest folded forward, seat belt is locked to prevent it being pulled out.*

1 - Rear panel

2 - Inertia reel of middle belt
- Removing:
- Remove bottom belt fixture -4-.
- Remove cover and upholstery ⇒ page 74-9.
- Turn down nut -7-.
- Take belt off the rear panel -1-.
- Installing:
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

3 - 35 Nm

4 - Bottom belt fitting

5 - Vehicle floor

6 - Seat belt buckle
- Removing:
- Fold rear panel down -1-.
- Remove bolt -3-.
- Installing:
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

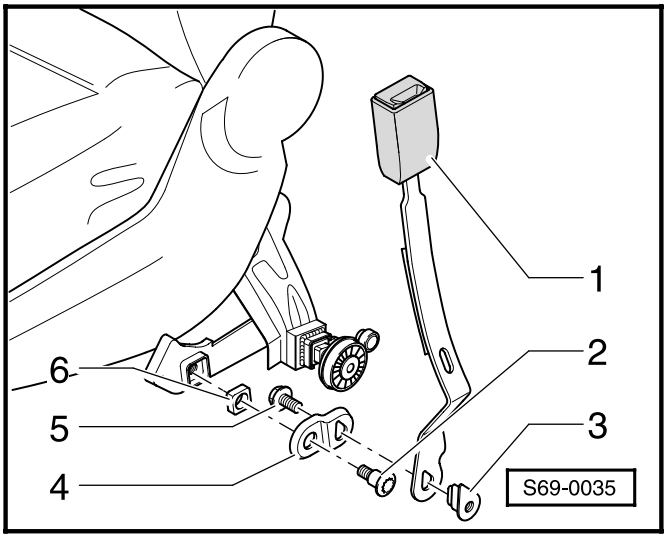
7 - 35 Nm

Safety precautions relating to work on belt tensioner units

- Any inspection and test, removal and installation and repair operations must only be carried out by properly qualified persons.
- The pyrotechnical propellant has a life of 15 years. The belt tensioner together with the seat belt must be replaced with a new genuine part after this period has elapsed.

- Belt tensioner units must neither be opened nor repaired. Always replace with new genuine parts.
- Belt tensioner units which have dropped onto the ground, must not be installed in a vehicle.
- Belt tensioner units which have suffered mechanical damage (dents, cracks) must always be replaced by new genuine parts.
- Belt tensioners must not be disposed of as common scrap, but must be handed over to a specialist company or to the importer for proper disposal in conformity with the instructions of PST and environmental protection regulations. This also applies to ignited belt tensioners (it is not possible to determine with certainty whether all 3 pyrotechnical charges of the belt tensioner have ignited).
- Use the specified shipping packaging for storing and shipping.
- The belt tensioner unit should be installed immediately after it is removed from the shipping packaging.
- If the installation work is interrupted, the belt tensioner unit should be placed again in the shipping packaging.
- It is not permitted to leave a belt tensioner unit unattended.
- The belt tensioner unit must not be treated with grease, cleaning products or similar materials, and must also not be exposed to temperatures of more than 100 °C, not even for short periods.
- Belt tensioner units must not be subjected to any shocks.
- Remove belt tensioners before carrying out any repair operations (cutting, straightening and panel beating operations etc.).
- Following an accident in which the belt tensioner was ignited (seat belts no longer roll up), always replace both belt tensioners together with the seat belts.
- The belt inertia reel is blocked so long as the seat belts are in the base position (not used).
- Before disposing of a vehicle, remove the belt tensioners and return them for disposal in accordance with specifications.
- Do not use any impact screwdrivers for removing and installing belt tensioners.

Removing and installing front seat belt lock



- Remove front seat ⇒ page 72-1.

◄ 1 - Front seat belt lock

2 - 22 Nm

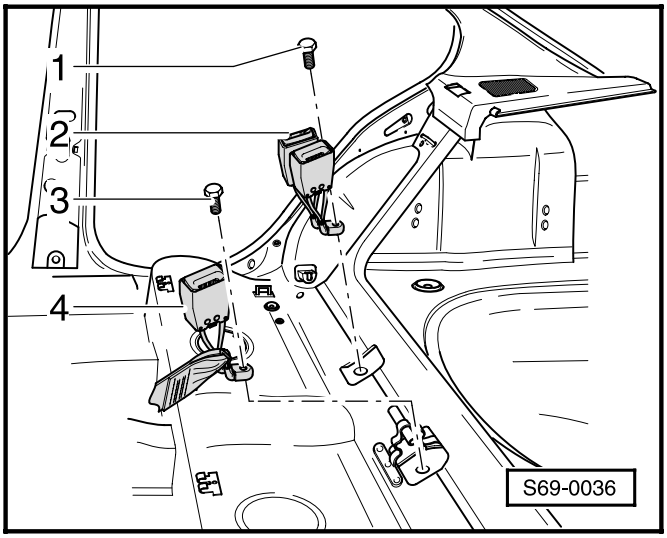
3 - Attachment piece

4 - Intermediate piece

5 - 40 Nm

6 - Spacer

Removing and installing rear seat belt lock



- Fold rear seat forward.

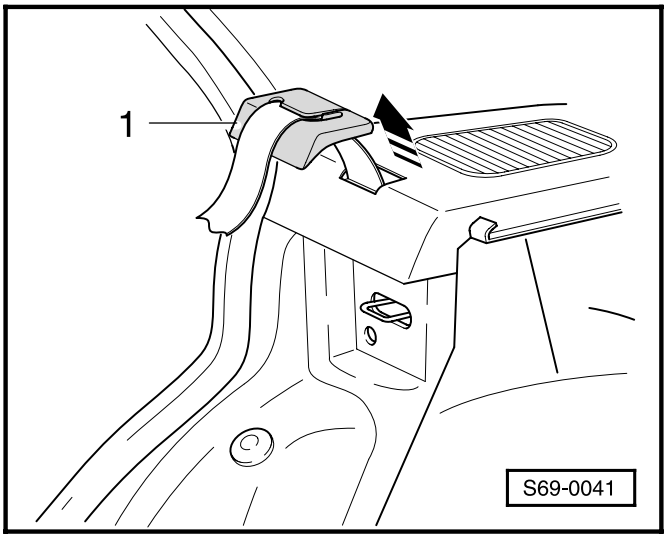
◄ 1 - 40 Nm

2 - Rear seat belt lock

3 - 40 Nm

4 - Lap belt fitting

Removing and installing seat belt guide



- Remove rear seat belt fitting ⇒ page 69-2, item 4.

◄ - Release catch of belt guide -1- with a screwdriver.

Notes:

- *Catch engages in inertia reel.*
- *Catch is accessible from luggage compartment.*

- Pull seat belt guide -1- off the inertia reel -arrow-.

Inspecting seat belts

Warning!

Following an accident the seat belt system must systematically be examined! If it is found to be damaged on the basis of the items checked, the customer must be informed of the necessity of having the seat belts replaced with new genuine parts.

Check items:

- Check seat belt
- Check retractor (locking action)
- Visual inspection of buckle
- Functional check of buckle
- Check sash guides and buckle latches
- Check attachment parts and attachment points
- Check lap belt retractor

Note:

If the customer refuses to have a damaged seat belt replaced, this must be recorded as such.

Checking seat belt

- Pull seat belt completely out of retractor or lap belt adjustment latch.
- Check seat belt for:
- Soiling, wash with soap water if necessary.
- Cracked fabric loops on the belt side.
- Cuts, cracks or scuff marks.
- Burn stains caused, among others, by cigarettes.
- If a crashed car exhibits one of the above-mentioned damages, the seat belt together with the buckle must be replaced with a new genuine part.

Checking retractor (locking action)

The belt retractor has two locking functions.

♦ The first locking function is triggered by quickly pulling the belt out of the retractor (belt withdrawal acceleration).

Check

- Pull the belt out of the retractor by giving it a forceful jerk.

● No locking action: replace seat belt together with buckle with a new genuine part.

● In case of difficulties in withdrawal or retraction of the belt: first check whether the position of the retractor has not been altered.

♦ The second locking function is triggered by a change in the vehicle's movement (vehicle-dependent locking function).

Check

- Buckle up.

- Increase speed of vehicle to 20 km/h and then perform a hard stop.

● If the blocking device does not lock the belt during braking, the seat belt together with buckle must be replaced with a new genuine part.

Warning!

For safety reasons the drive test must be performed on a traffic-free track so as not to expose other road users to any danger.

Visual inspection of buckle

- Inspect buckle for cracking and flaking.

● If damaged, replace seat belt together with buckle with a new genuine part.

Functional check of buckle

Check buckle:

- Insert latch into buckle until it snaps into place. Exert a powerful pull on the seat belt to check whether the locking mechanism is latched.

- Perform this check at least five times. If at any time the latch is not locked in the buckle, replace the seat belt together with the buckle with a new genuine part.

Check unlocking:

- Release seat belt by pressing the button on the buckle with a finger.

  With the seat belt in released condition the latch should automatically jump out of the buckle.

- Perform this check at least five times. If at any time the latch does not jump out, replace the seat belt together with the buckle with a new genuine part.

Warning!

Never use lubricants to eliminate noisy or stiff operation of the buttons on the buckles.

Check sash guides and buckle latches

Plastic-coated sash guides of a belt system that has been subjected to stress (belt usage during accident) exhibit parallel, fine score marks. (In contrast, wear that is caused by heavy use is indicated by a non-striped, smooth abrasion.)

- Inspect plastic for deformation, flaking and cracking.

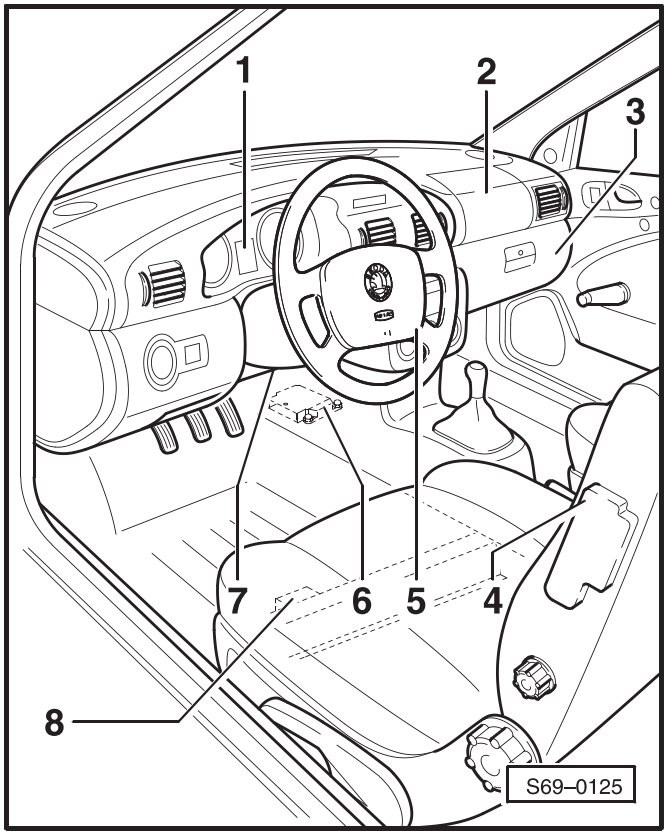
- In case of scoring and/or damage replace seat belt together with buckle with a new genuine part.

Check attachment parts and attachment points

- ♦ Buckle deformed (stretched).
- ♦ Height adjuster does not operate.
- ♦ Attachment points (seat, pillar, floor) distorted or thread damaged.
- ● If parts are found to be damaged, replace seat belt together with buckle with a new genuine part.
- ● Replace attachment points.

Note:

In case of damage that has not been caused by an accident, e.g. wear, only the damaged part has to be replaced.



The Airbag System

Note:

For self-diagnosis of the airbag system
⇒ Page 01-1.

Installed location - an overview

1 - Warning lamp for the airbag system (K75)

2 - The airbag unit on the front passenger side
- Removing ⇒ Page 69-13
- Locking the function and activating it again (adjustment) ⇒ Page 01-15.10

3 - Switch for the airbag unit on the front passenger side
- The switch for the airbag unit on the front passenger side is located in the glove compartment
- Removal ⇒ Page 69-13.2

4 - The side airbag unit on the front passenger side
- The side airbag unit on the front passenger side is located in the front passenger seat
- Removal ⇒ Page 69-14
- Locking the function and activating it again (adjustment) ⇒ Page 01-15.10

5 - The airbag unit on the driver's side
- Removal ⇒ Page 69-11

6 - The control unit for the airbag system (J234)
- On the tunnel in the front area of the middle console
- Removal ⇒ Page 69-16

7 - The diagnostic plug connector
- In the storage compartment under the steering wheel

8 - The crash sensor for the side airbag
- The crash sensors for the side airbags on the driver's and the front passenger's side are located in the front area of the seat cross-bar
- Removal ⇒ Page 69-13.1

Safety measures to be taken when repairing the airbag system

- Testing, assembly and repair work must only be undertaken by specially trained personnel for the removal and installation of airbags.
- One must only undertake the work described in this Repair Manual on an airbag-system. The dismantling of an airbag unit is strictly forbidden.

Be careful!

The pyrotechnical propellant of the airbag units contains poison and is in danger of exploding if handled incorrectly!

- Before carrying out any work on the airbag system disconnect the earth strap of the battery. After disconnecting the battery it is essential to wait one minute. The ignition must be switched on when connecting the airbag system to a power source and no person should be present inside the vehicle.
- The mechanic should electrically discharge himself before picking up (touching) the airbag unit. This is done by touching an earthed metal part, such as e.g. a water pipe, heating pipe or a metal bracket.
- The airbag units should be installed immediately after being removed from the transportation packaging.
- If work is interrupted, place the airbag unit back in the transportation packaging.
- It is not permitted to leave the airbag unit unattended.
- When removed, airbag units should be stored so that the active side is facing upwards.
- When removed, side airbag units should be stored so that the information carrier is facing upwards.
- Airbag units that have been dropped on a hard surface or which are otherwise damaged, must not be fitted.
- Defective airbag units of the airbag system which have not been ignited must be returned for disposal to a specialist company or to the importer in accordance with PST instructions and environmental protection regulations. The specified transportation packaging should be used for this purpose
- The pyrotechnic propellant and the control unit for the airbag system and the crash sensor have a life of 15 years. Airbag units, control units and crash sensors must be replaced with new original parts once this period has elapsed.
- The airbag units must not be treated with grease, cleaning agents or similar products and must not be exposed to temperatures above 100 °C, not even for short periods.
- Dispose of the airbag units before scrapping the vehicle ⇒ 69-16.
- The inspections of the airbag system must only be performed with the test and measurement equipment provided as otherwise there is a risk of the airbag unit being activated.
- The sticker „Airbag“ affixed to the pillar B and the sticker with the safety instructions on the windscreen is replaced with a new original part, if a component is replaced or the sticker is damaged.

The following basic rules apply additionally to side airbag units:

- It is not permitted to use commercially available protective seat covers. Protective seat covers have a negative effect on the proper operation of the side airbag.
- When replacing the backrest cover, it is necessary to install new original clips in place of the existing cover clips.
- New cover clips must be attached at the same installation points as the old clips.
- If there is any damage to the backrest cover caused by splits, burn holes etc., the cover should always be replaced with a new genuine part for safety reasons.
- If the side airbag has deployed, always replace the backrest upholstery with a new genuine part.

Replacing airbag units after an accident

Registering parts of the airbag system

If a part of the airbag system has been replaced with new genuine parts, remove the self-adhesive labels with the number and affix them to the registration card 000 010 100 A and return this for registration to the Service Department (Czech Republic) or to the Importer (other countries).
The replacement of the following parts must be documented in the Service Booklet:

- Central control unit for airbag system
- Driver-side airbag unit
- Front passenger-side airbag unit
- Driver-side side airbag unit
- Driver-side backrest cover
- Front passenger-side side airbag unit
- Front passenger-side backrest cover
- Driver-side side airbag crash sensor
- Front passenger-side side airbag crash sensor

Accident with deployment of airbag

- The following parts should always be replaced with new original parts:
  -Control unit[1)]
  -Driver airbag unit[2)]
  -Passenger airbag unit[2)]
  -Driver side airbag unit[2)]
  -Passenger side airbag unit[2)]
  -Restoring ring with a slip ring[3)]
  -Driver seat belt tensioner with seat belt[2)]
  -Passenger seat belt tensioner with seat belt[2)]
  -Side airbag crash sensor[4)]

  1) In the event of deployment of the side airbags, the control unit can be re-used - up to three times (only valid for vehicles 09.00 ➤) ⇒ page 01-7.

  2) In the event of ignition

  3) In the event of ignition of driver's airbag unit

  4) In the event of ignition of side airbag unit

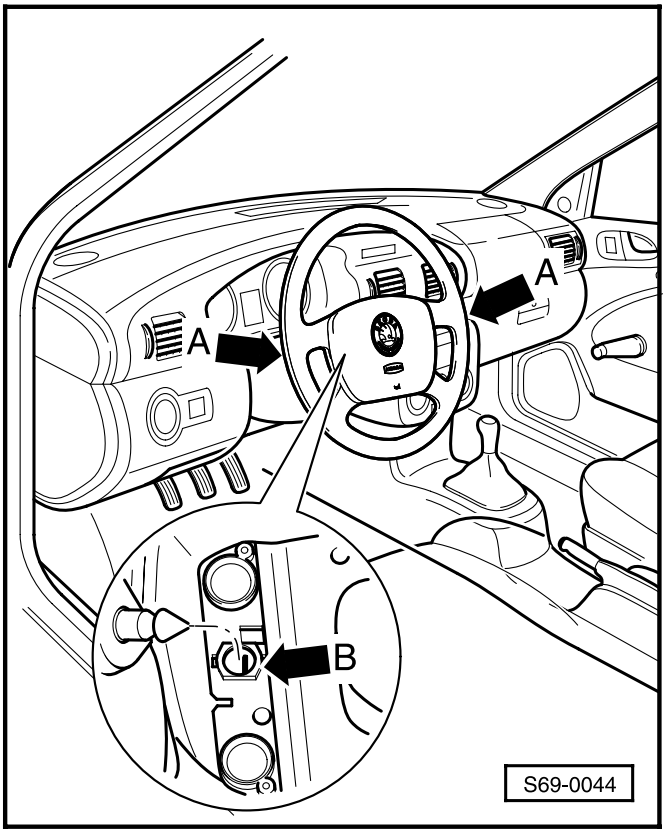
- If necessary (visual inspection) replace all damaged parts with the new original parts

- If the airbag control unit and other damaged parts are replaced it is necessary to code the control unit again ⇒ Self-diagnosis of airbag system page 01-1.

Accident without deployment of airbag

- If the airbag warning light (K75) does not signal any fault, no parts of the airbag system are to be replaced the seat belts must be checked separately.

- If necessary (visual inspection) replace all damaged parts with the new original parts.



Removing and installing the airbag unit on the driver's side

Removing

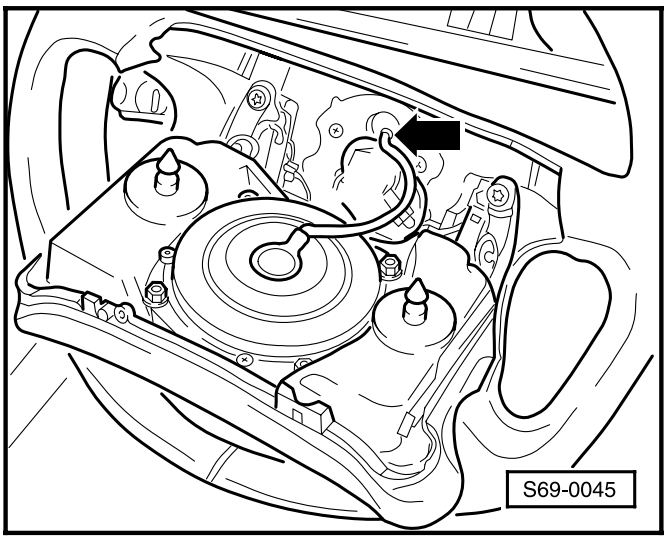
- Unclamp the battery earth band.

◄- Turn the steering wheel until one of the bore holes -arrow A- is pointing downwards.

- Unhook the spring -arrow B- from the rear side of the steering wheel (through the bore hole) using a small screwdriver.

- Repeat the operation for the second spring.

- Pull of the airbag unit and carefully fold back.



◄- Pull off out the connecting plug -arrow- of the airbag unit.

- Lay the airbag to one side in such a way that the impact cushion is pointing upwards.

Installing

- Mount the airbag unit.

- Switch on the ignition.

- Attach the battery earth band.

Take care!

There must be no-one sitting in the vehicle when the battery is attached.

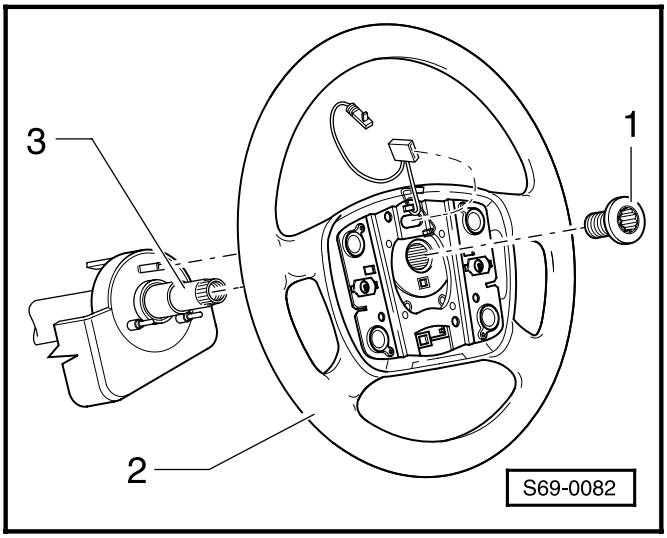
Note:

Additional work is to be undertaken when disconnecting and re-connecting the battery earth ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.Gr. 27.

Removing and installing steering wheel

Removing

- Remove driver-side airbag unit ⇒ page 69-11 (only on models fitted with airbag).



- Remove steering wheel boss (only on models not fitted with airbag).

♦ The steering wheel boss should be removed in the same way as the driver-side airbag unit ⇒ page 69-11.

- Turn wheels into straightahead position.

- Unplug connector from restoring ring.

◄ - Remove screw -1- and mark the position of the steering wheel -2- and of the steering column -3- to each other.

- Take off steering wheel.

Warning!

- ***Do not twist restoring ring (does not apply to steering wheel fitted with airbag).***
- ***Proceed carefully when pulling off the steering wheel; the plug connection below the steering wheel must not be caught. Otherwise, the restoring ring and the winding of the slip ring will be damaged.***
  If the restoring ring (and slip ring) are damaged, it is then necessary to replace them with a new part.

Installing

- Turn the wheels into straightahead position.

- Fit on steering wheel so that it is aligned with the markings and tighten screw -1- to a torque of 50 Nm.

♦ Secure the screw with locking fluid.

♦ The screw can be used up to 5 times.

- Make a chisel mark on the front of the screw each time it is re-inserted.

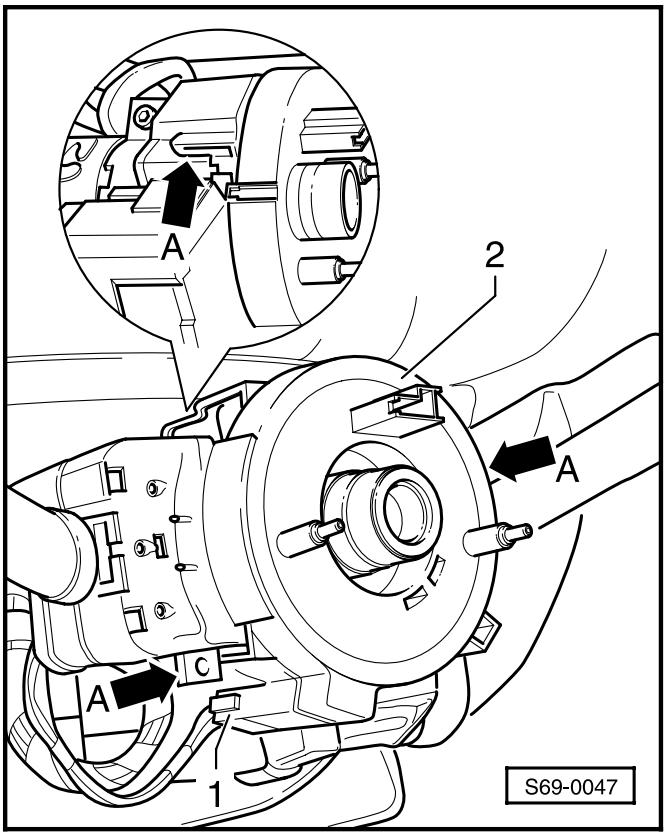
- Insert steering wheel boss, or install airbag unit ⇒ page 69-11.

Removing and installing restoring ring with slip ring

- Remove steering wheel ⇒ page 69-12.

Notes:

- *Applies only to steering wheel with airbag unit.*
- *The restoring ring and slip ring should be removed and installed when the steering wheel is in the centre position and the wheels in the straight-ahead position.*
- *Do not turn the restoring ring (risk of restoring ring fracturing when driving).*
- *Restoring ring and slip ring are secured by a clip in the centre position when supplied as a replacement part. Remove this clip just before installing the parts.*
- *If it is intended to re-install the restoring ring and slip ring, fix in centre position with adhesive tape.*



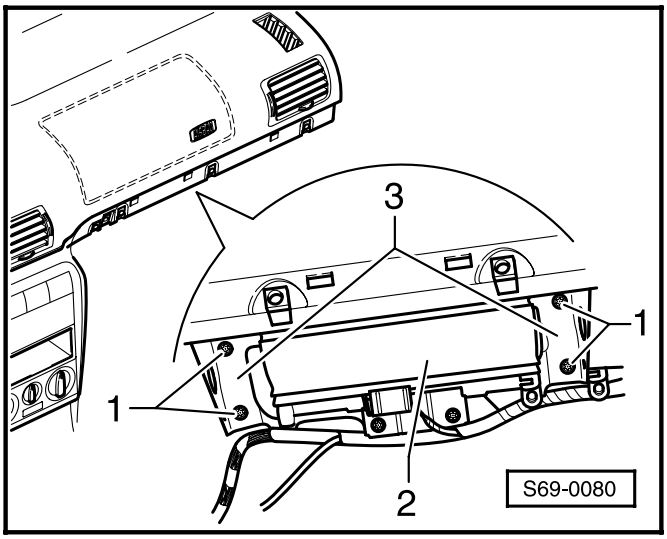
◄ - Separate plug connection -1-.

- Release locking pawls -arrows A-.
- Take restoring ring -2- down and out.

Warning!

Do not turn restoring ring!

Removing and installing front passenger airbag unit



Removing

- Disconnect earth strap of battery.
- Remove glove compartment ⇒ page 70-2.

◄ - Unscrew screws -1-.

- Pull out airbag unit -2- with holders -3- downwards.
- Disconnect plug connection for airbag unit.
- Remove holder -3- from the airbag unit -2-.

Installing

- Install holder on the airbag unit.
  - ♦ Dimension = 10 Nm
- Install airbag unit with holder in the vehicle and connect plug connection.
  - ♦ Dimension = 10 Nm

Note:

Secure fixing screws with Loctite 275.

- Install glove compartment.
- Switch on ignition.
- Connect earth strap of battery.

Warning!

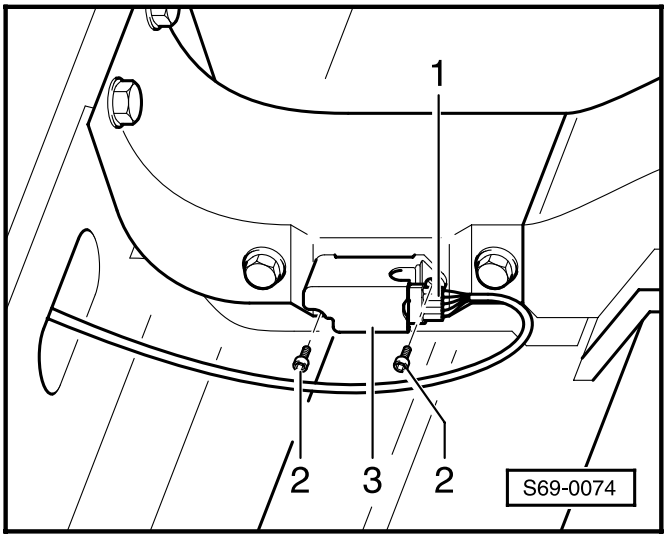
- ***Nobody should be in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.***
- ***The opening of the airbag unit cover in the dash panel is not permissible, otherwise there is the risk of permanent damage to the dash panel and impairment of the function of the airbag unit.***

Note:

When connecting and disconnecting earth strap of battery additional work must be carried out ⇒ Electrical system; Rep.-Gr. 27.

Removing and installing side airbag crash sensor

Removing



- Disconnect earth strap of battery.
- Remove front seat ⇒ page 72-1.
- Remove entrance plate ⇒ page 68-6.
- Roll up carpet in the front area of the B-cross member.

◄ - Disconnect plug connection -1-

- Unscrew screws -2- of crash sensors -3-.
  Tightening torque = 9 Nm

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

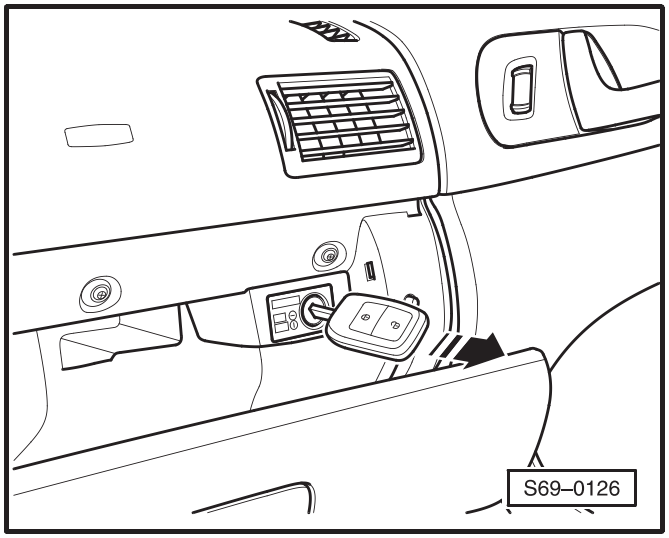
♦ Switch on the ignition before connecting battery.

Warning!

Nobody should be in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

Note:

When connecting and disconnecting earth strap of battery additional work must be carried out ⇒ Electrical system; Rep.-Gr. 27.



Removing and installing switch for front passenger airbag

Removing

- Disconnect earth strap of battery.

◄- Turn the switch with the ignition key into the middle position and pull out the front passenger airbag switch -arrow- carefully.

- Disconnect plug connection for front passenger airbag switch

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

♦ Switch on the ignition before connecting battery.

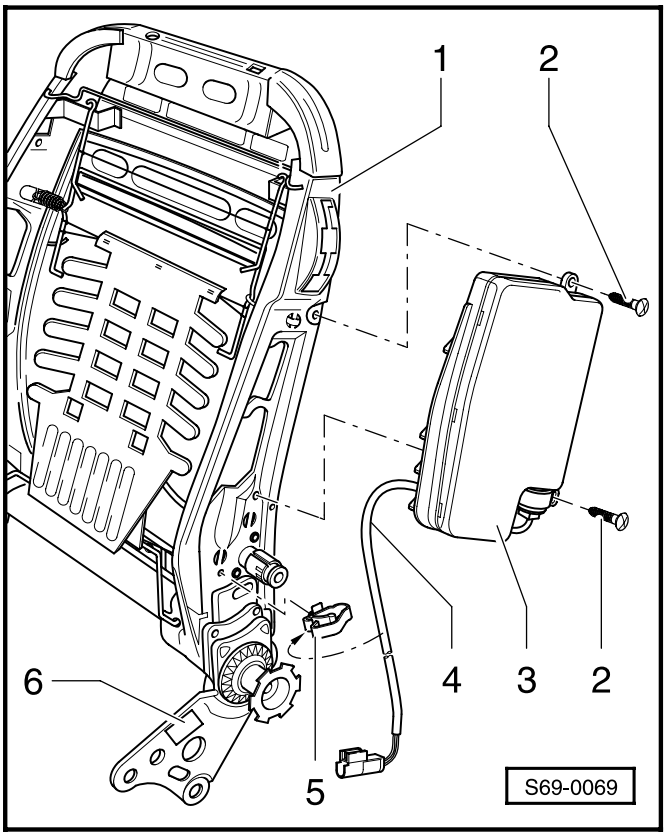
Warning!

Nobody should be in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

Note:

♦ *When connecting and disconnecting earth strap of battery additional work must be carried out ⇒ Electrical system; Rep.-Gr. 27.*

Removing and installing side airbag units driver-side and passenger-side



Removing:

1 - Frame of backrest

2 - 7 Nm

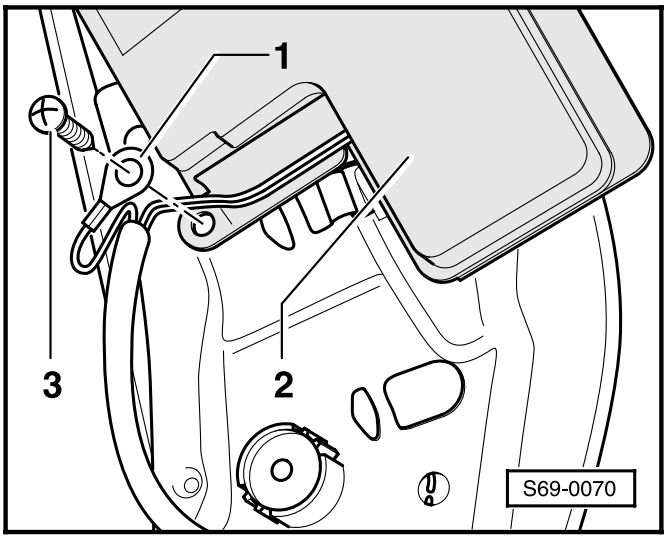
3 - Airbag unit
- ♦ remove from backrest frame -1-

4 - Electric cable of airbag unit
- ♦ remove from clip -5-

5 - Clip for electric cable of airbag
- ♦ remove from backrest frame -1-

6 - Airbag unit identification sticker
- ♦ remove from backrest frame -1-

- Take front seat out of vehicle ⇒ page 72-1.
- Separate seat from backrest ⇒ page 72-2.
- Remove backrest cover ⇒ page 74-2.
- Fold open backrest upholstery ⇒ page 74-2.

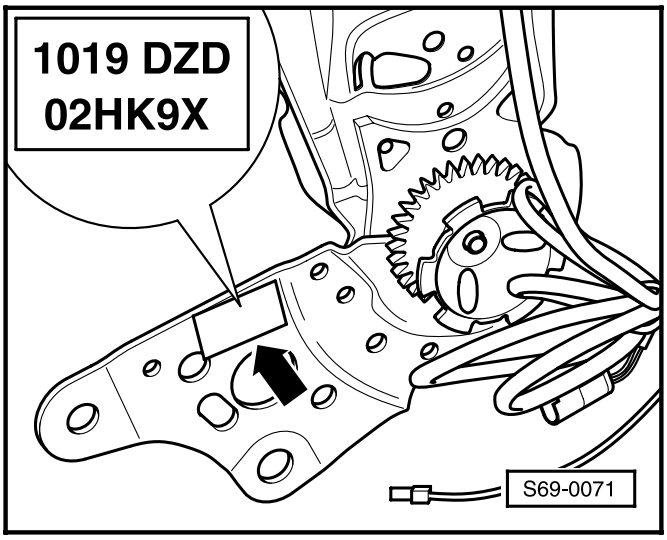


Installing

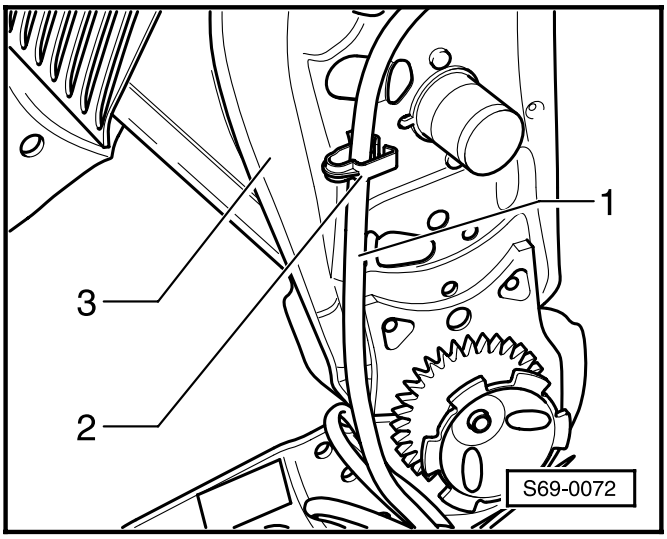
- Insert new airbag unit into the backrest frame.

◄- Install earth strap -1- of the airbag unit -2- below the bottom screw -3-.

- Tighten screws -3- of the airbag unit to 7 Nm.



◄- Affix self-adhesive identification label (smaller one) from the airbag unit to the side of the backrest frame -arrow-.

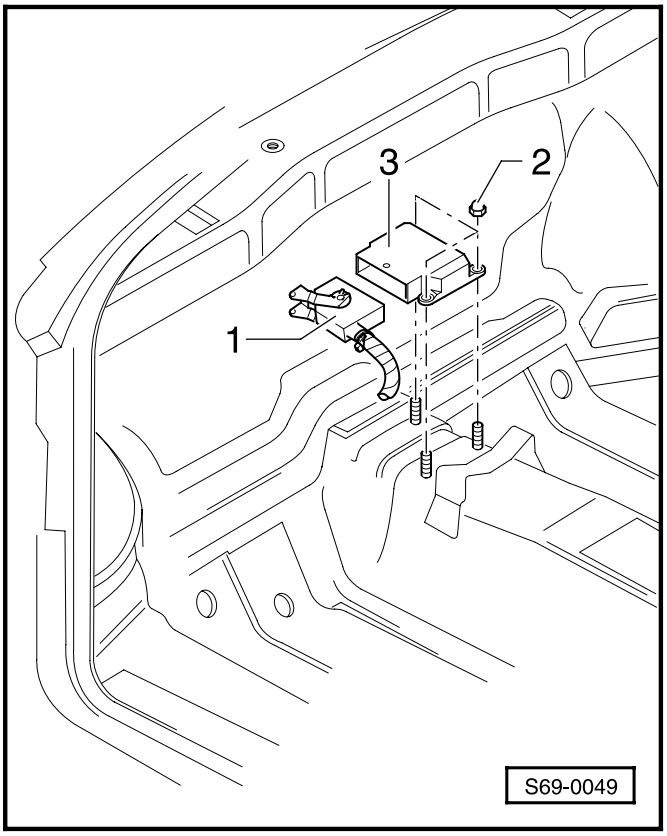


◄- Attach electric cable -1- of the airbag unit to the frame -3- with the aid of the clip -2-.

Note:

The electric cable of the airbag unit should be tied together with a plastic strap during installation to avoid possible damage. This strap must be removed after assembling backrest and seat ⇒ page 74-2.

- Fit on backrest cover ⇒ page 74-2.



Removing and installing airbag control unit (J 234)

1 - Control unit connector

2 - Nut
- ♦ 8 Nm

3 - Control unit
- ♦ removing:
- Disconnect earth strap of battery.
- Remove right footwell trim panel on driver side.
- If necessary, cut into carpet and sound insulation mats in the area of control unit.
- Turn over locking arm of control unit connector -1- far enough until it locks in place again.
- Unplug connector -1-.
- Unscrew nuts -2- (3x).
- Take out control unit -3-.
- ♦ installing:
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Notes:

- ♦ *If the control unit is replaced, it must then be coded ⇒ page 01-10.*
- ♦ *If the earth strap of the battery is disconnected and reconnected, it is then necessary to carry out additional operations ⇒ Electrical System, Repair Group 27.*

Disposing of pyrotechnical parts prior to scrapping vehicle

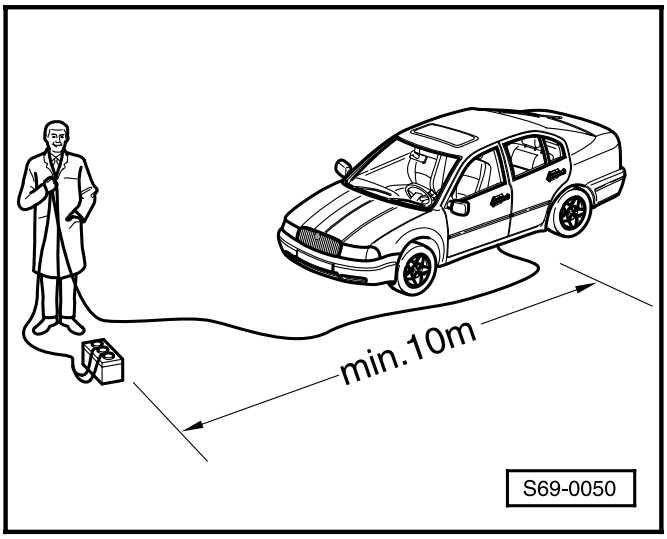
In accordance with the accident prevention regulations, airbag units and belt tensioners must be rendered safe against unintentional explosion (unintentional ignition) prior to the vehicle being scrapped. It is essential to comply with this regulation for unprofessional or unintentional ignition (e.g. caused by cutting torches during scrapping) can result in injuries.

Disposing of airbag units prior to scrapping vehicle

Special tools, testers and aids required

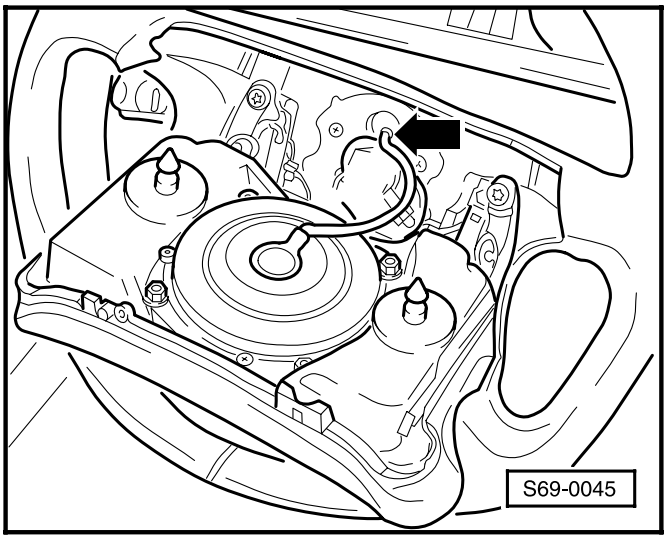
- Ignition device V.A.G 1821
- Cable connection from set V.A.G 1594
- Cable Part No. 357 971 419

◄ The airbag units should be ignited inside the vehicle with the doors closed.



Igniting driver-side airbag unit

- Remove airbag unit ⇒ page 69-11.



◄ - Unplug connector from airbag unit -arrow-.

- Connect cable to airbag unit and re-install airbag unit. Cable is run between airbag unit and steering wheel.
- Connect two-pin cable connector of ignition device using the cable socket from the connection cable set.
- Place ignition device through gap of door and connect to an external battery.
- Ignite airbag unit and dispose of as scrap.

Igniting passenger-side airbag unit

- Open cover of airbag module on passenger side.
- Unplug connector.
- Cut off connector of airbag unit and connect to ignition device V.A.G 1821.
- Place ignition device through gap in door and connect to an external battery.
- Ignite airbag unit and dispose of as scrap.

Igniting side airbag units

- Unplug connector of side airbag unit below front seat ⇒ page 72-1.
- Connect ignition device V.A.G 1821 to connector of airbag unit, cut cable off side airbag unit, if necessary, and connect to ignition device.
- Place ignition device through gap in door and connect to an external battery.
- Ignite side airbag and dispose of as scrap.

Warning!

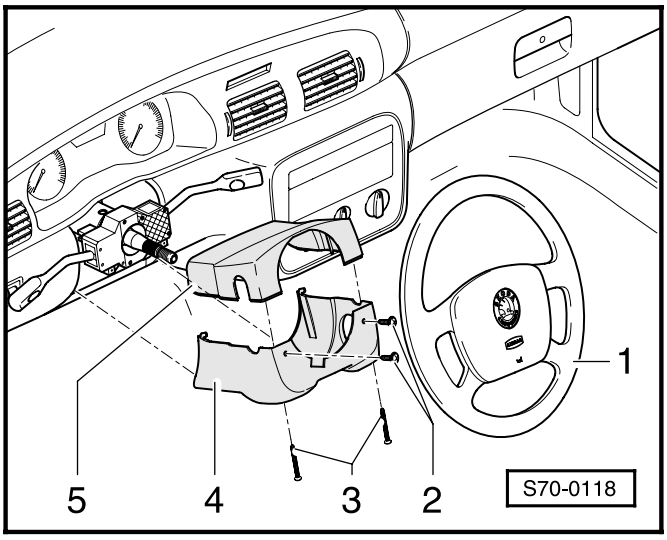
No person must be closer than 10 meters to the vehicle when connecting the voltage supply and when igniting the airbags.

Disposing of belt tensioners

Belt tensioners must not be disposed of as common waste but must be sent to a specialist company or to the Importer for proper disposal in accordance with the instructions of PST and environmental protection regulations. This also applies to ignited belt tensioners (it is not possible to reliably determine whether all 3 pyrotechnical charges of the belt tensioner have ignited).

Dash panel

Removing and installing dash panel 08.96 ➤



Removing:

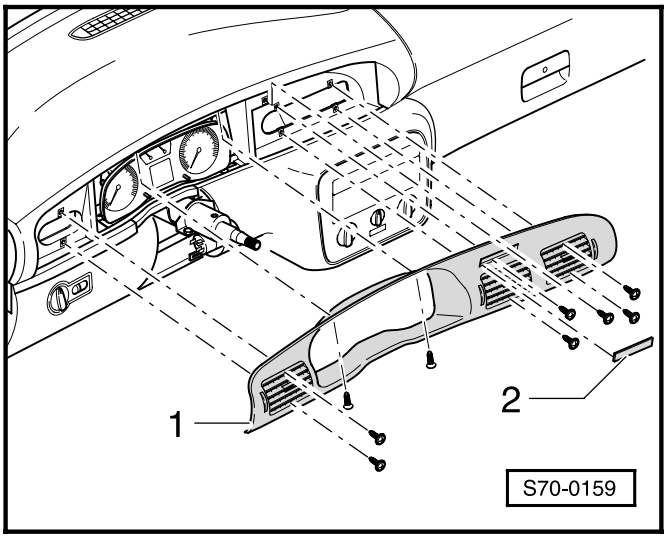
- Disconnect earth strap of battery.
- Remove steering wheel ⇒ page 69-12.

◄ - Take out cross-head screws -2- and -3-.

- Take off trim panels -4- and -5- for steering column switches.
- Remove restoring ring with slip ring ⇒ page 69-12.1 (models fitted with airbag units).
- Remove steering column switch ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 94.
- Remove centre console ⇒ page 68-3.

Note:

The steering column switch can remain installed.



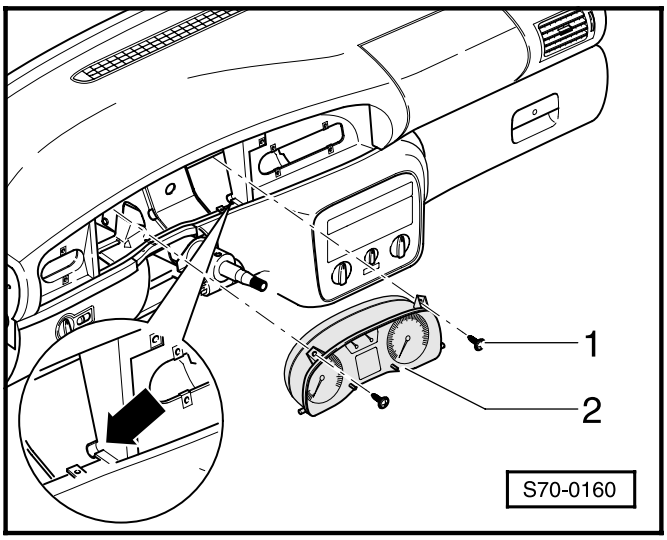
◄ - Lever out cover panel -2-.

- Remove screws.

Note:

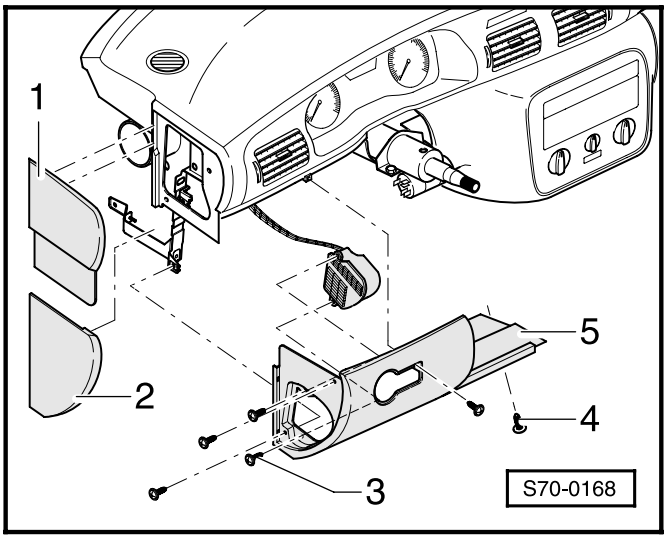
There is a screw at the top and bottom of the air vents which is only accessible with a narrow screwdriver.

- Pull out trim panel of dash panel insert -1-.



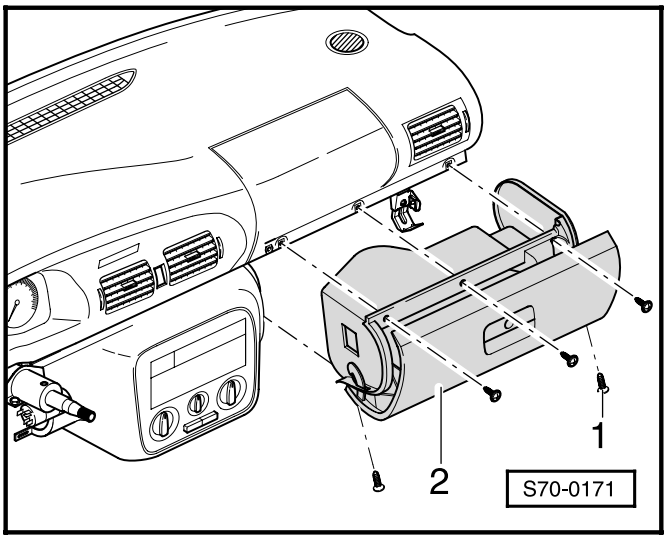
◄ - Remove screws -1-.

- Pull dash panel insert -2- out of fixture -arrow- on both sides.
- Unplug connectors.



◄- Remove the covers -1- and -2-.

- Screw out screws -4-.
- Remove the lights switches ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.Gr. 96.
- Screw out screws -3- of the fuse box.
- Remove the underside of the dash panel -5-.



◄- Screw out screws -1-.

For vehicles MJ03 ➤ (with switch for the front passenger airbag)

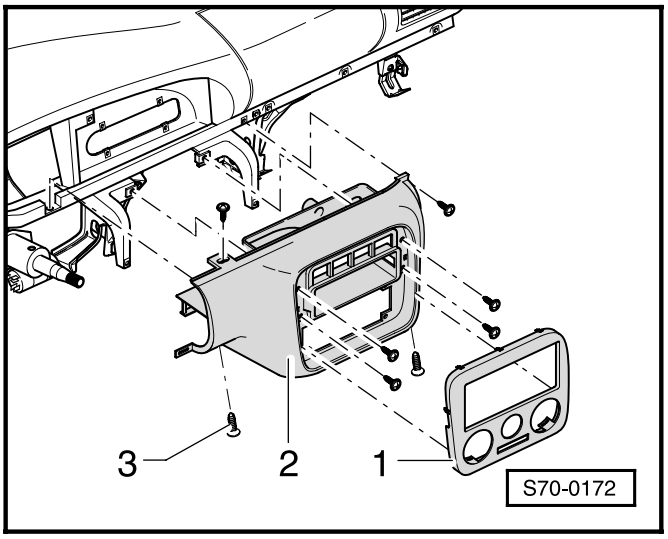
Note:

Observe the safety regulations for repairing airbags ⇒ Page 69-8.

- Disconnect the plug connector for the switch for the front passenger airbag.

For all vehicles

- Disconnect the plug connector for the glove compartment lighting.
- Remove the glove compartment -2-.

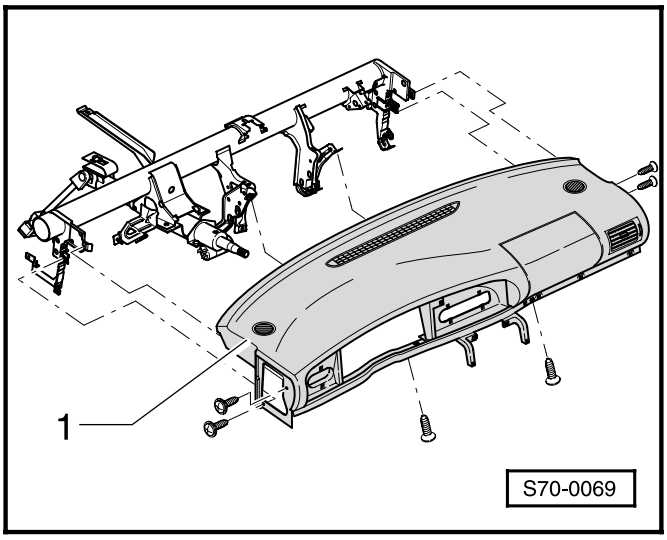


◄- Remove the cover -1-.

- Screw out screws -3-.
- Remove the centre part of the dash panel -2-.
- Disconnect plug connectors.

Note:

The radio and other devices can remain installed during this removal operation.



◄- Screw out the screws.

- Pull off the dash panel -1- from the central pipe and remove from the vehicle.

Installing

- Installation takes place in the reverse order.

For vehicles MJ03 ➤ (with switch for the front passenger airbag)

- Switch on the ignition before attaching the battery

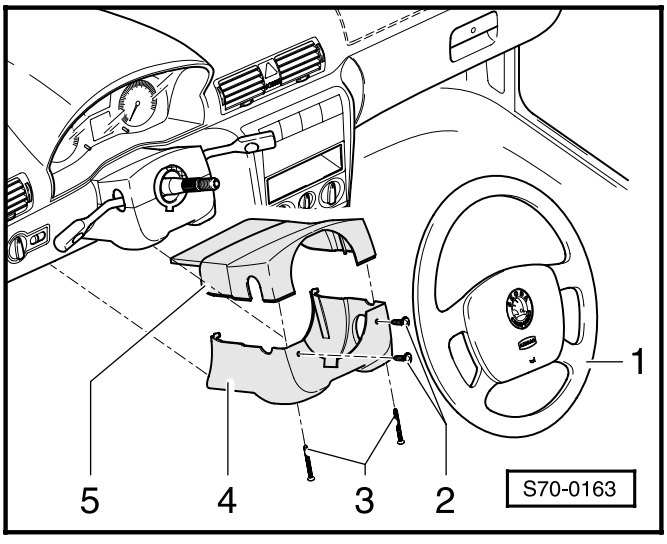
Take care!

There must be no-one sitting in the vehicle when the battery is attached.

Note:

Additional work is to be undertaken when disconnecting and re-connecting the battery earth ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.Gr. 27.

Removing and installing the dash panel 08.98 ➤



Removing

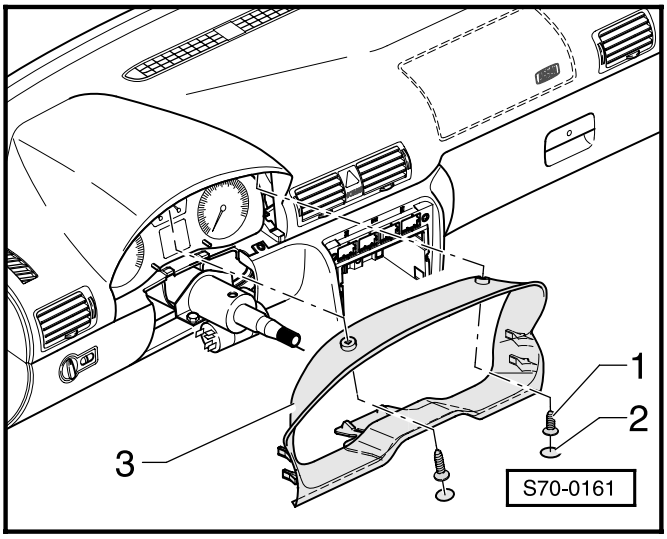
- Unclamp the battery earth band.
- Remove the middle console ⇒ 68-4.1
- Remove the storage compartment under the dash panel ⇒ Page 68-4
- Set the steering wheel -1- to its middle position (wheels pointing in the straight ahead position)
- Remove the steering wheel ⇒ Page 69-12

◄- Screw out screws -2- and -3-.

- Remove the coverings -4- and -5- for the steering column switch.
- Remove the restoring ring with slip ring ⇒ Page 69-12.1 (only for vehicles fitted with airbags)
- Remove the switch located below the steering wheel ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.Gr. 94.

Note:

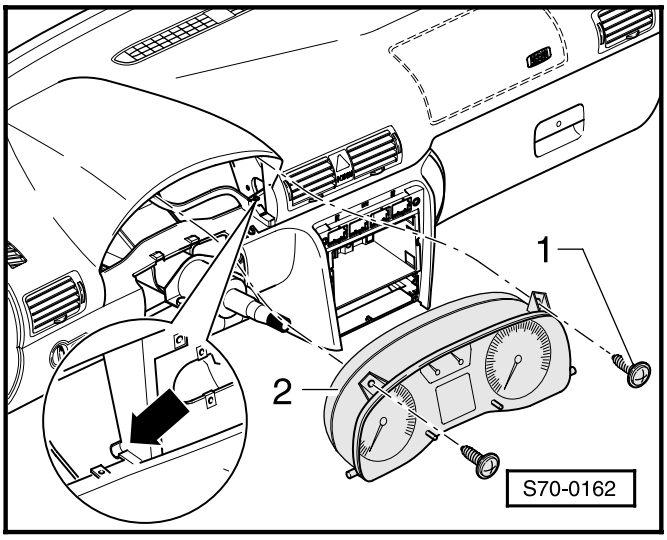
The steering column switch can remain installed.



◄- Lever out the covers -2-.

- Screw out the screws -1-.

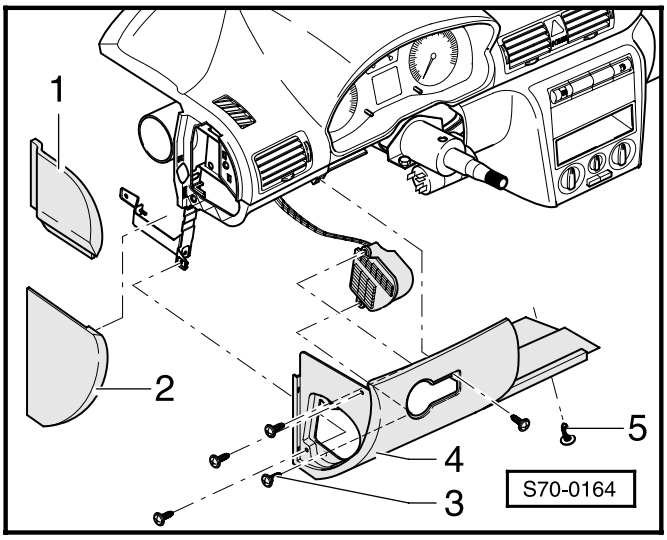
◄- Remove the cover for the dash panel insert -3-.



◄- Screw out the screws -1-.

- Pull off the dash panel -2- on both sides from the holders -arrow-.

- Disconnect plug connectors.



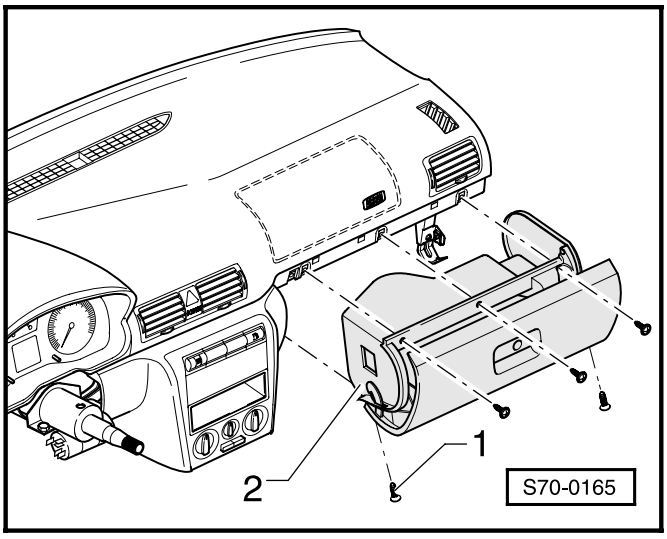
◄- Remove the covers -1- and -2-.

- Screw out screws -5-.

- Remove the light switch ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.Gr. 96.

- Remove the screws -3- from the fuse box

- Take out the lower part of the dash panel -4-.



◄- Screw out the screws -1-.

For vehicles MJ03 ➤ (with switch for the front passenger airbag)

Note:

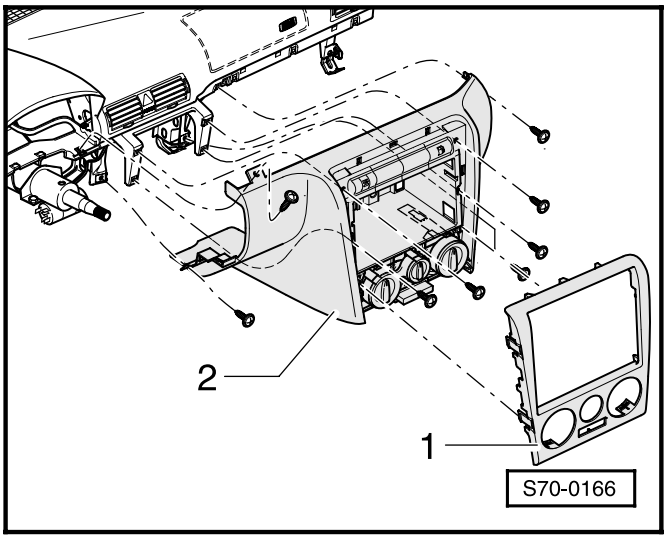
Observe the safety regulations for repairing airbags ⇒ Page 69-8.

- Disconnect the plug connector for the switch for the front passenger airbag.

For all vehicles

- Disconnect the plug connector for the glove compartment lighting.

- Remove the glove compartment -2-.



◄- Pull off the cover -1-.

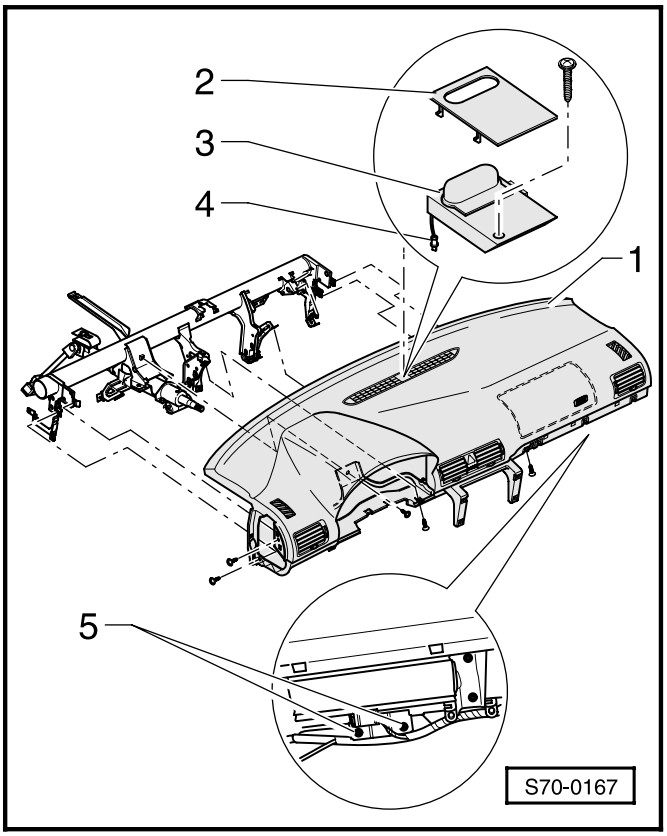
- Screw out screws.

- Pull off the centre part of the dash panel -2-.

- Disconnect plug connectors.

Notes:

- *The radio and other devices can remain installed during this removal operation.*
- *The centre part of the dash panel is installed under preloading so great force is required to loosen it.*



◄- Carefully lever off cover -2- using wedge 3409.

- Remove the sun sensor -3-.

- Disconnect the plug connector -4- of the sun sensor -3- by levering off (e.g. with a padded nail).

- Screw out the corresponding screws including screw -5- under the front passenger airbag.

- Pull off the dash panel from the central pipe -1- and remove from the vehicle.

Installing

- Installation takes place in the reverse order.

Note:

When placing the dash panel onto the central pipe it is important to ensure that the air distribution canal is sitting properly in the air nozzles.

For vehicles MJ03 ➤ (with switch for the front passenger airbag)

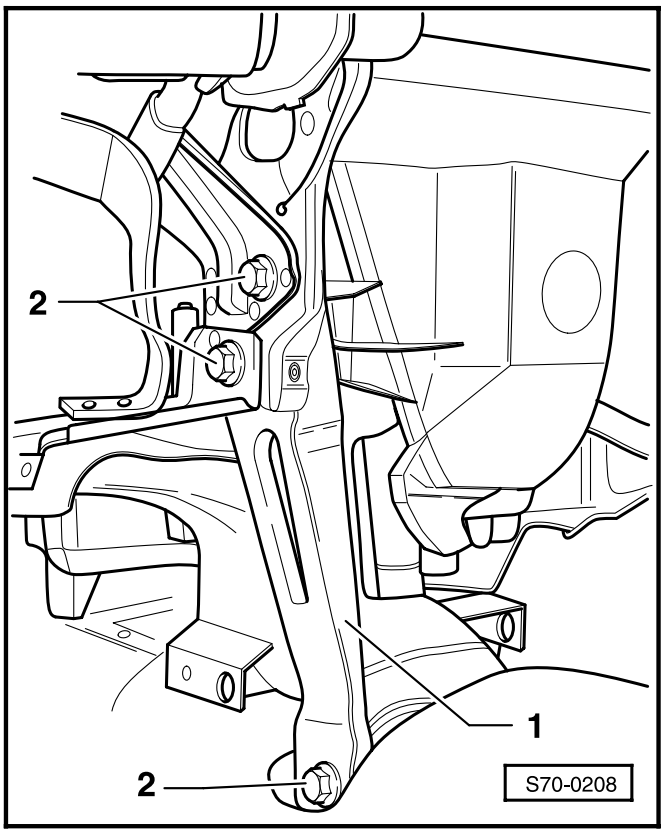
- Switch on the ignition before attaching the battery.

Take care!

There must be no-one sitting in the vehicle when the battery is attached.

Note:

Additional work is to be undertaken when disconnecting and re-connecting the battery earth ⇒ Electrical System, Rep.Gr. 27.



Removing and installing central tube/dash panel

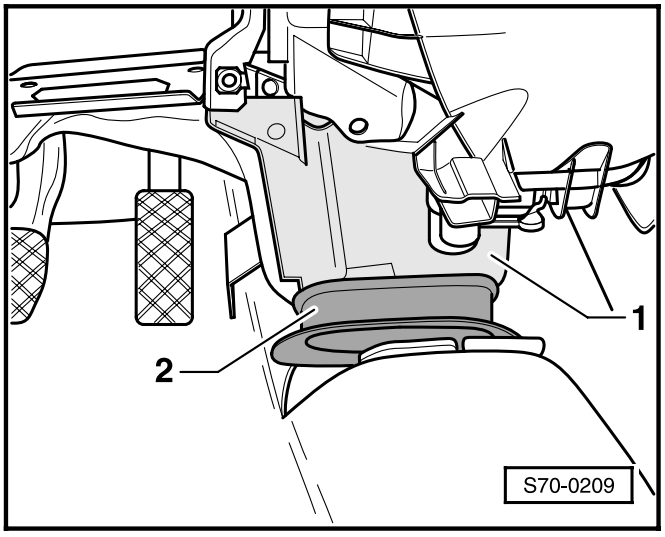
Note:

The procedure on certain models may differ slightly depending on the equipment.

Removing

- Remove dash panel ⇒ page 70-1, or 70-3, respectively.

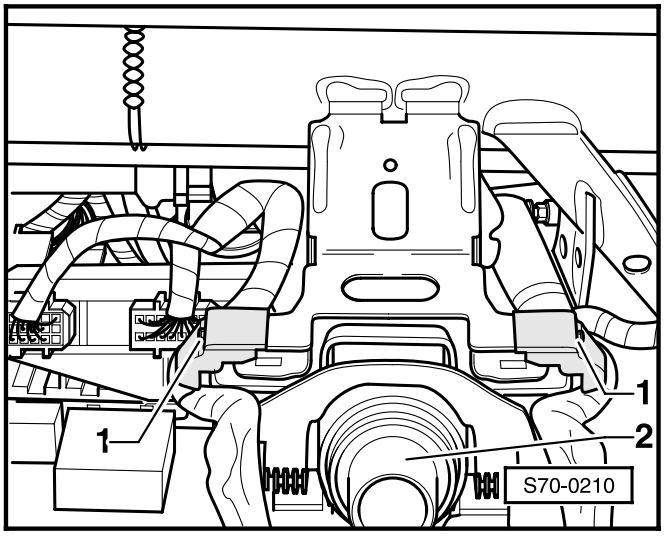
◄- Unscrew bolts -2- (25 Nm) and take out support -1-.



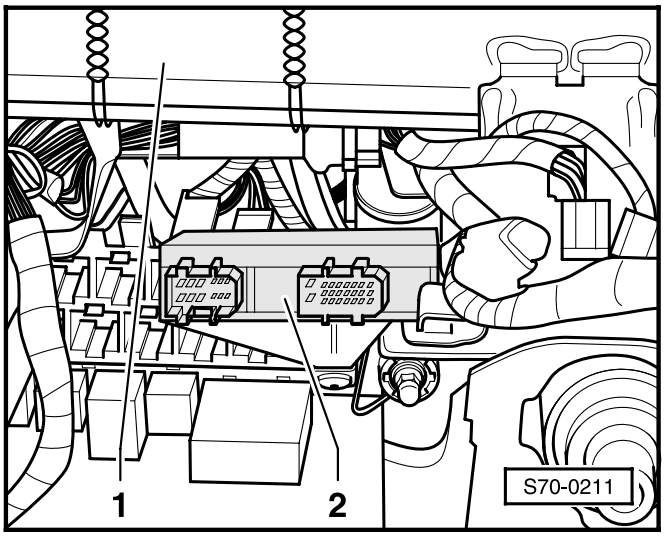
◄- Pull off boot -2-, slacken and take out air line -1-.

- Remove restoring ring with slip ring ⇒ page 69-12.1.

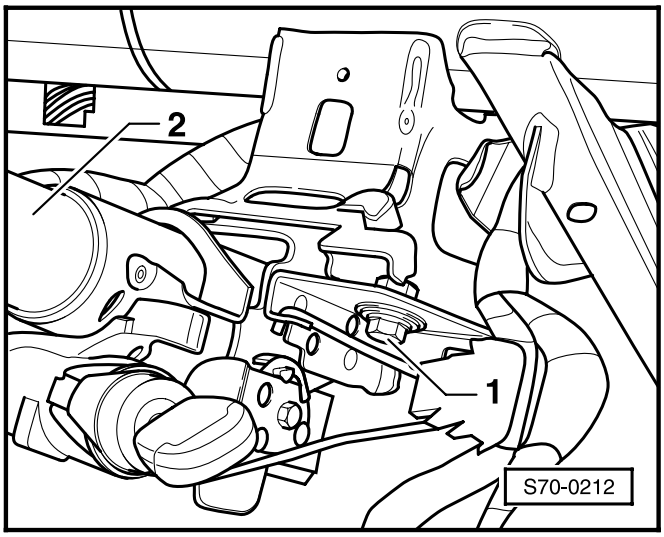
- Remove switch below steering wheel
⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 94.



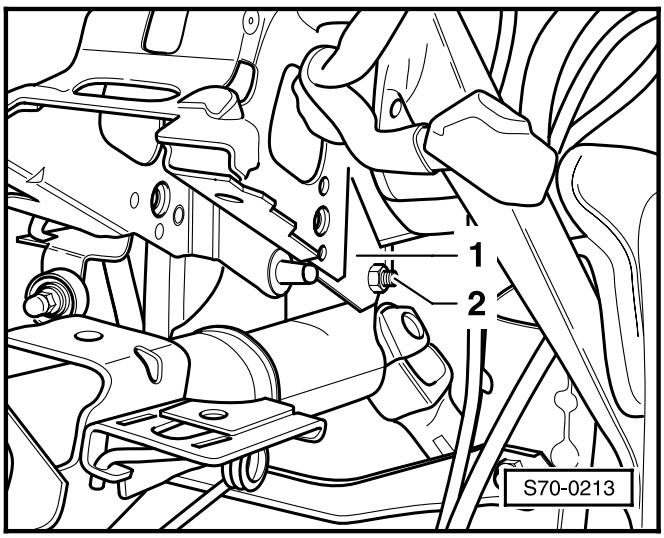
◄- Unscrew bolts -1- and detach wiring loom with clips from steering column -2-.



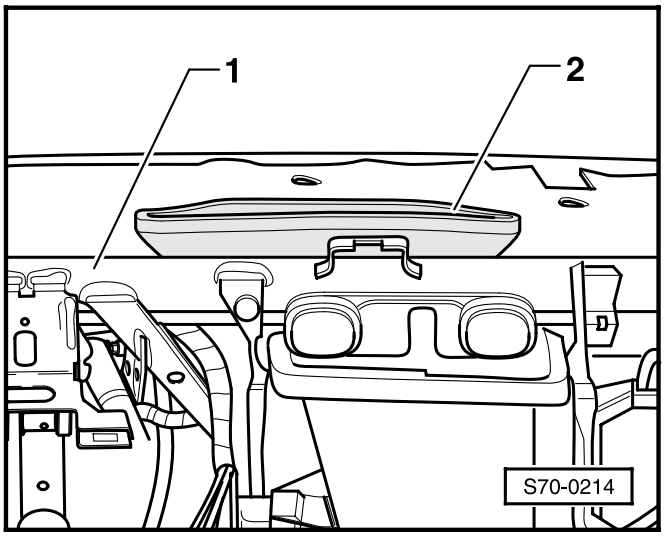
◄- Unscrew corresponding bolts and take convenience system control unit -2- out of central tube -1-.



◄- Unscrew bolts -1- (25 Nm) and tilt steering column -2- down.



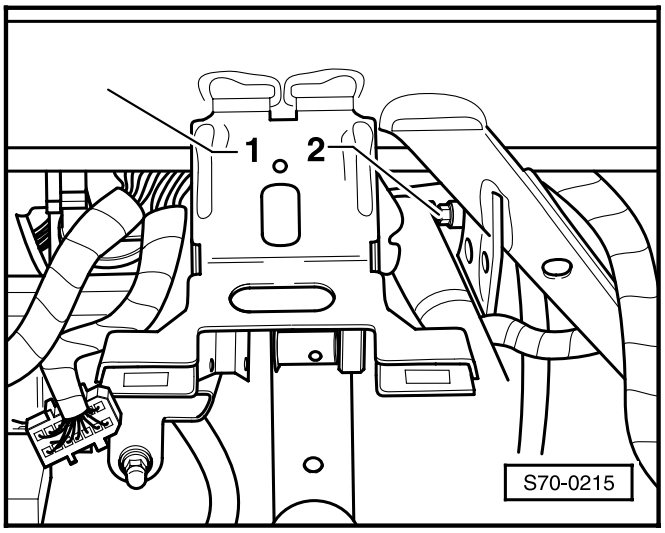
◄- Unscrew bolt -2- (7.5 Nm) of steering column at central tube -1-.



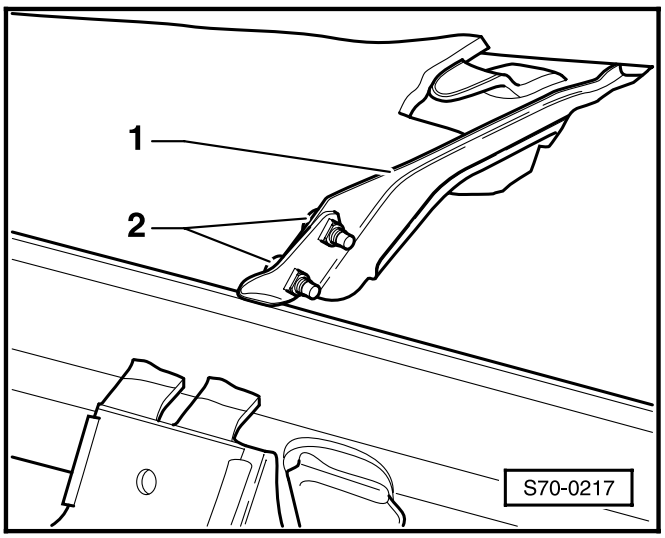
◄- Detach all necessary earth connections and all retaining clamps of wiring loom.

- Remove fuse box
⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 97.

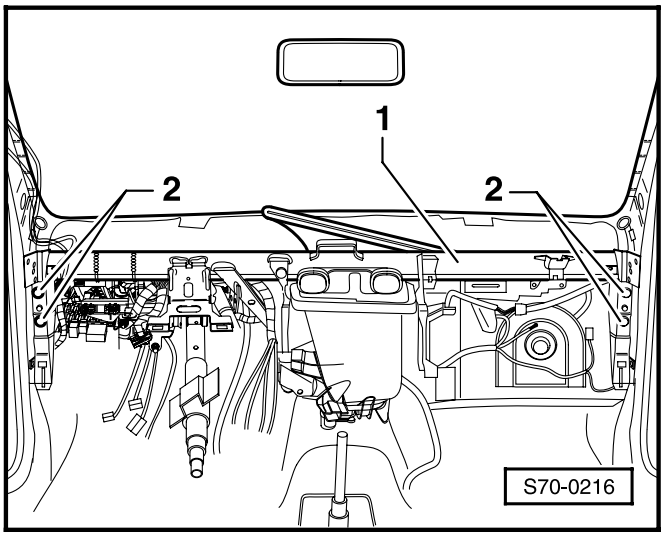
- Detach air inlet and windscreen -2- from central tube -1-.



◄- Slacken bolt -2- at central tube -1-.



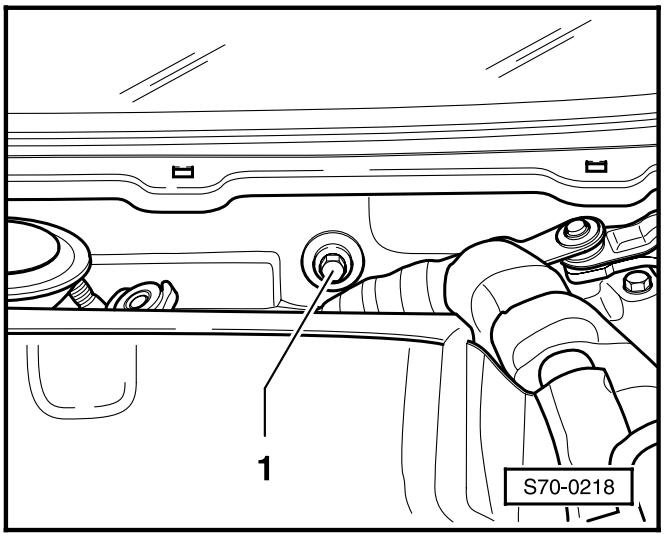
◄- Slacken bolt -2- (10 Nm) at bracket -1-.



◄- Slacken bolts -2- (25 Nm) at central tube -1-.

- Remove cover of plenum chamber ⇒ page 66-1.

- Remove windshield wiper system ⇒ Electrical System; Repair Group 92.

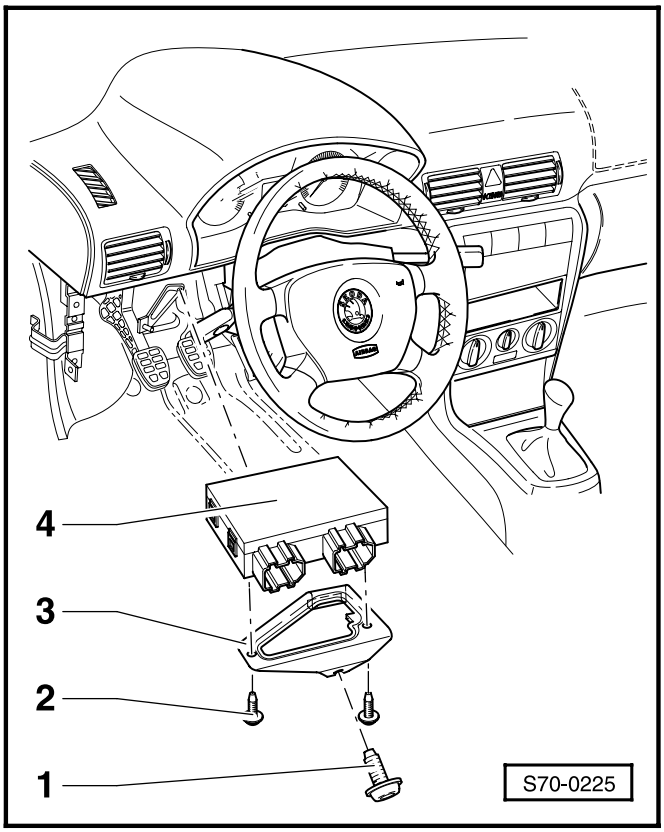


◄- Unscrew bolt -1- (25 Nm) in plenum chamber.

- Take central tube out of vehicle.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing convenience system control unit

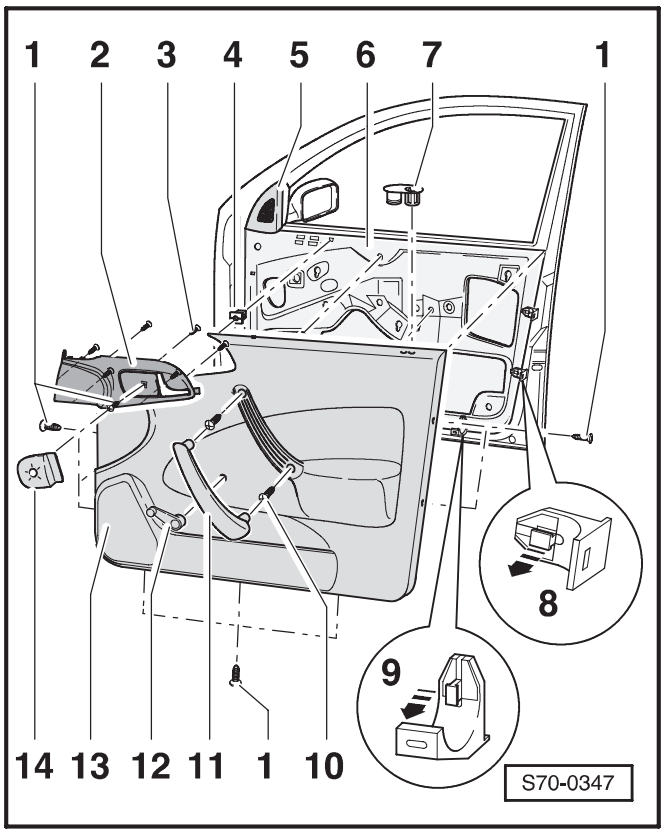
The convenience system control unit is located behind the bottom part of the dash panel on the driver side.

Removing

- Remove bottom part of dash panel ⇒ page 70-3.1.
- Separate connector of control unit.
- Remove screw -1- attaching control unit fixture -3-.
- Take convenience system control unit out of dash panel together with control unit fixture -3-.
- Remove screws attaching control unit -2- (2.5 Nm) and take control unit -4- off the fixture -3-.

Installing

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Door trim panels

Summary of components of front door trim panel (with mechanical window lifter)

1 - 1 Nm

2 - Inside door handle
- Before removing, disconnect the trim panel control.

3 - 1 Nm

4 - Plastic insert nut

5 - Exterior mirror cover

6 - Insulation foil
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-6.

7 - Rosette

8 - Side retaining clip
- ♦ Removing:
- Pull out bar -arrow-

9 - Bottom retaining clip
- ♦ Removing:
- Pull out bar -arrow-

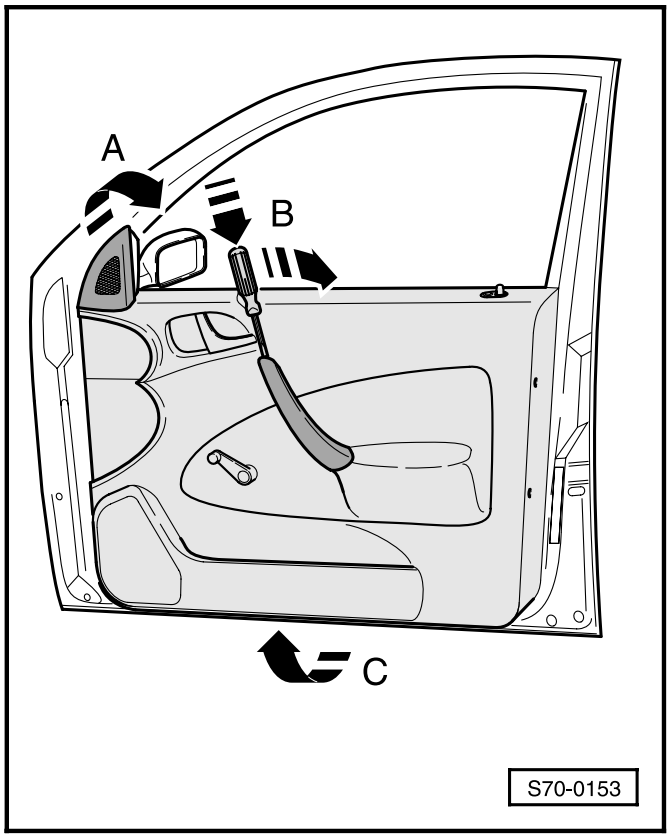
10 - 4 Nm

11 - Handle

12 - Window crank
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-6.

13 - Door trim panel
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-4.

14 - Trim
- ♦ Clipped in.



Removing and installing front door trim panel

Removing:

◄ - Take out exterior mirror cover - arrow A-.

◄ - Lever off the handle with the screwdriver -arrow B-.

- Remove window crank ⇒ page 70-6.

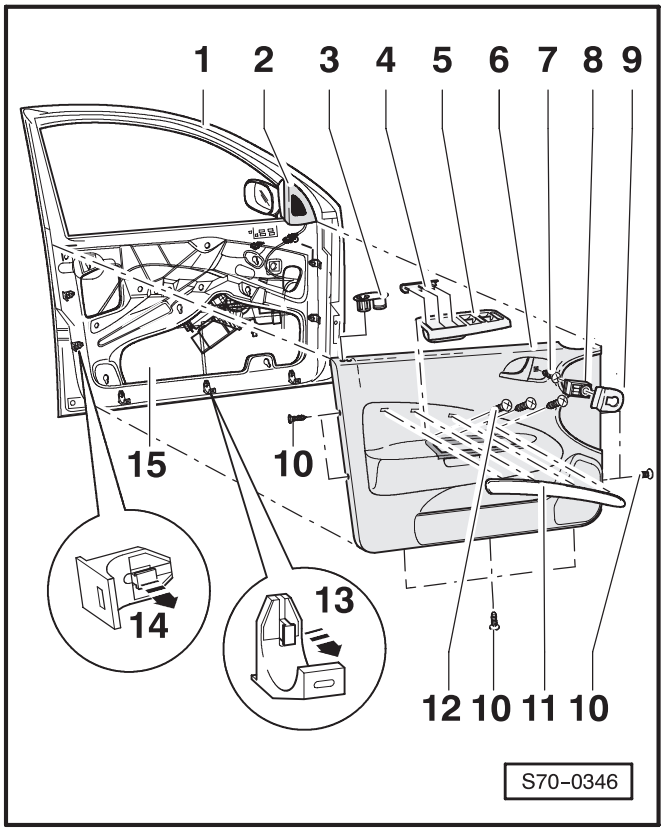
- Unscrew screws ⇒ page 70-4 item 1 and 10.

◄ - Pull door trim panel upwards out of the window shaft seal -arrow C-.

- Unhook the control cable of the door handle and separate the plug connections.

Installing:

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Summary of components of front door trim panel (with power window lifter)

Note:

The front passenger side door trim panel is identical to the door trim panel with mechanical window lifter, only with other operating elements.

1 - Door

2 - Exterior mirror cover

3 - Rosette

4 - Cover
- ♦ Only driver side.

5 - Recessed handle with operating panel for convenience system
- ♦ Only driver side.
- ♦ Removing ⇒ page 70-4.1.

6 - Door trim panel
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-4.1.

7 - 0.7 Nm

8 - Mirror adjustment switch

9 - Cover

10 - 0.7 Nm

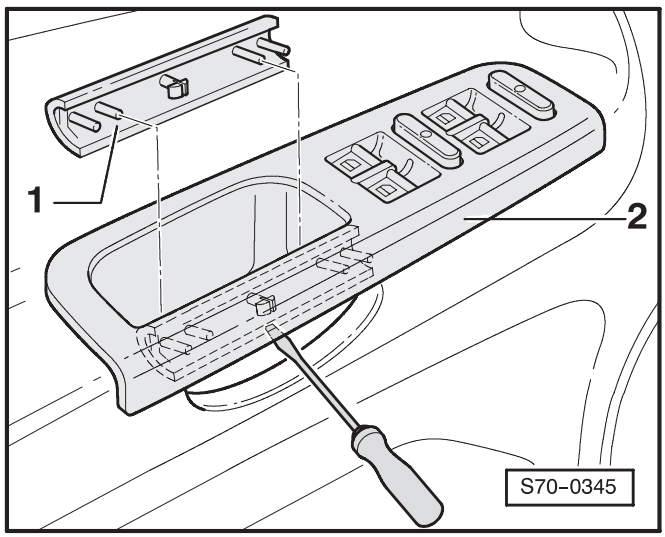
11 - Decorative strip

12 - 4 Nm

13 - Bottom retaining clip
- ♦ Removing:
- Pull out bar -arrow-

14 - Side retaining clip
- ♦ Removing:
- Pull out bar -arrow-

15 - Insulation foil
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-6.

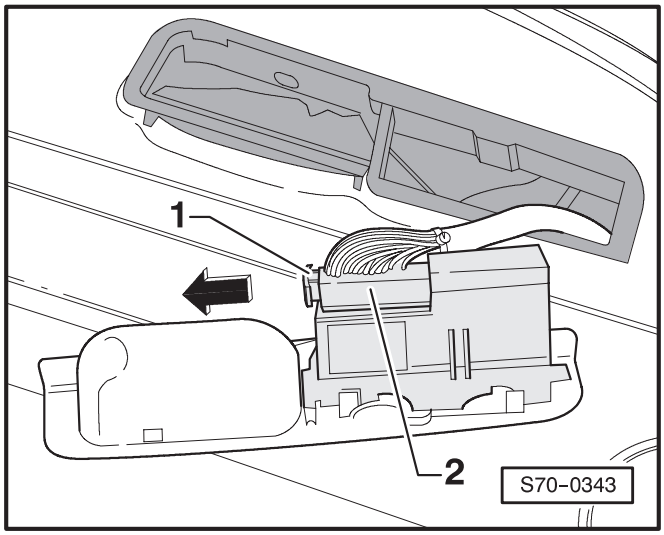


Removing and installing driver side front door trim panel

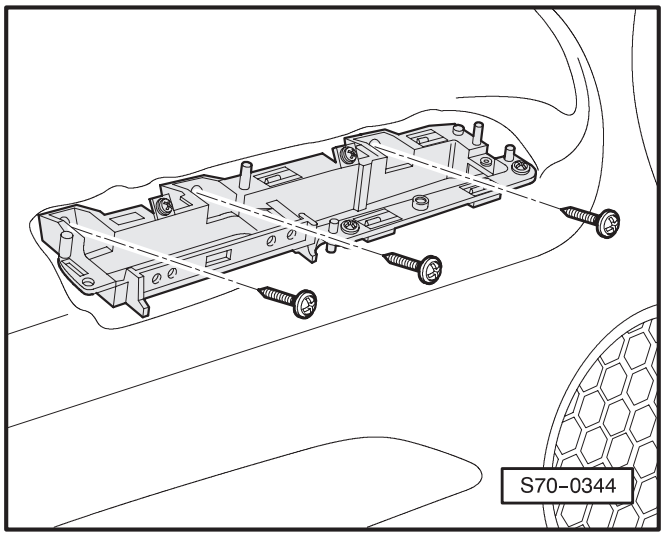
Removing:

◄ - Insert small screwdriver into the bottom gap between cover -1- and the recessed handle -2- and carefully press off the cover towards the door trim panel.

- Press recessed handle -2- out of the door trim panel upwards.

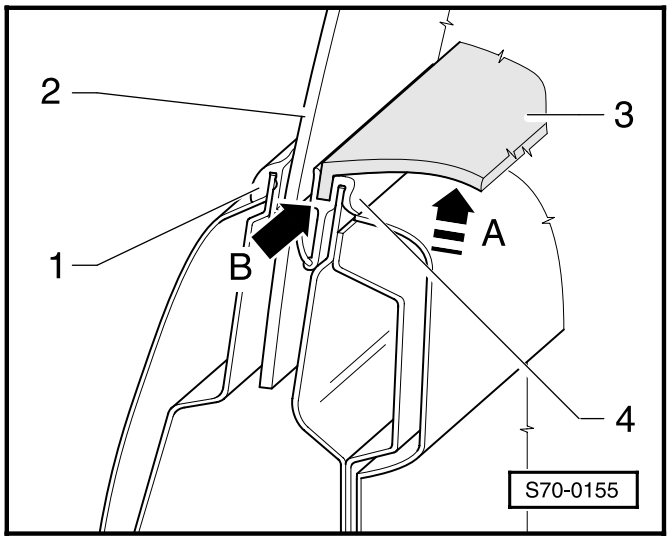


◄ - Pull lock -1- in direction of arrow and disconnect connector -2-.



◄ - Unscrew screws (4 Nm).

- Remove mirror adjustment switch with cover ⇒ page 70-4.1 item 8 and 9 and disconnect plug connection.
- Unscrew screws ⇒ page 70-4.1 item 7.
- Remove exterior mirror cover ⇒ page 70-4.1 item 2 and if necessary disconnect plug connection for loudspeaker.
- Unscrew screws ⇒ page 70-4.1 item 10.



◄ - Pull door trim panel -3- upwards out of the inside window shaft seal -4- -arrow A-.

1 - Outside window shaft seal

2 - Door window

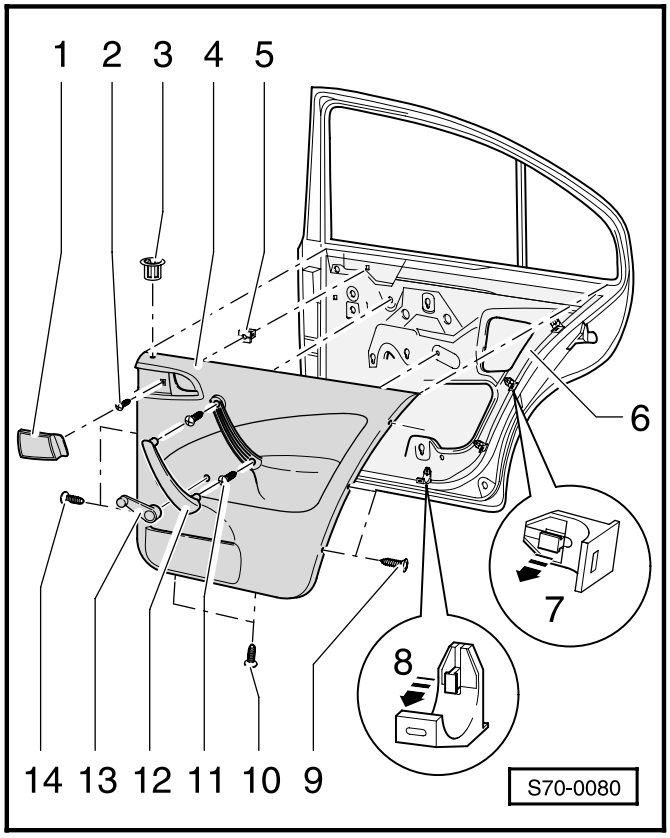
- Unhook the control cable of the door handle and separate the plug connections.

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

When installing the manual gearbox, ensure the door trim panel is properly seated in the inside window shaft seal -arrow B-.



Summary of components of rear door trim panel

1 - Trim
- ♦ Clipped in.

2 - Screw

3 - Rosette

4 - Door trim panel
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-5.

5 - Plastic insert nut

6 - Insulation foil
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-6.

7 - Side retaining clip
- ♦ Removing:
- \- Pull out bar -arrow-.

8 - Bottom retaining clip
- ♦ Removing:
- \- Pull out bar -arrow-.

9 - Screw

10 - Screw

11 - Screw

12 - Handle

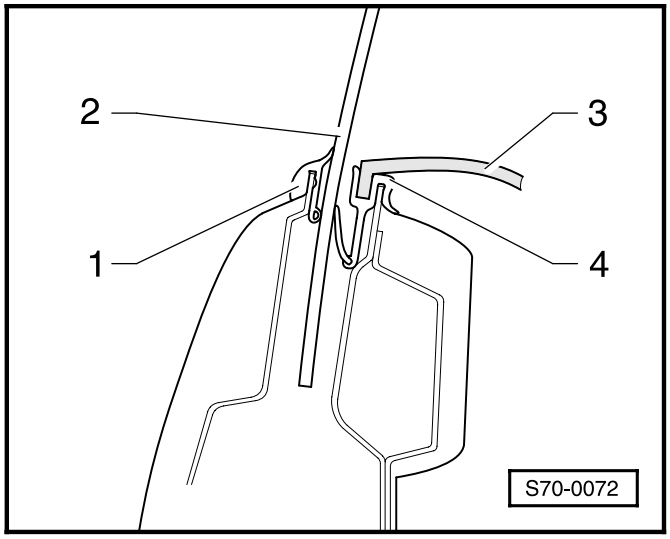
13 - Window crank
- ♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 70-6.

14 - Screw

Removing and installing rear door trim panel

Removing:

- Lever off the handle with the screwdriver in the same way as for the front door ⇒ page 70-4.
- Remove window crank (if applicable) ⇒ page 70-6.
- Loosen all bolted connections ⇒ page 70-5.
- Disconnect plug connections.



◄ - Pull door trim panel -3- upwards out of the inside window shaft seal -4-.

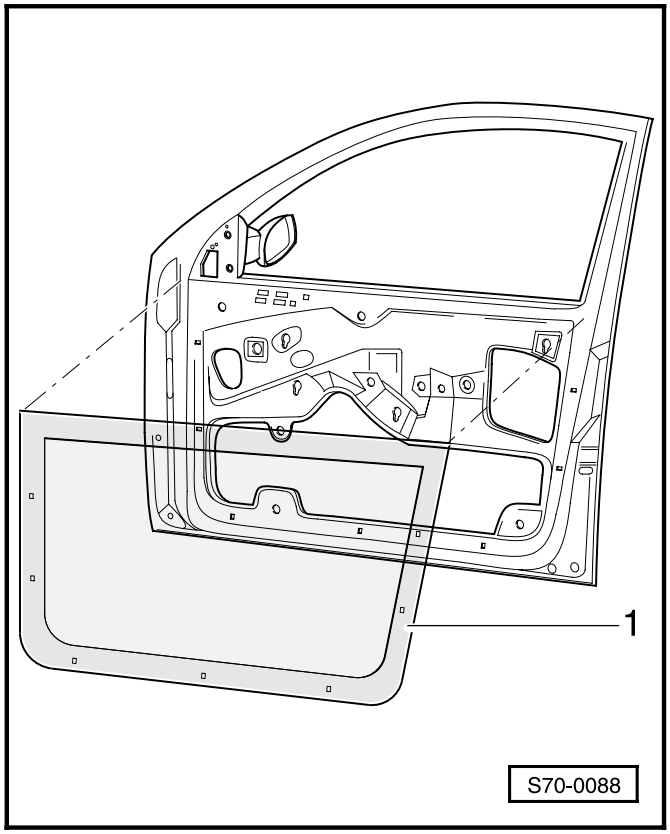
- Unhook the control cable of the door handle and separate the plug connections.

1 - Outside window shaft seal

2 - Door window

Installing:

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing door sound insulation sheeting

The task of the sound insulation sheeting is to seal the vehicle interior compartment against noises, draft and water penetration.

The sound insulation sheeting -1-must always be glued carefully and crease-free. When replacing, the glueing benches must be cleaned and the new sheeting must be glued crease-free from the bottom up to the top.

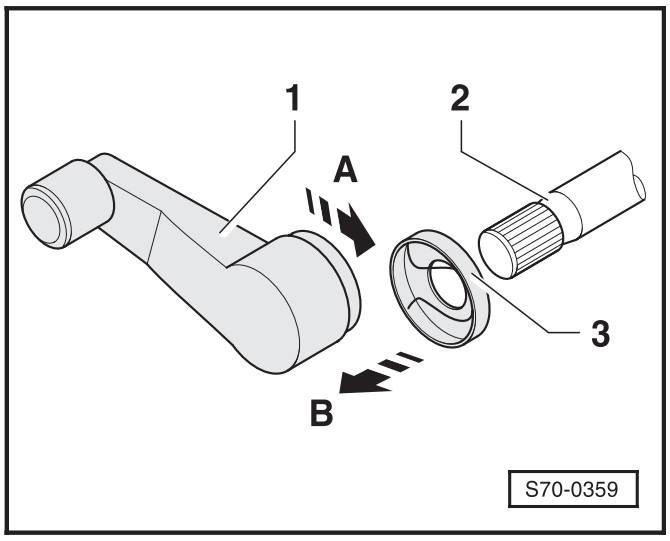
In case of inadequate bonding use double-side adhesive tape e.g. AKL 434 019 25.

The adhesive surface is shown tinted in the fig.

Removing

◄ - Removing door trim panel ⇒ page 70-4 or 70-5.

- Removing all retaining clips ⇒ page 70-4 or 70-5.



Removing window crank

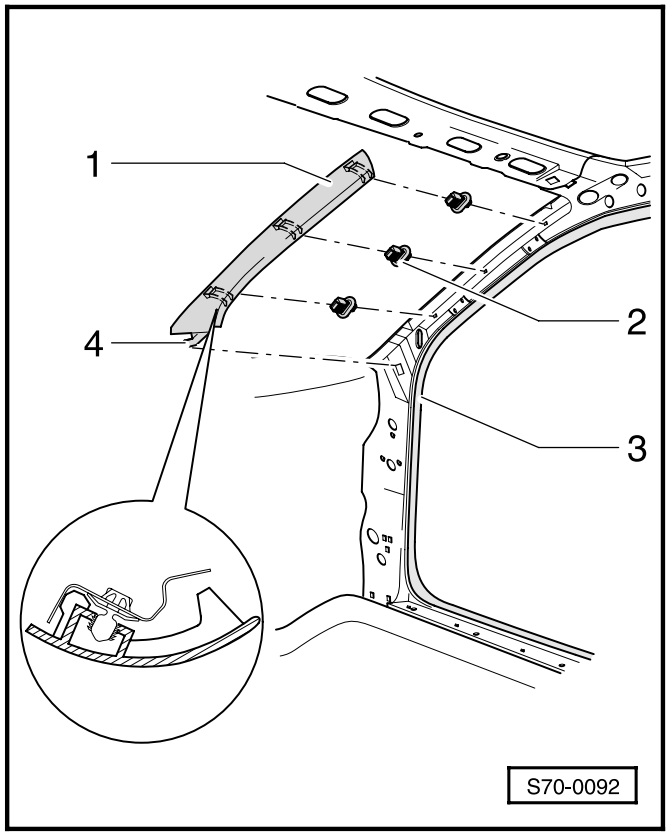
◄ - Slide spacer ring -3- in direction of -arrow A-.

- Pull off window crank -1- from window lifter -2-, -arrow B-.

Installing window crank

- The window crank must be parallel to the pull handle of the door trim panel when the window is closed.

Pillar and side trim panels



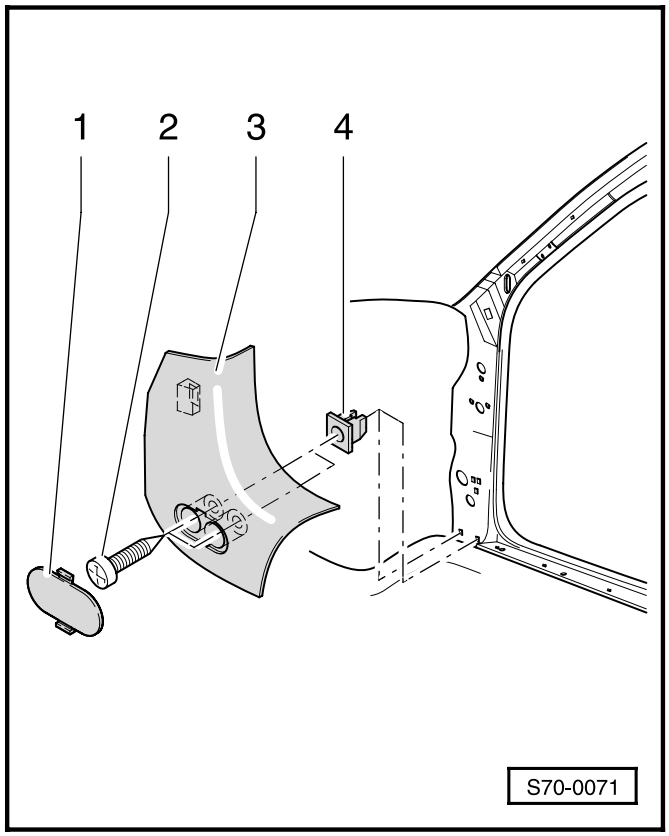
Assembly overview of trim panels of A pillar

1 - Trim panel of A pillar
- ♦ Removing:
- Slacken trim panel and detach retaining lug -4-.
- ♦ Installing:
- Inspect installation and condition of clips -2-; replace clips if necessary.
- First of all attach retaining lug -4-.
- Press trim panel into A pillar.

2 - Clip
- ♦ Pressed into A pillar

3 - Weatherseal
- ♦ Adjust to correct installation position after installing trim panel

4 - Guide part



Assembly overview of trim panel of A pillar at bottom

Note:

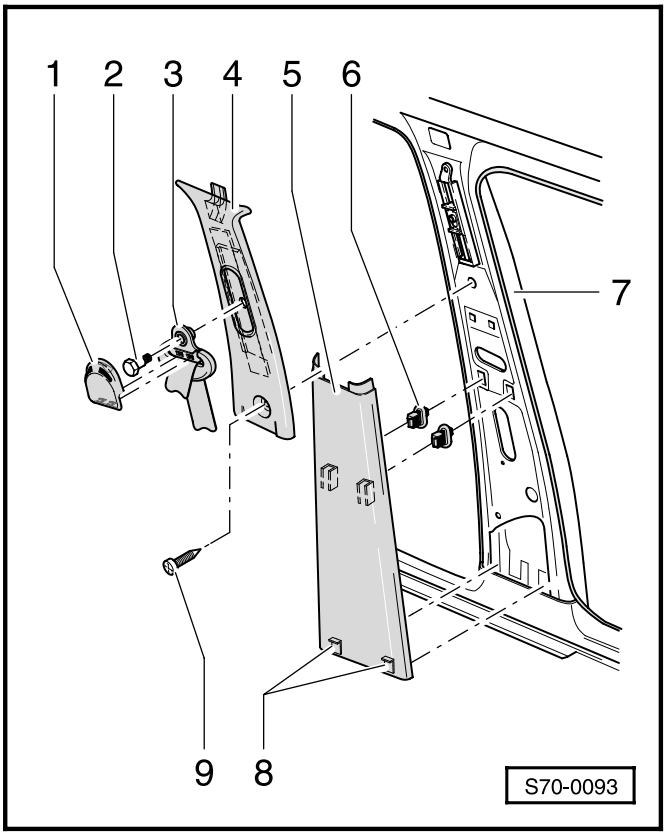
Before the trim panel of the A pillar at the bottom on the left-hand side can be removed, the cable for the bonnet lock must first of all be removed ⇒ page 55-2.

1 - Cap
- ♦ Clipped in place

2 - Screw

3 - Trim panel of bottom of A pillar
- ♦ Illustration shows right-hand side

4 - Clip
- ♦ Pressed into A pillar



Removing and installing B pillar trim panels

1 - Cap

2 - 35 Nm

3 - Seat belt guide fitting

4 - Top trim panel
- ♦ removing:
- unclip cap -1- and push up
- unbolt seat belt guide fitting ⇒ page 69-1
- take out cross-head screw -9-
- pull trim panel down and off the B pillar
- ♦ installing:
- inspect operation of the seat belt height adjustment

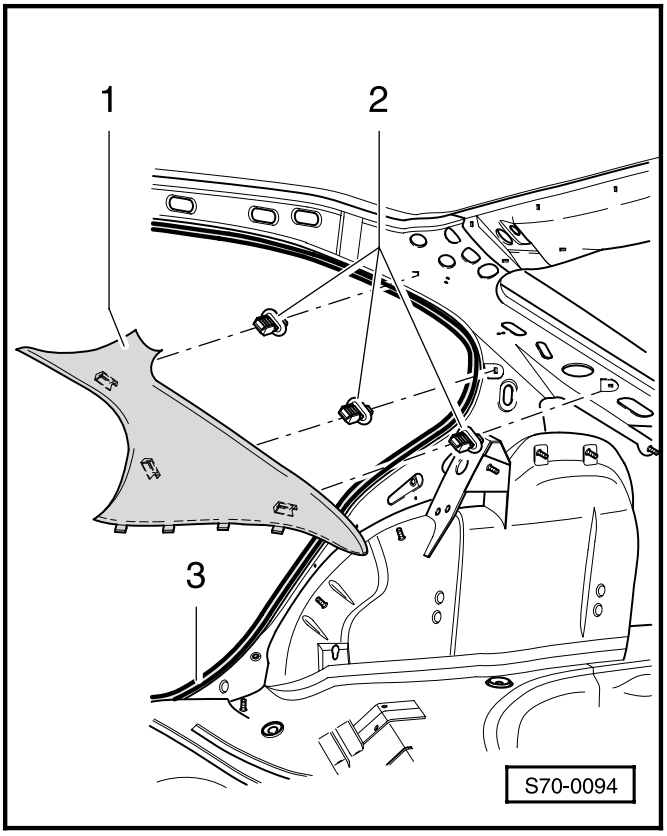
5 - Bottom trim panel
- ♦ removing:
- remove top B pillar trim panel -4-
- pull trim panel up and off the B pillar, beginning at the clips -6- and lift off upward
- ♦ installing:
- ensure the clips -6- are correctly located at the trim panel
- first of all, insert trim panel at the bottom into pillar B with the catches -8-
- press trim panel onto clips -6-

6 - Clip
- ♦ inserted into B pillar

7 - Weather seal
- ♦ after fitting on the trim panel, ensure weather seal is correctly installed

8 - Catches

9 - Cross-head screw

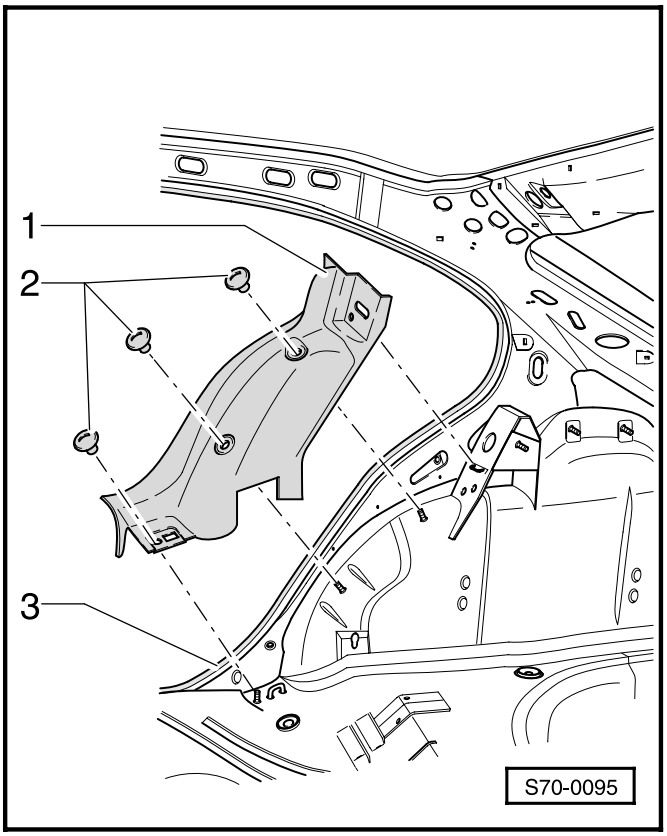


Removing and installing top C pillar trim panel

1 - Trim panel
- ♦ removing:
- remove moulded panel for luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 70-12
- pull off trim strip for headliner ⇒ page 70-13
- remove bottom C pillar trim panel ⇒ page 70-9
- unclip trim panel from C pillar
- ♦ installing:
- inspect position and condition of clips -2- and adjust if necessary. Replace clips if necessary

2 - Clip
- ♦ pushed into mounting in C pillar trim panel

3 - Weather seal
- ♦ after fitting on the trim panel, ensure the weather seal is correctly installed

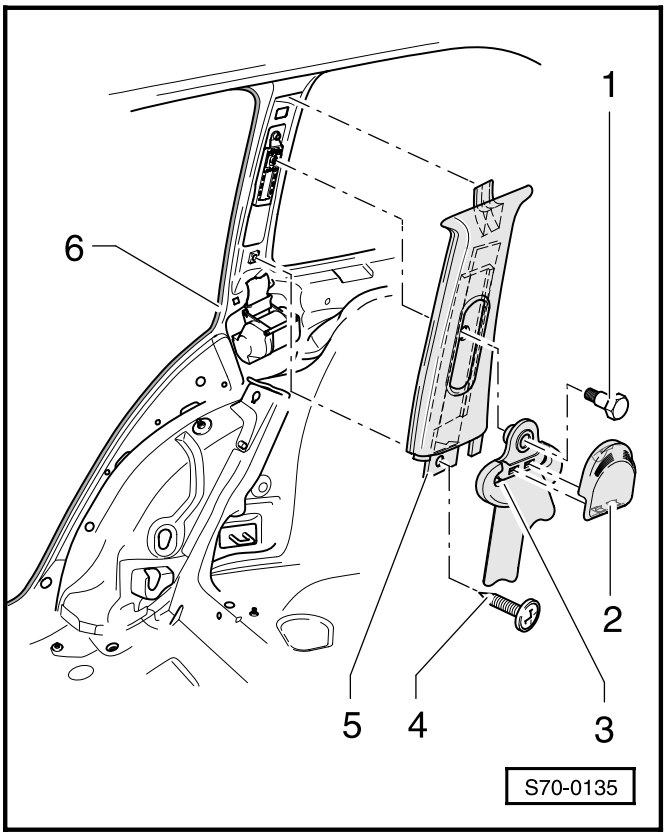


Removing and installing bottom C pillar trim panel

1 - Trim panel
- ♦ removing:
- unlock backrest and fold forward
- remove moulded panel for luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 70-12
- unscrew press studs -2-

2 - Press stud
- ♦ removing:
- unlock backrest and fold forward
- unscrew press stud from threaded bolt
- ♦ installing:
- push press stud onto threaded bolt

3 - Weather seal
- ♦ after fitting on the trim panel, ensure the weather seal is correctly installed



Removing and installing top trim panel of C pillar (Octavia Estate)

1 - 40 Nm

2 - Cover panel

3 - Seat belt guide fitting

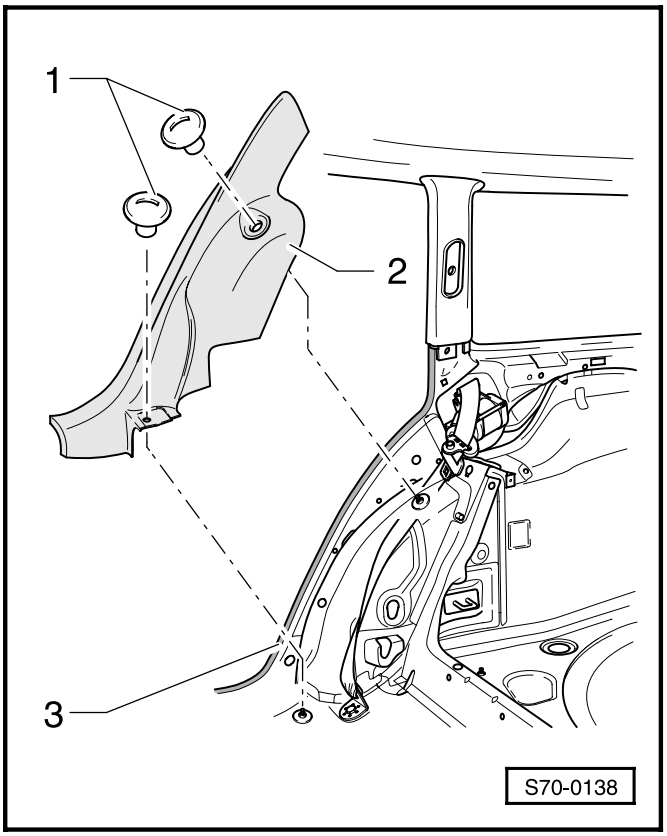
4 - Screw

5 - Trim panel

- ♦ Removing:
- Remove supports for luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 70-12.3.
- Take off cap -2-, remove screw -1- and take off seat belt guide fitting -3-.
- Remove screw -4-.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

6 - Weatherseal

- ♦ After installing trim panel, ensure the weatherseal is correctly located.



Removing and installing bottom trim panel of C pillar (Octavia Estate)

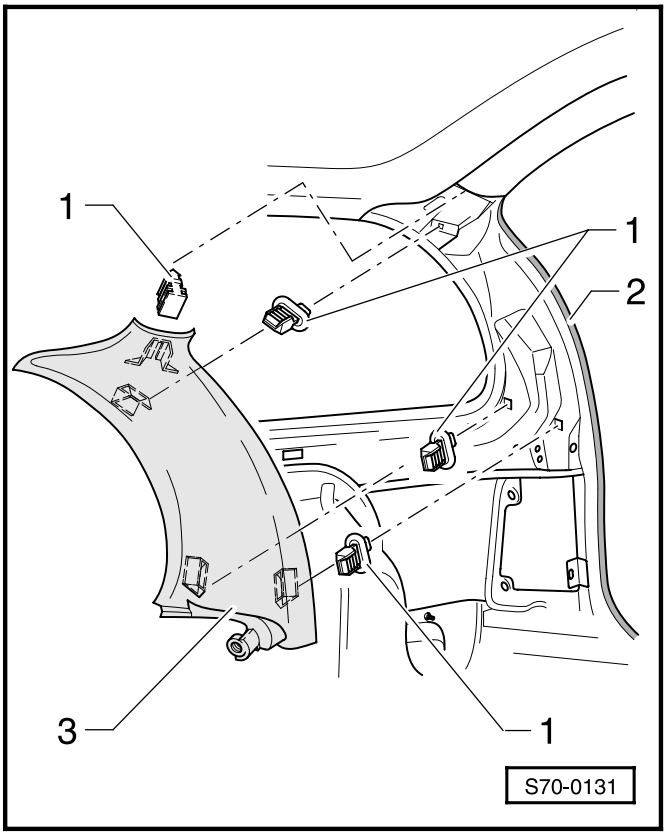
1 - Plastic push-fit nut

2 - Trim panel

- ♦ Removing:
- Release backrest and fold forward.
- Unscrew plastic nuts -1-.
- Take off trim panel in direction of travel.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

3 - Weatherseal

- ♦ After installing the trim panel, ensure the weatherseal is correctly installed.



Removing and installing trim panel of D pillar (Octavia Estate)

1 - Retaining clips

- ♦ Inserted into trim panel of D pillar

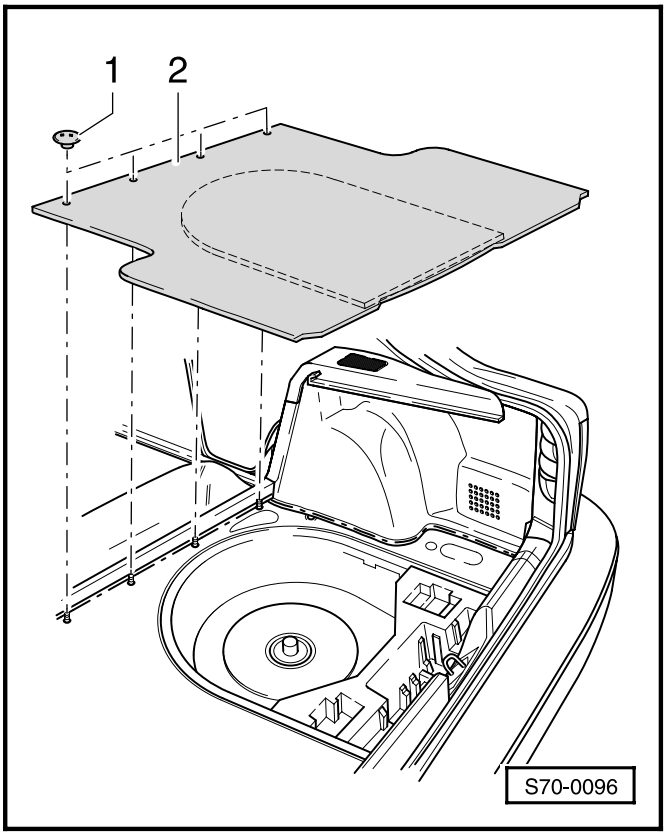
2 - Weatherseal

- ♦ After installing trim panel, ensure the weatherseal is correctly located

3 - Trim panel

- ♦ Removing:
- Remove mounts for luggage compartment cover ⇒ page 70-12.3.
- Lever trim panel off D pillar.
- ♦ Installing:
- Correctly install the retaining clips -1- or replace.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

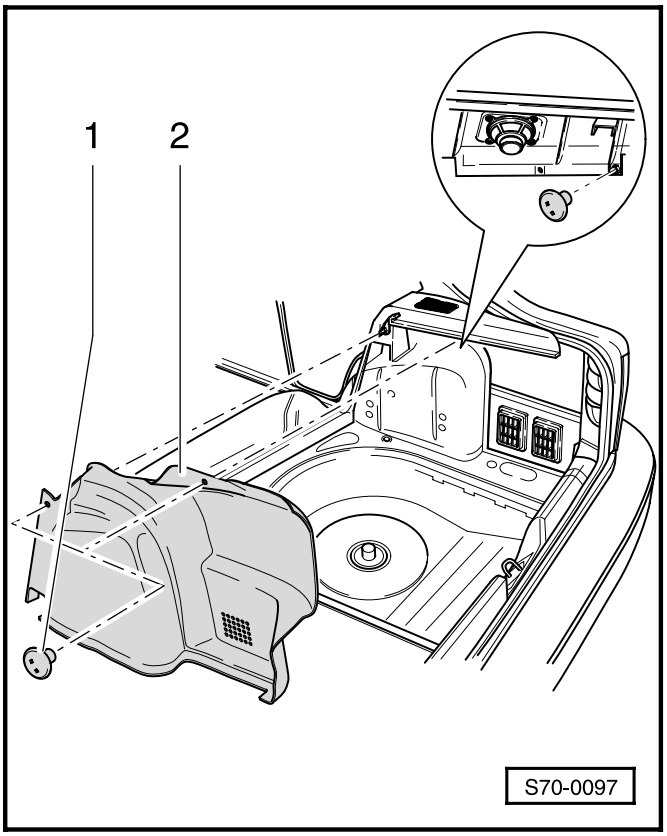
Trim panels of cargo area and luggage compartment



Removing and installing trim panel of luggage compartment floor

1 - Snap fastener

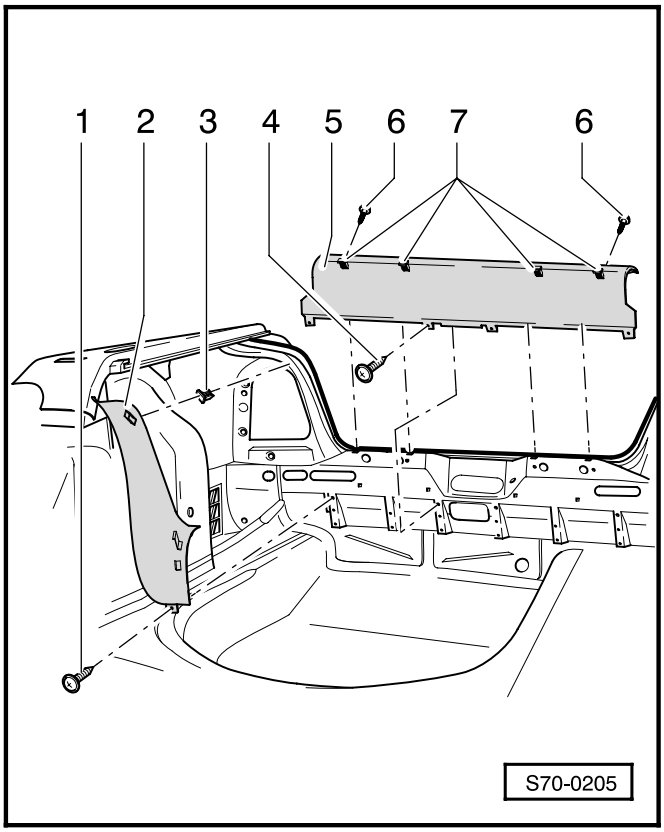
2 - Trim panel of luggage compartment floor
- ♦ Removing:
- Unscrew snap fasteners -1- and take out trim panel -2-.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing side luggage compartment trim panel

1 - Snap fastener

2 - Luggage compartment trim panel
- ♦ Removing:
- Release backrest and fold forward.
- Remove bottom trim panel of C pillar ⇒ page 70-9.
- Unscrew snap fasteners -1-.
- Take off luggage compartment trim panel.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing cover panels of rear luggage opening

1 - Screw

2 - Right cover panel of luggage opening
- ♦ Left cover panel of luggage opening is installed as a mirror image.
- ♦ Removing:
- Take out screws -1-.
- Pull cover panel off clip -3-.
- ♦ Installing:
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

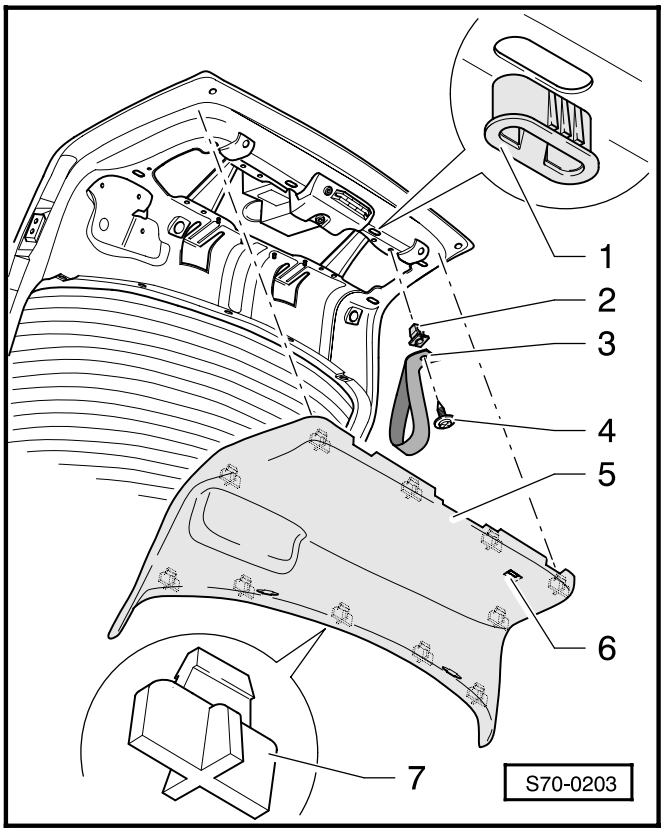
3 - Clip

4 - Screw

5 - Cover panel of luggage opening
- ♦ Removing:
- Take out screws -4- and -6-.
- Pull cover panel up and off clip -7-.
- ♦ Installing:
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

6 - Screw

7 - Clip



Removing and installing tailgate trim panel
Models ➤ 07.00

1 - Plastic clip

2 - Plastic nut
- ♦ Pressed into tailgate.

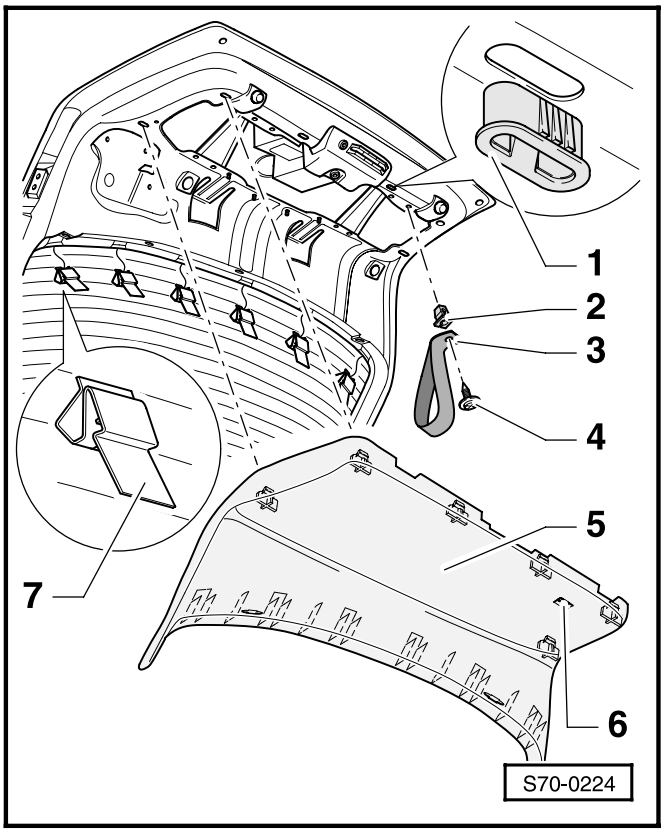
3 - Pull loop
- ♦ Must be inserted through opening -6- when installing trim panel.

4 - Screw

5 - Trim panel
- ♦ Removing:
- Pull trim panel off the tailgate.
- ♦ Installing:
- Insert trim panel and attach to the plastic clips -1- by means of the clamps -7-.

6 - Opening for pull loop

7 - Clamp
- ♦ Part of trim panel.



Removing and installing tailgate trim panel
Models 08.00 ➤

1 - Plastic clip

2 - Plastic nut
- ♦ Pressed into tailgate.

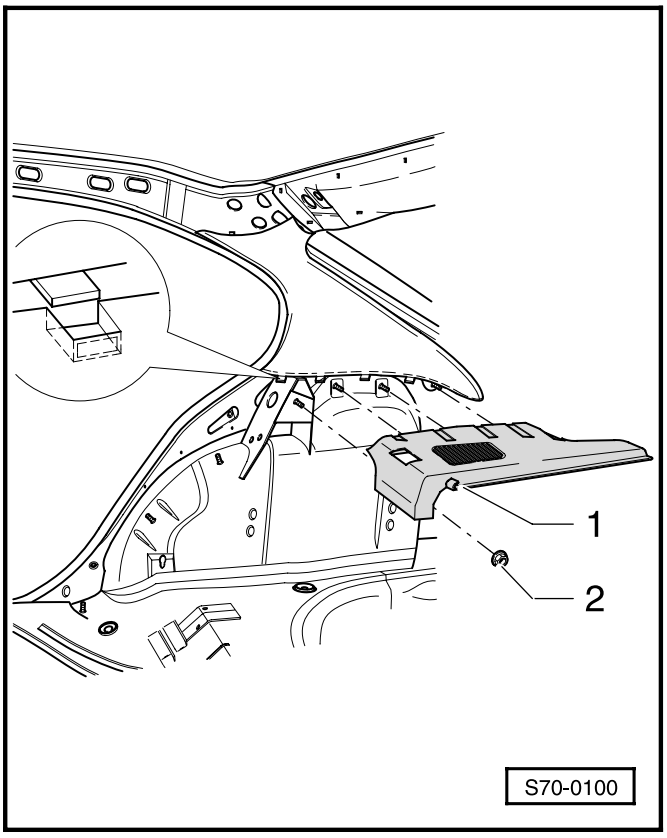
3 - Pull loop
- ♦ Must be inserted through opening -6- when installing trim panel.

4 - Screw

5 - Trim panel
- ♦ Removing:
- Pull trim panel off the tailgate.
- ♦ Installing:
- Insert trim panel using metal clamps -7- and then attach in the plastic clips -1-.

6 - Opening for pull loop

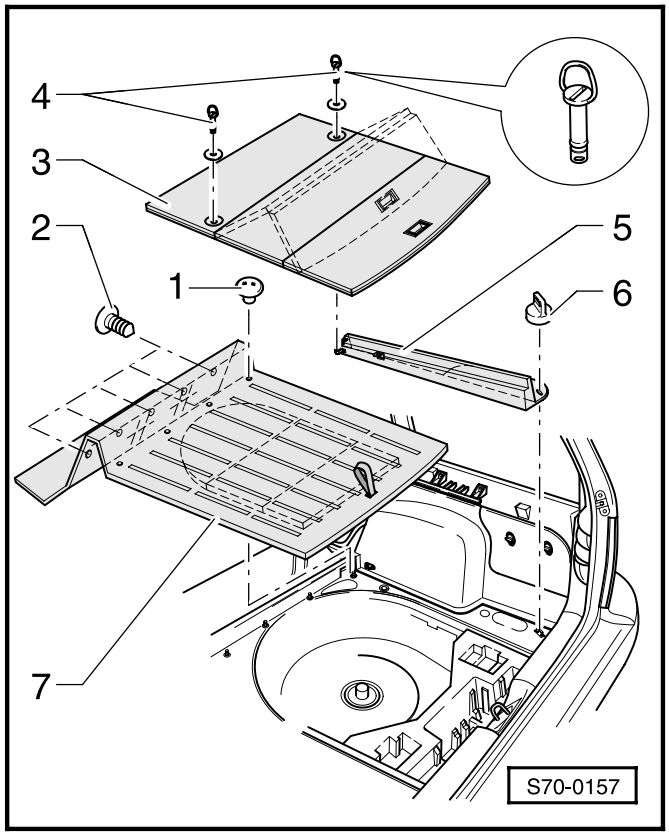
7 - Clip
- ♦ Insert into openings of tailgate panel.



Removing and installing luggage compartment cover mounting

1 - Support for luggage compartment cover, right
- ♦ Removing:
- Take off luggage compartment cover.
- Remove rear belt guide ⇒ page 69-3.
- Turn down nut -2-.
- Pull off bracket.

2 - Nut



Summary of components of luggage compartment floor (Octavia Estate)

1 - Plastic plug

2 - Retaining clip

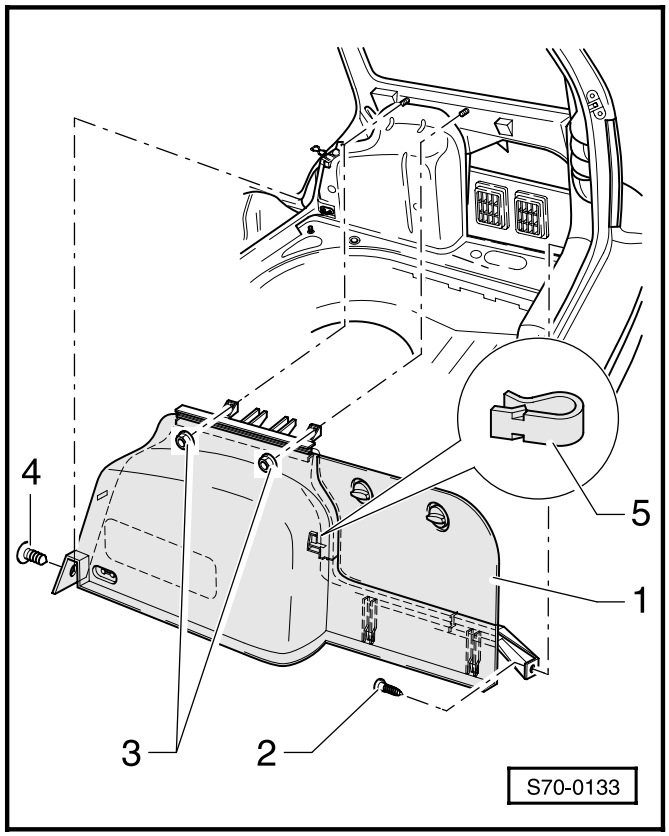
3 - Luggage compartment floor
- ♦ Removing:
- Turn locking pin -4- 90° to the left and take off.
- Fold together floor covering and remove.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

4 - Locking pin

5 - Support
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove luggage compartment floor cover -3-.
- Turn securing eye -6- 90° to the right and take out.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

6 - Securing eye

7 - Carpeting of luggage compartment floor
- ♦ Removing:
- Unscrew plastic plug -1-.
- Take off retaining clip -2-.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Summary of components of side luggage compartment trim panel (Octavia Estate)

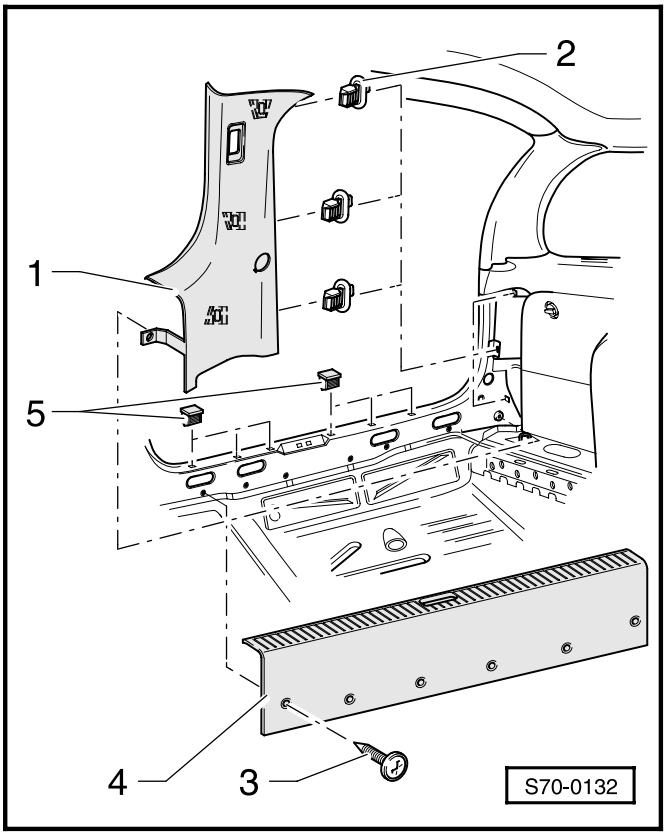
1 - Trim panel
- ♦ Removing:
- Take off backrest ⇒ page 72-4.
- Take out retaining clip -4-.
- Remove top trim panel of luggage compartment ⇒ page 70-12.3.
- Unscrew plastic nuts -3-.
- Remove screws -2-.
- Take off retaining clip -5-.
- Pull off trim panel, push in direction of travel and remove.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Screw

3 - Plastic nut

4 - Retaining clip

5 - Retaining clip



Summary of removing and installing trim panels of loading sill (Octavia Estate)

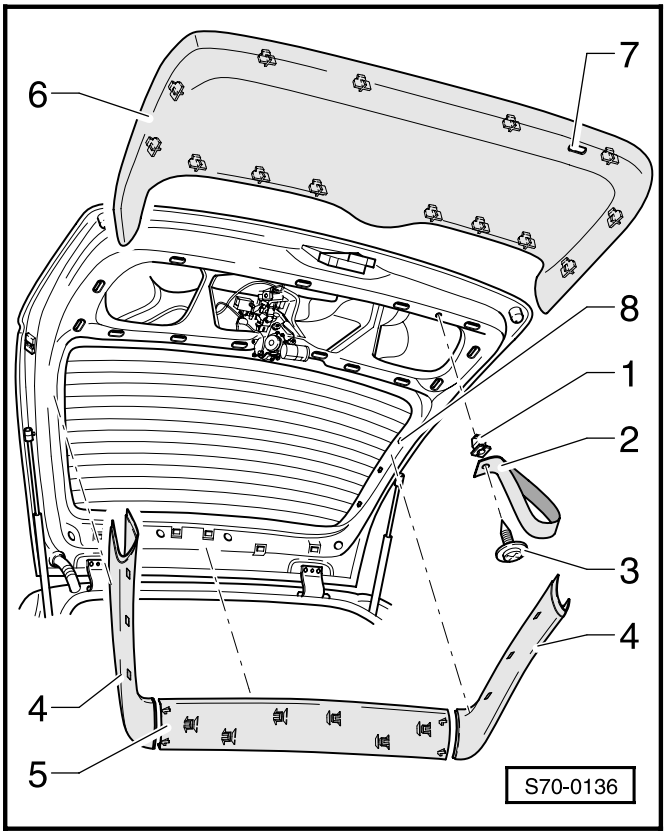
1 - Right loading sill trim panel
- ♦ Left loading sill trim panel is a mirror image.
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove loading sill trim panel -4-.
- Separate plug connections and luggage compartment lighting.
- Pull cover off clips -2-.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Clip

3 - Screws

4 - Loading sill trim panel
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove screws -3-.
- Pull trim panel up and off the clips -5-.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 - Clip



Summary of components of tailgate trim panel (Octavia Estate)

1 - Plastic nut

2 - Pull loop
- ♦ Pull through the opening -7- when installing trim panel -6-.

3 - Screw

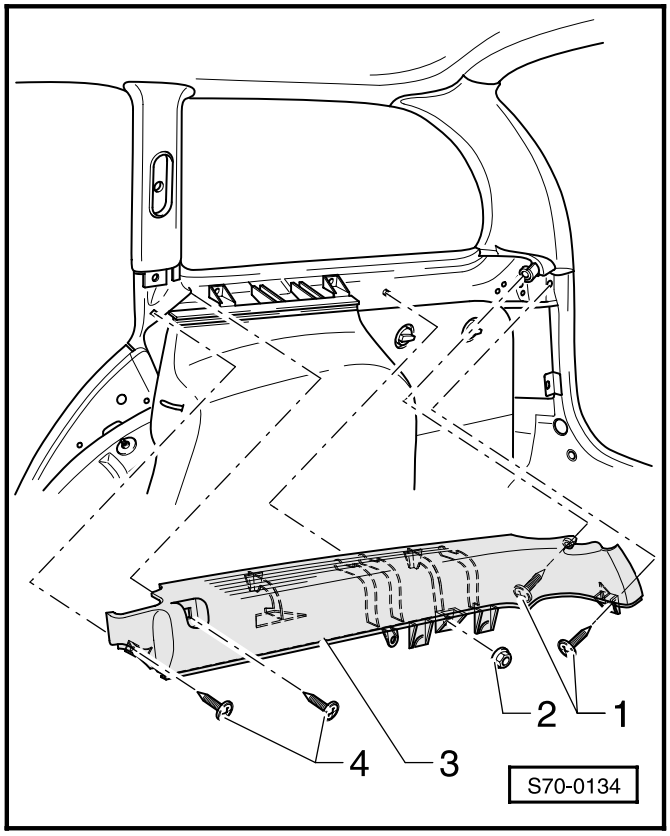
4 - Side trim panel
- ♦ Removing: Pull trim panel off the clips -8-.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

5 - Centre trim panel
- ♦ Removing: Pull trim panel off the tailgate.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

6 - Tailgate trim panel
- ♦ Removing: Pull trim panel off tailgate.
- ♦ Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

7 - Opening for pull loop

8 - Clips



Summary of components of luggage compartment cover support (Octavia Estate)

1 - Screws

2 - Plastic nut

3 - Luggage compartment cover support

♦ Removing:
- Remove luggage compartment cover.
- Remove trim panel of bottom pillar C ⇒ page 70-9.1.
- Release screws -1- and -4-.
- Slacken plastic nuts -2-.

Notes:

Support for luggage compartment cover are fastened with two plastic nuts.

- Disconnect plug connections for loud speaker.
- Unclip safety belt.
- Remove luggage compartment cover support -3-.

♦ Installation is performed in the reverse order.

4 - Screws

Removing and installing foldable retainers in luggage compartment (Octavia Combi 4x4 and RS)

Notes:

On the vehicles Octavia Combi RS only the front retainers are foldable, the rear retainers are not foldable.

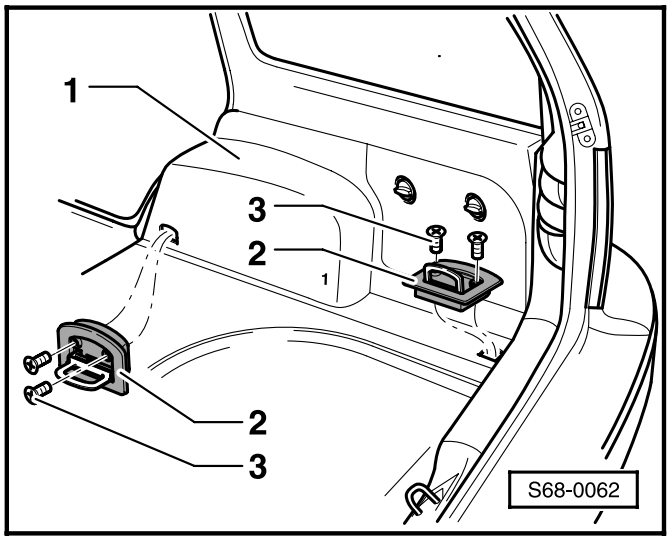
Removing

◄ - Remove screws -3- (5.5 Nm)

- Take retainer -2- out of the side trim panel -1-.

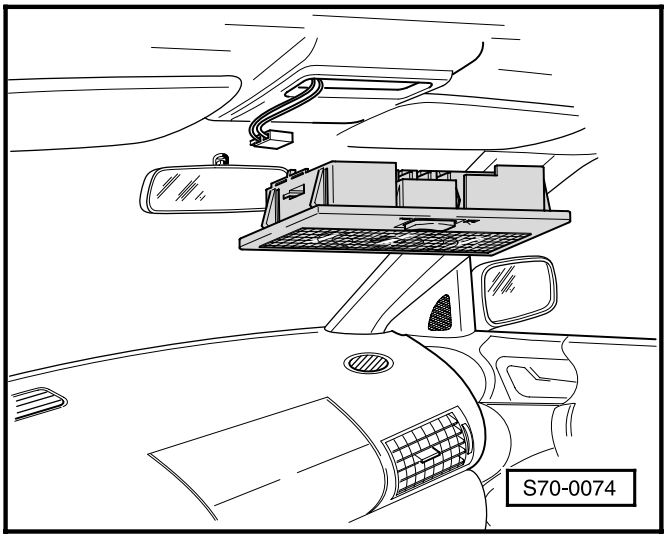
Installing:

Installation is performed in the reverse order.



Roof trim

Moulded headliner

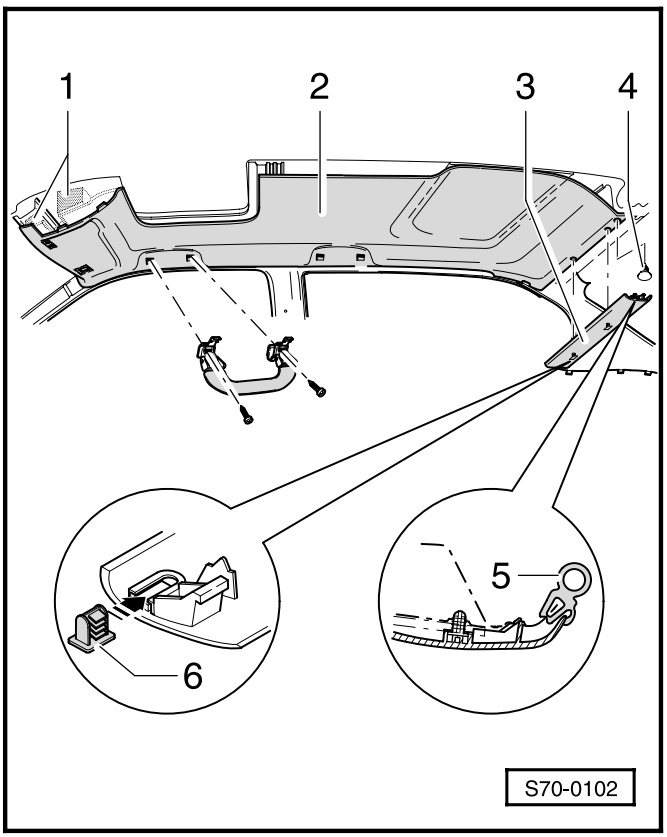


Removing:

- Disconnect earth strap of battery.

◄ - Use a screwdriver to carefully lever out interior light and separate plug connection.

- Remove cover for sliding roof motor ⇒ page 60-7.
- Remove top trim panel of B pillar ⇒ page 70-8.
- Remove trim panel of A pillar ⇒ page 70-7.
- Remove top trim panel of C pillar ⇒ page 70-9.
- Pull off door weatherseals in top half and weatherseals of tailgate.
- Pull off piping of sliding roof opening (only on models with sliding roof).



- Remove sun visor ⇒ page 68-5.
- Remove grab handles ⇒ page 68-5.
- Remove rear reading light ⇒ page 68-5.

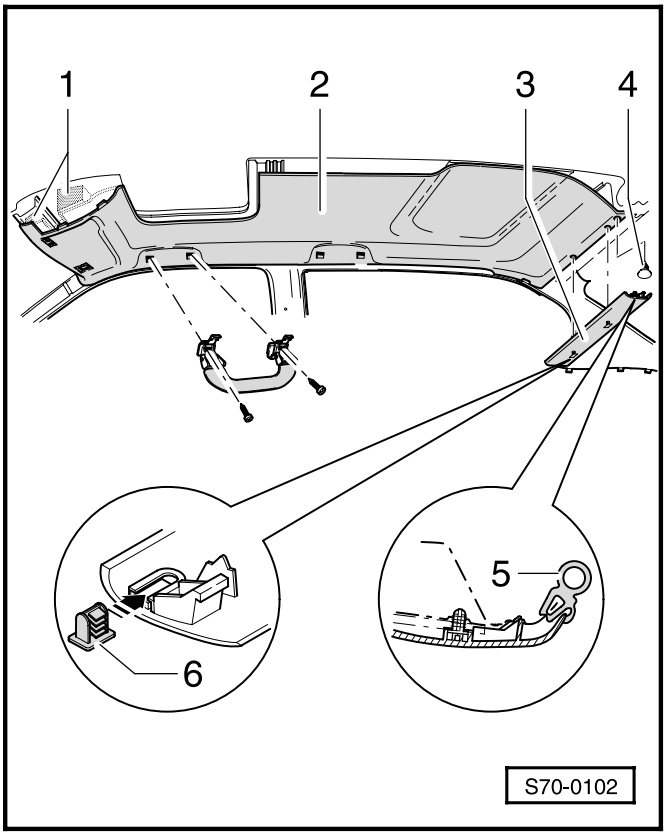
◄ - Pull cover strip -3- down and off the roof frame (clipped in place).

- Use removal tool MP 8-602/1 to pull out plug -4-.
- Lower moulded headliner -2- (have a second mechanic assist you) (risk of fracture) and take it out of the vehicle.

Installing:

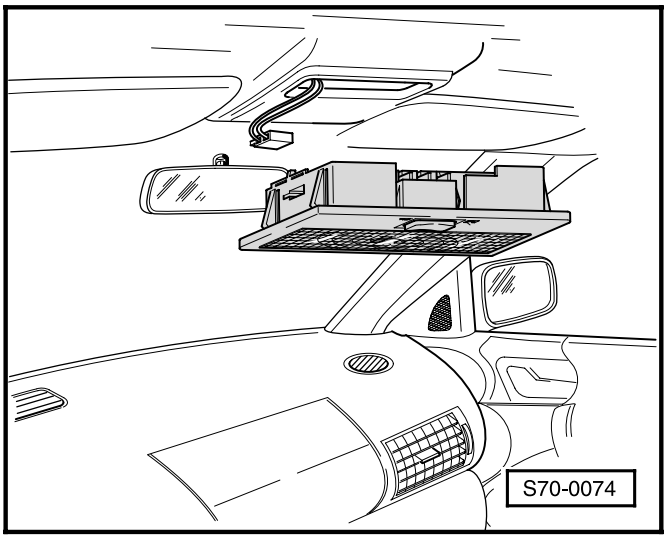
Notes:

- *Before fitting on the cover strip -3- make sure that the clips -6- are correctly positioned.*
- *Spacer -1- is glued onto the front of the moulded headliner.*



- Align moulded headliner -2- at the front to the mountings of the sun visors and at the rear to the openings of the plugs -4-.
- Press in plugs -4-.
- Attach front sun visors.
- Clip cover strip -3- into roof frame.
- Correctly install weatherseal -5-.
- On models with sliding roof, install piping of sliding roof opening.
- Fit on attached parts.

Removing and installing moulded headliner (Octavia Estate)

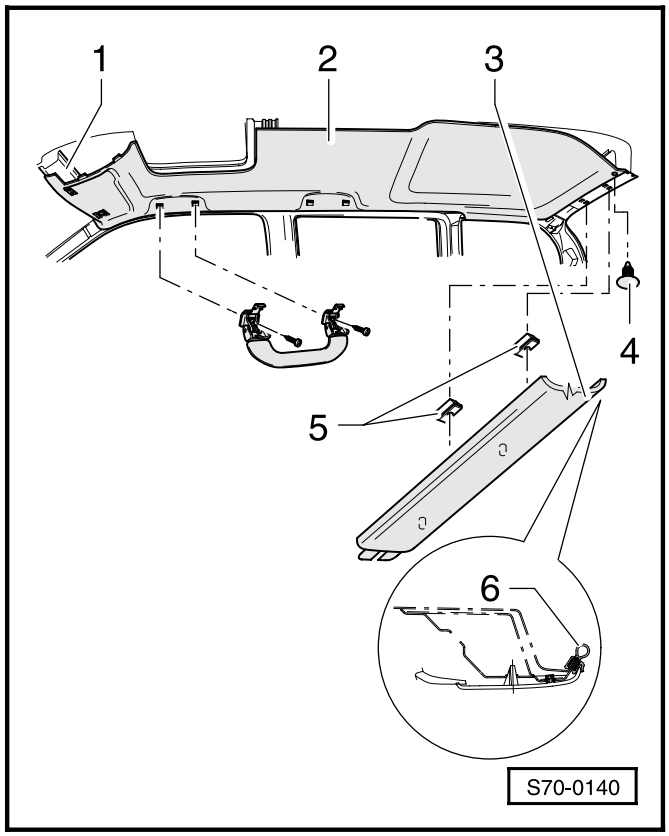


Removing:

- Disconnect earth strap of battery.

◄- Use a screwdriver to carefully lever out interior light and separate plug connection.

- Remove cover for sliding roof motor ⇒ page 60-7.
- Remove top trim panel of B pillar ⇒ page 70-8.
- Remove trim panel of A pillar ⇒ page 70-7.
- Remove top trim panel of C pillar ⇒ page 70-9.1.
- Remove trim panel of D pillar ⇒ page 70-9.2.
- Pull off door weatherseals in top half and weatherseals of tailgate.



- Pull off piping of sliding roof opening (only on models with sliding roof).
- Remove sun visors ⇒ page 68-5.
- Remove grab handles ⇒ page 68-5.
- Remove rear reading light ⇒ page 68-5.

◄ - Pull cover strip -3- down and off the roof frame (clipped in place).

- Use removal tool MP 8-602/1 to pull out plug -4-.
- Lower moulded headliner -2- (have a second mechanic assist you) (risk of fracture) and take it out of the vehicle.

Installing:

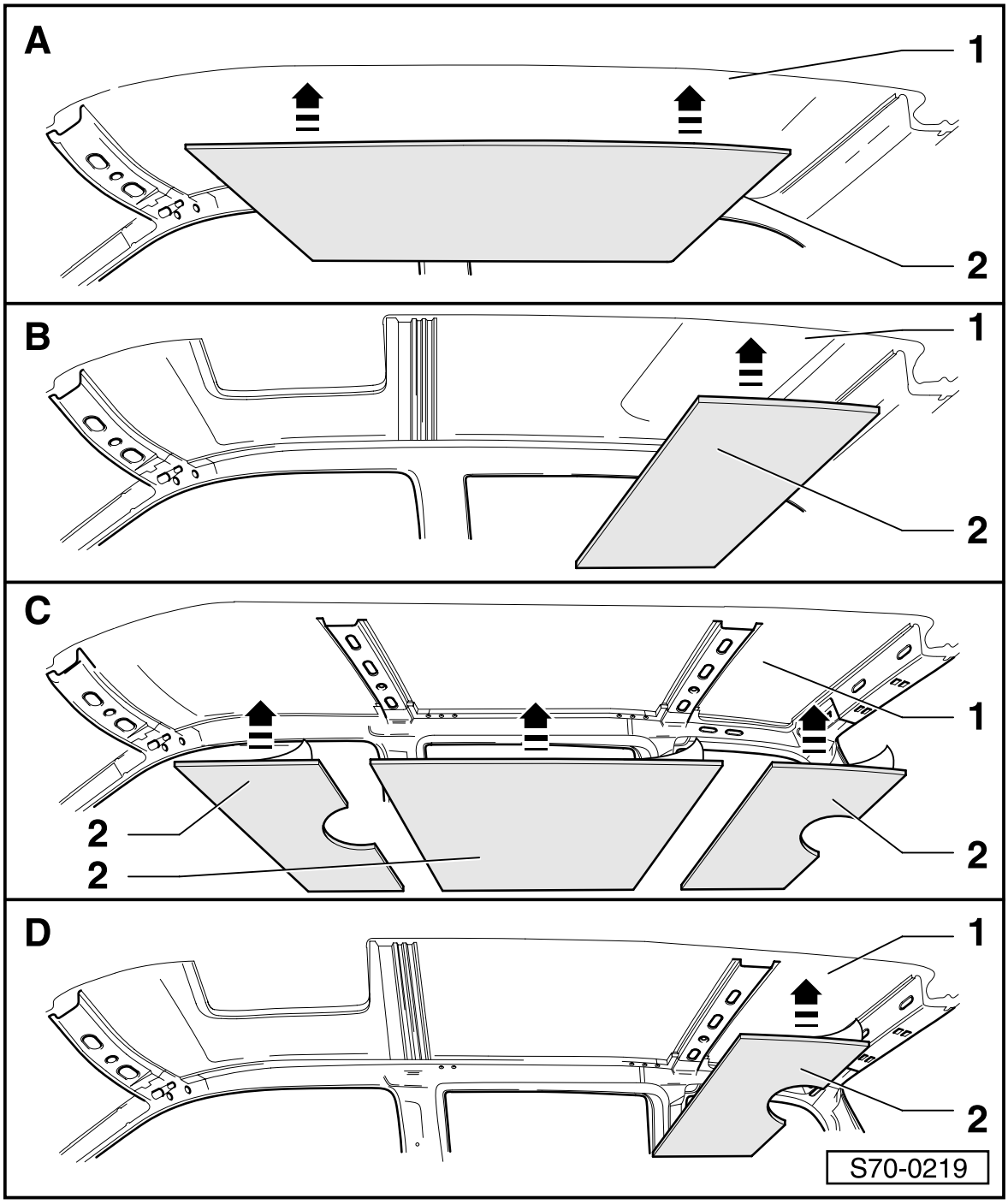
Notes:

- *Before fitting on the cover strip -3- make sure that the clips -5- are correctly positioned.*
- *Spacer -1- is glued onto the rear of the moulded headliner.*

- Align moulded headliner -2- at the front to the mountings of the sun visors and at the rear to the openings of the plugs -4-.
- Press in plugs -4-.
- Attach front sun visors.
- Clip cover strip -3- into roof frame.
- Correctly install weatherseal -6-.
- On models with sliding roof, install piping of sliding roof opening.
- Fit on attached parts.

Roof noise insulation

Assembly overview of roof noise insulation



1 - Roof

2 - Noise insulation panel

- ♦ Removing:
- Remove headliner ⇒ page 70-13, page 70-14 resp.
- Detach noise insulation panel -2- from roof -1-.
- ♦ Installing:
- Bond noise insulation panel -2- to roof -1- with glue (version C, D), or with adhesive DH 009 100 03 (version A, B).
- Install headliner ⇒ page 70-13, page 70-14 resp.

Notes:

A applies to OCTAVIA models without tilt roof.

B applies to OCTAVIA models with tilt roof.

C applies to OCTAVIA ESTATE models without tilt roof.

D applies to OCTAVIA ESTATE models with tilt roof.

Front seats

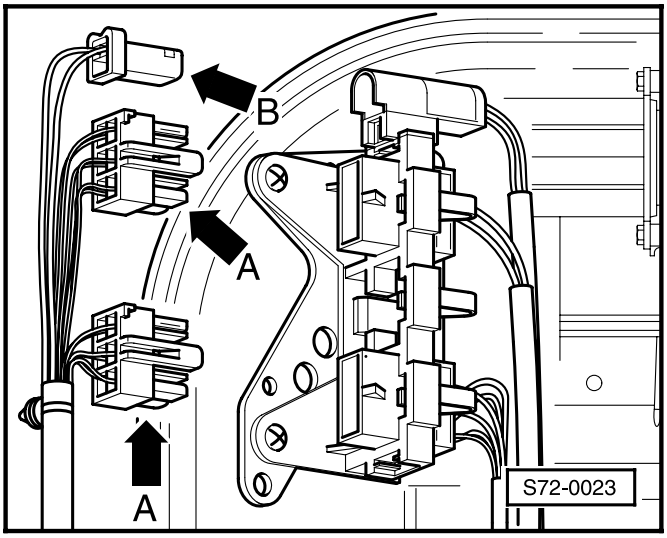
Removing and installing seat

Valid for vehicles with side airbag

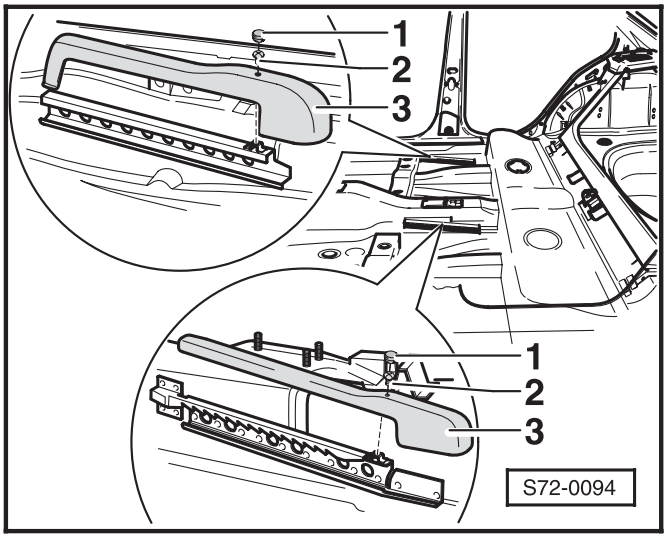
Warning!

When manipulating a seat fitted with a side airbag unit observe the safety instructions ⇒ page 69-8.

- Disconnect negative terminal of the battery



◄ - Unplug connector for seat heater -arrows A- (on vehicles with electrically heated seats) and disconnect side airbag -arrow B- on underside of seat (if necessary disconnect plug connection for seat belt buckle signaling).

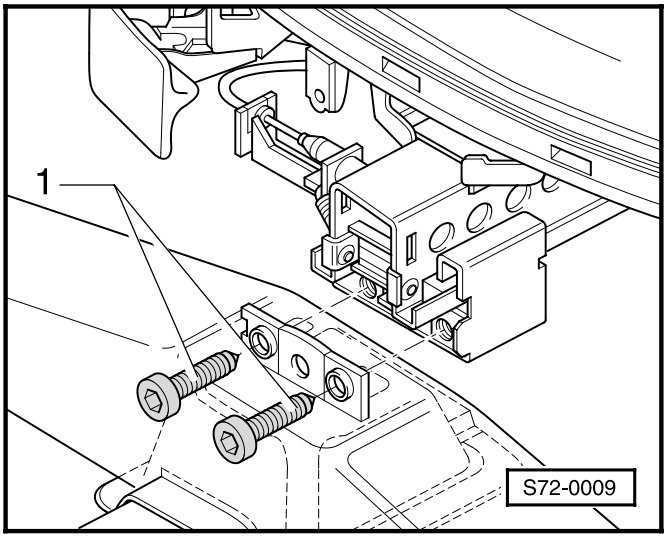


Valid for all vehicles

- Push seat fully forward.
- Pull out caps -1-

◄ - Take out screws -2- and pull out cover strips -3- facing upwards.

- Push seat fully backward.



◄ - Unscrew screws or nuts -1-.

- Release catch rod and push seat fully backward out of the runners.

Installing seat

The installation is carried out in the reverse order

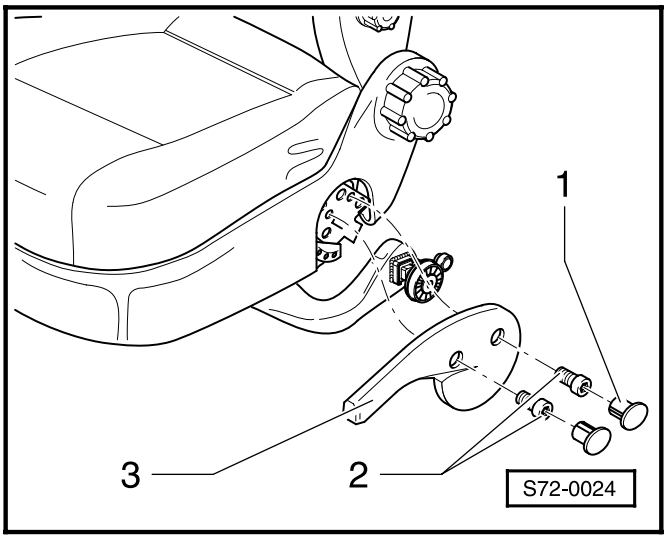
- Tighten screws or nuts -1- with a tightening torque of 23 Nm.

Valid for vehicles with side airbag

- Switch the ignition on before connecting the battery.

Warning!

Nobody should be in the vehicle when the battery is being connected.

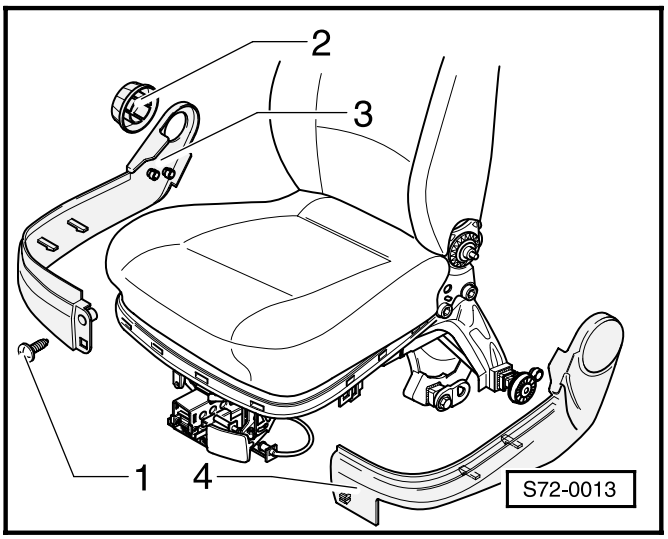


◄ Removingm seat height adjustment handle

- Take off caps -1-.
- Remove screws -2-.
- Take off seat height adjustment handle -3-.

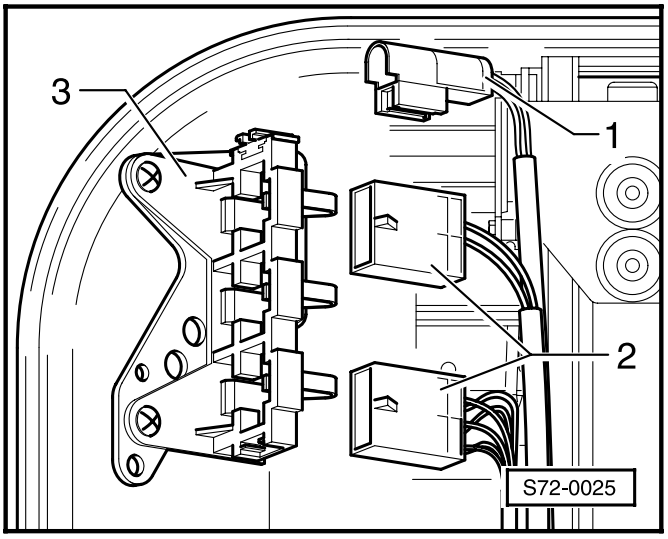
Installing seat height adjustment handle

Installation of the seat height adjustment handle is performed in the reverse order. Tightening torque of the screws -2- is 6 Nm.



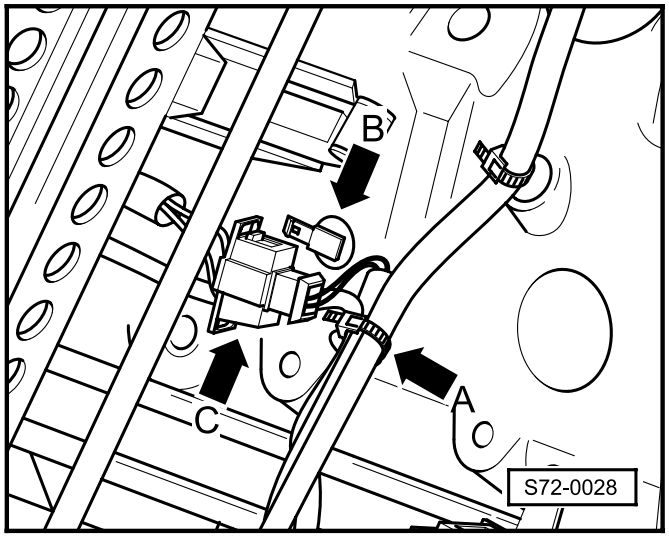
Removing backrest frame from seat frame

- Remove front seat ⇒ page 72-1.
- Remove seat height adjustment handle ⇒ page 72-2.
- ◄ - Pull off adjusting knob -2-.
- Take out screw -1-.
- Release catches of trim panel halves -3- and -4- from frame and take off trim panel halves.



Models fitted with heated backrest and airbag unit

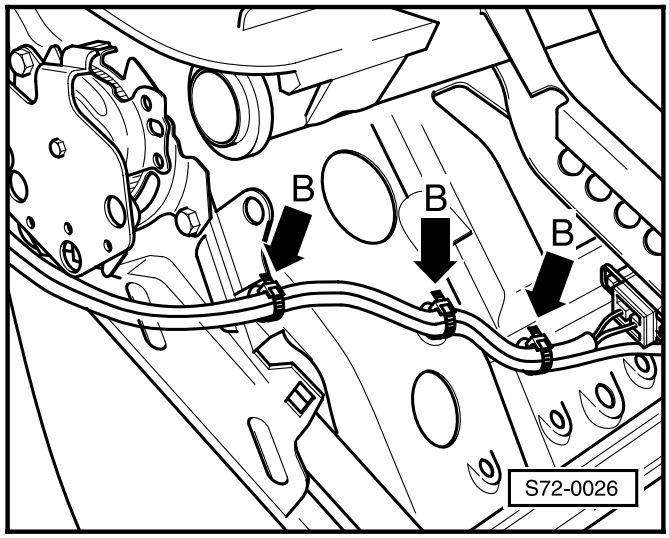
- ◄ - Unplug connector of side airbag unit -1- and of seat heater -2- (also connector for belt buckle signal if necessary) from connector holder -3- (underside of seat).



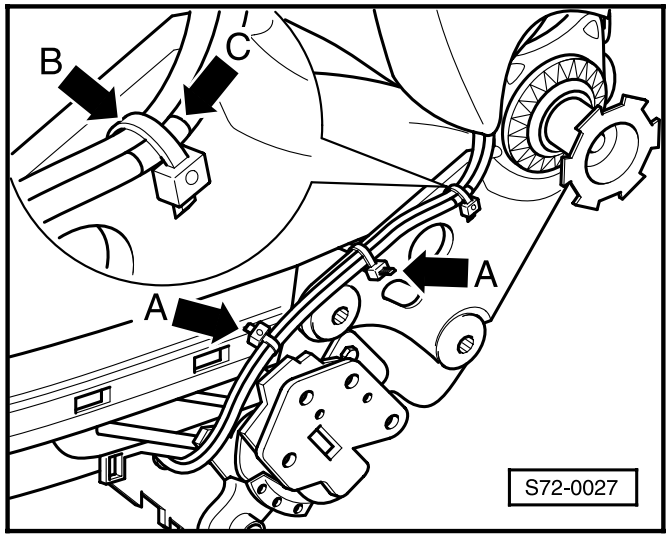
◄- Detach strap of electric cable -arrow A- on the bottom side of the seat.

- Take connector of electric cable for backrest heater off the seat frame -arrow B-.

- Unplug connector of electric cable for backrest heater -arrow C-.



◄- Detach straps of electric cable for seat heater and side airbag unit -arrows B- on bottom side of seat.

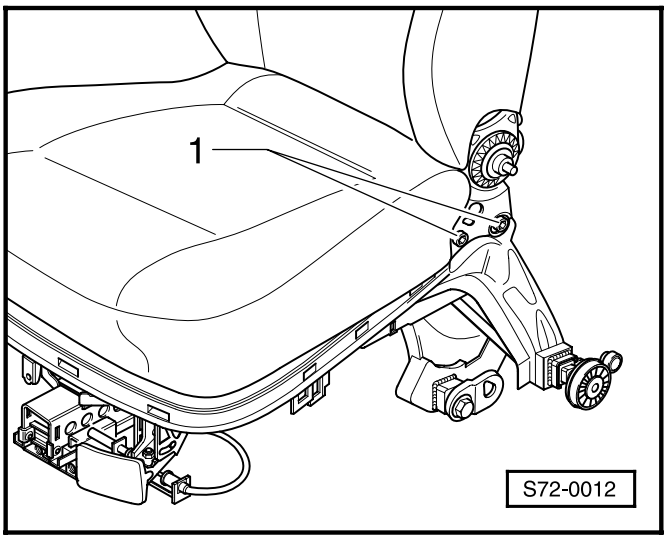


◄- Detach straps of electric cable for backrest heater and side airbag unit -arrows A- on side of seat.

- Detach strap of electric cable of backrest heater and side airbag unit -arrow B- on side of seat.

Note:

Marking on cable -arrow C- for side airbag unit should be aligned with the strap -arrow B- on the side of the seat.



For all models

◄ - Remove screw -1- on both sides of the seat.

- Take off backrest frame from seat frame.

Assembling seat frame and backrest frame

Note:

During installation make sure that all terminals and plugs are installed in the correct positions.

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

- Tighten screws -1- to a tightening torque of 24 Nm.

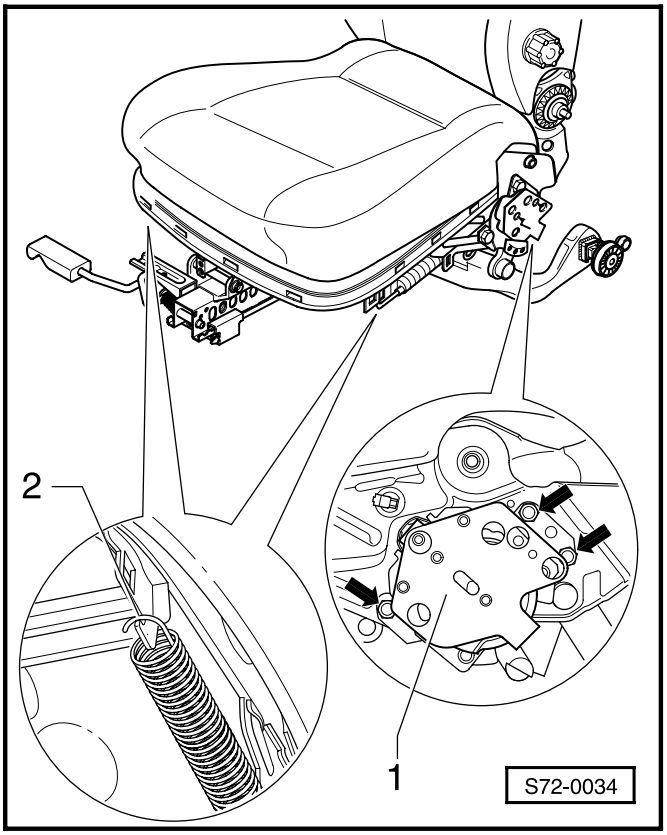
Warning!

Observe safety precautions ⇒ page 69-8.

Removing and installing seat height adjustment elements

Seat removed

Removing:



- Remove handle of seat height adjustment ⇒ page 72-2.

- Remove plastic side covers of seat.

◄ - Carefully unhook tension springs -2-.

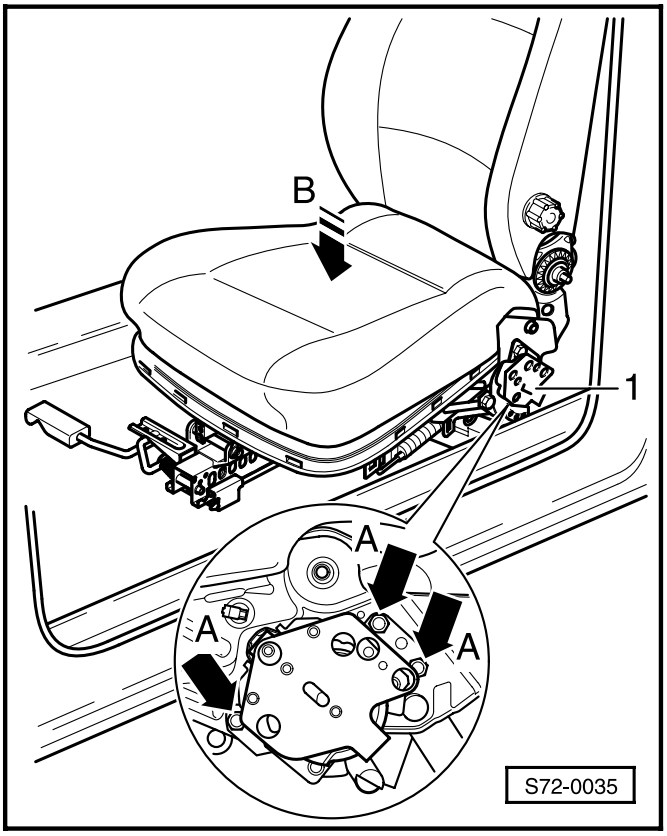
- Remove screws -arrow- and pull seat height adjustment elements -1- out of seat frame.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Note:

Tighten screws -arrow- to a tightening torque of 10 Nm.



Seat installed

Removing:

- Put seat into top position.
- Remove handle of seat height adjustment ⇒ page 72-2.
- Remove plastic side covers of seat ⇒ page 72-2, Removing and installing backrest frame.
- Remove screws -arrow A- and pull out seat height adjustment elements -1-.

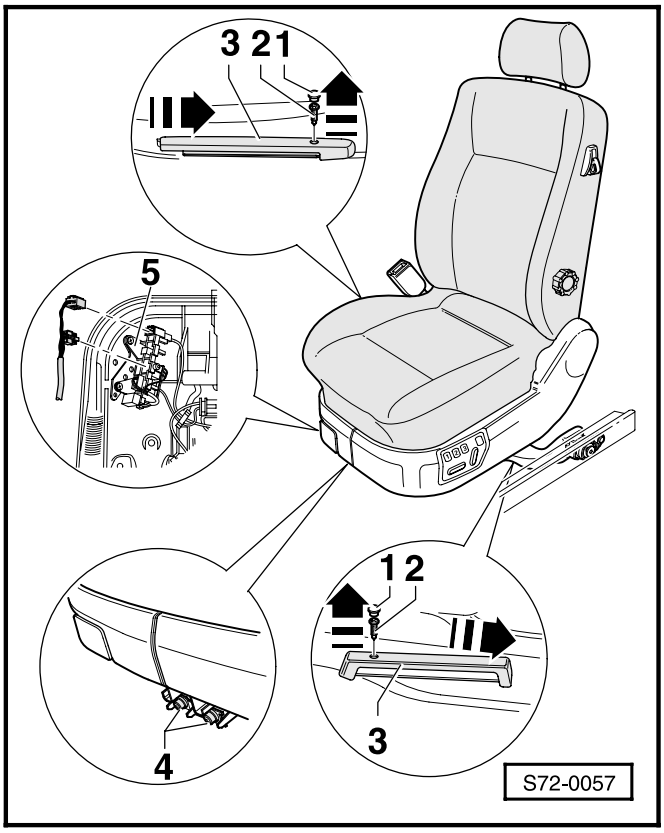
Installing:

- Press down seat -arrow B-.
- Fit on seat height adjustment elements.
- Tighten seat height adjustment elements -1- with screw -arrow A- (10 Nm).
- Fit plastic side covers onto seat ⇒ page 72-2, Removing and installing backrest frame.

Power-operated seats with fault memory

Removing and installing power-operated seats

Removing power-operated seat



Warning!

Pay attention to the safety precautions when working on the power-operated seat with side airbag unit ⇒ page 69-8.

- Push seat fully forward.

◄ - Lever out caps -1-, remove screws -2- and take cover strips out of the guide rails -3- in direction of arrow.

- Push seat back.

- Remove securing screws -4-.

- Push seat fully forward.

Note:

Disconnect the battery before commencing any work on the airbag system. Wait at least 1 minute after disconnecting the battery.

- On vehicles with coded radio set, determine code and enter.

- Disconnect earth strap of battery.

- Push seat out of the guide runners and raise slightly at the front.

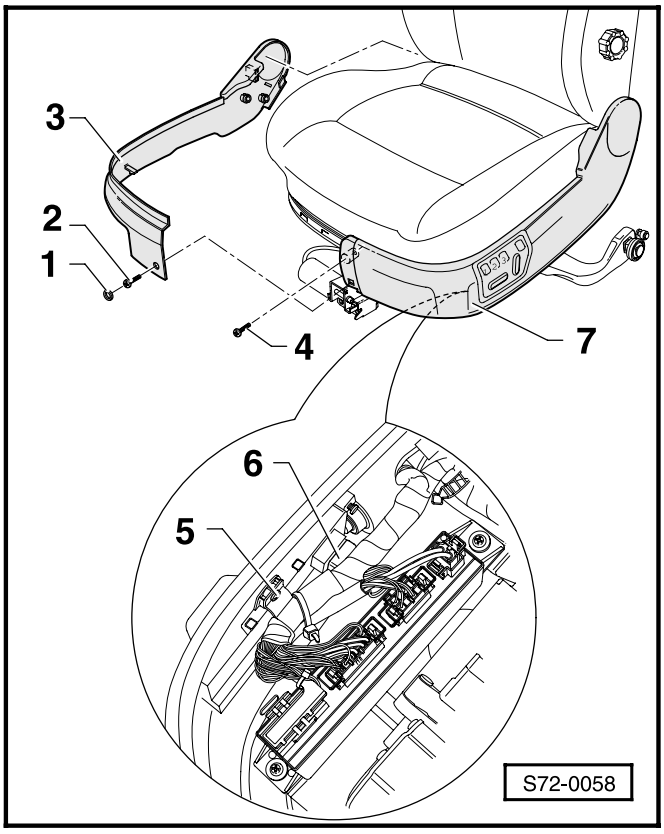
- Separate plug connections from connector holder -5- on underside of seat.

- Take seat out of vehicle.

Installing power-operated seat

Installation is carried out in the reverse order; pay attention to the following points:

- Tighten securing screws to 23 Nm.



- Switch the ignition on before connecting the battery.

Removing and installing covers for electrically operated seats

Removing

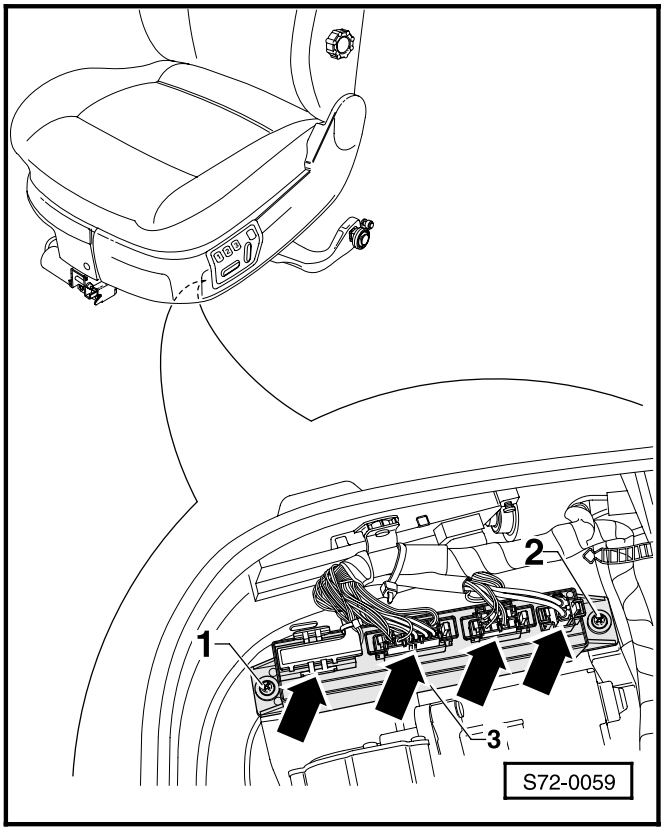
- Remove electrically operated seat ⇒ page 72-3.

◄ - Remove cover -1- and unscrew screw -2-.

- Unclip right cover -3- and remove.
- Unscrew screws -4- and -5-.
- Unplug connector -6-.
- Unclip left cover -7- and remove.

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing control unit for electrically operated seats

Removing

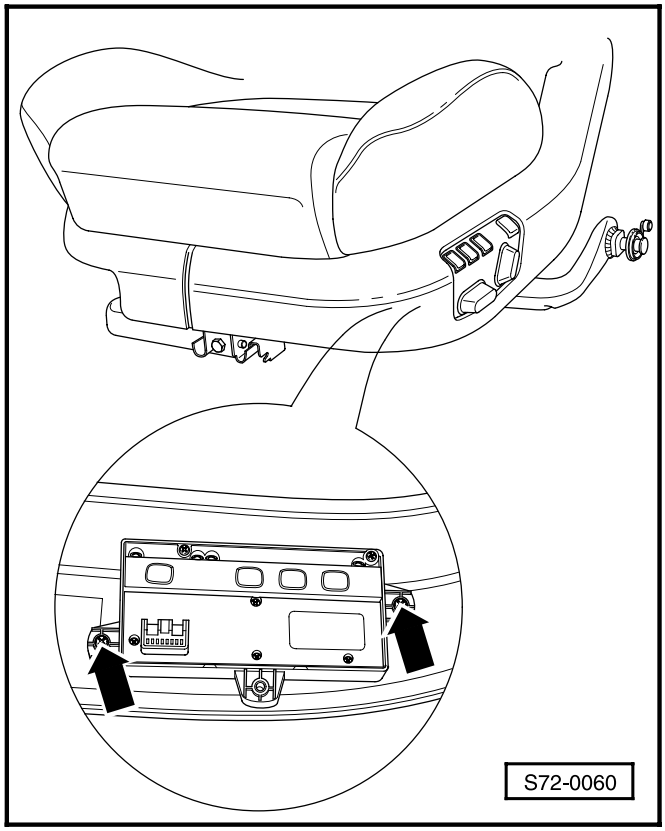
- Remove electrically operated seat ⇒ page 72-3.

◄ - Disconnect plug connections -arrows-.

- Unscrew screws -1- and -2- (2.5 Nm).
- Remove control unit -3- from holder.

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing operating unit for electrically operated seats

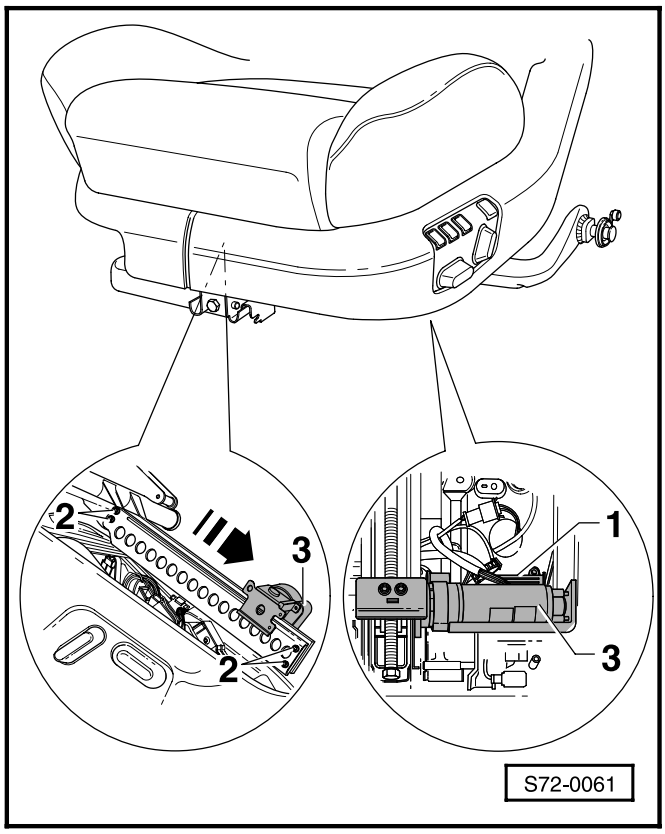
Removing

- Remove electrically operated seat ⇒ page 72-3.
- Disconnect plug connection for operating unit.

◄- Unscrew screws -arrows- (1.5 Nm) and remove the switch unit from the seat upholstery.

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing seat length adjustment unit for electrically operated seats

Removing

- Remove electrically operated seat ⇒ page 72-3.

◄- Disconnect plug connection -1-.

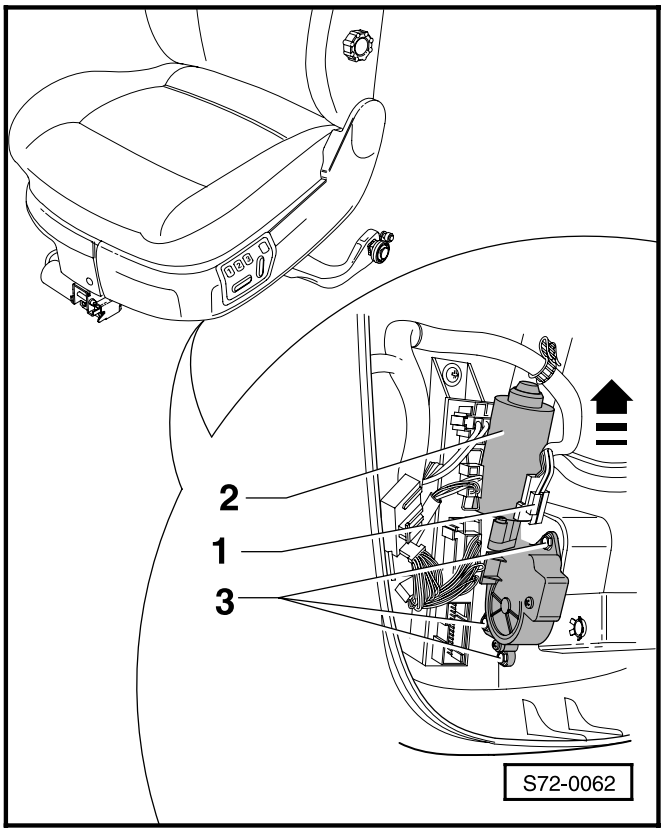
- Unscrew screws -2- on both sides of the worm-type control.
- Pull seat length adjustment of the electrically operated seat in direction of -arrow-.

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Removing and installing front seat height adjustment of power-operated seats

Removing



- Remove power-operated seat ⇒ page 72-3.

◄- Separate plug connection -1-.

- Remove screws -3-.

- Pull out front seat height adjustment -2-.

Installation

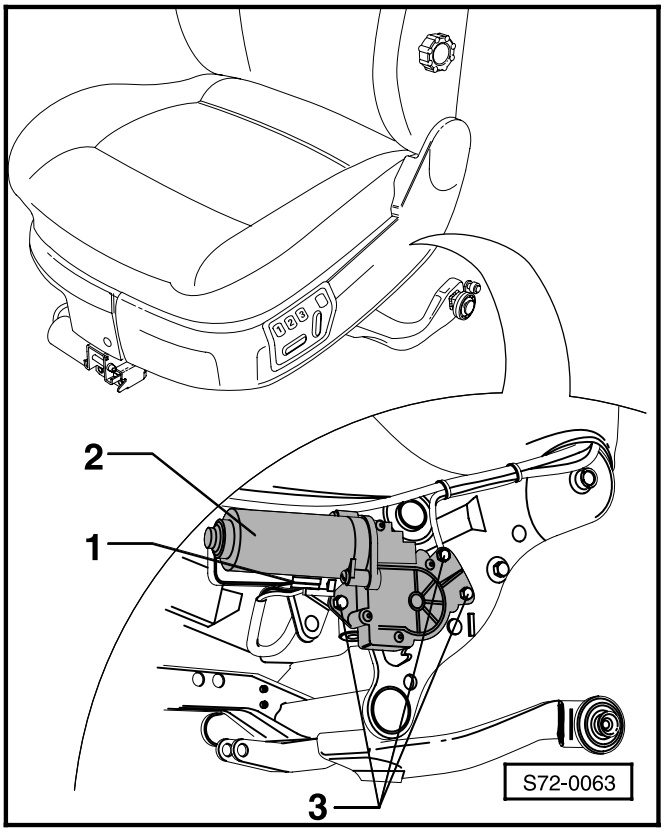
Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

Removing and installing rear seat height adjustment of power-operated seats

Removing

Note:

If possible, move seat height adjustment of power-operated seat up before removing.



- Remove power-operated seat ⇒ page 72-3.

- Remove trim panel of power-operated seat ⇒ page 72-4.

◄- Separate plug connection -1-.

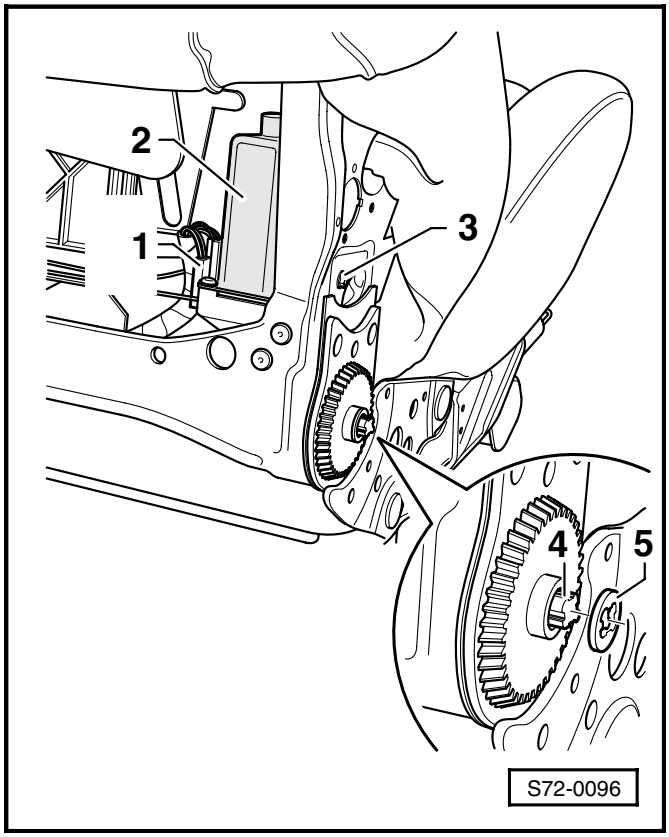
- Detach electric cable from electric motor drive.

- Remove screws -3-.

- Pull out rear seat height adjustment -2-.

Installation

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Removing and installing drive for backrest adjustment unit of electrically operated seats

Removing

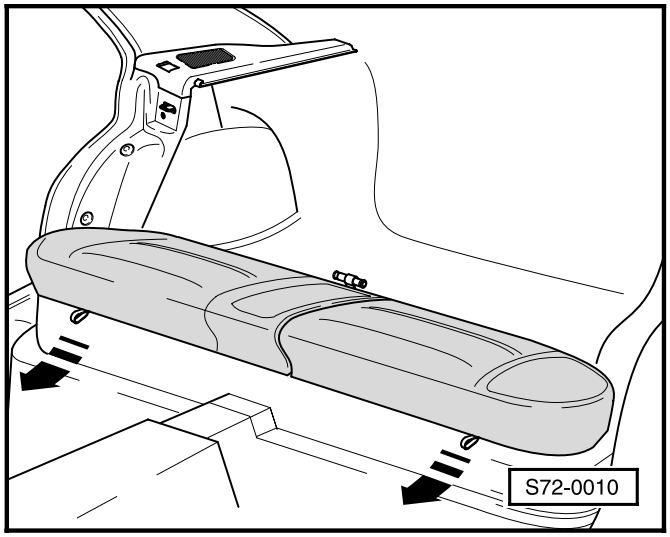
- Remove electrically operated seat ⇒ page 72-3.
- Remove right and left covers for electrically operated seat ⇒ page 72-4.
- Remove the cover around the backrest and fold back the cover to the top ⇒ page 74-2.

◄ - Disconnect plug connection -1-.

- Lever off lock washer -5- from the shaft -4- using a screwdriver.
- Press shaft -4- approx. 150 mm into backrest frame.
- Unscrew screw -3-.
- Remove drive for backrest adjustment -2-.

Installing

The installation is carried out in the reverse order.

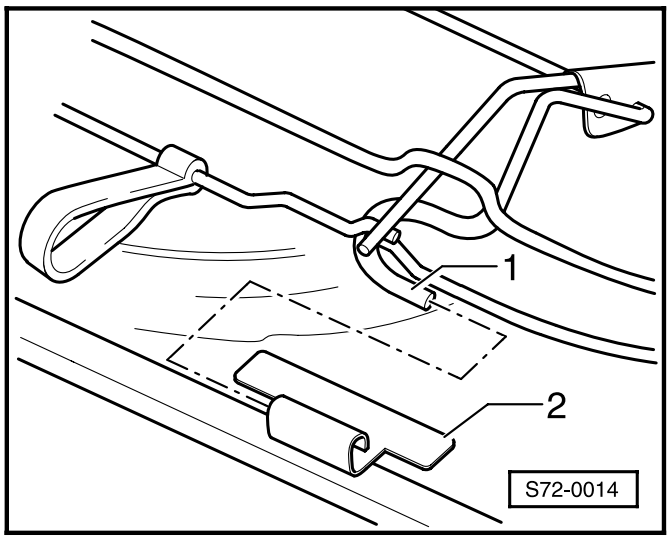


Rear seats

Removing and installing seat bench and backrest

Removing seat bench

◄ - Pull the seat bench at the catches forwards -arrows- and fold open.



◄ - Push out hooks -1- of the seat bench from lugs -2- and remove seat from vehicle.

- Unlock both backrest parts and fold over.

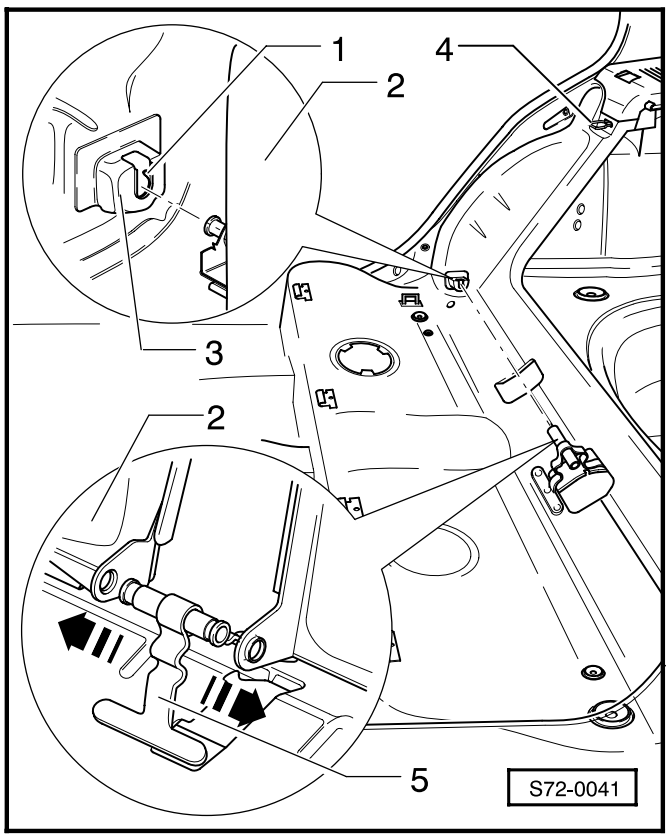
Installing:

Installation is performed in the reverse order.

Removing backrest

- Fold back rear seat bench.

- Unlock backrest upwards and fold forward.



◄ - On the left outer side of the backrest (vehicles without separated backrest) press in the catch hook -1- with a screwdriver and onto both sides of the backrest (vehicles with separated backrest) to the rear.

- Pull the backrest -2- upwards out of the backrest bearings -3-.

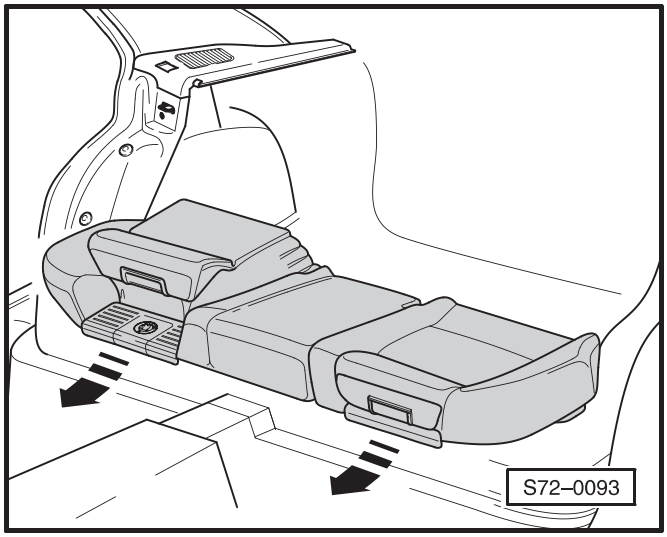
- Remove the backrest -2- from the middle position -5-, or from the side position on the right vehicles without separated backrest).

Note:

It is possible to adjust the position of the lugs -4- for correct locking of the backrest with a rubber hammer.

Installing:

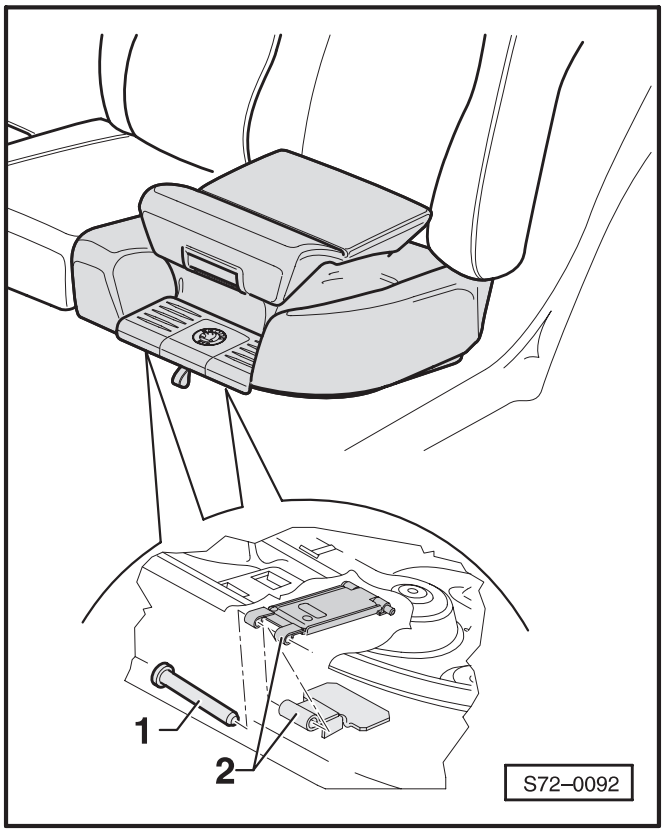
Installation is performed in the reverse order.



Removing and installing a seat bank with child seat

Removing

◄ - Pull the seat bank on its tabs forwards -arrows- and open up.

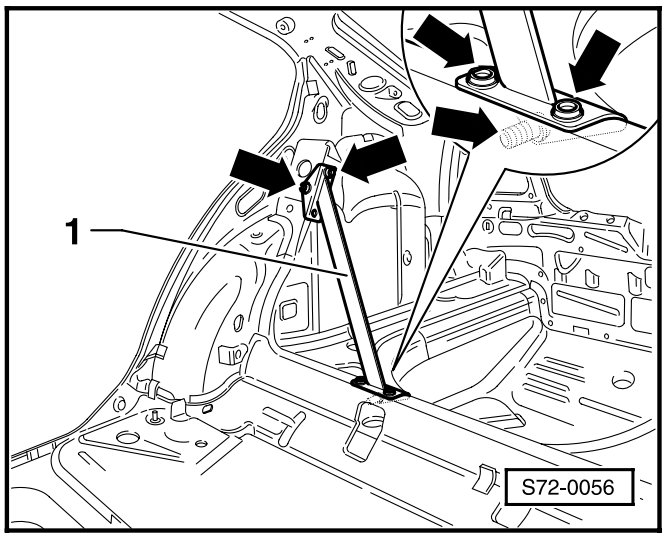


◄ - Push out bolts -1- and -2- and remove the seat bank from the vehicle.

Installing

Installation takes place in the reverse order.

Removing and installing the support for RS (only the Octavia Sedan)



Removing

- Remove the covering of Column C ⇒ Page 70-9.

◄ - Screw out the screws -arrows-.

- Remove the support -1-.

Installing

Installation takes place in the reverse order.

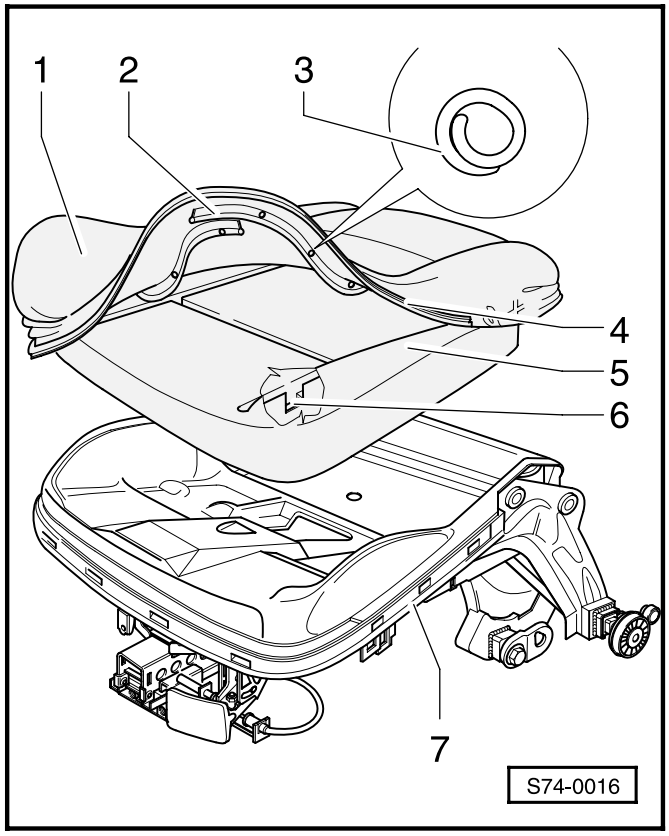
- Tighten up the screws -arrows- to a tightening torque of 24 Nm.

Cover and upholstery of front seat

Special tools, testers and aids required:

- Upholstery pliers e.g. V.A.G 1634
- Upholstery pricker e.g. V.A.G 1636

Removing and installing cover and upholstery of front seat



1 - Cover
- Removing:
- Remove backrest ⇒ page 72-2.
- Pull clamping section -4- out of seat frame -7-.
- Cut through clips -3-.
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

2 - Plastic cord
- Sewn up with cover.
- Provided with holes for receiving the clips -3-.

3 - Clip

4 - Clamping section

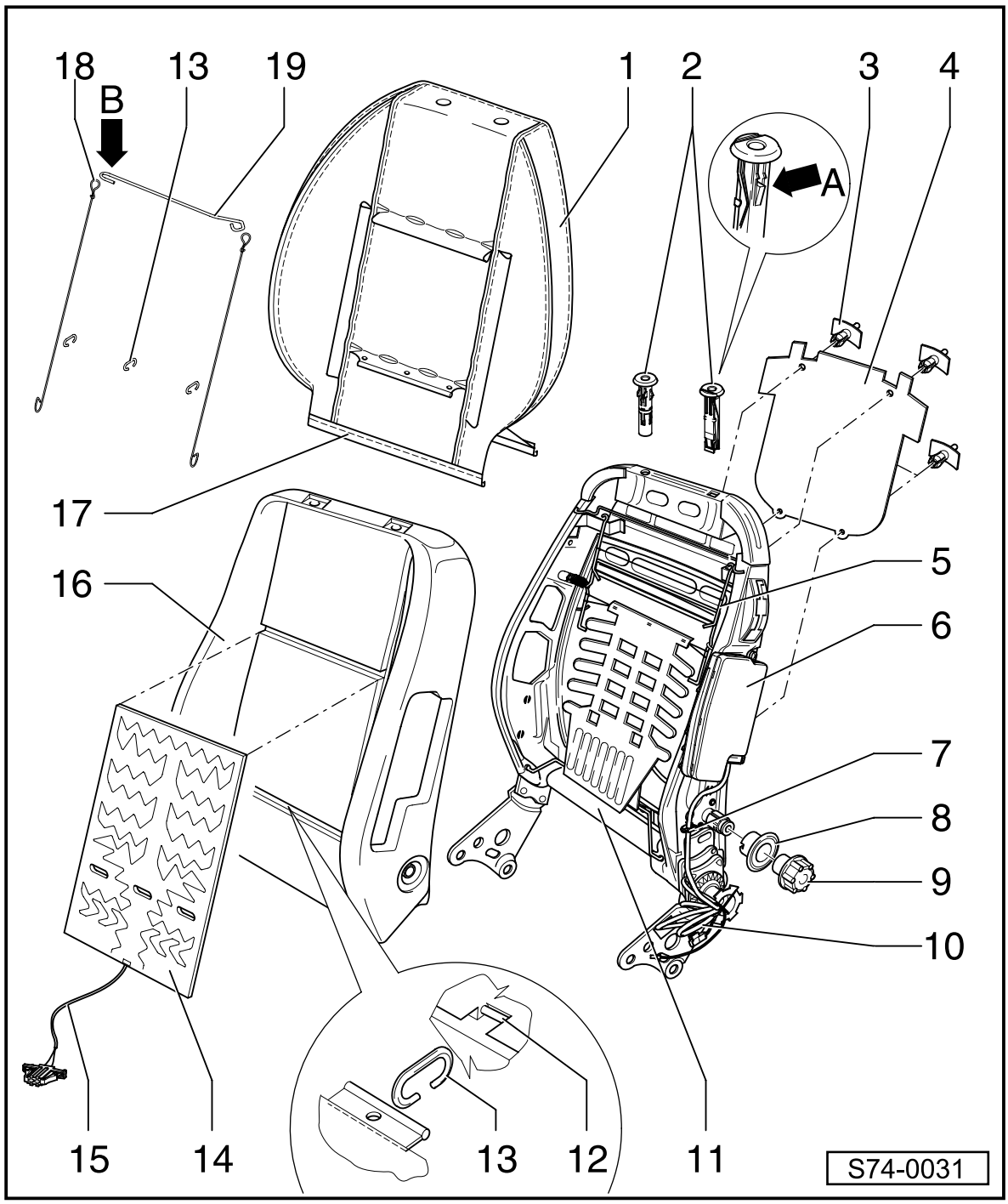
5 - Upholstery
- Removing:
- Remove backrest ⇒ page 72-2.
- Pull clamping section -4- out of seat frame -7-.
- Cut through clips -3-.
- Take off cover -1-.
- Installation is carried out in the reverse order.

6 - Wire
- Fixed in upholstery.

7 - Seat frame

Removing and installing front backrest cover and upholstery

Models with side airbag and seat heater



Notes:

- *Use only specified backrest cover with identification sticker sewn on ⇒ Fig. 1.*
- *When installing, ensure cover is in correct position - identification sticker should be positioned on the airbag unit side.*
- *Before installing, turn the cover with the rear facing up.*
- *Observe safety precautions ⇒ page 69-8.*
- *The assistance of a second person is required for fitting the cover.*

1 - Cover

♦ Removing:

- Seat taken out of vehicle and backrest frame separating from seat frame
  - Pull off trim ring -9- and grommet -8-.
  - Release clamping section -17- fully at the bottom side of seat cover.
  - Roll up seat cover as much as 1/4.
  - Take covers in the lower area of the frame out of the openings for longitudinal wires -18-.
  - Use pliers to unhook longitudinal wires -18- out of the openings in the lower area of the backrest.
  - Cut through clamps -13-.
  - Use upholstery awl V.A.G 1636 to unhook cross wire of cover -19- from the longitudinal wires -5- of the backrest frame -11-.
  - Roll up seat cover and take off.
  - Take off foam upholstery -16-.

♦ Installing:

- Insert foam upholstery -16- into backrest frame -11-.
- Insert longitudinal wires -18- and cross wire -19- into seat cover.
- Connect eyes of wires ⇒ Fig. 2.
- Fit seat cover onto top of back frame with foam upholstery.
- Use upholstery awl V.A.G 1636 to hook cross wire of seat cover -19- into longitudinal wires -5- of backrest frame -11- ⇒ Fig. 3.
- Pull down cover about 3/4.
- Use V.A.G 1634 to attach seat cover with clamps -13- to cross wire -12- of foam upholstery -16- in the middle and at the sides.
- Pull down cover and align.
- Cut openings in foam upholstery -16- in the opening points in the lower area of the backrest.
- Use pliers to draw longitudinal wires of seat cover -18- into the openings in the lower part of the backrest ⇒ Fig. 4.
- Fit on covers in lower area of frame into the openings for longitudinal wires -18-.
- Connect both clamping sections of seat cover -17-.
- Fit on grommet -8- and trim ring -9-.

2 - Head restraint guides

♦ When removing, press on locking pawl -arrow A-, for example with suitably modified screwdriver, and pull out the guides

♦ When installing, press the guides into the backrest frame

3 - Button rivet

♦ For installing protective trim -4-

4 - Protective trim

♦ Remove and install in backrest frame -11-

5 - Longitudinal wire of backrest frame

6 - Airbag unit

♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69-14

7 - Terminal of airbag electric cable

♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69-14

8 - Grommet

9 - Trim ring for backrest

♦ Pull off shaft of backrest mechanism

10 - Electric cable of airbag unit

♦ Removing and installing ⇒ page 69-14

♦ Do not damage when installing

11 - Backrest frame

12 - Foam upholstery cross wire

13 - Clamps

♦ Cut through with pliers for removing

♦ Use upholstery pliers, e.g. V.A.G 1634, for installing

14 - Backrest heating element

♦ Removing:

- Heat with hot air gun or fan in bonded point to foam upholstery and detach from foam upholstery.

♦ Installing:

- Pull protective backing off self-adhesive surface of heating element.
- Affix top side of heating element to top bead of foam upholstery -16-.

15 - Electric cable of heating inlay

16 - Foam upholstery

♦ Detach from backrest frame

17 - Clamping section of seat cover

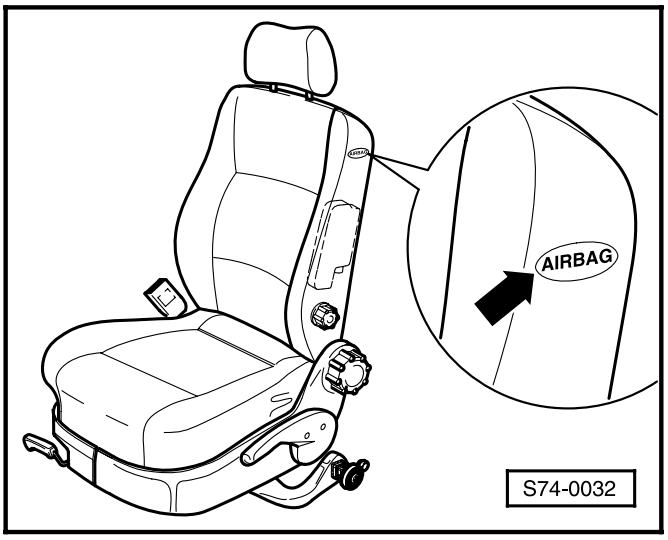
18 - Longitudinal wire of seat cover

♦ Pay attention to installation position

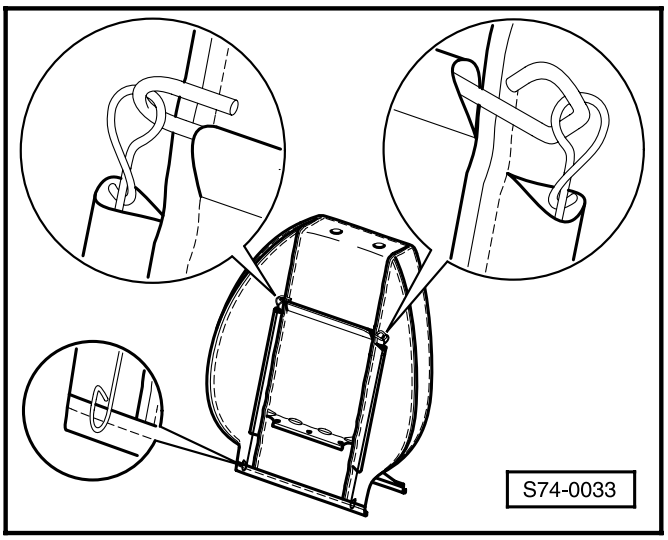
19 - Cross wire of seat cover

♦ Pay attention to installation position

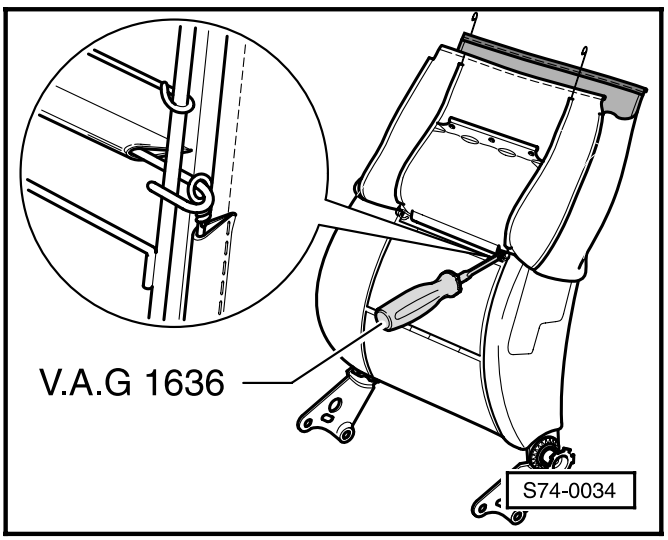
♦ Opened eye of wire -arrow B- points toward airbag unit



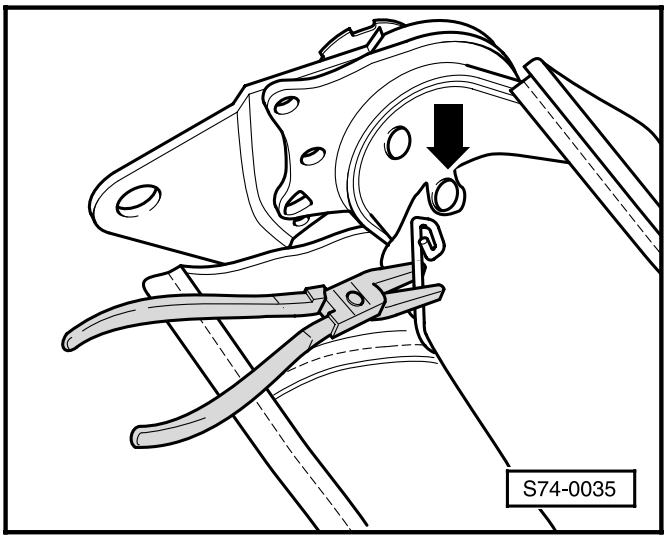
◄ **Fig. 1 Identification sticker of side airbag.**



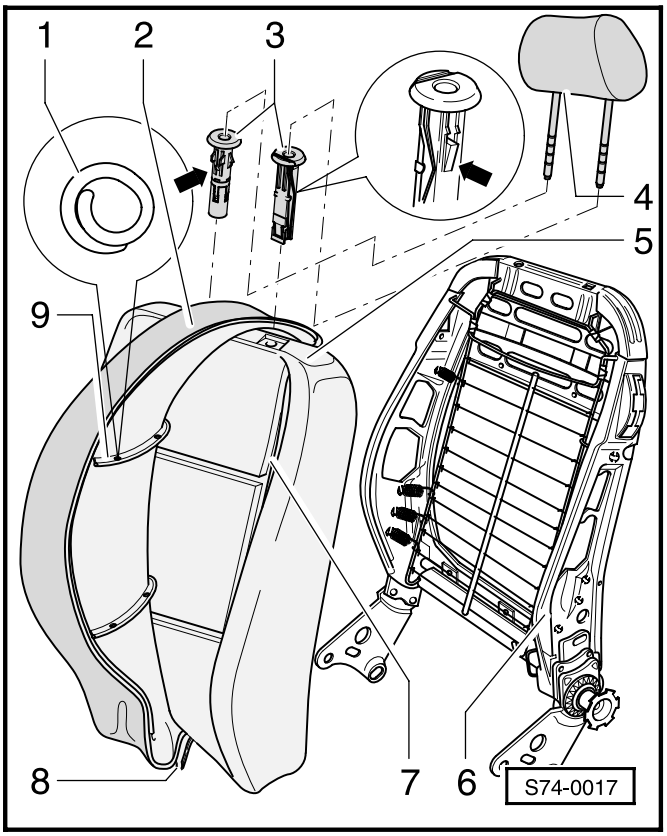
◄ **Fig. 2 Connecting eyes to wires of cover.**



◄ **Fig. 3 Connecting wires of cover to wires of backrest frame.**



◄ **Fig. 4** **Connecting wires of cover to bottom part of backrest frame.**



Models without side airbag

1 - Upholstery clip

2 - Cover
- ♦ Removing:
- Remove backrest ⇒ page 72-2.
- Detach clamping section -8- completely on the underside.
- Push up cover.
- Cut through upholstery clips -1- with nippers.
- Detach plastic piping -9-.
- Remove guide -3- and take off cover.

3 - Guide
- ♦ To remove, push up cover, press in catches -arrows- and pull guides out of backrest frame.

4 - Head restraint

5 - Upholstery

6 - Backrest frame

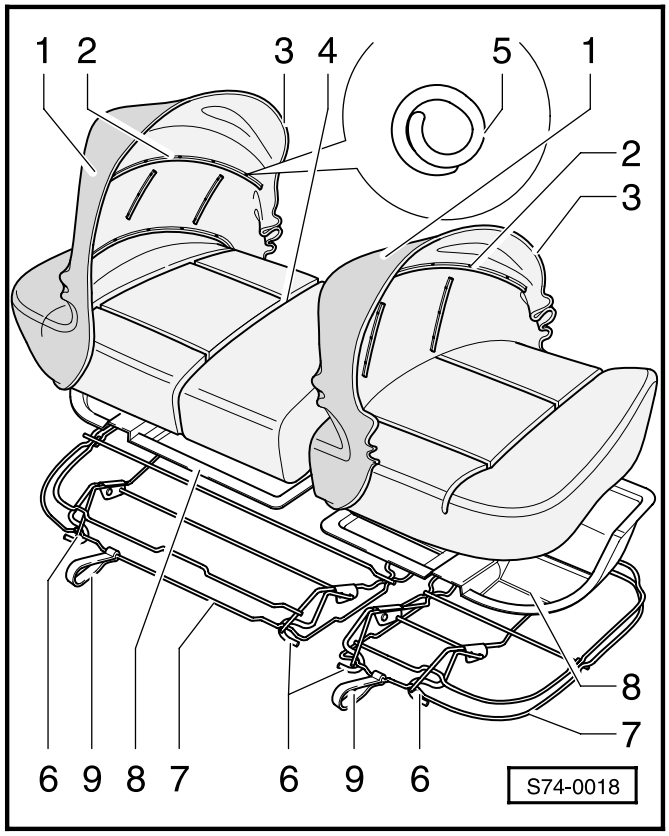
7 - Upholstery wire
- ♦ Attached in upholstery

8 - Clamping section
- ♦ Is located on front and rear of cover

9 - Plastic piping
- ♦ Sewn to cover
- ♦ With holes for attaching clips -1-

Covers and upholstery for rear seats

Removing and installing covers and upholstery for seat bench (split)



1 - Cover
- ♦ with sewn-in tensioning section
- ♦ removing:
- release tensioning section -3- at the wire frame
- cut through upholstery clips -5-

2 - Plastic piping
- ♦ sewn to cover
- ♦ with holes for attaching upholstery clips -5-

3 - Tensioning section

4 - Upholstery wire
- ♦ attached to upholstery

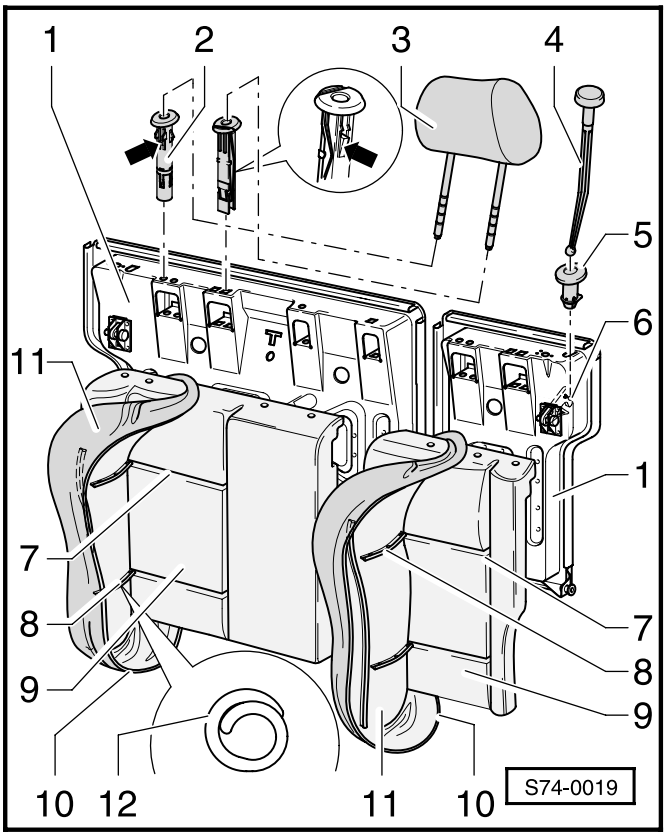
5 - Upholstery clip

6 - Hook
- ♦ for attaching seat bench

7 - Wire frame

8 - Intermediate layer
- ♦ not on base model

9 - Loop



Removing and installing covers and upholstery for backrest (split version)

1 - Rear panel

2 - Guide
- Release for removing cover of rear panel, grip below upholstery and holder of head restraint, use a thin screwdriver to press catch of guide -arrow- and pull out guide

3 - Head restraint

4 - Pull rod

5 - Guide

6 - Detent hook

7 - Upholstery wire
- Sewn into upholstery

8 - Plastic piping
- Sewn to cover
- With holes for mounting upholstery clips -12-

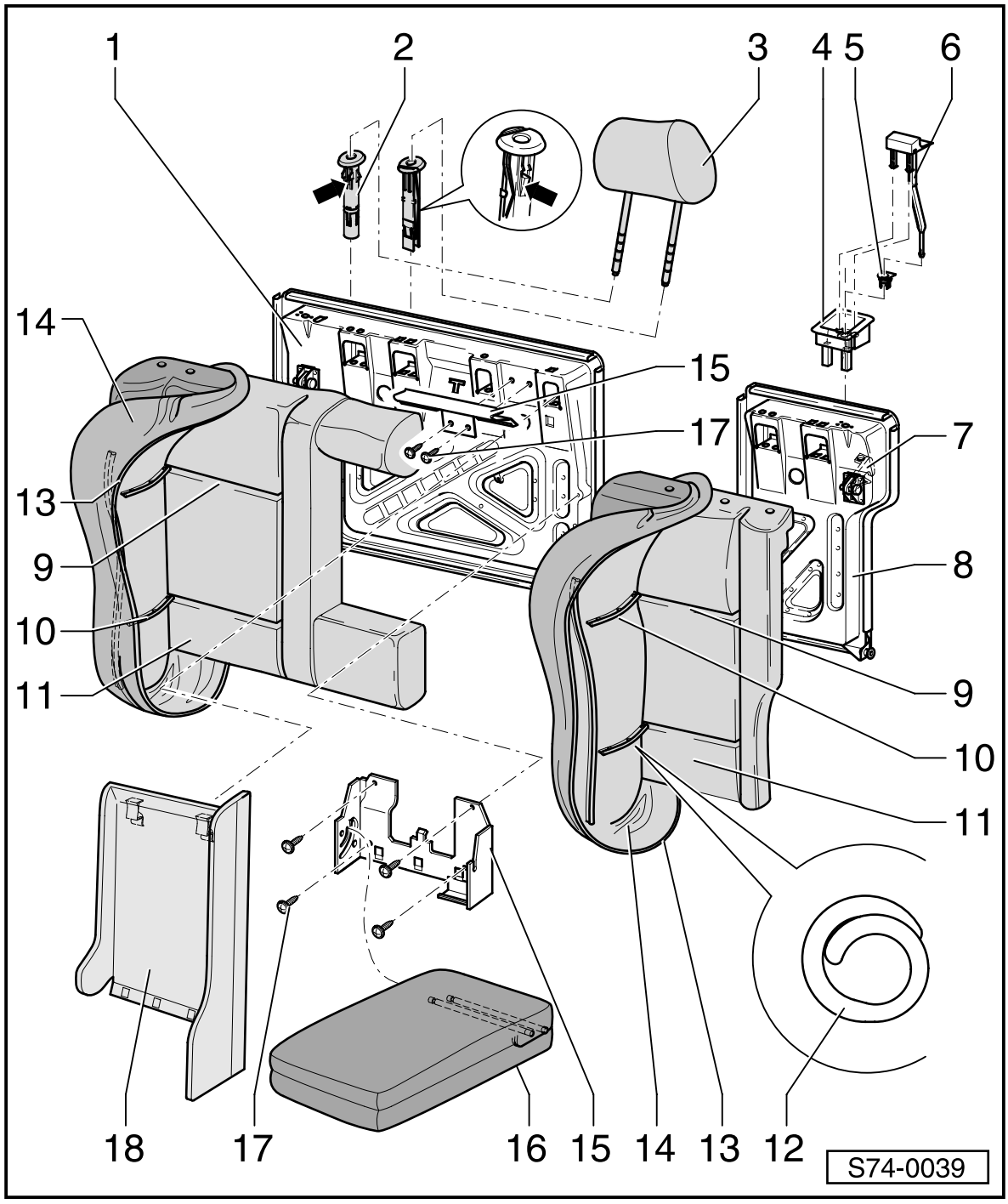
9 - Upholstery

10 - Clamping section

11 - Cover
- The cover is attached to the rear panel with the sewn clamping section -10-

12 - Upholstery clip

Summary of components - Removing and installing covers and upholstery of backrest (with arm rest, split)



1 - Back panel

2 - Guide
- To remove: detach cover of back panel, grasp beneath upholstery and bracket/ head restraint, press latching nose on guide -arrow- and pull out guide.

3 - Head restraint

4 - Pull rod guide

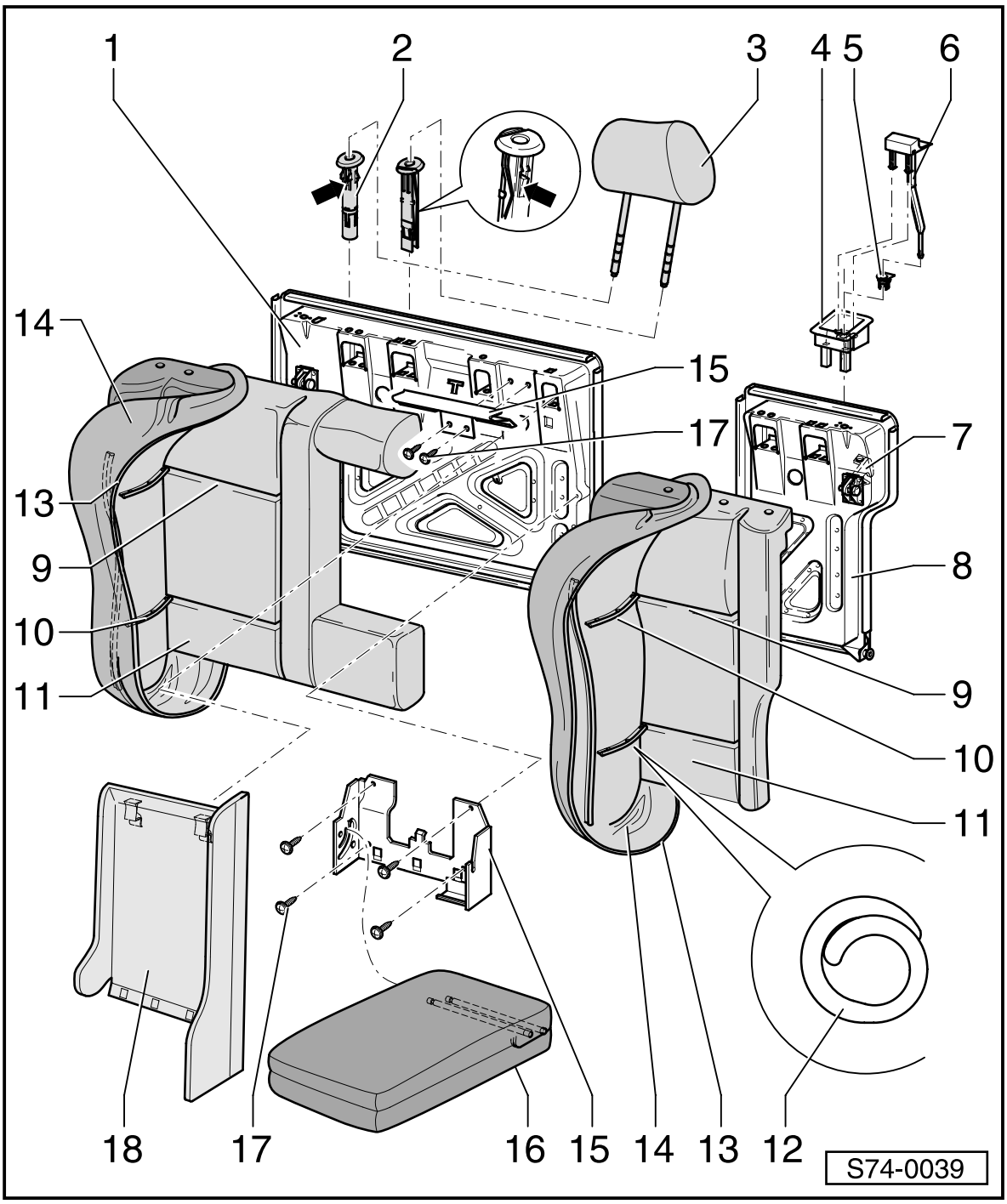
5 - Cover

6 - Pull rod

7 - Latching hook

8 - Back panel

9 - Wire
- Fitted in upholstery.



10 - Plastic cord
- Sewn up with cover.
- Provided with holes for receiving the clips -12-.

11 - Upholstery

12 - Clip

13 - Clamping section

14 - Cover
- The cover with the sewn-in clamping section is fixed to the flange of the back panel.

15 - Bracket

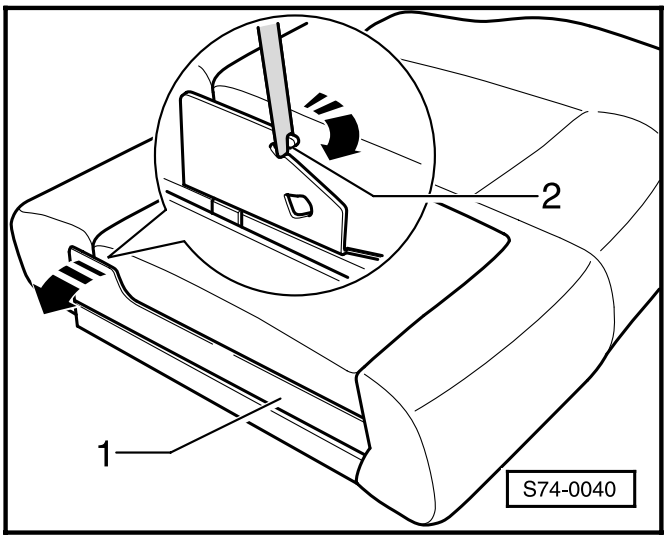
16 - Arm rest
- Removing ⇒ page 74-7.

17 - Screw

18 - Arm rest cover

Removing and installing rear backrest (with arm rest, split)

Removing:

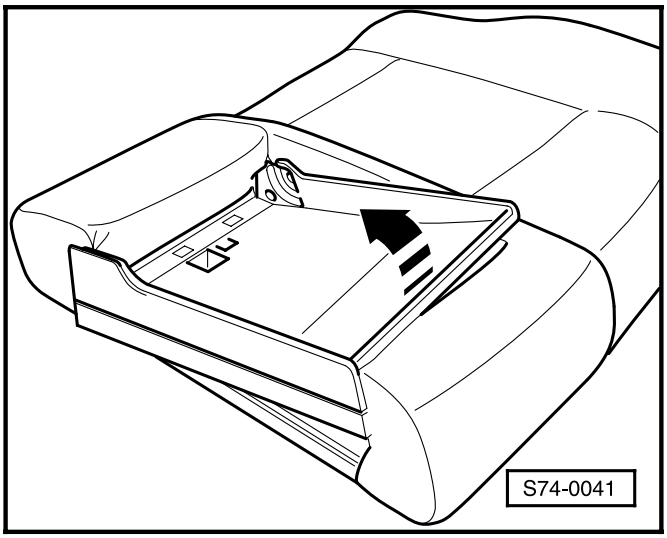


- Take right backrest section out of vehicle ⇒ page 72-4.
- Tilt arm rest.

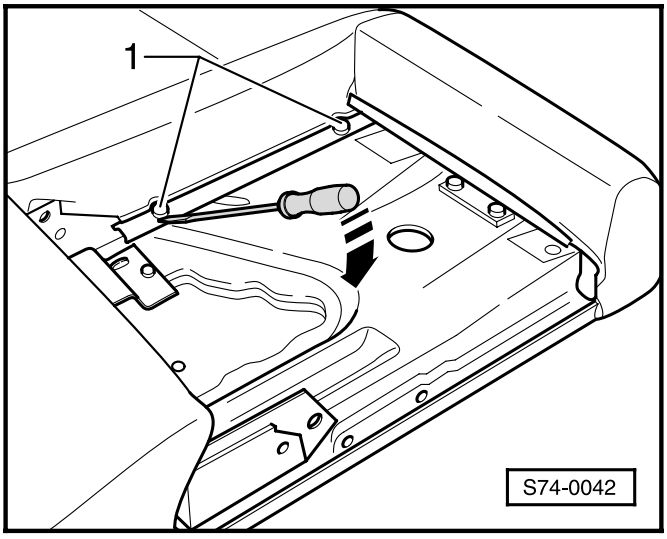
◄ - Pull off cover of arm rest -1- and align safety hooks -2- using a screwdriver with groove or small pliers.

- Take arm rest out of suspensions.

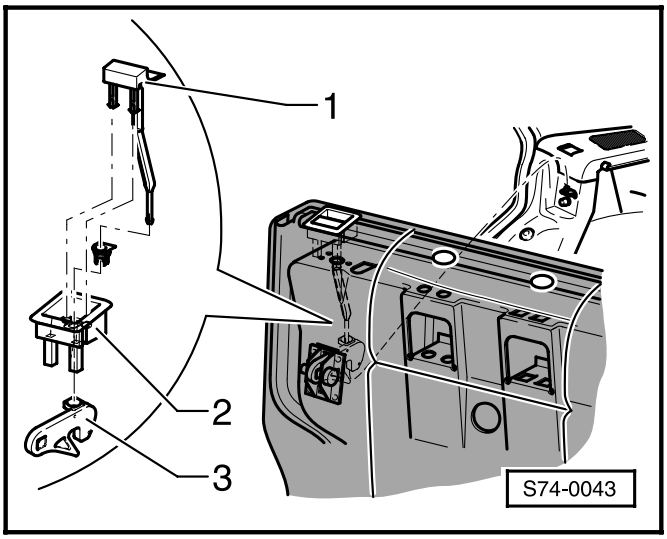
♦ To remove the backrest, a significant force has to be applied.



◄ - Take out backrest cover by applying a tensile force in direction of backrest -arrow-.



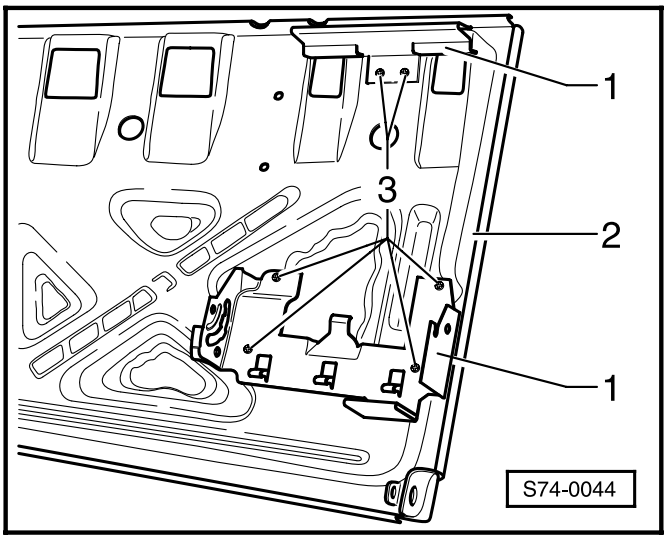
◄ - Lever out pin -1- using a screwdriver.



◄ - Use small pliers or a screwdriver to remove safety pull rod -1- from the hook -3-.

- Pull safety pull rod -1- up and out.

- Remove safety guide -2-.



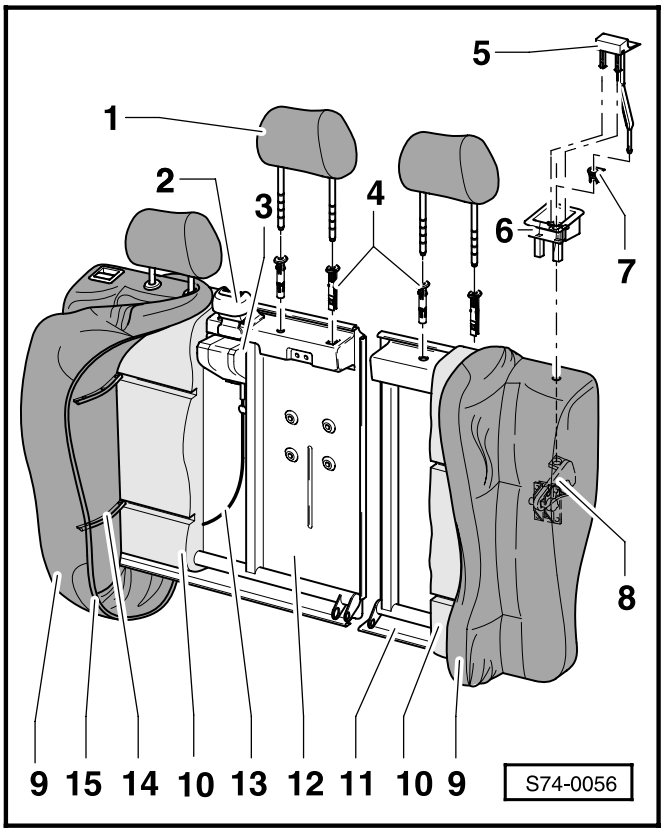
- Remove head restraint guide ⇒ page 74-5.

♦ The cover with the sewn-in clamping section is fixed to the flange of the back panel.

◄ - Remove screws -3- and sheet-metal bracket -1- of rear backrest -2-.

Installing:

Installation is carried out in the reverse order.



Assembly overview of covers and upholstery for rear backrest (split with head restraint and centre three-point seat belt)

1 - Head restraint

2 - Cap
- pull to remove

3 - Centre three-point seat belt
- removing and installing ⇒ page 69-2.2

4 - Guide
- to remove, detach cover from rear panel, grasp below upholstery and head restraint holder, press detent lugs with a screwdriver and pull out guide

5 - Pull rod

6 - Guide for pull rod

7 - Cover

8 - Detent hook

9 - Cover
- the cover is attached to the rear panel by means of the clamping profile -14-
- the cover is attached to the upholstery with clips

10 - Upholstery

11 - Left rear panel

12 - Right rear panel

13 - Bowden cable

14 - Clamping profile

15 - Plastic piping
- sewn to cover
- with holes for upholstery clips